

SigLib

Signal Processing Library
Function Reference Manual

Version 10.00

17 December, 2021

© 2022 Sigma Numerix Ltd.
Email: <mailto:support@numerix-dsp.com>
WWW: <https://www.numerix-dsp.com/>



Table of Contents

DOCUMENTATION OVERVIEW.....	24
Documentation Conventions.....	24
How To Use This Manual.....	24
SigLib Data Types.....	24
FUNCTION DESCRIPTIONS.....	25
UTILITY FUNCTIONS (<i>siglib.c</i>).....	25
SUF_SiglibVersion.....	25
SUF_PrintArray.....	26
SUF_PrintFixedPointArray.....	27
SUF_PrintComplexArray.....	28
SUF_PrintMatrix.....	29
SUF_PrintPolar.....	30
SUF_PrintRectangular.....	31
SUF_PrintIIRCoefficients.....	32
SUF_PrintCount.....	33
SUF_PrintHigher.....	34
SUF_PrintLower.....	35
SUF_ClearDebugprintf.....	36
SUF_Debugprintf.....	37
SUF_Debugvprintf.....	38
SUF_DebugPrintArray.....	39
SUF_DebugPrintFixedPointArray.....	40
SUF_DebugPrintComplexArray.....	41
SUF_DebugPrintMatrix.....	42
SUF_DebugPrintPolar.....	43
SUF_DebugPrintRectangular.....	44
SUF_DebugPrintIIRCoefficients.....	45
SUF_DebugPrintCount.....	46
SUF_DebugPrintHigher.....	47
SUF_DebugPrintLower.....	48
SUF_DebugPrintInfo.....	49
SUF_DebugPrintLine.....	50
SUF_DebugPrintTime.....	51
SUF_PrintRectangular.....	52
SUF_PrintPolar.....	53
SUF_DebugPrintRectangular.....	54
SUF_DebugPrintPolar.....	55
SUF_MSDelay.....	56
SUF_StrError.....	57
SUF_DebugPrintMatrix.....	59
SUF_DebugPrintPolar.....	60
SUF_DebugPrintRectangular.....	61
SUF_DebugPrintIIRCoefficients.....	62
SUF_DebugPrintCount.....	63

SUF_DebugPrintHigher.....	64
SUF_DebugPrintLower.....	65
SUF_DebugPrintInfo.....	66
SUF_DebugPrintLine.....	67
SUF_DebugPrintTime.....	68
SUF_PrintRectangular.....	69
SUF_PrintPolar.....	70
SUF_DebugPrintRectangular.....	71
SUF_DebugPrintPolar.....	72
SUF_MSDelay.....	73
SUF_StrError.....	74
File Input/Output Functions (<i>file_io.c</i>).....	75
Data File Formats.....	75
SUF_BinReadData.....	76
SUF_BinWriteData.....	77
SUF_BinReadFile.....	78
SUF_BinWriteFile.....	79
SUF_CsvReadData.....	80
SUF_CsvWriteData.....	81
SUF_CsvReadFile.....	82
SUF_CsvWriteFile.....	83
SUF_CsvReadMatrix.....	84
SUF_DatReadData.....	85
SUF_DatWriteData.....	86
SUF_DatReadHeader.....	87
SUF_DatWriteHeader.....	88
SUF_SigReadData.....	89
SUF_SigWriteData.....	90
SUF_SigReadFile.....	91
SUF_SigWriteFile.....	92
SUF_XmtReadData.....	93
SUF_WriteWeightsIntegerCFile.....	94
SUF_WriteWeightsFloatCFile.....	95
SUF_WriteWeightsBinaryFile.....	96
SUF_ReadWeightsBinaryFile.....	97
WAV File Functions.....	98
SUF_WavReadData.....	99
SUF_WavWriteData.....	100
SUF_WavReadWord.....	101
SUF_WavReadInt.....	102
SUF_WavWriteWord.....	103
SUF_WavWriteInt.....	104
SUF_WavReadHeader.....	105
SUF_WavWriteHeader.....	106
SUF_WavDisplayInfo.....	107
SUF_WavSetInfo.....	108
SUF_WavFileLength.....	109
SUF_WavReadFile.....	110
SUF_WavWriteFile.....	111
SUF_WavWriteFileScaled.....	112

FREQUENCY DOMAIN FUNCTIONS.....113

Fast Fourier Transform Functions (*ffourier.c*).....113

Radix-2 FFT Functions.....	113
FFT <i>Bit Reverse Addressing</i>	114
FFT Scaling (Radix-2 and Radix-4).....	114
SIF_Fft.....	115
SDA_Rfft.....	116
SDA_Cfft.....	117
SDA_Cifft.....	118
SDA_BitReverseReorder.....	119
SDA_IndexBitReverseReorder.....	120
SIF_FastBitReverseReorder.....	121
SDA_RealRealCepstrum.....	122
SDA_RealComplexCepstrum.....	123
SDA_ComplexComplexCepstrum.....	124
SIF_FftTone.....	125
SDA_RfftTone.....	126
SDA_Rfftr.....	127
SIF_Fft4.....	128
SDA_Rfft4.....	129
SDA_Cfft4.....	130
SDA_DigitReverseReorder4.....	131
SDA_IndexDigitReverseReorder4.....	132
SIF_FastDigitReverseReorder4.....	133
SDA_Cfft2rBy1c.....	134
SDA_Cfft2rBy1cr.....	135
SDA_Cfft42rBy1c.....	136
SDA_Cfft42rBy1cr.....	137

Fourier Transform Functions (*fourier.c*).....138

SIF_ZoomFft.....	138
SDA_ZoomFft.....	139
SIF_ZoomFftSimple.....	142
SDA_ZoomFftSimple.....	143
SIF_FdHilbert.....	145
SDA_FdHilbert.....	146
SIF_FdAnalytic.....	147
SDA_FdAnalytic.....	148
SDA_InstantFreq.....	149
SDA_Rft.....	150
SDA_Rift.....	151
SDA_Cft.....	152
SDA_Cift.....	153
SDA_FftShift.....	154
SDA_CfftShift.....	155
SDA_FftExtend.....	156
SDA_CfftExtend.....	157
SIF_DctII.....	158
SDA_DctII.....	159
SIF_DctIIOrthogonal.....	160
SDA_DctIIOrthogonal.....	161

Arbitrary Length Fast Fourier Transform Functions (<i>arbfft.c</i>).....	162
SIF_FftArb.....	162
SUF_FftArbAllocLength.....	163
SDA_RfftArb.....	164
SDA_CfftArb.....	165
SDA_CifftArb.....	166
Power Spectrum Functions (<i>pspect.c</i>).....	168
SIF_FastAutoCrossPowerSpectrum.....	168
SDA_FastAutoPowerSpectrum.....	169
SDA_FastCrossPowerSpectrum.....	170
SIF_ArbAutoCrossPowerSpectrum.....	171
SDA_ArbAutoPowerSpectrum.....	172
SDA_ArbCrossPowerSpectrum.....	173
SIF_WelchPowerSpectrum.....	174
SDA_WelchRealPowerSpectrum.....	175
SDA_WelchComplexPowerSpectrum.....	176
SIF_MagnitudeSquaredCoherence.....	177
SDA_MagnitudeSquaredCoherence.....	178
Frequency Domain Filtering Functions (<i>fdfilter.c</i>).....	179
SIF_FirOverlapAdd.....	179
SDA_FirOverlapAdd.....	180
SIF_FirOverlapSave.....	181
SDA_FirOverlapSave.....	182
SIF_FftConvolvePre.....	183
SDA_FftConvolvePre.....	184
SDA_FftConvolveArb.....	185
SIF_FftCorrelatePre.....	186
SDA_FftCorrelatePre.....	187
SDA_FftCorrelateArb.....	188
CHIRP Z-TRANSFORM FUNCTIONS (<i>chirpz.c</i>).....	189
SIF_Czt.....	190
SIF_Awn.....	191
SIF_Vl.....	192
SIF_Wm.....	193
WINDOWING FUNCTIONS (<i>window.c</i>).....	194
SIF_Window.....	194
SIF_TableTopWindow.....	195
SDA_Window.....	196
SDA_ComplexWindow.....	197
SDA_WindowInverseCoherentGain.....	198
SDA_WindowEquivalentNoiseBandwidth.....	199
SDA_WindowProcessingGain.....	200
SDS_I0Bessel.....	201
FIXED COEFFICIENT FILTER FUNCTIONS.....	202
FIR Filtering Functions (<i>firfilt.c</i>).....	202
SIF_Fir.....	202
SDS_Fir.....	203

SDA_Fir.....	204
SDS_FirAddSample.....	205
SDA_FirAddSamples.....	206
SIF_Comb.....	207
SDS_Comb.....	208
SDA_Comb.....	209
SIF_FirComplex.....	210
SDS_FirComplex.....	211
SDA_FirComplex.....	212
SIF_FirWithStore.....	213
SDS_FirWithStore.....	214
SDA_FirWithStore.....	215
SIF_FirComplexWithStore.....	216
SDS_FirComplexWithStore.....	217
SDA_FirComplexWithStore.....	218
SDS_FirAddSampleWithStore.....	219
SDA_FirAddSamplesWithStore.....	220
SIF_FirExtendedArray.....	221
SDS_FirExtendedArray.....	222
SDA_FirExtendedArray.....	223
SIF_FirComplexExtendedArray.....	224
SDS_FirComplexExtendedArray.....	225
SDA_FirComplexExtendedArray.....	226
SDS_FirExtendedArrayAddSample.....	227
SDA_FirExtendedArrayAddSamples.....	228
SIF_FirLowPassFilter.....	229
SIF_FirHighPassFilter.....	230
SIF_FirBandPassFilter.....	231
SIF_FirLowPassFilterWindow.....	232
SIF_FirHighPassFilterWindow.....	233
SIF_FirBandPassFilterWindow.....	234
SUF_FirKaiserApproximation.....	235
SIF_FirMatchedFilter.....	236
SDA_FirFilterInverseCoherentGain.....	237
SIF_TappedDelayLine.....	238
SDS_TappedDelayLine.....	239
SDA_TappedDelayLine.....	240
SIF_TappedDelayLineComplex.....	241
SDS_TappedDelayLineComplex.....	242
SDA_TappedDelayLineComplex.....	243
SIF_TappedDelayLineIQ.....	244
SDS_TappedDelayLineIQ.....	245
SDA_TappedDelayLineIQ.....	246
SIF_FirPolyPhaseGenerate.....	247
IIR Filtering Functions (<i>iirfilt.c</i>).....	248
SIF_lir.....	249
SDS_lir.....	250
SDA_lir.....	251
SDS_lirMac.....	252
SDA_lirMac.....	253
SIF_lirOrderN.....	254
SDS_lirOrderN.....	255

SDA_lirOrderN.....	256
SIF_lirNc.....	257
SDA_lirNc.....	258
SDA_BilinearTransform.....	260
SDS_PreWarp.....	261
SDA_MatchedZTransform.....	262
SDA_lirZplaneToCoeffs.....	263
SDA_lirZplanePolarToCoeffs.....	264
SDA_lirZplaneLpfToLpf.....	265
SDA_lirZplaneLpfToHpf.....	266
SDA_lirZplaneLpfToBpf.....	267
SDA_lirZplaneLpfToBsf.....	268
SDA_lirModifyFilterGain.....	269
SIF_lirLowPassFilter.....	270
SIF_lirHighPassFilter.....	271
SIF_lirAllPassFilter.....	272
SIF_lirBandPassFilter.....	273
SIF_lirNotchFilter.....	274
SIF_lirPeakingFilter.....	275
SIF_lirLowShelfFilter.....	276
SIF_lirHighShelfFilter.....	277
SDS_lirRemoveDC.....	278
SDA_lirRemoveDC.....	279
SIF_OnePole.....	280
SDS_OnePole.....	281
SDA_OnePole.....	282
SDS_OnePoleNormalized.....	283
SDA_OnePoleNormalized.....	284
SDA_OnePolePerSample.....	285
SIF_OnePoleHighPass.....	286
SDS_OnePoleHighPass.....	287
SDA_OnePoleHighPass.....	288
SDS_OnePoleHighPassNormalized.....	289
SDA_OnePoleHighPassNormalized.....	290
SDA_OnePoleHighPassPerSample.....	291
SDS_OnePoleTimeConstantToFilterCoeff.....	292
SDS_OnePoleCutOffFrequencyToFilterCoeff.....	293
SDS_OnePoleHighPassCutOffFrequencyToFilterCoeff.....	294
SIF_AllPole.....	295
SDS_AllPole.....	296
SDA_AllPole.....	297
SDA_AllPole.....	298
SDA_ZDomainCoefficientReorg.....	299
SIF_lirNotchFilter2.....	300
SIF_lirNormalizedCoefficients.....	301
SIF_lirNormalizedSPlaneCoefficients.....	302
SDA_TranslateSPlaneCutOffFrequency.....	303
SDA_lirLpLpShift.....	304
SDA_lirLpHpShift.....	305
SIF_lir2PoleLpf.....	306
SDS_lir2Pole.....	307
SDS_lir2Pole.....	308
SDA_lirNegateAlphaCoeffs.....	309

Generic Filtering Functions (<i>filter.c</i>)	310
SDA_Integrate	310
SDA_Differentiate	311
SIF_LeakyIntegrator	312
SDS_LeakyIntegrator1	313
SDS_LeakyIntegrator2	314
SIF_HilbertTransformer	315
SIF_GoertzelFilter	316
SDA_GoertzelFilter	317
SDS_GoertzelFilter	318
SIF_GoertzelDetect	319
SDA_GoertzelDetect	320
SIF_GoertzelDetectComplex	321
SDA_GoertzelDetectComplex	322
SIF_GaussianFilter	323
SIF_GaussianFilter2	324
SIF_RaisedCosineFilter	325
SIF_RootRaisedCosineFilter	326
SDS_ZTransform	327
SDS_ZTransformDB	328
SUF_EstimateBPFILTERLength	329
SUF_EstimateBPFILTERError	330
SUF_FrequenciesToOctaves	331
SUF_FrequenciesToCentreFreqHz	332
SUF_FrequenciesToQFactor	333
SUF_BandwidthToQFactor	334
SUF_QFactorToBandwidth	335
ACOUSTIC PROCESSING FUNCTIONS (<i>acoustic.c</i>)	336
SDA_LinearMicrophoneArrayBeamPattern	336
SDA_LinearMicrophoneArrayBeamPatternLinear	337
SDA_MicrophoneArrayCalculateDelays	338
SDA_MicrophoneArrayBeamPattern	339
SDA_MicrophoneArrayBeamPatternLinear	340
SDA_MicrophoneArrayBeamPatternLinear	341
ADAPTIVE COEFFICIENT FILTER FUNCTIONS (<i>adaptive.c</i>)	342
SIF_Lms	343
SDS_Lms	344
SDA_LmsUpdate	345
SDA_LeakyLmsUpdate	346
SDA_NormalizedLmsUpdate	347
SDA_SignErrorLmsUpdate	348
SDA_SignDataLmsUpdate	349
SDA_SignSignLmsUpdate	350
CONVOLUTION FUNCTIONS (<i>convolve.c</i>)	351
SDA_ConvolveLinear	351
SDA_ConvolvePartial	352
SDA_ConvolveCircular	353
SDA_ConvolveLinearComplex	354
SDA_ConvolvePartialComplex	355
SDA_ConvolveCircularComplex	356

SDA_Deconvolution.....	357
SIF_FftDeconvolutionPre.....	358
SDA_FftDeconvolutionPre.....	359
CORRELATION FUNCTIONS (<i>correlate.c</i>).....	360
SDA_CorrelateLinear.....	360
SDA_CorrelatePartial.....	361
SDA_CorrelateCircular.....	362
SDA_Covariance.....	363
SDA_CovariancePartial.....	364
SDA_CorrelateLinearReturnPeak.....	365
DELAY FUNCTIONS (<i>delay.c</i>).....	366
Overview of SigLib delay functions.....	366
SIF_FixedDelay.....	366
SDS_FixedDelay.....	367
SDA_FixedDelay.....	368
SIF_FixedDelayComplex.....	369
SDS_FixedDelayComplex.....	370
SDA_FixedDelayComplex.....	371
SDA_ShortFixedDelay.....	372
SIF_VariableDelay.....	373
SDS_VariableDelay.....	374
SDA_VariableDelay.....	375
SIF_VariableDelayComplex.....	376
SDS_VariableDelayComplex.....	377
SDA_VariableDelayComplex.....	378
SUF_IncreaseVariableDelay.....	379
SUF_DecreaseVariableDelay.....	380
SDA_Align.....	381
IMAGE PROCESSING FUNCTIONS (<i>image.c</i>).....	382
SIM_Fft2d.....	383
SIF_Fft2d.....	384
SIM_Conv3x3.....	385
SIM_Sobel3x3.....	386
SIM_SobelVertical3x3.....	387
SIM_SobelHorizontal3x3.....	388
SIM_Median3x3.....	389
SIF_ConvCoefficients3x3.....	390
SIM_Max.....	391
SIM_Min.....	392
IMAGE CODING FUNCTIONS (<i>icoder.c</i>).....	393
SIF_Dct8x8.....	393
SIM_Dct8x8.....	394
SIM_Idct8x8.....	395
SIM_ZigZagScan.....	396
SIM_ZigZagDescan.....	397
SIGNAL GENERATION FUNCTIONS (<i>siggen.c</i>).....	398
SDA_SignalGenerate.....	398

SDS_SignalGenerate.....	402
SIF_Resonator.....	403
SDA_Resonator.....	404
SIF_Resonator1.....	405
SDA_Resonator1.....	406
SDA_Resonator1Add.....	407
SDA_SignalGeneratePolarWhiteNoise.....	408
SDS_SignalGeneratePolarWhiteNoise.....	409
SDA_SignalGeneratePolarGaussianNoise.....	410
SDS_SignalGeneratePolarGaussianNoise.....	411
SDA_SignalAddPolarJitterAndGaussianNoise.....	412
SDS_SignalAddPolarJitterAndGaussianNoise.....	413
SDA_Ramp.....	414
SIF_RandomNumber.....	415
SDS_RandomNumber.....	416
SDA_RandomNumber.....	417
COMMUNICATION FUNCTIONS.....	418
General Communications Functions (<i>comms.c</i>).....	418
SDA_BitErrorRate.....	418
SDA_Interleave.....	419
SDA_Deinterleave.....	420
SCV_EuclideanDistance.....	421
SCV_EuclideanDistanceSquared.....	422
SCA_EuclideanDistance.....	423
SCA_EuclideanDistanceSquared.....	424
SDS_EuclideanDistance.....	425
SDS_EuclideanDistanceSquared.....	426
SDA_EuclideanDistance.....	427
SDA_EuclideanDistanceSquared.....	428
SDS_ManchesterEncode.....	429
SDS_ManchesterDecode.....	430
SDS_ManchesterEncodeByte.....	431
SDS_ManchesterDecodeByte.....	432
SIF_DetectNumericalWordSequence.....	433
SDS_DetectNumericalWordSequence.....	434
SIF_DetectNumericalBitSequence.....	435
SDS_DetectNumericalBitSequence.....	436
SIF_DetectCharacterSequence.....	437
SDS_DetectCharacterSequence.....	438
SDS_ErrorVector.....	439
SDS_ErrorVectorMagnitudePercent.....	440
SDS_ErrorVectorMagnitudeDecibels.....	441
SDS_ReverseDiBits.....	442
SDS_QpskBitErrorCount.....	443
SDS_BitErrorRate.....	444
Communications Timing Detection Functions (<i>timing.c</i>).....	445
SIF_PhaseLockedLoop.....	445
SDS_PhaseLockedLoop.....	446
SDA_PhaseLockedLoop.....	447
SIF_CostasLoop.....	448

SDS_CostasLoop.....	450
SDA_CostasLoop.....	451
SRF_CostasLoop.....	452
SIF_180DegreePhaseDetect.....	453
SIF_180DegreePhaseDetect.....	454
SIF_TriggerReverberator.....	455
SDA_TriggerReverberator.....	456
SDS_TriggerReverberator.....	457
SDA_TriggerSelector.....	458
SIF_EarlyLateGate.....	459
SDA_EarlyLateGate.....	461
SDA_EarlyLateGateDebug.....	462
SDS_EarlyLateGate.....	463
SIF_EarlyLateGateSquarePulse.....	464
SDA_EarlyLateGateSquarePulse.....	466
SDA_EarlyLateGateSquarePulseDebug.....	467
SDS_EarlyLateGateSquarePulse.....	468
Convolutional Encode and Viterbi Decode Functions (<i>viterbi.c</i>).....	469
SDS_ConvEncoderK3.....	470
SIF_ViterbiDecoderK3.....	471
SDS_ViterbiDecoderK3.....	472
SDS_ConvEncoderV32.....	473
SIF_ViterbiDecoderV32.....	474
SDS_ViterbiDecoderV32.....	475
Analog Modulation Functions (<i>mod_a.c</i>).....	476
SIF_AmplitudeModulate.....	476
SDA_AmplitudeModulate.....	477
SDS_AmplitudeModulate.....	478
SIF_AmplitudeModulate2.....	479
SDA_AmplitudeModulate2.....	480
SDS_AmplitudeModulate2.....	481
SIF_ComplexShift.....	482
SDA_ComplexShift.....	483
SIF_FrequencyModulate.....	484
SDS_FrequencyModulate.....	485
SDA_FrequencyModulate.....	486
SDA_FrequencyDemodulate.....	487
SIF_FrequencyModulateComplex.....	488
SDS_FrequencyModulateComplex.....	489
SDA_FrequencyModulateComplex.....	490
SDA_DeltaModulate.....	491
SDA_DeltaDemodulate.....	492
SDA_DeltaModulate2.....	493
Digital Modulation Functions (<i>mod_d.c</i>).....	494
SIF_CostasQamDemodulate.....	494
SDS_CostasQamDemodulate.....	497
SDS_CostasQamDemodulateDebug.....	499
SDA_CostasQamDemodulate.....	501
SDA_CostasQamDemodulateDebug.....	503
SIF_QpskModulate.....	505

SDA_QpskModulate.....	506
SIF_QpskDemodulate.....	507
SDA_QpskDemodulate.....	508
SDA_QpskDemodulateDebug.....	509
SDA_QpskDifferentialEncode.....	510
SDA_QpskDifferentialDecode.....	511
SIF_FskModulate.....	512
SDA_FskModulateByte.....	513
SDA_FskDemodulateByte.....	514
SDA_CpfskModulateByte.....	515
SDA_FskModulate.....	516
SDA_FskDemodulate.....	517
SDA_CpfskModulate.....	518
SIF_Qam16Modulate.....	519
SDA_Qam16Modulate.....	520
SIF_Qam16Demodulate.....	521
SDA_Qam16Demodulate.....	522
SDA_Qam16DemodulateDebug.....	523
SDA_Qam16DifferentialEncode.....	524
SDA_Qam16DifferentialDecode.....	525
SIF_BpskModulate.....	526
SDA_BpskModulate.....	527
SDA_BpskModulateByte.....	528
SIF_BpskDemodulate.....	529
SDA_BpskDemodulate.....	531
SDA_BpskDemodulateDebug.....	532
SIF_DpskModulate.....	533
SDA_DpskModulate.....	534
SDA_DpskModulateByte.....	535
SIF_DpskDemodulate.....	536
SDA_DpskDemodulate.....	537
SDA_DpskDemodulateDebug.....	538
SIF_PiByFourDQpskModulate.....	539
SDA_PiByFourDQpskModulate.....	540
SDS_ChannelizationCode.....	541
SDA_ComplexQPSKSpread.....	542
SDA_ComplexQPSKDeSpread.....	543
Modem Utility Functions (modem.c).....	544
SUF_AsyncCharacterLength.....	544
SDA_SyncToAsyncConverter.....	545
SDA_AsyncToSyncConverter.....	546
SIF_AsyncAddRemoveStopBits.....	547
SDA_AsyncRemoveStopBits.....	548
SDA_AsyncAddStopBits.....	549
SDA_DecreaseWordLength.....	550
SDA_IncreaseWordLength.....	551
PRBS (prbs.c).....	552
SDS_Scrambler1417.....	552
SDS_Descrambler1417.....	553
SDS_Scrambler1417WithInversion.....	554
SDS_Descrambler1417WithInversion.....	555

SDS_Scrambler1823.....	556
SDS_Descrambler1823.....	557
SDS_Scrambler523.....	558
SDS_Descrambler523.....	559
SDS_ScramblerDescramblerPN9.....	560
SDS_SequenceGeneratorPN9.....	561
SDS_ScramblerDescramblerPN15.....	562
SDS_SequenceGeneratorPN15.....	563
SDS_ScramblerDescramblergCRC24.....	564
SDS_SequenceGeneratorgCRC24.....	565
SDS_ScramblerDescramblergCRC16.....	566
SDS_SequenceGeneratorgCRC16.....	567
SDS_ScramblerDescramblergCRC12.....	568
SDS_SequenceGeneratorgCRC12.....	569
SDS_ScramblerDescramblergCRC8.....	570
SDS_SequenceGeneratorgCRC8.....	571
SDS_LongCodeGenerator3GPPDL.....	572
SDS_LongCodeGenerator3GPPUL.....	573
Multiplex Functions (<i>mux.c</i>).....	574
SDA_Multiplex.....	574
SDA_Demultiplex.....	575
SDA_MuxN.....	576
SDA_DemuxN.....	577
Decimation And Interpolation Functions (<i>decint.c</i>).....	578
SIF_Decimate.....	578
SDA_Decimate.....	579
SIF_Interpolate.....	580
SDA_Interpolate.....	581
SIF_FilterAndDecimate.....	582
SDA_FilterAndDecimate.....	583
SIF_InterpolateAndFilter.....	584
SDA_InterpolateAndFilter.....	585
SDA_ResampleLinear.....	586
SDA_ResampleLinearNSamples.....	587
SDA_InterpolateLinear1D.....	588
SDA_InterpolateLinear2D.....	589
SIF_ResampleSinc.....	590
SIF_ResampleWindowedSinc.....	591
SDA_ResampleSinc.....	592
SDA_ResampleSincNSamples.....	593
SIF_InterpolateSinc1D.....	595
SIF_InterpolateWindowedSinc1D.....	596
SDA_InterpolateSinc1D.....	597
SIF_ResampleLinearContiguous.....	598
SDA_ResampleLinearContiguous.....	599
SIF_ResampleSincContiguous.....	600
SIF_ResampleWindowedSincContiguous.....	601
SDA_ResampleSincContiguous.....	602
SDS_InterpolateQuadratic1D.....	604
SDS_InterpolateQuadraticBSpline1D.....	605
SDS_InterpolateQuadraticLagrange1D.....	606

DTMF Functions (<i>dtmf.c</i>).....	607
SIF_DtmfGenerate.....	609
SDA_DtmfGenerate.....	610
SIF_DtmfDetect.....	611
SDA_DtmfDetect.....	612
SDA_DtmfDetectAndValidate.....	613
SUF_AsciiToKeyCode.....	614
SUF_KeyCodeToAscii.....	615
 SPEECH PROCESSING FUNCTIONS (<i>speech.c</i>).....	 616
SIF_PreEmphasisFilter.....	616
SDA_PreEmphasisFilter.....	617
SIF_DeEmphasisFilter.....	618
SDA_DeEmphasisFilter.....	619
SDA_AdpcmEncoder.....	620
SDA_AdpcmEncoderDebug.....	621
SDA_AdpcmDecoder.....	622
 MINIMUM AND MAXIMUM FUNCTIONS (<i>minmax.c</i>).....	 623
SDA_Max.....	623
SDA_AbsMax.....	624
SDA_Min.....	625
SDA_AbsMin.....	626
SDA_Middle.....	627
SDA_Range.....	628
SDA_MaxIndex.....	629
SDA_AbsMaxIndex.....	630
SDA_MinIndex.....	631
SDA_AbsMinIndex.....	632
SDS_Max.....	633
SDS_AbsMax.....	634
SDS_Min.....	635
SDS_AbsMin.....	636
SDA_LocalMax.....	637
SDA_LocalAbsMax.....	638
SDA_LocalMin.....	639
SDA_LocalAbsMin.....	640
SDA_Max2.....	641
SDA_AbsMax2.....	642
SDA_SignedAbsMax2.....	643
SDA_Min2.....	644
SDA_AbsMin2.....	645
SDA_SignedAbsMin2.....	646
SDA_PeakHold.....	647
SDA_PeakHoldPerSample.....	648
SDA_DetectFirstPeakOverThreshold.....	649
SDS_Round.....	650
SDA_Round.....	651
SDS_Clip.....	652
SDA_Clip.....	653
SDS_Threshold.....	654
SDA_Threshold.....	655
SDS_SoftThreshold.....	656

SDA_SoftThreshold.....	657
SDS_ThresholdAndClamp.....	658
SDA_ThresholdAndClamp.....	659
SDS_Clamp.....	660
SDA_Clamp.....	661
SDA_TestOverThreshold.....	662
SDA_TestAbsOverThreshold.....	663
SDA_SelectMax.....	664
SDA_SelectMin.....	665
SDA_SelectMagnitudeSquaredMax.....	666
SDA_SelectMagnitudeSquaredMin.....	667
SDS_SetMinValue.....	668
SDA_SetMinValue.....	669
SDA_PeakToAverageRatio.....	670
SDA_PeakToAveragePowerRatio.....	671
SDA_PeakToAveragePowerRatioDB.....	672
SDA_PeakToAverageRatioComplex.....	673
SDA_PeakToAveragePowerRatioComplex.....	674
SDA_PeakToAveragePowerRatioDB.....	675
SDA_MovePeakTowardsDeadBand.....	676
SIF_Envelope.....	677
SDS_Envelope.....	678
SDA_Envelope.....	679
SIF_EnvelopeRMS.....	680
SDS_EnvelopeRMS.....	681
SDA_EnvelopeRMS.....	682
SIF_EnvelopeHilbert.....	683
SDS_EnvelopeHilbert.....	684
SDA_EnvelopeHilbert.....	685
SDS_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexMagnitude.....	686
SDS_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation.....	687
SDS_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexMagnitude.....	688
SDS_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation.....	689
SDA_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexMagnitude.....	690
SDA_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation.....	691
SDA_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexMagnitude.....	692
SDA_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation.....	693
SDA_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticPeakVertexMagnitude.....	694
SDA_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticPeakVertexLocation.....	695
SDA_FirstMinVertex.....	696
SDA_FirstMinVertexPos.....	697
SDA_FirstMaxVertex.....	698
SDA_FirstMaxVertexPos.....	699
SDA_NLargest.....	700
SDA_NSmallest.....	701
MATH FUNCTIONS (<i>smath.c</i>).....	702
SDA_Divide.....	702
SDA_Divide2.....	703
SDA_Multiply.....	704
SDA_Multiply2.....	705
SDS_ComplexMultiply.....	706
SDS_ComplexInverse.....	707

SDA_ComplexInverse.....	708
SDS_ComplexDivide.....	709
SDA_ComplexScalarMultiply.....	710
SDA_ComplexMultiply2.....	711
SDA_ComplexScalarDivide.....	712
SDA_ComplexDivide2.....	713
SDA_RealDotProduct.....	714
SDA_ComplexDotProduct.....	715
SDA_SumAndDifference.....	716
SDA_AddN.....	717
SDA_WeightedSum.....	718
SDA_Subtract2.....	719
SDA_Add.....	720
SDA_PositiveOffset.....	721
SDA_NegativeOffset.....	722
SDA_Negate.....	723
SDA_Inverse.....	724
SDA_Square.....	725
SDA_Sqrt.....	726
SDA_Difference.....	727
SDA_SumOfDifferences.....	728
SDS_Roots.....	729
SDS_Factorial.....	730
SDS_Permutations.....	731
SDS_Combinations.....	732
SIF_OverlapAndAddLinear.....	733
SDA_OverlapAndAddLinear.....	734
SDA_OverlapAndAddLinearWithClip.....	735
SDA_OverlapAndAddArbitrary.....	736
SDA_OverlapAndAddArbitraryWithClip.....	737
SDS_DegreesToRadians.....	738
SDA_DegreesToRadians.....	739
SDS_RadiansToDegrees.....	740
SDA_RadiansToDegrees.....	741
SDS_DetectNAN.....	742
SDA_DetectNAN.....	743
DSP UTILITY FUNCTIONS (<i>dsputils.c</i>).....	744
SDA_Rotate.....	744
SDA_Reverse.....	745
SDA_Scale.....	746
SDA_MeanSquare.....	747
SDA_MeanSquareError.....	748
SDA_RootMeanSquare.....	749
SDA_Magnitude.....	750
SDA_MagnitudeSquared.....	751
SDS_Magnitude.....	752
SDS_MagnitudeSquared.....	753
SDS_Phase.....	754
SDA_PhaseWrapped.....	755
SDA_PhaseUnWrapped.....	756
SDA_MagnitudeAndPhaseWrapped.....	757
SDA_MagnitudeAndPhaseUnWrapped.....	758

SDA_MagnitudeSquaredAndPhaseWrapped.....	759
SDA_MagnitudeSquaredAndPhaseUnWrapped.....	760
SDA_PhaseWrap.....	761
SDA_PhaseUnWrap.....	762
SDS_Log2.....	763
SDA_Log2.....	764
SDS_LogN.....	765
SDA_LogN.....	766
SDA_LogDistribution.....	767
SDA_Copy.....	768
SDA_CopyWithStride.....	769
SIF_CopyWithOverlap.....	770
SDA_CopyWithOverlap.....	771
SIF_CopyWithIndex.....	772
SDA_CopyWithIndex.....	773
SDA_20Log10.....	774
SDA_10Log10.....	775
SDA_LogMagnitude.....	776
SDA_LogMagnitudeAndPhaseWrapped.....	777
SDA_LogMagnitudeAndPhaseUnWrapped.....	778
SDA_Lengthen.....	779
SDA_Shorten.....	780
SIF_ReSize.....	781
SDA_ReSize.....	782
SDA_ReSizeInput.....	783
SDA_ReSizeOutput.....	784
SDA_Fill.....	785
SDA_Clear.....	786
Histogram Functions.....	787
SIF_Histogram.....	790
SDA_Histogram.....	791
SDA_HistogramCumulative.....	792
SDA_HistogramExtended.....	793
SDA_HistogramExtendedCumulative.....	794
SDA_HistogramEqualize.....	795
SDA_Quantize.....	796
SDS_Quantize.....	797
SDA_Quantize_N.....	798
SDS_Quantize_N.....	799
SDA_Abs.....	800
SDS_PeakValueToBits.....	801
SDS_BitsToPeakValue.....	802
SDS_LinearTodBm.....	803
SDA_LinearTodBm.....	804
SDS_dBmToLinear.....	805
SDA_dBmToLinear.....	806
SDS_Compare.....	807
SDA_Compare.....	808
SDS_CompareComplex.....	809
SDA_CompareComplex.....	810
SDS_Int.....	811
SDS_Frac.....	812
SDS_AbsFrac.....	813

SDA_Int.....	814
SDA_Frac.....	815
SDA_AbsFrac.....	816
SDA_SetMin.....	817
SDA_SetMax.....	818
SDA_SetRange.....	819
SDA_SetMean.....	820
DSP UTILITY FUNCTIONS (<i>dsputil2.c</i>).....	821
SDA_RealSpectralInverse.....	821
SDA_ComplexSpectralInverse.....	822
SDA_FdInterpolate.....	823
SDA_FdInterpolate2.....	824
SDS_TdPitchShift.....	825
SDA_TdPitchShift.....	826
SDS_EchoGenerate.....	827
SDA_Power.....	828
SDS_Polynomial.....	829
SDA_Polynomial.....	830
SDS_Modulo.....	831
SDA_Modulo.....	832
SDA_AgcPeak.....	833
SIF_AgcMeanAbs.....	834
SDA_AgcMeanAbs.....	835
SIF_AgcMeanSquared.....	836
SDA_AgcMeanSquared.....	837
SDA_GroupDelay.....	838
SDA_ZeroCrossingDetect.....	839
SDS_ZeroCrossingDetect.....	840
SDA_FirstZeroCrossingLocation.....	841
SDA_ZeroCrossingCount.....	842
SDA_LevelCrossingDetect.....	843
SDS_LevelCrossingDetect.....	844
SDA_FirstLevelCrossingLocation.....	845
SDA_LevelCrossingCount.....	846
SDA_ClearLocation.....	847
SDA_SetLocation.....	848
SDA_SortMinToMax.....	849
SDA_SortMaxToMin.....	850
SDA_SortMinToMax2.....	851
SDA_SortMaxToMin2.....	852
SDA_SortIndexed.....	853
SDS_CountOneBits.....	854
SDS_CountZeroBits.....	855
SDS_CountLeadingOneBits.....	856
SDS_CountLeadingZeroBits.....	857
SDA_Sign.....	858
SDA_Swap.....	859
SUF_ModuloIncrement.....	860
SUF_ModuloDecrement.....	861
SUF_IndexModuloIncrement.....	862
SUF_IndexModuloDecrement.....	863
SDA_Find.....	864

SDA_FindValue.....	865
DSP UTILITY FUNCTIONS (<i>dsputil3.c</i>).....	866
SIF_DeGlitch.....	866
SDS_DeGlitch.....	867
SDA_DeGlitch.....	868
SDA_RemoveDuplicates.....	869
SDA_FindAllDuplicates.....	870
SDA_FindFirstDuplicates.....	871
SDA_FindSortAllDuplicates.....	872
SDA_FindSortFirstDuplicates.....	873
SDA_Shuffle.....	874
SDA_InsertSample.....	875
SDA_InsertArray.....	876
SDA_ExtractSample.....	877
SDA_ExtractArray.....	878
DATA TYPE CONVERSION FUNCTIONS (<i>datatype.c</i>).....	879
SDA_SigLibDataToFix.....	879
SDA_FixToSigLibData.....	880
SDA_SigLibDataToImageData.....	881
SDA_ImageDataToSigLibData.....	882
SDA_SigLibDataToFix16.....	883
SDA_Fix16ToSigLibData.....	884
SDA_SigLibDataToFix32.....	885
SDA_Fix32ToSigLibData.....	886
SDS_SigLibDataToQFormatInteger.....	887
SDS_QFormatIntegerToSigLibData.....	888
SDA_SigLibDataToQFormatInteger.....	889
SDA_QFormatIntegerToSigLibData.....	890
CONTROL FUNCTIONS (<i>control.c</i>).....	891
SDS_Pid.....	891
SDA_Pwm.....	892
ORDER ANALYSIS FUNCTIONS (<i>order.c</i>).....	893
SDA_ExtractOrder.....	893
SDA_SumLevel.....	894
SDA_SumLevelWholeSpectrum.....	895
SIF_OrderAnalysis.....	896
SDA_OrderAnalysis.....	897
STATISTICS FUNCTIONS (<i>stats.c</i>).....	899
SDA_Sum.....	899
SDA_AbsSum.....	900
SDA_SumOfSquares.....	901
SDA_Mean.....	902
SDA_AbsMean.....	903
SDA_SubtractMean.....	904
SDA_SubtractMax.....	905
SDA_SampleSd.....	906
SDA_PopulationSd.....	907
SDA_UnbiasedVariance.....	908

SDA_Median.....	909
REGRESSION ANALYSIS FUNCTIONS (<i>regress.c</i>).....	910
SDA_LinraConstantCoeff.....	910
SDA_LinraRegressionCoeff.....	911
SDA_LinraCorrelationCoeff.....	912
SDA_LinraEstimateX.....	913
SDA_LinraEstimateY.....	914
SDA_LograConstantCoeff.....	915
SDA_LograRegressionCoeff.....	916
SDA_LograCorrelationCoeff.....	917
SDA_LograEstimateX.....	918
SDA_LograEstimateY.....	919
SDA_ExpraConstantCoeff.....	920
SDA_ExpraRegressionCoeff.....	921
SDA_ExpraCorrelationCoeff.....	922
SDA_ExpraEstimateX.....	923
SDA_ExpraEstimateY.....	924
SDA_PowraConstantCoeff.....	925
SDA_PowraRegressionCoeff.....	926
SDA_PowraCorrelationCoeff.....	927
SDA_PowraEstimateX.....	928
SDA_PowraEstimateY.....	929
SDA_Detrend.....	930
SDA_ExtractTrend.....	931
TRIGONOMETRIC FUNCTIONS (<i>trig.c</i>).....	932
SDA_Sin.....	932
SDA_Cos.....	933
SDA_Tan.....	934
SIF_FastSin.....	935
SDA_FastSin.....	936
SDS_FastSin.....	937
SIF_FastCos.....	938
SDA_FastCos.....	939
SDS_FastCos.....	940
SIF_FastSinCos.....	941
SDA_FastSinCos.....	942
SDS_FastSinCos.....	943
SIF_QuickSin.....	944
SDA_QuickSin.....	945
SDS_QuickSin.....	946
SIF_QuickCos.....	947
SDA_QuickCos.....	948
SDS_QuickCos.....	949
SIF_QuickSinCos.....	950
SDA_QuickSinCos.....	951
SDS_QuickSinCos.....	952
SIF_QuickTan.....	953
SDA_QuickTan.....	954
SDS_QuickTan.....	955
SDA_Sinc.....	956
SDS_Sinc.....	957

SIF_QuickSinc.....	958
SDA_QuickSinc.....	959
SDS_QuickSinc.....	960
COMPLEX VECTOR FUNCTIONS (<i>complex.c</i>).....	961
SCV_Polar.....	961
SCV_Rectangular.....	962
SCV_PolarToRectangular.....	963
SCV_RectangularToPolar.....	964
SCV_Sqrt.....	965
SCV_Inverse.....	966
SCV_Conjugate.....	967
SCV_Magnitude.....	968
SCV_MagnitudeSquared.....	969
SCV_Phase.....	970
SCV_Multiply.....	971
SCV_Divide.....	972
SCV_Add.....	973
SCV_Subtract.....	974
SCV_Log.....	975
SCV_Exp.....	976
SCV_Expj.....	977
SCV_Pow.....	978
SCV_VectorAddScalar.....	979
SCV_VectorSubtractScalar.....	980
SCV_VectorMultiplyScalar.....	981
SCV_VectorDivideScalar.....	982
SCV_ScalarSubtractVector.....	983
SCV_Roots.....	984
SCV_Copy.....	985
SCV_Compare.....	986
COMPLEX ARRAY FUNCTIONS (<i>complexa.c</i>).....	987
SDA_CreateComplexRect.....	987
SDA_CreateComplexPolar.....	988
SDA_ExtractComplexRect.....	989
SDA_ExtractComplexPolar.....	990
SDA_ClearComplexRect.....	991
SDA_ClearComplexPolar.....	992
SDA_FillComplexRect.....	993
SDA_FillComplexPolar.....	994
SDA_ComplexRectangularToPolar.....	995
SDA_ComplexPolarToRectangular.....	996
SDA_RectangularToPolar.....	997
SDA_PolarToRectangular.....	998
SDA_ComplexRectSqrt.....	999
SDA_ComplexRectInverse.....	1000
SDA_ComplexRectConjugate.....	1001
SDA_ComplexRectMagnitude.....	1002
SDA_ComplexRectMagnitudeSquared.....	1003
SDA_ComplexRectPhase.....	1004
SDA_ComplexRectMultiply.....	1005
SDA_ComplexRectDivide.....	1006

SDA_ComplexRectAdd.....	1007
SDA_ComplexRectSubtract.....	1008
SDA_ComplexRectLog.....	1009
SDA_ComplexRectExp.....	1010
SDA_ComplexRectExpj.....	1011
SDA_ComplexRectPow.....	1012
SDA_ComplexRectAddScalar.....	1013
SDA_ComplexRectSubtractScalar.....	1014
SDA_ComplexRectMultiplyScalar.....	1015
SDA_ComplexRectDivideScalar.....	1016
SDA_ComplexScalarSubtractRect.....	1017
SDA_ComplexRectLinearInterpolate.....	1018
SDA_ComplexPolarLinearInterpolate.....	1019
MATRIX VECTOR FUNCTIONS (<i>matrix.c</i>).....	1020
SMX_Transpose.....	1021
SMX_Multiply.....	1022
SMX_CreateIdentity.....	1023
SMX_Inverse2x2.....	1024
SMX_ComplexInverse2x2.....	1025
SMX_Inverse.....	1026
SMX_LuDecompose.....	1027
SMX_LuSolve.....	1028
SMX_Determinant.....	1029
SMX_LuDeterminant.....	1030
SMX_RotateClockwise.....	1031
SMX_RotateAntiClockwise.....	1032
SMX_Reflect.....	1033
SMX_Flip.....	1034
SMX_InsertRow.....	1035
SMX_ExtractRow.....	1036
SMX_InsertColumn.....	1037
SMX_ExtractColumn.....	1038
SMX_InsertNewRow.....	1039
SMX_DeleteOldRow.....	1040
SMX_InsertNewColumn.....	1041
SMX_DeleteOldColumn.....	1042
SMX_InsertRegion.....	1043
SMX_ExtractRegion.....	1044
SMX_InsertDiagonal.....	1045
SMX_ExtractDiagonal.....	1046
SMX_SwapRows.....	1047
SMX_SwapColumns.....	1048
SMX_Sum.....	1049
SMX_ShuffleColumns.....	1050
SMX_ShuffleRows.....	1051
SMX_ExtractCategoricalColumn.....	1052
MATRIX VECTOR MACROS.....	1053
SMX_Copy.....	1053
SMX_Add.....	1054
SMX_Subtract.....	1055
SMX_MultiplyPiecewise.....	1056

SMX_ScalarMultiply.....	1057
Machine Learning Functions.....	1058
SDA_TwoLayer2CategoryNetworkFit.....	1059
SDA_TwoLayer2CategoryNetworkPredict.....	1060
SDA_TwoLayerNCategoryNetworkFit.....	1061
SDA_TwoLayerNCategoryNetworkPredict.....	1062
SDS_ActivationReLU.....	1063
SDA_ActivationReLU.....	1064
SDS_ActivationReLUderivative.....	1065
SDA_ActivationReLUderivative.....	1066
SDS_ActivationLeakyReLU.....	1067
SDA_ActivationLeakyReLU.....	1068
SDS_ActivationLeakyReLUderivative.....	1069
SDA_ActivationLeakyReLUderivative.....	1070
SDS_ActivationLogistic.....	1071
SDA_ActivationLogistic.....	1072
SDS_ActivationLogisticDerivative.....	1073
SDA_ActivationLogisticDerivative.....	1074
SDS_ActivationTanH.....	1075
SDA_ActivationTanH.....	1076
SDS_ActivationTanHderivative.....	1077
SDA_ActivationTanHderivative.....	1078
UTILITY MACROS (<i>siglib_macros.h</i>).....	1079

DOCUMENTATION OVERVIEW

The SigLib documentation is split in to three sections, a User's Guide gives an overview of the SigLib library, whilst the Reference Manual gives a function by function description of the library and the Host Function Reference Manual. Users will probably find it beneficial to read the user's guide to get an understanding of how SigLib functions, they will then probably find that the reference manual is sufficient guidance in every day usage. The on-line nature of the documentation allows it to be used in parallel with the development tools.


Separate documentation is also supplied for the SigLib utility programs.

Documentation Conventions

The SigLib documentation uses the following conventions:

The ANSI C standard conventions have been followed, for example hexadecimal numbers are prefixed by '0x'.

Names of directories, files and functions are given in italics.

Important programming information is indicated with the symbol: 

How To Use This Manual

The functions are divided into modules, according to functionality.

The page per function section, in addition to giving a detailed description, also provide the function prototypes, describing all the function arguments. Each function description page also includes a function cross reference section, to other functions in the module.

For the sake of execution efficiency, few of the functions return error codes and none of them perform operations like array bounds checking. The onus lies with the programmer to ensure that the data passed to the functions is valid.

SigLib Data Types

SigLib uses two pseudo data types, these are **SLData_t** and **SLArrayIndex_t** the reason for using these types is to ease portability across different processors and systems. For many processors, including most floating point DSPs the actual data type is specified by a typedef in the SigLib header files.

FUNCTION DESCRIPTIONS

UTILITY FUNCTIONS (*siglib.c*)

SUF_SiglibVersion

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SUF_SiglibVersion (void) Void

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the SigLib version number.

If SigLib is using floating point data then this function will return the version number as a floating point value. If SigLib is using fixed point data then this function will return the version number as a floating point value multiplied by 100.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SL_Error_t SUF_PrintArray (const SLData_t *, Pointer to source array
 const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function prints the contents of the array to the console.

NOTES ON USE

To use this function the `#define SIGLIB_CONSOLE_IO_SUPPORTED` must be defined as a non-zero value in the file *siglib_processors.h*.

CROSS REFERENCE

SUF_PrintComplexArray, SUF_PrintFixedPointArray, SUF_PrintMatrix,
SUF_PrintPolar, SUF_PrintRectangular, SUF_PrintIIRCoefficients,
SUF_PrintCount, SUF_PrintHigher, SUF_PrintLower, SUF_PrintRectangular,
SUF_PrintPolar

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLError_t SUF_PrintFixedPointArray (const SLArrayIndex_t *, Pointer to source
array
 const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function prints the contents of the array to the console.

NOTES ON USE

To use this function the `#define SIGLIB_CONSOLE_IO_SUPPORTED` must be defined as a non-zero value in the file *siglib_processors.h*.

CROSS REFERENCE

SUF_PrintComplexArray, SUF_PrintMatrix, SUF_PrintPolar,
SUF_PrintRectangular, SUF_PrintIIRCoefficients, SUF_PrintCount,
SUF_PrintHigher, SUF_PrintLower, SUF_PrintRectangular, SUF_PrintPolar

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLError_t SUF_PrintComplexArray (const SLData_t *, Pointer to real source array
 const SLData_t *, Pointer to imaginary source array
 const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function prints the contents of the complex arrays to the console.

NOTES ON USE

To use this function the `#define SIGLIB_CONSOLE_IO_SUPPORTED` must be defined as a non-zero value in the file *siglib_processors.h*.

CROSS REFERENCE

SUF_PrintArray, SUF_PrintFixedPointArray, SUF_PrintMatrix,
SUF_PrintPolar, SUF_PrintRectangular, SUF_PrintIIRCoefficients,
SUF_PrintCount, SUF_PrintHigher, SUF_PrintLower, SUF_PrintRectangular,
SUF_PrintPolar

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SL_Error_t SUF_PrintMatrix (const SLData_t *, Pointer to source matrix
const SLArrayIndex_t, Number of rows
const SLArrayIndex_t) Number of columns

DESCRIPTION

This function prints the contents of the matrix to the console.

NOTES ON USE

To use this function the `#define SIGLIB_CONSOLE_IO_SUPPORTED` must be defined as a non-zero value in the file *siglib_processors.h*.

CROSS REFERENCE

SUF_PrintArray, SUF_PrintFixedPointArray, SUF_PrintComplexArray,
SUF_PrintPolar, SUF_PrintRectangular, SUF_PrintIIRCoefficients,
SUF_PrintCount, SUF_PrintHigher, SUF_PrintLower, SUF_PrintRectangular,
SUF_PrintPolar

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SL_Error_t SUF_PrintPolar (const SLComplexPolar_s)

DESCRIPTION

This function prints the polar value, in polar and rectangular format, to the console. The polar angle is printed in radians and degrees.

NOTES ON USE

To use this function the `#define SIGLIB_CONSOLE_IO_SUPPORTED` must be defined as a non-zero value in the file *siglib_processors.h*.

CROSS REFERENCE

SUF_PrintArray, SUF_PrintFixedPointArray, SUF_PrintComplexArray,
SUF_PrintMatrix, SUF_PrintRectangular, SUF_PrintIIRCoefficients,
SUF_PrintCount, SUF_PrintHigher, SUF_PrintLower, SUF_PrintRectangular,
SUF_PrintPolar

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SL_Error_t SUF_PrintRectangular (const SLComplexRect_s)

DESCRIPTION

This function prints the rectangular value, in rectangular and polar format, to the console. The polar angle is printed in radians and degrees.

NOTES ON USE

To use this function the `#define SIGLIB_CONSOLE_IO_SUPPORTED` must be defined as a non-zero value in the file *siglib_processors.h*.

CROSS REFERENCE

SUF_PrintArray, SUF_PrintFixedPointArray, SUF_PrintComplexArray,
SUF_PrintMatrix, SUF_PrintPolar, SUF_PrintIIRCoefficients, SUF_PrintCount,
SUF_PrintHigher, SUF_PrintLower, SUF_PrintRectangular, SUF_PrintPolar

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SL_Error_t SUF_PrintIIRCoefficients (const SLData_t *, Ptr. to filter coeffs.
 SLArrayIndex_t) Number of biquads

DESCRIPTION

This function prints the IIR filter coefficients to the console.

NOTES ON USE

To use this function the `#define SIGLIB_CONSOLE_IO_SUPPORTED` must be defined as a non-zero value in the file *siglib_processors.h*.

CROSS REFERENCE

SUF_PrintArray, SUF_PrintFixedPointArray, SUF_PrintComplexArray,
SUF_PrintMatrix, SUF_PrintPolar, SUF_PrintRectangular, SUF_PrintCount,
SUF_PrintHigher, SUF_PrintLower, SUF_PrintRectangular, SUF_PrintPolar

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SUF_PrintCount (const char *String)

DESCRIPTION

This function prints the string followed by an incrementing counter.
This function is useful for counting how many instances of an event occur.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SUF_PrintArray, SUF_PrintFixedPointArray, SUF_PrintComplexArray,
SUF_PrintMatrix, SUF_PrintPolar, SUF_PrintRectangular,
SUF_PrintIIRCoefficients, SUF_PrintHigher, SUF_PrintLower,
SUF_PrintRectangular, SUF_PrintPolar

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SUF_PrintHigher (const SLData_t,	Source value
const SLData_t,	Threshold
const char *)	String

DESCRIPTION

If the source is larger than the threshold then print the string.
This function is useful for detecting data anomalies.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SUF_PrintArray, SUF_PrintFixedPointArray, SUF_PrintComplexArray,
SUF_PrintMatrix, SUF_PrintPolar, SUF_PrintRectangular,
SUF_PrintIIRCoefficients, SUF_PrintLower, SUF_PrintRectangular,
SUF_PrintPolar

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SUF_PrintLower (const SLData_t,	Source value
const SLData_t,	Threshold
const char *)	String

DESCRIPTION

If the source is less than the threshold then print the string.
This function is useful for detecting data anomalies.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SUF_PrintArray, SUF_PrintFixedPointArray, SUF_PrintComplexArray,
SUF_PrintMatrix, SUF_PrintPolar, SUF_PrintRectangular,
SUF_PrintIIRCoefficients, SUF_PrintHigher, SUF_PrintRectangular,
SUF_PrintPolar

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SL_Error_t SUF_ClearDebugprintf (void) Void

DESCRIPTION

This function deletes the contents of the *debug.log* file.

NOTES ON USE

The Debugprintf functions are the only SigLib functions that includes any file I/O functionality. If you wish to use this function on an embedded DSP then you should ensure that your debug system supports file I/O before building the library. If your compiler or target system does not support file I/O then you will need to remove this function from the library. This can be achieved by setting the constant

SIGLIB_FILE_IO_SUPPORTED to '0' in the appropriate section of the *siglib_processors.h* file.

This function returns SIGLIB_FILE_ERROR if the debug file can not be opened and SIGLIB_NO_ERROR if the file open succeeds.

CROSS REFERENCE

SUF_Debugprintf, SUF_Debugvprintf, SUF_DebugPrintArray,
SUF_DebugPrintFixedPointArray, SUF_DebugPrintMatrix, SUF_DebugPrintPolar,
SUF_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF_DebugPrintIIRCoefficients,
SUF_DebugPrintCount, SUF_DebugPrintHigher, SUF_DebugPrintLower, SUF_Log,
SUF_PrintRectangular, SUF_PrintPolar, SUF_DebugPrintRectangular,
SUF_DebugPrintPolar

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SL_Error_t SUF_Debugprintf (const char *ArgumentType, ...) Variable argument list

DESCRIPTION

This function appends debug information to the file *debug.log*. The arguments are entirely consistent with the stdio `fprintf` function.

NOTES ON USE

The parameter list is treated in the same way as the stdio `printf` function.

The Debugprintf functions are the only SigLib functions that includes any file I/O functionality. If you wish to use this function on an embedded DSP then you should ensure that your debug system supports file I/O before building the library. If your compiler or target system does not support file I/O then you will need to remove this function from the library. This can be achieved by setting the constant `SIGLIB_FILE_IO_SUPPORTED` to '0' in the appropriate section of the *siglib_processors.h* file.

This function returns `SIGLIB_FILE_ERROR` if the debug file can not be opened and `SIGLIB_NO_ERROR` if the file open succeeds.

CROSS REFERENCE

SUF_ClearDebugprintf , SUF_Debugvfprintf, SUF_DebugPrintArray, SUF_DebugPrintFixedPointArray, SUF_DebugPrintMatrix, SUF_DebugPrintPolar, SUF_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF_DebugPrintIIRCoefficients, SUF_DebugPrintCount, SUF_DebugPrintHigher, SUF_DebugPrintLower, SUF_Log, SUF_PrintRectangular, SUF_PrintPolar, SUF_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF_DebugPrintPolar

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLError_t SUF_Debugvfprintf (char *format, String format
 va_list) Pointer to a list of arguments

DESCRIPTION

This function appends debug information to the file *debug.log*. This function operates in the same way as SUF_Debugfprintf but accepts a pointer to a list of arguments rather than an argument list.

NOTES ON USE

The format parameter is the same as for the stdio printf function.

The Debugfprintf functions are the only SigLib functions that includes any file I/O functionality. If you wish to use this function on an embedded DSP then you should ensure that your debug system supports file I/O before building the library. If your compiler or target system does not support file I/O then you will need to remove this function from the library. This can be achieved by setting the constant SIGLIB_FILE_IO_SUPPORTED to '0' in the appropriate section of the *siglib_processors.h* file.

This function returns SIGLIB_FILE_ERROR if the debug file can not be opened and SIGLIB_NO_ERROR if the file open succeeds.

CROSS REFERENCE

SUF_ClearDebugfprintf , SUF_Debugfprintf, SUF_DebugPrintArray,
SUF_DebugPrintMatrix, SUF_DebugPrintPolar, SUF_DebugPrintRectangular,
SUF_DebugPrintIIRCoefficients, SUF_DebugPrintCount, SUF_DebugPrintHigher,
SUF_DebugPrintLower, SUF_Log, SUF_PrintRectangular, SUF_PrintPolar,
SUF_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF_DebugPrintPolar

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLError_t SUF_DebugPrintArray (const SLData_t *, Pointer to source array
 const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function prints the contents of the array to the debug file *debug.log*.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SUF_ClearDebugprintf , SUF_Debugprintf, SUF_Debugvprintf,
SUF_DebugPrintFixedPointArray, SUF_DebugPrintComplexArray,
SUF_DebugPrintMatrix, SUF_DebugPrintPolar, SUF_DebugPrintRectangular,
SUF_DebugPrintIIRCoefficients, SUF_DebugPrintCount, SUF_DebugPrintHigher,
SUF_DebugPrintLower, SUF_Log, SUF_PrintRectangular, SUF_PrintPolar,
SUF_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF_DebugPrintPolar

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SL_Error_t SUF_DebugPrintFixedPointArray (const SLArrayIndex_t *, Pointer to
source array
 const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function prints the contents of the array to the debug file *debug.log*.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SUF_ClearDebugprintf, SUF_Debugprintf, SUF_Debugvprintf,
SUF_DebugPrintArray, SUF_DebugPrintComplexArray, SUF_DebugPrintMatrix,
SUF_DebugPrintPolar, SUF_DebugPrintRectangular,
SUF_DebugPrintIIRCoefficients, SUF_DebugPrintCount, SUF_DebugPrintHigher,
SUF_DebugPrintLower, SUF_Log, SUF_PrintRectangular, SUF_PrintPolar,
SUF_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF_DebugPrintPolar

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SL_Error_t SUF_DebugPrintMatrix (const SLData_t *, Pointer to source matrix
const SLArrayIndex_t, Number of rows
const SLArrayIndex_t) Number of columns

DESCRIPTION

This function prints the contents of the matrix to the debug file *debug.log*.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SUF_ClearDebugprintf , SUF_Debugprintf, SUF_Debugvprintf,
SUF_DebugPrintArray, SUF_DebugPrintComplexArray, SUF_DebugPrintPolar,
SUF_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF_DebugPrintIIRCoefficients,
SUF_DebugPrintCount, SUF_DebugPrintHigher, SUF_DebugPrintLower, SUF_Log,
SUF_PrintRectangular, SUF_PrintPolar, SUF_DebugPrintRectangular,
SUF_DebugPrintPolar

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SL_Error_t SUF_DebugPrintPolar (const SLComplexPolar_s)

DESCRIPTION

This function prints the polar value, in polar and rectangular format, to the debug file *debug.log*. The polar angle is printed in radians and degrees.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SUF_ClearDebugprintf, SUF_Debugprintf, SUF_Debugvprintf,
SUF_DebugPrintArray, SUF_DebugPrintComplexArray,
SUF_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF_DebugPrintCount, SUF_DebugPrintHigher,
SUF_DebugPrintLower, SUF_Log, SUF_PrintRectangular, SUF_PrintPolar,
SUF_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF_DebugPrintPolar

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SL_Error_t SUF_DebugPrintRectangular (const SLComplexRect_s)

DESCRIPTION

This function prints the rectangular value, in rectangular and polar format, to the debug file *debug.log*. The polar angle is printed in radians and degrees.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SUF_ClearDebugprintf, SUF_Debugprintf, SUF_Debugvprintf,
SUF_DebugPrintArray, SUF_DebugPrintComplexArray, SUF_DebugPrintPolar,
SUF_DebugPrintCount, SUF_DebugPrintHigher, SUF_DebugPrintLower, SUF_Log,
SUF_PrintRectangular, SUF_PrintPolar, SUF_DebugPrintRectangular,
SUF_DebugPrintPolar

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLError_t SUF_DebugPrintIIRCoefficients (const SLData_t *, Ptr. to filter coeffs.
SLArrayIndex_t) Number of biquads

DESCRIPTION

This function prints the IIR filter coefficients to the debug file *debug.log*.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SUF_ClearDebugprintf , SUF_Debugprintf, SUF_Debugvprintf,
SUF_DebugPrintArray, SUF_DebugPrintComplexArray, SUF_DebugPrintPolar,
SUF_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF_DebugPrintCount, SUF_DebugPrintHigher,
SUF_DebugPrintLower, SUF_Log, SUF_PrintRectangular, SUF_PrintPolar,
SUF_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF_DebugPrintPolar

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLError_t SUF_DebugPrintCount (const char *String)

DESCRIPTION

This function prints the string followed by an incrementing counter to the debug file *debug.log*.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SUF_ClearDebugprintf , SUF_Debugprintf, SUF_Debugvprintf,
SUF_DebugPrintArray, SUF_DebugPrintComplexArray, SUF_DebugPrintPolar,
SUF_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF_DebugPrintIIRCoefficients,
SUF_DebugPrintHigher, SUF_DebugPrintLower, SUF_Log, SUF_PrintRectangular,
SUF_PrintPolar, SUF_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF_DebugPrintPolar

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SUF_DebugPrintHigher (const SLData_t,      Source value
                           const SLData_t,      Threshold
                           const char *)        String)
```

DESCRIPTION

If the source is larger than the threshold then print the string.
This function is useful for detecting data anomalies.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SUF_ClearDebugprintf , SUF_Debugprintf, SUF_Debugvprintf,
SUF_DebugPrintArray, SUF_DebugPrintComplexArray, SUF_DebugPrintPolar,
SUF_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF_DebugPrintIIRCoefficients,
SUF_DebugPrintCount, SUF_DebugPrintLower, SUF_PrintRectangular,
SUF_PrintPolar, SUF_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF_DebugPrintPolar

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SUF_DebugPrintLower (const SLData_t,      Source value
                        const SLData_t,      Threshold
                        const char *)        String
```

DESCRIPTION

If the source is less than the threshold then print the string.
This function is useful for detecting data anomalies.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SUF_ClearDebugprintf , SUF_Debugprintf, SUF_Debugvprintf,
SUF_DebugPrintArray, SUF_DebugPrintComplexArray, SUF_DebugPrintPolar,
SUF_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF_DebugPrintIIRCoefficients,
SUF_DebugPrintCount, SUF_DebugPrintHigher, SUF_PrintRectangular,
SUF_PrintPolar, SUF_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF_DebugPrintPolar

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SL_Error_t SUF_DebugPrintInfo (void)

DESCRIPTION

This function prints the SigLib version information to the debug file *debug.log*.

NOTES ON USE

This function is implemented as a macro and calls the function SUF_Debugfprintf.

CROSS REFERENCE

SUF_ClearDebugfprintf, SUF_Debugfprintf, SUF_Debugvfprintf,
SUF_DebugPrintArray, SUF_DebugPrintComplexArray, SUF_DebugPrintPolar,
SUF_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF_Log, SUF_DebugPrintLine,
SUF_DebugPrintTime, SUF_PrintRectangular, SUF_PrintPolar,
SUF_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF_DebugPrintPolar

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SL_Error_t SUF_DebugPrintLine (void)

DESCRIPTION

This function prints the source file name and line number to the debug file *debug.log*.

NOTES ON USE

This function is implemented as a macro and calls the function SUF_Debugprintf.

CROSS REFERENCE

SUF_ClearDebugprintf, SUF_Debugprintf, SUF_Debugvprintf,
SUF_DebugPrintArray, SUF_DebugPrintComplexArray, SUF_DebugPrintPolar,
SUF_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF_Log, SUF_DebugPrintInfo,
SUF_DebugPrintTime, SUF_PrintRectangular, SUF_PrintPolar,
SUF_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF_DebugPrintPolar

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SL_Error_t SUF_DebugPrintTime (void)

DESCRIPTION

This function prints the current time to the debug file *debug.log*.

NOTES ON USE

This function is implemented as a macro and calls the function SUF_Debugfprintf.

CROSS REFERENCE

SUF_ClearDebugfprintf, SUF_Debugfprintf, SUF_Debugvfprintf,
SUF_DebugPrintArray, SUF_DebugPrintComplexArray, SUF_DebugPrintPolar,
SUF_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF_Log, SUF_DebugPrintInfo,
SUF_PrintRectangular, SUF_PrintPolar, SUF_DebugPrintRectangular,
SUF_DebugPrintPolar

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SUF_PrintRectangular(V)

DESCRIPTION

This function prints the rectangular vector to the console.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SUF_ClearDebugprintf , SUF_Debugprintf, SUF_Debugvprintf,
SUF_DebugPrintArray, SUF_DebugPrintComplexArray, SUF_DebugPrintPolar,
SUF_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF_Log, SUF_DebugPrintInfo,
SUF_DebugPrintTime, SUF_PrintPolar, SUF_DebugPrintRectangular,
SUF_DebugPrintPolar

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SUF_PrintPolar(V)

DESCRIPTION

This function prints the polar vector to the console.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SUF_ClearDebugprintf , SUF_Debugprintf, SUF_Debugvprintf,
SUF_DebugPrintArray, SUF_DebugPrintComplexArray, SUF_DebugPrintPolar,
SUF_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF_Log, SUF_DebugPrintInfo,
SUF_DebugPrintTime, SUF_PrintRectangular, SUF_DebugPrintRectangular,
SUF_DebugPrintPolar

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SUF_DebugPrintRectangular(V)

DESCRIPTION

This function prints the rectangular vector to the file *debug.log*.

NOTES ON USE

This function is implemented as a macro and calls the function SUF_Debugprintf.

CROSS REFERENCE

SUF_ClearDebugprintf, SUF_Debugprintf, SUF_Debugvprintf,
SUF_DebugPrintArray, SUF_DebugPrintComplexArray, SUF_DebugPrintPolar,
SUF_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF_Log, SUF_DebugPrintInfo,
SUF_DebugPrintTime, SUF_PrintRectangular, SUF_PrintPolar,
SUF_DebugPrintPolar

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SUF_DebugPrintPolar(V)

DESCRIPTION

This function prints the polar vector to the file *debug.log*.

NOTES ON USE

This function is implemented as a macro and calls the function SUF_Debugfprintf.

CROSS REFERENCE

SUF_ClearDebugfprintf , SUF_Debugfprintf, SUF_Debugvfprintf,
SUF_DebugPrintArray, SUF_DebugPrintComplexArray, SUF_DebugPrintPolar,
SUF_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF_Log, SUF_DebugPrintInfo,
SUF_DebugPrintTime, SUF_PrintRectangular, SUF_PrintPolar,
SUF_DebugPrintRectangular

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

`void SUF_MSDelay (const SLFixData_t Delay)`

DESCRIPTION

This function delays the processing for the given number of ms.

NOTES ON USE

This function uses the ANSI C “time.h” functions. If your compiler does not provide this functionality then this function will not be compiled into the library.

The accuracy of the delay that this function generates is entirely dependent on the accuracy of the clock functionality provided by the underlying compiler / operating system.

CROSS REFERENCE

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
const char * SUF_StrError (const SLError_t ErrNo)
```

DESCRIPTION

This function delays returns a pointer to the error message associated with the error code provided to the function.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLError_t SUF_DebugPrintMatrix (const SLData_t *, Pointer to source matrix
const SLArrayIndex_t, Number of rows
const SLArrayIndex_t) Number of columns

DESCRIPTION

This function prints the contents of the matrix to the debug file *debug.log*.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SUF_ClearDebugprintf , SUF_Debugprintf, SUF_Debugvprintf,
SUF_DebugPrintArray, SUF_DebugPrintComplexArray, SUF_DebugPrintPolar,
SUF_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF_DebugPrintIIRCoefficients,
SUF_DebugPrintCount, SUF_DebugPrintHigher, SUF_DebugPrintLower, SUF_Log,
SUF_PrintRectangular, SUF_PrintPolar, SUF_DebugPrintRectangular,
SUF_DebugPrintPolar

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SL_Error_t SUF_DebugPrintPolar (const SLComplexPolar_s)

DESCRIPTION

This function prints the polar value, in polar and rectangular format, to the debug file *debug.log*. The polar angle is printed in radians and degrees.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SUF_ClearDebugprintf, SUF_Debugprintf, SUF_Debugvprintf,
SUF_DebugPrintArray, SUF_DebugPrintComplexArray,
SUF_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF_DebugPrintCount, SUF_DebugPrintHigher,
SUF_DebugPrintLower, SUF_Log, SUF_PrintRectangular, SUF_PrintPolar,
SUF_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF_DebugPrintPolar

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SL_Error_t SUF_DebugPrintRectangular (const SLComplexRect_s)

DESCRIPTION

This function prints the rectangular value, in rectangular and polar format, to the debug file *debug.log*. The polar angle is printed in radians and degrees.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SUF_ClearDebugprintf, SUF_Debugprintf, SUF_Debugvprintf,
SUF_DebugPrintArray, SUF_DebugPrintComplexArray, SUF_DebugPrintPolar,
SUF_DebugPrintCount, SUF_DebugPrintHigher, SUF_DebugPrintLower, SUF_Log,
SUF_PrintRectangular, SUF_PrintPolar, SUF_DebugPrintRectangular,
SUF_DebugPrintPolar

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SL_Error_t SUF_DebugPrintCount (const char *String)

DESCRIPTION

This function prints the string followed by an incrementing counter to the debug file *debug.log*.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SUF_ClearDebugprintf, SUF_Debugprintf, SUF_Debugvprintf,
SUF_DebugPrintArray, SUF_DebugPrintComplexArray, SUF_DebugPrintPolar,
SUF_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF_DebugPrintIIRCoefficients,
SUF_DebugPrintHigher, SUF_DebugPrintLower, SUF_Log, SUF_PrintRectangular,
SUF_PrintPolar, SUF_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF_DebugPrintPolar

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SUF_DebugPrintHigher (const SLData_t,      Source value
                           const SLData_t,      Threshold
                           const char *)        String)
```

DESCRIPTION

If the source is larger than the threshold then print the string.
This function is useful for detecting data anomalies.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SUF_ClearDebugprintf , SUF_Debugprintf, SUF_Debugvprintf,
SUF_DebugPrintArray, SUF_DebugPrintComplexArray, SUF_DebugPrintPolar,
SUF_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF_DebugPrintIIRCoefficients,
SUF_DebugPrintCount, SUF_DebugPrintLower, SUF_PrintRectangular,
SUF_PrintPolar, SUF_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF_DebugPrintPolar

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SUF_DebugPrintLower (const SLData_t,      Source value
                        const SLData_t,      Threshold
                        const char *)        String
```

DESCRIPTION

If the source is less than the threshold then print the string.
This function is useful for detecting data anomalies.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SUF_ClearDebugprintf , SUF_Debugprintf, SUF_Debugvprintf,
SUF_DebugPrintArray, SUF_DebugPrintComplexArray, SUF_DebugPrintPolar,
SUF_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF_DebugPrintIIRCoefficients,
SUF_DebugPrintCount, SUF_DebugPrintHigher, SUF_PrintRectangular,
SUF_PrintPolar, SUF_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF_DebugPrintPolar

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SL_Error_t SUF_DebugPrintInfo (void)

DESCRIPTION

This function prints the SigLib version information to the debug file *debug.log*.

NOTES ON USE

This function is implemented as a macro and calls the function SUF_Debugfprintf.

CROSS REFERENCE

SUF_ClearDebugfprintf, SUF_Debugfprintf, SUF_Debugvfprintf,
SUF_DebugPrintArray, SUF_DebugPrintComplexArray, SUF_DebugPrintPolar,
SUF_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF_Log, SUF_DebugPrintLine,
SUF_DebugPrintTime, SUF_PrintRectangular, SUF_PrintPolar,
SUF_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF_DebugPrintPolar

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SL_Error_t SUF_DebugPrintLine (void)

DESCRIPTION

This function prints the source file name and line number to the debug file *debug.log*.

NOTES ON USE

This function is implemented as a macro and calls the function SUF_Debugprintf.

CROSS REFERENCE

SUF_ClearDebugprintf, SUF_Debugprintf, SUF_Debugvprintf,
SUF_DebugPrintArray, SUF_DebugPrintComplexArray, SUF_DebugPrintPolar,
SUF_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF_Log, SUF_DebugPrintInfo,
SUF_DebugPrintTime, SUF_PrintRectangular, SUF_PrintPolar,
SUF_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF_DebugPrintPolar

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SL_Error_t SUF_DebugPrintTime (void)

DESCRIPTION

This function prints the current time to the debug file *debug.log*.

NOTES ON USE

This function is implemented as a macro and calls the function SUF_Debugfprintf.

CROSS REFERENCE

SUF_ClearDebugfprintf, SUF_Debugfprintf, SUF_Debugvfprintf,
SUF_DebugPrintArray, SUF_DebugPrintComplexArray, SUF_DebugPrintPolar,
SUF_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF_Log, SUF_DebugPrintInfo,
SUF_PrintRectangular, SUF_PrintPolar, SUF_DebugPrintRectangular,
SUF_DebugPrintPolar

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SUF_PrintRectangular(V)

DESCRIPTION

This function prints the rectangular vector to the console.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SUF_ClearDebugprintf , SUF_Debugprintf, SUF_Debugvprintf,
SUF_DebugPrintArray, SUF_DebugPrintComplexArray, SUF_DebugPrintPolar,
SUF_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF_Log, SUF_DebugPrintInfo,
SUF_DebugPrintTime, SUF_PrintPolar, SUF_DebugPrintRectangular,
SUF_DebugPrintPolar

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SUF_PrintPolar(V)

DESCRIPTION

This function prints the polar vector to the console.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SUF_ClearDebugprintf , SUF_Debugprintf, SUF_Debugvprintf,
SUF_DebugPrintArray, SUF_DebugPrintComplexArray, SUF_DebugPrintPolar,
SUF_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF_Log, SUF_DebugPrintInfo,
SUF_DebugPrintTime, SUF_PrintRectangular, SUF_DebugPrintRectangular,
SUF_DebugPrintPolar

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SUF_DebugPrintRectangular(V)

DESCRIPTION

This function prints the rectangular vector to the file *debug.log*.

NOTES ON USE

This function is implemented as a macro and calls the function SUF_Debugprintf.

CROSS REFERENCE

SUF_ClearDebugprintf, SUF_Debugprintf, SUF_Debugvprintf,
SUF_DebugPrintArray, SUF_DebugPrintComplexArray, SUF_DebugPrintPolar,
SUF_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF_Log, SUF_DebugPrintInfo,
SUF_DebugPrintTime, SUF_PrintRectangular, SUF_PrintPolar,
SUF_DebugPrintPolar

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SUF_DebugPrintPolar(V)

DESCRIPTION

This function prints the polar vector to the file *debug.log*.

NOTES ON USE

This function is implemented as a macro and calls the function SUF_Debugprintf.

CROSS REFERENCE

SUF_ClearDebugprintf, SUF_Debugprintf, SUF_Debugvprintf,
SUF_DebugPrintArray, SUF_DebugPrintComplexArray, SUF_DebugPrintPolar,
SUF_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF_Log, SUF_DebugPrintInfo,
SUF_DebugPrintTime, SUF_PrintRectangular, SUF_PrintPolar,
SUF_DebugPrintRectangular

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SUF_MSDelay (const SLFixData_t Delay)

DESCRIPTION

This function delays the processing for the given number of ms.

NOTES ON USE

This function uses the ANSI C “time.h” functions. If your compiler does not provide this functionality then this function will not be compiled into the library.

The accuracy of the delay that this function generates is entirely dependent on the accuracy of the clock functionality provided by the underlying compiler / operating system.

CROSS REFERENCE

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
const char * SUF_StrError (const SLError_t ErrNo)
```

DESCRIPTION

This function delays returns a pointer to the error message associated with the error code provided to the function.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

File Input/Output Functions (*file_io.c*)

These functions are intended to be used on systems that support file I/O.

SigLib includes a range of functions for storing data, in floating point format, to a file. The functions treat the data in blocks and there are functions for reading and writing the data. The file read functions will zero pad any buffers if there is not sufficient data in the remainder of the file to fill the buffer.

Data File Formats

The library supports single channel file I/O in the following formats :

File Extension	Description
.bin	Contiguous 16 bit binary data
.csv	Comma Separated Variable format for importing into a spreadsheet
.dat	Two column format, with header. Column 1 : sample timestamp Column 2 : data sample This format is compatible with gnuplot
.sig	A single column of floating point numbers that represent the data sequence
.wav	16 bit multi-channel .wav file
.xmt	Xmt file format is often used by development environments for storing log data.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLArrayIndex_t SUF_BinReadData (SLData_t *,	Data array pointer
FILE *,	File pointer
const char,	Endian mode
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function reads a block of data from a binary data file.

NOTES ON USE

This function operates in a stream oriented mode and will read successive blocks of data from the file until the end of the file is reached.

This function will zero pad any buffers if there is not sufficient data in the remainder of the file to fill the buffer.

The file must be opened prior to using this function.

The function returns the number of samples read from the file.

The endian mode parameter is either 'l' for little or 'b' for big endian.

CROSS REFERENCE

SUF_BinWriteData, SUF_BinReadFile, SUF_BinWriteFile,
 SUF_CsvReadData, SUF_CsvWriteData, SUF_CsvReadFile, SUF_CsvWriteFile,
 SUF_CsvReadMatrix, SUF_DatReadData, SUF_DatWriteData,
 SUF_DatReadHeader, SUF_DatWriteHeader, SUF_SigReadData,
 SUF_SigWriteData, SUF_SigReadFile, SUF_SigWriteFile, SUF_XmtReadData,
 SUF_WavReadData, SUF_WavWriteData, SUF_WavReadWord, SUF_WavReadInt,
 SUF_WavWriteWord, SUF_WavWriteInt, SUF_WavReadHeader,
 SUF_WavWriteHeader, SUF_WavDisplayInfo, SUF_WavSetInfo,
 SUF_WavFileLength, SUF_WavReadFile, SUF_WavWriteFile,
 SUF_WavWriteFileScaled

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLArrayIndex_t	SUF_BinWriteData (const SLData_t *,	Data array pointer
FILE *,		File pointer
const char,		Endian mode
const SLArrayIndex_t)		Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function writes a block of data to a binary data file.

NOTES ON USE

This function operates in a stream oriented mode and will append successive blocks of to the end of the file.

The file must be opened prior to using this function.

The function returns the number of samples written to the file.

The endian mode parameter is either 'l' for little or 'b' for big endian.

CROSS REFERENCE

SUF_BinReadData, SUF_BinReadFile, SUF_BinWriteFile,
SUF_CsvReadData, SUF_CsvWriteData, SUF_CsvReadFile, SUF_CsvWriteFile,
SUF_CsvReadMatrix, SUF_DatReadData, SUF_DatWriteData,
SUF_DatReadHeader, SUF_DatWriteHeader, SUF_SigReadData,
SUF_SigWriteData, SUF_SigReadFile, SUF_SigWriteFile, SUF_XmtReadData,
SUF_WavReadData, SUF_WavWriteData, SUF_WavReadWord, SUF_WavReadInt,
SUF_WavWriteWord, SUF_WavWriteInt, SUF_WavReadHeader,
SUF_WavWriteHeader, SUF_WavDisplayInfo, SUF_WavSetInfo,
SUF_WavFileLength, SUF_WavReadFile, SUF_WavWriteFile,
SUF_WavWriteFileScaled

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLArrayIndex_t	SUF_BinReadFile (SLData_t *,	Data array pointer
const char *		File name
const char,		Endian mode
const SLArrayIndex_t)		Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function reads an entire file of data from a binary data file.

NOTES ON USE

This function will zero pad any buffers if there is not sufficient data in the remainder of the file to fill the buffer.

The function returns the number of samples read from the file.

The endian mode parameter is either 'l' for little or 'b' for big endian.

CROSS REFERENCE

SUF_BinReadData, SUF_BinWriteData, SUF_BinWriteFile,
SUF_CsvWriteData, SUF_CsvReadFile, SUF_CsvWriteFile, SUF_CsvReadMatrix,
SUF_DatReadData, SUF_DatWriteData, SUF_DatReadHeader,
SUF_DatWriteHeader, SUF_SigReadData, SUF_SigWriteData, SUF_SigReadFile,
SUF_SigWriteFile, SUF_XmtReadData, SUF_WavReadData, SUF_WavWriteData,
SUF_WavReadWord, SUF_WavReadInt, SUF_WavWriteWord, SUF_WavWriteInt,
SUF_WavReadHeader, SUF_WavWriteHeader, SUF_WavDisplayInfo,
SUF_WavSetInfo, SUF_WavFileLength, SUF_WavReadFile, SUF_WavWriteFile,
SUF_WavWriteFileScaled

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLArrayIndex_t	SUF_BinWriteFile (const SLData_t *,	Data array pointer
const char *,	File name	
const char,	Endian mode	
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array length	

DESCRIPTION

This function writes an entire array of data to a binary data file.

NOTES ON USE

The function returns the number of samples written to the file.

The endian mode parameter is either 'l' for little or 'b' for big endian.

CROSS REFERENCE

SUF_BinReadData, SUF_BinWriteData, SUF_BinReadFile,
SUF_CsvReadData, SUF_CsvReadFile, SUF_CsvWriteFile, SUF_CsvReadMatrix,
SUF_DatReadData, SUF_DatWriteData, SUF_DatReadHeader,
SUF_DatWriteHeader, SUF_SigReadData, SUF_SigWriteData, SUF_SigReadFile,
SUF_SigWriteFile, SUF_XmtReadData, SUF_WavReadData, SUF_WavWriteData,
SUF_WavReadWord, SUF_WavReadInt, SUF_WavWriteWord, SUF_WavWriteInt,
SUF_WavReadHeader, SUF_WavWriteHeader, SUF_WavDisplayInfo,
SUF_WavSetInfo, SUF_WavFileLength, SUF_WavReadFile, SUF_WavWriteFile,
SUF_WavWriteFileScaled

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLArrayIndex_t SUF_CsvReadData (SLData_t *,	Data array pointer
FILE *,	File pointer
const SLData_t,	Sample rate
const SLData_t,	Number of columns (1 or 2)
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function reads a block of data from a csv data file.

NOTES ON USE

This function operates in a stream oriented mode and will read successive blocks of data from the file until the end of the file is reached.

This function will zero pad any buffers if there is not sufficient data in the remainder of the file to fill the buffer.

The file must be opened prior to using this function.

The function returns the number of samples read from the file.

This function supports one or two column format. One column format stores the array samples in a single column. In two column format the Data is stored in time, value pairs. Column 1 is time and column 2 is value.

CROSS REFERENCE

SUF_BinReadData, SUF_BinWriteData, SUF_BinReadFile,
 SUF_BinWriteFile, SUF_CsvWriteData, SUF_CsvReadFile, SUF_CsvWriteFile,
 SUF_CsvReadMatrix, SUF_DatReadData, SUF_DatWriteData,
 SUF_DatReadHeader, SUF_DatWriteHeader, SUF_SigReadData,
 SUF_SigWriteData, SUF_SigReadFile, SUF_SigWriteFile, SUF_XmtReadData,
 SUF_WavReadData, SUF_WavWriteData, SUF_WavReadWord, SUF_WavReadInt,
 SUF_WavWriteWord, SUF_WavWriteInt, SUF_WavReadHeader,
 SUF_WavWriteHeader, SUF_WavDisplayInfo, SUF_WavSetInfo,
 SUF_WavFileLength, SUF_WavReadFile, SUF_WavWriteFile,
 SUF_WavWriteFileScaled

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLArrayIndex_t SUF_CsvWriteData (const SLData_t *,    Data array pointer
                                FILE *,              File pointer
                                const SLData_t,       Sample rate
                                const SLArrayIndex_t, Sample index
                                const SLData_t,       Number of columns (1 or 2)
                                const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function writes a block of data to a csv data file.

NOTES ON USE

This function operates in a stream oriented mode and will append successive blocks of to the end of the file.

The file must be opened prior to using this function.

The function returns the number of samples written to the file.

This function supports one or two column format. One column format stores the array samples in a single column. In two column format the Data is stored in time, value pairs. Column 1 is time and column 2 is value.

The Sample index is used as an offset for the incrementing time column.

CROSS REFERENCE

SUF_BinReadData, SUF_BinWriteData, SUF_BinReadFile,
 SUF_BinWriteFile, SUF_CsvReadData, SUF_CsvReadFile, SUF_CsvWriteFile,
 SUF_CsvReadMatrix, SUF_DatReadData, SUF_DatWriteData,
 SUF_DatReadHeader, SUF_DatWriteHeader, SUF_SigReadData,
 SUF_SigWriteData, SUF_SigReadFile, SUF_SigWriteFile, SUF_XmtReadData,
 SUF_WavReadData, SUF_WavWriteData, SUF_WavReadWord, SUF_WavReadInt,
 SUF_WavWriteWord, SUF_WavWriteInt, SUF_WavReadHeader,
 SUF_WavWriteHeader, SUF_WavDisplayInfo, SUF_WavSetInfo,
 SUF_WavFileLength, SUF_WavReadFile, SUF_WavWriteFile,
 SUF_WavWriteFileScaled

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLArrayIndex_t	SUF_CsvReadFile	(SLData_t *,	Data array pointer
const char *			File name
const SLData_t,			Sample rate
const SLData_t,			Number of columns (1 or 2)
const SLArrayIndex_t)			Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function reads an entire file of data from a csv data file.

NOTES ON USE

This function will zero pad any buffers if there is not sufficient data in the remainder of the file to fill the buffer.

The function returns the number of samples read from the file.

This function supports one or two column format. One column format stores the array samples in a single column. In two column format the Data is stored in time, value pairs. Column 1 is time and column 2 is value.

CROSS REFERENCE

SUF_BinReadData, SUF_BinWriteData, SUF_BinReadFile,
SUF_BinWriteFile, SUF_CsvWriteData, SUF_CsvWriteFile, SUF_CsvReadMatrix,
SUF_DatReadData, SUF_DatWriteData, SUF_DatReadHeader,
SUF_DatWriteHeader, SUF_SigReadData, SUF_SigWriteData, SUF_SigReadFile,
SUF_SigWriteFile, SUF_XmtReadData, SUF_WavReadData, SUF_WavWriteData,
SUF_WavReadWord, SUF_WavReadInt, SUF_WavWriteWord, SUF_WavWriteInt,
SUF_WavReadHeader, SUF_WavWriteHeader, SUF_WavDisplayInfo,
SUF_WavSetInfo, SUF_WavFileLength, SUF_WavReadFile, SUF_WavWriteFile,
SUF_WavWriteFileScaled

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLArrayIndex_t	SUF_CsvWriteFile (const SLData_t *,	Data array pointer
const char *,	File name	
const SLData_t,	Sample rate	
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Sample index	
const SLData_t,	Number of columns (1 or 2)	
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array length	

DESCRIPTION

This function writes an entire array of data to a csv data file.

NOTES ON USE

The function returns the number of samples written to the file.

This function supports one or two column format. One column format stores the array samples in a single column. In two column format the Data is stored in time, value pairs. Column 1 is time and column 2 is value.

The Sample index is used as an offset for the incrementing time column.

CROSS REFERENCE

SUF_BinReadData, SUF_BinWriteData, SUF_BinReadFile,
 SUF_BinWriteFile, SUF_CsvReadData, SUF_CsvReadFile, SUF_CsvReadMatrix,
 SUF_DatReadData, SUF_DatWriteData, SUF_DatReadHeader,
 SUF_DatWriteHeader, SUF_SigReadData, SUF_SigWriteData, SUF_SigReadFile,
 SUF_SigWriteFile, SUF_XmtReadData, SUF_WavReadData, SUF_WavWriteData,
 SUF_WavReadWord, SUF_WavReadInt, SUF_WavWriteWord, SUF_WavWriteInt,
 SUF_WavReadHeader, SUF_WavWriteHeader, SUF_WavDisplayInfo,
 SUF_WavSetInfo, SUF_WavFileLength, SUF_WavReadFile, SUF_WavWriteFile,
 SUF_WavWriteFileScaled

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLArrayIndex_t SUF_CsvReadMatrix (SLData_t **,      Data array pointer
                                   const char *,      File name
                                   const enum SLFileReadFirstRowFlag_t, First row flag
                                   SLArrayIndex_t *,  Pointer to the number of rows read
                                   SLArrayIndex_t *)  Pointer to the number of columns read
```

DESCRIPTION

This function reads a matrix from a .csv file, with option to keep or ignore the first row.

The function calculates the geometry for the array and returns the number of rows and columns using the pointers.

The .csv file is opened and this function allocates the memory for the array and returns a valid pointer through the data array pointer function parameter.

The function includes an option to keep or ignore the first row in the .csv file, using the following options:

SIGLIB_FIRST_ROW_IGNORE
 SIGLIB_FIRST_ROW_KEEP

This ignore first row mode is compatible with pandas .csv file format, in which the first row is the column titles.

NOTES ON USE

The function returns the number of rows read from the file.

CROSS REFERENCE

SUF_BinReadData, SUF_BinWriteData, SUF_BinReadFile,
 SUF_BinWriteFile, SUF_CsvWriteData, SUF_CsvReadMatrix, SUF_DatReadData,
 SUF_DatWriteData, SUF_DatReadHeader, SUF_DatWriteHeader,
 SUF_SigReadData, SUF_SigWriteData, SUF_SigReadFile, SUF_SigWriteFile,
 SUF_XmtReadData, SUF_WavReadData, SUF_WavWriteData,
 SUF_WavReadWord, SUF_WavReadInt, SUF_WavWriteWord, SUF_WavWriteInt,
 SUF_WavReadHeader, SUF_WavWriteHeader, SUF_WavDisplayInfo,
 SUF_WavSetInfo, SUF_WavFileLength, SUF_WavReadFile, SUF_WavWriteFile,
 SUF_WavWriteFileScaled

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLArrayIndex_t SUF_DatReadData (SLData_t *, Data array pointer
FILE *, File pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function reads an array of floating-point data from the file.

NOTES ON USE

This function operates in a stream oriented mode and will read successive blocks of data from the file until the end of the file is reached.

This function will zero pad any buffers if there is not sufficient data in the remainder of the file to fill the buffer.

The file must be opened prior to using this function.

The function returns the number of samples read from the file.

CROSS REFERENCE

SUF_BinReadData, SUF_BinWriteData, SUF_BinReadFile,
SUF_BinWriteFile, SUF_CsvReadData, SUF_CsvWriteData, SUF_CsvReadFile,
SUF_CsvWriteFile, SUF_CsvReadMatrix, SUF_DatWriteData,
SUF_DatReadHeader, SUF_DatWriteHeader, SUF_SigReadData,
SUF_SigWriteData, SUF_SigReadFile, SUF_SigWriteFile, SUF_XmtReadData,
SUF_WavReadData, SUF_WavWriteData, SUF_WavReadWord, SUF_WavReadInt,
SUF_WavWriteWord, SUF_WavWriteInt, SUF_WavReadHeader,
SUF_WavWriteHeader, SUF_WavDisplayInfo, SUF_WavSetInfo,
SUF_WavFileLength, SUF_WavReadFile, SUF_WavWriteFile,
SUF_WavWriteFileScaled

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLArrayIndex_t	SUF_DatWriteData (const SLData_t *,	Data array pointer
FILE *,		File pointer
const SLData_t,		Sample rate
const SLArrayIndex_t,		Sample index
const SLArrayIndex_t)		Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function writes an array of floating-point data to the file.

NOTES ON USE

This function operates in a stream oriented mode and will append successive blocks of to the end of the file.

The sample index parameter is used to maintain the index across successive writes.

The file must be opened prior to using this function.

The function returns the number of samples written to the file.

CROSS REFERENCE

SUF_BinReadData, SUF_BinWriteData, SUF_BinReadFile,
SUF_BinWriteFile, SUF_CsvReadData, SUF_CsvWriteData, SUF_CsvReadFile,
SUF_CsvWriteFile, SUF_CsvReadMatrix, SUF_DatReadData, SUF_DatReadHeader,
SUF_DatWriteHeader, SUF_SigReadData, SUF_SigWriteData, SUF_SigReadFile,
SUF_SigWriteFile, SUF_XmtReadData, SUF_WavReadData, SUF_WavWriteData,
SUF_WavReadWord, SUF_WavReadInt, SUF_WavWriteWord, SUF_WavWriteInt,
SUF_WavReadHeader, SUF_WavWriteHeader, SUF_WavDisplayInfo,
SUF_WavSetInfo, SUF_WavFileLength, SUF_WavReadFile, SUF_WavWriteFile,
SUF_WavWriteFileScaled

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SUF_DatReadHeader (FILE *) File pointer

DESCRIPTION

This function reads the header information from a dat file and returns the sample rate.

NOTES ON USE

The file must be opened prior to using this function.

CROSS REFERENCE

SUF_BinReadData, SUF_BinWriteData, SUF_BinReadFile,
SUF_BinWriteFile, SUF_CsvReadData, SUF_CsvWriteData, SUF_CsvReadFile,
SUF_CsvWriteFile, SUF_CsvReadMatrix, SUF_DatReadData, SUF_DatWriteData,
SUF_DatWriteHeader, SUF_SigReadData, SUF_SigWriteData, SUF_SigReadFile,
SUF_SigWriteFile, SUF_XmtReadData, SUF_WavReadData, SUF_WavWriteData,
SUF_WavReadWord, SUF_WavReadInt, SUF_WavWriteWord, SUF_WavWriteInt,
SUF_WavReadHeader, SUF_WavWriteHeader, SUF_WavDisplayInfo,
SUF_WavSetInfo, SUF_WavFileLength, SUF_WavReadFile, SUF_WavWriteFile,
SUF_WavWriteFileScaled

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLArrayIndex_t SUF_DatWriteHeader (FILE *, File pointer
 const SLData_t) Sample rate

DESCRIPTION

This function writes the sample rate to the dat file header.

NOTES ON USE

The file must be opened prior to using this function.

The function returns the number of characters written to the file, a negative number on file error.

CROSS REFERENCE

SUF_BinReadData, SUF_BinWriteData, SUF_BinReadFile,
SUF_BinWriteFile, SUF_CsvReadData, SUF_CsvWriteData, SUF_CsvReadFile,
SUF_CsvWriteFile, SUF_CsvReadMatrix, SUF_DatReadData, SUF_DatWriteData,
SUF_DatReadHeader, SUF_SigReadData, SUF_SigWriteData, SUF_SigReadFile,
SUF_SigWriteFile, SUF_XmtReadData, SUF_WavReadData, SUF_WavWriteData,
SUF_WavReadWord, SUF_WavReadInt, SUF_WavWriteWord, SUF_WavWriteInt,
SUF_WavReadHeader, SUF_WavWriteHeader, SUF_WavDisplayInfo,
SUF_WavSetInfo, SUF_WavFileLength, SUF_WavReadFile, SUF_WavWriteFile,
SUF_WavWriteFileScaled

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLArrayIndex_t SUF_SigReadData (SLData_t *, Data array pointer
FILE *, File pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function reads an array of floating-point data from the file.

NOTES ON USE

This function operates in a stream oriented mode and will read successive blocks of data from the file until the end of the file is reached.

This function will zero pad any buffers if there is not sufficient data in the remainder of the file to fill the buffer.

The file must be opened prior to using this function.

The function returns the number of samples read from the file.

The data is formatted in a single column.

CROSS REFERENCE

SUF_BinReadData, SUF_BinWriteData, SUF_BinReadFile,
SUF_BinWriteFile, SUF_CsvReadData, SUF_CsvWriteData, SUF_CsvReadFile,
SUF_CsvWriteFile, SUF_CsvReadMatrix, SUF_DatReadData, SUF_DatWriteData,
SUF_DatReadHeader, SUF_DatWriteHeader, SUF_SigWriteData, SUF_SigReadFile,
SUF_SigWriteFile, SUF_XmtReadData, SUF_WavReadData, SUF_WavWriteData,
SUF_WavReadWord, SUF_WavReadInt, SUF_WavWriteWord, SUF_WavWriteInt,
SUF_WavReadHeader, SUF_WavWriteHeader, SUF_WavDisplayInfo,
SUF_WavSetInfo, SUF_WavFileLength, SUF_WavReadFile, SUF_WavWriteFile,
SUF_WavWriteFileScaled

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLArrayIndex_t SUF_SigWriteData (const SLData_t *, Data array pointer
FILE *, File pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function writes an array of floating-point data to the file.

NOTES ON USE

This function writes an array of floating-point data to the file.

NOTES ON USE

This function operates in a stream oriented mode and will append successive blocks of to the end of the file.

The file must be opened prior to using this function.

The function returns the number of samples written to the file.

The data is formatted in a single column.

CROSS REFERENCE

SUF_BinReadData, SUF_BinWriteData, SUF_BinReadFile,
SUF_BinWriteFile, SUF_CsvReadData, SUF_CsvWriteData, SUF_CsvReadFile,
SUF_CsvWriteFile, SUF_CsvReadMatrix, SUF_DatReadData, SUF_DatWriteData,
SUF_DatReadHeader, SUF_DatWriteHeader, SUF_SigReadData, SUF_SigReadFile,
SUF_SigWriteFile, SUF_XmtReadData, SUF_WavReadData, SUF_WavWriteData,
SUF_WavReadWord, SUF_WavReadInt, SUF_WavWriteWord, SUF_WavWriteInt,
SUF_WavReadHeader, SUF_WavWriteHeader, SUF_WavDisplayInfo,
SUF_WavSetInfo, SUF_WavFileLength, SUF_WavReadFile, SUF_WavWriteFile,
SUF_WavWriteFileScaled

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLArrayIndex_t SUF_SigReadFile (SLData_t *, Data array pointer
 const char *) File name

DESCRIPTION

This function reads an entire file of floating-point data from the file into an array.

NOTES ON USE

It is important to ensure that the array is long enough to read all of the data.

The function returns the number of samples read from the file or -1 for file error.

The data is formatted in a single column.

CROSS REFERENCE

SUF_BinReadData, SUF_BinWriteData, SUF_BinReadFile,
SUF_BinWriteFile, SUF_CsvReadData, SUF_CsvWriteData, SUF_CsvReadFile,
SUF_CsvWriteFile, SUF_CsvReadMatrix, SUF_DatReadData, SUF_DatWriteData,
SUF_DatReadHeader, SUF_DatWriteHeader, SUF_SigReadData,
SUF_SigWriteData, SUF_SigWriteFile, SUF_XmtReadData, SUF_WavReadData,
SUF_WavWriteData, SUF_WavReadWord, SUF_WavReadInt,
SUF_WavWriteWord, SUF_WavWriteInt, SUF_WavReadHeader,
SUF_WavWriteHeader, SUF_WavDisplayInfo, SUF_WavSetInfo,
SUF_WavFileLength, SUF_WavReadFile, SUF_WavWriteFile,
SUF_WavWriteFileScaled

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLArrayIndex_t	SUF_SigWriteFile (const SLData_t *,	Data array pointer
	const char *,	File name
	const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function writes an array of floating-point data to the file.

NOTES ON USE

The data is formatted in a single column.

This function returns the number of samples written to the file or -1 for file error.

CROSS REFERENCE

SUF_BinReadData, SUF_BinWriteData, SUF_BinReadFile,
SUF_BinWriteFile, SUF_CsvReadData, SUF_CsvWriteData, SUF_CsvReadFile,
SUF_CsvWriteFile, SUF_CsvReadMatrix, SUF_DatReadData, SUF_DatWriteData,
SUF_DatReadHeader, SUF_DatWriteHeader, SUF_SigReadData,
SUF_SigWriteData, SUF_SigReadFile, SUF_XmtReadData, SUF_WavReadData,
SUF_WavWriteData, SUF_WavReadWord, SUF_WavReadInt,
SUF_WavWriteWord, SUF_WavWriteInt, SUF_WavReadHeader,
SUF_WavWriteHeader, SUF_WavDisplayInfo, SUF_WavSetInfo,
SUF_WavFileLength, SUF_WavReadFile, SUF_WavWriteFile,
SUF_WavWriteFileScaled

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLArrayIndex_t SUF_XmtReadData (SLData_t *, Data array pointer
                                FILE *,                      File pointer
                                const SLArrayIndex_t)         Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function reads an array of floating-point data from the an xmt file.

NOTES ON USE

This function operates in a stream oriented mode and will read successive blocks of data from the file until the end of the file is reached.

This function will zero pad any buffers if there is not sufficient data in the remainder of the file to fill the buffer.

The file must be opened prior to using this function.

The function returns the number of samples read from the file or -1 for file error.

CROSS REFERENCE

SUF_BinReadData, SUF_BinWriteData, SUF_BinReadFile,
 SUF_BinWriteFile, SUF_CsvReadData, SUF_CsvWriteData, SUF_CsvReadFile,
 SUF_CsvWriteFile, SUF_CsvReadMatrix, SUF_DatReadData, SUF_DatWriteData,
 SUF_DatReadHeader, SUF_DatWriteHeader, SUF_SigReadData,
 SUF_SigWriteData, SUF_SigReadFile, SUF_SigWriteFile, SUF_WavReadData,
 SUF_WavWriteData, SUF_WavReadWord, SUF_WavReadInt,
 SUF_WavWriteWord, SUF_WavWriteInt, SUF_WavReadHeader,
 SUF_WavWriteHeader, SUF_WavDisplayInfo, SUF_WavSetInfo,
 SUF_WavFileLength, SUF_WavReadFile, SUF_WavWriteFile,
 SUF_WavWriteFileScaled

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLArrayIndex_t SUF_WriteWeightsIntegerCFile (const char *,    File name
      const SLData_t*,          Stage 1 weights
      const SLData_t *,        Stage 2 weights
      const SLArrayIndex_t,    Length of stage 1 weights
      const SLArrayIndex_t,    Length of stage 2 weights
      const SLArrayIndex_t)    Number of stages
```

DESCRIPTION

This function writes neural network weights to a C header file, as 8 bit words.

NOTES ON USE

The function returns the number of weights written to the file or zero on error.

CROSS REFERENCE

SUF_BinReadData, SUF_BinWriteData, SUF_BinReadFile,
 SUF_BinWriteFile, SUF_CsvReadData, SUF_CsvWriteData, SUF_CsvReadFile,
 SUF_CsvWriteFile, SUF_CsvReadMatrix, SUF_DatReadData, SUF_DatWriteData,
 SUF_DatReadHeader, SUF_DatWriteHeader, SUF_SigReadData,
 SUF_SigWriteData, SUF_SigReadFile, SUF_SigWriteFile, SUF_WavReadData,
 SUF_WavWriteData, SUF_WavReadWord, SUF_WavReadInt,
 SUF_WavWriteWord, SUF_WavWriteInt, SUF_WavReadHeader,
 SUF_WavWriteHeader, SUF_WavDisplayInfo, SUF_WavSetInfo,
 SUF_WavFileLength, SUF_WavReadFile, SUF_WavWriteFile,
 SUF_WavWriteFileScaled, SUF_WriteWeightsFloatCFile,
 SUF_WriteWeightsBinaryFile, SUF_ReadWeightsBinaryFile

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLArrayIndex_t	SUF_WriteWeightsFloatCFile (const char *,	File name
const SLData_t*,	Stage 1 weights	
const SLData_t *,	Stage 2 weights	
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Length of stage 1 weights	
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Length of stage 2 weights	
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Number of stages	

DESCRIPTION

This function writes neural network weights to a C header file, as floating point values.

NOTES ON USE

The function returns the number of weights written to the file or zero on error.

CROSS REFERENCE

SUF_BinReadData, SUF_BinWriteData, SUF_BinReadFile,
 SUF_BinWriteFile, SUF_CsvReadData, SUF_CsvWriteData, SUF_CsvReadFile,
 SUF_CsvWriteFile, SUF_CsvReadMatrix, SUF_DatReadData, SUF_DatWriteData,
 SUF_DatReadHeader, SUF_DatWriteHeader, SUF_SigReadData,
 SUF_SigWriteData, SUF_SigReadFile, SUF_SigWriteFile, SUF_WavReadData,
 SUF_WavWriteData, SUF_WavReadWord, SUF_WavReadInt,
 SUF_WavWriteWord, SUF_WavWriteInt, SUF_WavReadHeader,
 SUF_WavWriteHeader, SUF_WavDisplayInfo, SUF_WavSetInfo,
 SUF_WavFileLength, SUF_WavReadFile, SUF_WavWriteFile,
 SUF_WavWriteFileScaled, SUF_WriteWeightsIntegerCFile,
 SUF_WriteWeightsBinaryFile, SUF_ReadWeightsBinaryFile

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLArrayIndex_t SUF_WriteWeightsBinaryFile (const char *, File name
 const SLData_t*, Stage 1 weights
 const SLData_t*, Stage 2 weights
 const SLArrayIndex_t, Length of stage 1 weights
 const SLArrayIndex_t, Length of stage 2 weights
 const SLArrayIndex_t, Number of stages
 const SLArrayIndex_t) Number of quantization bits

DESCRIPTION

This function writes neural network weights to a binary file, as 8 bit words.

The weights can be quantized from 1 to 32 bits before being written to the weights file. The word length saved will vary on the number of quantization bits according to the following table.

Number of Bits	Word Length Saved
1 to 8	8
9 to 16	16
17 to 32	32

NOTES ON USE

The function returns the number of weights written to the file or <= zero on error.

The binary file has the following format:

```
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| Number | Number | Max Of | . | Max Of | Layer | . | Layer |
| Of     | Of     | Layer 1 | . | Layer N | 1     | . | N     |
| Layers | Q Bits | Weights | . | Weights | Weights | . | Weights |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
```

CROSS REFERENCE

SUF_BinReadData, SUF_BinWriteData, SUF_BinReadFile,
 SUF_BinWriteFile, SUF_CsvReadData, SUF_CsvWriteData, SUF_CsvReadFile,
 SUF_CsvWriteFile, SUF_CsvReadMatrix, SUF_DatReadData, SUF_DatWriteData,
 SUF_DatReadHeader, SUF_DatWriteHeader, SUF_SigReadData,
 SUF_SigWriteData, SUF_SigReadFile, SUF_SigWriteFile, SUF_WavReadData,
 SUF_WavWriteData, SUF_WavReadWord, SUF_WavReadInt,
 SUF_WavWriteWord, SUF_WavWriteInt, SUF_WavReadHeader,
 SUF_WavWriteHeader, SUF_WavDisplayInfo, SUF_WavSetInfo,
 SUF_WavFileLength, SUF_WavReadFile, SUF_WavWriteFile,
 SUF_WavWriteFileScaled, SUF_WriteWeightsIntegerCFile,
 SUF_WriteWeightsFloatCFile, SUF_ReadWeightsBinaryFile

WAV File Functions

The following functions are used to read and write .wav files. These functions require a structure of type SLWavFileInfo_s, which is defined as :

```
typedef struct
{
    int    SampleRate;
    int    NumberOfSamples;
    int    NumberOfChannels;
    int    WordLength;
    int    BytesPerSample;
    int    DataFormat;
} SLWavFileInfo_s;
```

This structure can be accessed directly from any program however functions are supplied for reading and writing to it.

Note : when writing a stream to a .wav file it is first necessary to write the header using the function wav_write_header () then the data can be written to the file. Once all of the data has been written and the exact number of samples is known then the number of samples can be re-written to the header and the function wav_write_header should be called again.

For multi-channel wav files, the data is returned with the channels multiplexed into a single array so the array length must equal the NumberOfSamples*NumberOfChannels. The SigLib DSP library includes functions for multiplexing and de-multiplexing data streams.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLArrayIndex_t	SUF_WavReadData (SLData_t *,	Destination data pointer
FILE *,		File pointer
const SLWavFileInfo_s,		Wave file information structure
const SLArrayIndex_t)		Array length

FUNCTION DESCRIPTION

This function reads an array of wave file data from the file.

NOTES ON USE

This function operates in a stream oriented mode and will read successive blocks of data from the file until the end of the file is reached.

This function will zero pad any buffers if there is not sufficient data in the remainder of the file to fill the buffer.

The function returns the number of samples read from the file.

The file must be opened prior to using this function.

Returns wavInfo.NumberOfSamples = 0 on error.

FUNCTION CROSS REFERENCE

SUF_BinReadData, SUF_BinWriteData, SUF_BinReadFile,
 SUF_BinWriteFile, SUF_CsvReadData, SUF_CsvWriteData, SUF_CsvReadFile,
 SUF_CsvWriteFile, SUF_CsvReadMatrix, SUF_DatReadData, SUF_DatWriteData,
 SUF_DatReadHeader, SUF_DatWriteHeader, SUF_SigReadData,
 SUF_SigWriteData, SUF_SigReadFile, SUF_SigWriteFile, SUF_XmtReadData,
 SUF_WavWriteData, SUF_WavReadWord, SUF_WavReadInt,
 SUF_WavWriteWord, SUF_WavWriteInt, SUF_WavReadHeader,
 SUF_WavWriteHeader, SUF_WavDisplayInfo, SUF_WavSetInfo,
 SUF_WavFileLength, SUF_WavReadFile, SUF_WavWriteFile,
 SUF_WavWriteFileScaled

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SUF_WavWriteData (const SLData_t *,      Source data pointer
                      FILE *,                File pointer
                      const SLWavFileInfo_s,  Wave file information structure
                      const SLArrayIndex_t)   Array length
```

FUNCTION DESCRIPTION

This function writes an array of wave file data to the file.

NOTES ON USE

This function operates in a stream oriented mode and will append successive blocks of to the end of the file.

The file must be opened prior to using this function.

FUNCTION CROSS REFERENCE

SUF_BinReadData, SUF_BinWriteData, SUF_BinReadFile,
 SUF_BinWriteFile, SUF_CsvReadData, SUF_CsvWriteData, SUF_CsvReadFile,
 SUF_CsvWriteFile, SUF_CsvReadMatrix, SUF_DatReadData, SUF_DatWriteData,
 SUF_DatReadHeader, SUF_DatWriteHeader, SUF_SigReadData,
 SUF_SigWriteData, SUF_SigReadFile, SUF_SigWriteFile, SUF_XmtReadData,
 SUF_WavReadData, SUF_WavReadWord, SUF_WavReadInt, SUF_WavWriteWord,
 SUF_WavWriteInt, SUF_WavReadHeader, SUF_WavWriteHeader,
 SUF_WavDisplayInfo, SUF_WavSetInfo, SUF_WavFileLength, SUF_WavReadFile,
 SUF_WavWriteFile, SUF_WavWriteFileScaled

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLArrayIndex_t SUF_WavReadWord (FILE *) File pointer

FUNCTION DESCRIPTION

This function reads a word of data from a wave file.

The file must be opened prior to using this function.

NOTES ON USE

The function returns the word read from the file.

FUNCTION CROSS REFERENCE

SUF_BinReadData, SUF_BinWriteData, SUF_BinReadFile,
SUF_BinWriteFile, SUF_CsvReadData, SUF_CsvWriteData, SUF_CsvReadFile,
SUF_CsvWriteFile, SUF_CsvReadMatrix, SUF_DatReadData, SUF_DatWriteData,
SUF_DatReadHeader, SUF_DatWriteHeader, SUF_SigReadData,
SUF_SigWriteData, SUF_SigReadFile, SUF_SigWriteFile, SUF_XmtReadData,
SUF_WavReadData, SUF_WavWriteData, SUF_WavReadInt, SUF_WavWriteWord,
SUF_WavWriteInt, SUF_WavReadHeader, SUF_WavWriteHeader,
SUF_WavDisplayInfo, SUF_WavSetInfo, SUF_WavFileLength, SUF_WavReadFile,
SUF_WavWriteFile, SUF_WavWriteFileScaled

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLArrayIndex_t SUF_WavReadInt (FILE *) File pointer

FUNCTION DESCRIPTION

This function reads an integer word of data from a wave file.

NOTES ON USE

The function returns the integer word read from the file.

The file must be opened prior to using this function.

FUNCTION CROSS REFERENCE

SUF_BinReadData, SUF_BinWriteData, SUF_BinReadFile,
SUF_BinWriteFile, SUF_CsvReadData, SUF_CsvWriteData, SUF_CsvReadFile,
SUF_CsvWriteFile, SUF_CsvReadMatrix, SUF_DatReadData, SUF_DatWriteData,
SUF_DatReadHeader, SUF_DatWriteHeader, SUF_SigReadData,
SUF_SigWriteData, SUF_SigReadFile, SUF_SigWriteFile, SUF_XmtReadData,
SUF_WavReadData, SUF_WavWriteData, SUF_WavReadWord,
SUF_WavWriteWord, SUF_WavWriteInt, SUF_WavReadHeader,
SUF_WavWriteHeader, SUF_WavDisplayInfo, SUF_WavSetInfo,
SUF_WavFileLength, SUF_WavReadFile, SUF_WavWriteFile,
SUF_WavWriteFileScaled

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SUF_WavWriteWord (const SLArrayIndex_t,	Data word to write
FILE *)	File pointer

FUNCTION DESCRIPTION

This function writes a word of data to the file.

NOTES ON USE

The file must be opened prior to using this function.

FUNCTION CROSS REFERENCE

SUF_BinReadData, SUF_BinWriteData, SUF_BinReadFile,
SUF_BinWriteFile, SUF_CsvReadData, SUF_CsvWriteData, SUF_CsvReadFile,
SUF_CsvWriteFile, SUF_CsvReadMatrix, SUF_DatReadData, SUF_DatWriteData,
SUF_DatReadHeader, SUF_DatWriteHeader, SUF_SigReadData,
SUF_SigWriteData, SUF_SigReadFile, SUF_SigWriteFile, SUF_XmtReadData,
SUF_WavReadData, SUF_WavWriteData, SUF_WavReadWord, SUF_WavReadInt,
SUF_WavWriteInt, SUF_WavReadHeader, SUF_WavWriteHeader,
SUF_WavDisplayInfo, SUF_WavSetInfo, SUF_WavFileLength, SUF_WavReadFile,
SUF_WavWriteFile, SUF_WavWriteFileScaled

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLWavFileInfo_s SUF_WavReadHeader (FILE *) File pointer

FUNCTION DESCRIPTION

This function reads the header information from a wave file and returns it in the SLWavFileInfo_s structure.

NOTES ON USE

The file must be opened prior to using this function.

Returns wavInfo.NumberOfSamples = 0 on error.

FUNCTION CROSS REFERENCE

SUF_BinReadData, SUF_BinWriteData, SUF_BinReadFile,
SUF_BinWriteFile, SUF_CsvReadData, SUF_CsvWriteData, SUF_CsvReadFile,
SUF_CsvWriteFile, SUF_CsvReadMatrix, SUF_DatReadData, SUF_DatWriteData,
SUF_DatReadHeader, SUF_DatWriteHeader, SUF_SigReadData,
SUF_SigWriteData, SUF_SigReadFile, SUF_SigWriteFile, SUF_XmtReadData,
SUF_WavReadData, SUF_WavWriteData, SUF_WavReadWord, SUF_WavReadInt,
SUF_WavWriteWord, SUF_WavWriteInt, SUF_WavWriteHeader,
SUF_WavDisplayInfo, SUF_WavSetInfo, SUF_WavFileLength, SUF_WavReadFile,
SUF_WavWriteFile, SUF_WavWriteFileScaled

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SUF_WavWriteHeader (FILE *,	File pointer
const SLWavFileInfo_s)	Wave file information structure

FUNCTION DESCRIPTION

This function writes the header information to a wave file from the SLWavFileInfo_s structure.

NOTES ON USE

The file must be opened prior to using this function.

FUNCTION CROSS REFERENCE

SUF_BinReadData, SUF_BinWriteData, SUF_BinReadFile,
SUF_BinWriteFile, SUF_CsvReadData, SUF_CsvWriteData, SUF_CsvReadFile,
SUF_CsvWriteFile, SUF_CsvReadMatrix, SUF_DatReadData, SUF_DatWriteData,
SUF_DatReadHeader, SUF_DatWriteHeader, SUF_SigReadData,
SUF_SigWriteData, SUF_SigReadFile, SUF_SigWriteFile, SUF_XmtReadData,
SUF_WavReadData, SUF_WavWriteData, SUF_WavReadWord, SUF_WavReadInt,
SUF_WavWriteWord, SUF_WavWriteInt, SUF_WavReadHeader,
SUF_WavDisplayInfo, SUF_WavSetInfo, SUF_WavFileLength, SUF_WavReadFile,
SUF_WavWriteFile, SUF_WavWriteFileScaled

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SUF_WavDisplayInfo (const SLWavFileInfo_s) Wave file information structure

FUNCTION DESCRIPTION

This function prints out the header information stored in the SLWavFileInfo_s structure.

NOTES ON USE

FUNCTION CROSS REFERENCE

SUF_BinReadData, SUF_BinWriteData, SUF_BinReadFile,
SUF_BinWriteFile, SUF_CsvReadData, SUF_CsvWriteData, SUF_CsvReadFile,
SUF_CsvWriteFile, SUF_CsvReadMatrix, SUF_DatReadData, SUF_DatWriteData,
SUF_DatReadHeader, SUF_DatWriteHeader, SUF_SigReadData,
SUF_SigWriteData, SUF_SigReadFile, SUF_SigWriteFile, SUF_XmtReadData,
SUF_WavReadData, SUF_WavWriteData, SUF_WavReadWord, SUF_WavReadInt,
SUF_WavWriteWord, SUF_WavWriteInt, SUF_WavReadHeader,
SUF_WavWriteHeader, SUF_WavSetInfo, SUF_WavFileLength,
SUF_WavReadFile, SUF_WavWriteFile, SUF_WavWriteFileScaled

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLWavFileInfo_s	SUF_WavSetInfo (const SLArrayIndex_t,	Sample rate
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Number of samples	
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Number of channels	
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Word length	
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Bytes per sample	
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Data format	

FUNCTION DESCRIPTION

This function generates a SLWavFileInfo_s structure from the supplied data.

NOTES ON USE

FUNCTION CROSS REFERENCE

SUF_BinReadData, SUF_BinWriteData, SUF_BinReadFile,
 SUF_BinWriteFile, SUF_CsvReadData, SUF_CsvWriteData, SUF_CsvReadFile,
 SUF_CsvWriteFile, SUF_CsvReadMatrix, SUF_DatReadData, SUF_DatWriteData,
 SUF_DatReadHeader, SUF_DatWriteHeader, SUF_SigReadData,
 SUF_SigWriteData, SUF_SigReadFile, SUF_SigWriteFile, SUF_XmtReadData,
 SUF_WavReadData, SUF_WavWriteData, SUF_WavReadWord, SUF_WavReadInt,
 SUF_WavWriteWord, SUF_WavWriteInt, SUF_WavReadHeader,
 SUF_WavWriteHeader, SUF_WavDisplayInfo, SUF_WavFileLength,
 SUF_WavReadFile, SUF_WavWriteFile, SUF_WavWriteFileScaled

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLArrayIndex_t SUF_WavFileLength (const char *) Filename

FUNCTION DESCRIPTION

This function returns the number of samples in the .wav file.

NOTES ON USE

FUNCTION CROSS REFERENCE

SUF_BinReadData, SUF_BinWriteData, SUF_BinReadFile,
SUF_BinWriteFile, SUF_CsvReadData, SUF_CsvWriteData, SUF_CsvReadFile,
SUF_CsvWriteFile, SUF_CsvReadMatrix, SUF_DatReadData, SUF_DatWriteData,
SUF_DatReadHeader, SUF_DatWriteHeader, SUF_SigReadData,
SUF_SigWriteData, SUF_SigReadFile, SUF_SigWriteFile, SUF_XmtReadData,
SUF_WavReadData, SUF_WavWriteData, SUF_WavReadWord, SUF_WavReadInt,
SUF_WavWriteWord, SUF_WavWriteInt, SUF_WavReadHeader,
SUF_WavWriteHeader, SUF_WavDisplayInfo, SUF_WavSetInfo,
SUF_WavReadFile, SUF_WavWriteFile, SUF_WavWriteFileScaled

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLArrayIndex_t SUF_WavWriteFile (SLData_t *,	Data pointer
const char *,	Filename
const SLWavFileInfo_s,	Wave file information structure
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array length

FUNCTION DESCRIPTION

This function writes the contents of the array to the .wav file.

NOTES ON USE

Returns the number of samples written, -1 for file open error.

FUNCTION CROSS REFERENCE

SUF_BinReadData, SUF_BinWriteData, SUF_BinReadFile,
 SUF_BinWriteFile, SUF_CsvReadData, SUF_CsvWriteData, SUF_CsvReadFile,
 SUF_CsvWriteFile, SUF_CsvReadMatrix, SUF_DatReadData, SUF_DatWriteData,
 SUF_DatReadHeader, SUF_DatWriteHeader, SUF_SigReadData,
 SUF_SigWriteData, SUF_SigReadFile, SUF_SigWriteFile, SUF_XmtReadData,
 SUF_WavReadData, SUF_WavWriteData, SUF_WavReadWord, SUF_WavReadInt,
 SUF_WavWriteWord, SUF_WavWriteInt, SUF_WavReadHeader,
 SUF_WavWriteHeader, SUF_WavDisplayInfo, SUF_WavSetInfo,
 SUF_WavFileLength, SUF_WavReadFile, SUF_WavWriteFileScaled

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLArrayIndex_t SUF_WavWriteFileScaled (SLData_t *, Data pointer
 const char *, Filename
 const SLWavFileInfo_s, Wave file information structure
 const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length

FUNCTION DESCRIPTION

This function writes the contents of the array to the .wav file. The output is scaled to a magnitude of 32767.0

NOTES ON USE

Returns the number of samples written, -1 for file open error.

FUNCTION CROSS REFERENCE

SUF_BinReadData, SUF_BinWriteData, SUF_BinReadFile,
SUF_BinWriteFile, SUF_CsvReadData, SUF_CsvWriteData, SUF_CsvReadFile,
SUF_CsvWriteFile, SUF_CsvReadMatrix, SUF_DatReadData, SUF_DatWriteData,
SUF_DatReadHeader, SUF_DatWriteHeader, SUF_SigReadData,
SUF_SigWriteData, SUF_SigReadFile, SUF_SigWriteFile, SUF_XmtReadData,
SUF_WavReadData, SUF_WavWriteData, SUF_WavReadWord, SUF_WavReadInt,
SUF_WavWriteWord, SUF_WavWriteInt, SUF_WavReadHeader,
SUF_WavWriteHeader, SUF_WavDisplayInfo, SUF_WavSetInfo,
SUF_WavFileLength, SUF_WavReadFile, SUF_WavWriteFile

FREQUENCY DOMAIN FUNCTIONS

Fast Fourier Transform Functions (*ffourier.c*)

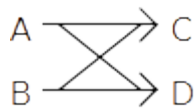
The Fast Fourier Transform (FFT) functions include support for both radix-2 and radix-4.

Radix-2 FFT Functions

The Fast Fourier Transform (FFT) functions all include code for handling the bit reversal however the exact operation of this is controlled through the use of conditional compilation statements at the top of the source file (*ffourier.c*).

The main FFT functions are initialised by the `SIF_Fft()` function.

Different text books use different notations for the sign of the sine term, when performing FFTs and IFFTs, SigLib uses the following Radix 2 butterfly notation:



$$C_r = A_r + B_r$$

$$C_i = A_i + B_i$$

$$D_r = (A_r - B_r) * \cos(\text{Theta}) + (A_i - B_i) * \sin(\text{Theta})$$

$$D_i = (A_i - B_i) * \cos(\text{Theta}) - (A_r - B_r) * \sin(\text{Theta})$$

It is recommended that users verify before hand that this is the notation, required, for their application. The phase differences, between the different notations is irrelevant, when performing a square magnitude sum on the results.

In order to be able to support different FFT lengths simultaneously it is necessary to initialise each length required with a separate call to `SIF_Fft()` function, with the coefficients and, if required, bit reverse address tables being located in separate arrays.

The transform length of the FFT must be a power of 2. The \log_2 FFT length parameter is the logarithm to base 2 of the FFT length, this used to efficiently execute the correct number of stages.

The real FFT is almost twice as fast as the complex transform.

The real FFT function does not require any input data in the imaginary array.

FFT Bit Reverse Addressing

FFT bit reverse re-ordering happens in one of 3 ways, that are configured by passing the following to the function parameter `pBitReverseAddressTable`:

pBitReverseAddressTable	Bit Reverse Addressing Mode
<code>SIGLIB_BIT_REV_NONE</code>	No bit reverse addressing is performed
<code>SIGLIB_BIT_REV_STANDARD</code>	Bit reverse addressing is handled via computation of the addresses to swap
A valid memory address	Bit reverse addressing is handled via a look-up table so is faster but requires the use of the additional look-up table, in memory. Note: for this mode to work the look-up table must not be located at memory addresses <code>0x0....00</code> or <code>0x0....01</code>

FFT Scaling (Radix-2 and Radix-4)

A Discrete Fourier Transform (DFT) scales the result with respect to the continuous time equivalent by a factor of N , where N is the size of the FFT. Some FFT functions account for this in the forward FFT, some in the inverse and some not at all - there seems to be no consensus on where to account for the scaling. It is not that any particular implementation is right or wrong but just that they are different. The Siglib library does not apply any scaling to the results of the FFT functions. We have chosen not to scale the results because this allows the user to choose a suitable scaling for their application.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SIF_Fft (SLData_t *,	Pointer to FFT coefficient table
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Bit reverse mode flag / Pointer to bit
reverse address table	
const SLArrayIndex_t)	FFT Size

DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the FFT functions, including twiddle factor array. Prior to using any of the FFT functions, the function SIF_Fft () must be called, this, amongst other things initialises the twiddle factor (coefficient) tables. If an application requires FFTs of different lengths then this function must be used to initialise separate coefficient tables and, if required, bit reverse address tables for each length.

NOTES ON USE

This function generates a table of overlapping sine and cosine data, commonly called a three quarters sine table. This table consists of floating-point data values. For fixed point implementations it will be necessary to generate the tables with the appropriate data, which will depend on the length of the table and the CPU word length.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Rfft, SDA_Cfft, SDA_Cifft, SDA_FftShift, SDA_CfftShift, SDA_Rfftr, SDA_Cfft2rBy1c, SDA_Cfft2rBy1cr.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_Rfft (SLData_t *,	Real input/output arraypointer
SLData_t *,	Imaginary output array pointer
SLData_t *,	FFT coefficient pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t *,	Bit reverse mode flag / Pointer to bit
reverse address table	
const SLArrayIndex_t,	FFT length
const SLArrayIndex_t)	log ₂ FFT length

DESCRIPTION

This function performs a radix-2, decimation in frequency, real to complex fast Fourier transform, of arbitrary order greater than 3 (8 points). The transform is performed in-place, i.e. the result data is placed back in the source arrays.

This function does not scale the output, different applications may require different scaling, this can be achieved using the functions SDA_Divide and SDA_Multiply.

NOTES ON USE

This function is initialized by SIF_Fft function, which must be called prior to calling this function.

See notes at top of FFT section.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_Fft, SDA_Cfft, SDA_Cifft, SDA_FftShift, SDA_CfftShift, SDA_Rfftr, SDA_Cfft2rBy1c, SDA_Cfft2rBy1cr.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_Cfft (SLData_t *,	Real input/output array pointer
SLData_t *,	Imaginary input/output array pointer
SLData_t *,	FFT coefficient pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t *,	Bit reverse mode flag / Pointer to bit
reverse address table	
const SLArrayIndex_t,	FFT length
const SLArrayIndex_t)	log ₂ FFT length

DESCRIPTION

This function performs a radix-2, decimation in frequency, complex to complex fast Fourier transform, of arbitrary order greater than 3 (8 points). The transform is performed in-place, i.e. the result data is placed back in the source arrays.

This function does not scale the output, different applications may require different scaling, this can be achieved using the functions SDA_Divide and SDA_Multiply.

NOTES ON USE

This function is initialized by SIF_Fft function, which must be called prior to calling this function.

See notes at top of FFT section.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_Fft, SDA_Rfft, SDA_Cifft, SDA_FftShift, SDA_CfftShift, SDA_Rfftr, SDA_Cfft2rBy1c, SDA_Cfft2rBy1cr.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_Cfft (SLData_t *,	Real input/output array pointer
SLData_t *,	Imaginary input/output array pointer
SLData_t *,	FFT coefficient pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t *,	Bit reverse mode flag / Pointer to bit
reverse address table	
const SLArrayIndex_t,	FFT length
const SLArrayIndex_t)	log ₂ FFT length

DESCRIPTION

This function performs a radix-2 complex to complex inverse fast Fourier transform, of arbitrary order greater than 3 (8 points). The transform is performed in-place, i.e. the result data is placed back in the source arrays.

This function does not scale the output, different applications may require different scaling, this can be achieved using the functions SDA_Divide and SDA_Multiply.

NOTES ON USE

This function is initialized by SIF_Fft function, which must be called prior to calling this function.

See notes at top of FFT section.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_Fft, SDA_Rfft, SDA_Cfft, SDA_FftShift, SDA_CfftShift, SDA_Rfftr, SDA_Cfft2rBy1c, SDA_Cfft2rBy1cr.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_BitReverseReorder (const SLData_t *,   Input array pointer
                           SLData_t *,         Output array pointer
                           const SLArrayIndex_t *, Bit reverse mode flag / Pointer to bit
reverse address table
                           const SLArrayIndex_t)   Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function will take linearly ordered data and change the ordering to bit reversed. This operation is reversible and so the same function can be used for taking bit reversed data and returning it in a linear order.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_Rfft, SDA_Cfft, SDA_Cifft, SIF_FftArb, SDA_RfftArb, SDA_Rfftr.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_IndexBitReverseReorder (const SLArrayIndex_t*,      Input array pointer
                                SLArrayIndex_t *,           Output array pointer
                                const SLArrayIndex_t)         Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function will take a linearly ordered array of fixed point data and change the ordering to bit reversed. This operation is reversible and so the same function can be used for taking bit reversed data and returning it in a linear order.

This function is often used for indices that can be used for accessing arrays of floating point data.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_Rfft, SDA_Cfft, SDA_Cifft, SIF_FftArb, SDA_RfftArb, SDA_Rfftr,
SIF_FastBitReverseReorder.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SIF_FastBitReverseReorder (const SLArrayIndex_t*, Bit reverse address look
up table pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function initialises the look up table fast bit reversing functions.

NOTES ON USE

This function only needs to be called if the SIF_Fft function is not used.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_IndexBitReverseReorder

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_RealRealCepstrum (SLData_t *, Real input data pointer
    SLData_t *,                      Real destination data pointer
    SLData_t *,                      Imaginary destination data pointer
    const SLData_t *,                FFT coefficient pointer
    const SLArrayIndex_t *,          Bit reverse mode flag / Pointer to bit
reverse address table
    const SLArrayIndex_t,             FFT length
    const SLArrayIndex_t)             Log2 FFT length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function performs a real cepstrum operation on the real input data sequence. The real cepstrum is defined by the following equation:

$$C_x[n] = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} \log |X(e^{-j\omega})| e^{-j\omega n} d\omega$$

The cepstrum is defined as the Fourier transform of the logarithm of the magnitude of the Fourier transform of a sequence.

NOTES ON USE

This function is initialized by SIF_Fft function, which must be called prior to calling this function.

The difference between the complex cepstrum and the real cepstrum is that the complex variant includes the unwrapped phase sequence.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_RealComplexCepstrum and SDA_ComplexComplexCepstrum.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_RealComplexCepstrum (SLData_t *,    Real input data pointer
                             SLData_t *,    Real destination data pointer
                             SLData_t *,    Imaginary destination data pointer
                             const SLData_t *, FFT coefficient pointer
                             const SLArrayIndex_t *, Bit reverse mode flag / Pointer to bit
reverse address table
                             const SLArrayIndex_t, FFT length
                             const SLArrayIndex_t) Log2 FFT length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function performs a complex cepstrum operation on the real input data sequence. The complex cepstrum is defined by the following equation:

$$\hat{x}[n] = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} [\log |X(e^{-j\omega})| + j \arg(X(e^{-j\omega}))] e^{-j\omega n} d\omega$$

‘arg’ is the unwrapped phase function.

Complex cepstrum refers to complex logarithm, not complex sequence.

The complex cepstrum of a real sequence is also a real sequence.

The cepstrum is defined as the Fourier transform of the logarithm of the magnitude of the Fourier transform of a sequence.

NOTES ON USE

This function is initialized by SIF_Fft function, which must be called prior to calling this function.

The difference between the complex cepstrum and the real cepstrum is that the complex variant includes the unwrapped phase sequence.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_RealRealCepstrum and SDA_ComplexComplexCepstrum.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_ComplexComplexCepstrum (SLData_t *,          Real input data pointer
    SLData_t *,          Imaginary input data pointer
    SLData_t *,          Real destination data pointer
    SLData_t *,          Imaginary destination data pointer
    const SLData_t *,    FFT coefficient pointer
    const SLArrayIndex_t *, Bit reverse mode flag / Pointer to bit
reverse address table
    const SLArrayIndex_t,  FFT length
    const SLArrayIndex_t)  Log2 FFT length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function performs a complex cepstrum operation on the complex input data sequence. The complex cepstrum is defined by the following equation:

$$\hat{x}[n] = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} [\log |X(e^{-j\omega})| + j \arg(X(e^{-j\omega}))] e^{-j\omega n} d\omega$$

‘arg’ is the unwrapped phase function.

The cepstrum is defined as the Fourier transform of the logarithm of the magnitude of the Fourier transform of a sequence.

NOTES ON USE

This function is initialized by SIF_Fft function, which must be called prior to calling this function.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_RealRealCepstrum and SDA_RealComplexCepstrum.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SIF_FftTone (SLData_t *,	Pointer to FFT coefficient table
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Bit reverse mode flag / Pointer to bit
reverse address table	
const SLArrayIndex_t)	FFT Size

DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the SDA_FftTone function.

This function calls SIF_Fft. Please read the notes for SIF_Fft for further details.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF_Fft and SDA_RfftTone.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_RfftTone (const SLData_t *,	Real source array pointer
SLData_t *,	Real array pointer
SLData_t *,	Imaginary array pointer
const SLData_t *,	FFT coefficient pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t *,	Bit reverse mode flag / Pointer to bit
reverse address table	
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to tone FFT bin number
SLData_t *,	Pointer to tone signal magnitude
const SLArrayIndex_t,	FFT length
const SLArrayIndex_t)	log2 FFT length

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the FFT bin and the linear magnitude of the peak frequency in the input signal.

This function calls SIF_Fft. Please read the notes for SIF_Fft for further details.

NOTES ON USE

This function is initialized by SIF_FftTone function, which must be called prior to calling this function.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_FftTone.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_Rfftr (SLData_t *,	Real input/output array pointer
SLData_t *,	Imaginary output array pointer
SLData_t *,	FFT coefficient pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t *,	Bit reverse mode flag / Pointer to bit
reverse address table	
const SLArrayIndex_t,	FFT length
const SLArrayIndex_t)	log ₂ FFT length

DESCRIPTION

This function performs a radix-2, decimation in frequency, real to real fast Fourier transform, of arbitrary order greater than 3 (8 points). The transform is performed in-place, i.e. the result data is placed back in the source arrays.

This function does not scale the output, different applications may require different scaling, this can be achieved using the functions SDA_Divide and SDA_Multiply.

NOTES ON USE

This function only returns the real component of the frequency domain response, saving approximately 10% of the MIPS required for a standard real to complex FFT.

This function is initialized by SIF_Fft function, which must be called prior to calling this function.

See notes at top of FFT section.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_Fft, SDA_Rfft, SDA_Cfft, SDA_Cifft, SDA_FftShift, SDA_CfftShift.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SIF_Fft4 (SLData_t *,	Pointer to FFT coefficient table
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Digit reverse mode flag / Pointer to digit
reverse address table	
const SLArrayIndex_t)	FFT Size

DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the radix-4 FFT functions, including twiddle factor array. Prior to using any of the FFT functions, the function SIF_Fft4 () must be called, this, amongst other things initialises the twiddle factor (coefficient) tables. If an application requires FFTs of different lengths then this function must be used to initialise separate coefficient tables and, if required, bit reverse address tables for each length.

NOTES ON USE

This function generates a table of overlapping sine and cosine data, commonly called a three quarters sine table. This table consists of floating-point data values. For fixed point implementations it will be necessary to generate the tables with the appropriate data, which will depend on the length of the table and the CPU word length.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Rfft4, SDA_Cfft4, SDA_Cfft42rBy1c, SDA_Cfft42rBy1cr.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_Rfft4 (SLData_t *,	Real input/output array pointer
SLData_t *,	Imaginary output array pointer
SLData_t *,	FFT coefficient pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t *,	Digit reverse mode flag / Pointer to digit
reverse address table	
const SLArrayIndex_t,	FFT length
const SLArrayIndex_t)	log ₂ FFT length

DESCRIPTION

This function performs a radix-4, decimation in frequency, real to complex fast Fourier transform, of arbitrary order greater than 3 (16 points). The transform is performed in-place, i.e. the result data is placed back in the source arrays.

This function does not scale the output, different applications may require different scaling, this can be achieved using the functions SDA_Divide and SDA_Multiply.

NOTES ON USE

This function is initialized by SIF_Fft4() function, which must be called prior to calling this function.

See notes at top of FFT section.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Cfft4, SIF_Fft4, SDA_Cfft42rBy1c, SDA_Cfft42rBy1cr.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_Cfft4 (SLData_t *,	Real input/output array pointer
SLData_t *,	Imaginary input/output array pointer
SLData_t *,	FFT coefficient pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t *,	Digit reverse mode flag / Pointer to digit
reverse address table	
const SLArrayIndex_t,	FFT length
const SLArrayIndex_t)	log ₂ FFT length

DESCRIPTION

This function performs a radix-4, decimation in frequency, complex to complex fast Fourier transform, of arbitrary order greater than 3 (16 points). The transform is performed in-place, i.e. the result data is placed back in the source arrays.

This function does not scale the output, different applications may require different scaling, this can be achieved using the functions SDA_Divide and SDA_Multiply.

NOTES ON USE

This function is initialized by SIF_Fft4() function, which must be called prior to calling this function.

See notes at top of FFT section.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_Fft4, SDA_Rfft4, SDA_Cfft42rBy1c, SDA_Cfft42rBy1cr.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_DigitReverseReorder4 (const SLData_t *,      Input array pointer
                               SLData_t *,           Output array pointer
                               const SLArrayIndex_t)   Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function will take linearly ordered data and change the ordering to radix-4 digit reversed. This operation is reversible and so the same function can be used for taking radix-4 digit reversed data and returning it in a linear order.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Cfft4.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_IndexDigitReverseReorder4 (const SArrayIndex_t*,   Input array pointer  
    SArrayIndex_t *,           Output array pointer  
    const SArrayIndex_t)      Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function will take a linearly ordered array of fixed point data and change the ordering to fast radix-4 digit reversed. This operation is reversible and so the same function can be used for taking bit reversed data and returning it in a linear order.

This function is often used for indices that can be used for accessing arrays of floating point data.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Rfft, SDA_Cfft, SDA_Cifft, SIF_FftArb, SDA_RfftArb, SDA_Rfftr, SIF_FastDigitReverseReorder4.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SIF_FastDigitReverseReorder4 (const SLArrayIndex_t*,	Digit reverse
address look up table pointer	
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function initialises the look up table fast radix-4 digit reversing functions.

NOTES ON USE

This function only needs to be called if the SIF_Fft function is not used.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_IndexDigitReverseReorder4

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_Cfft2rBy1c (SLData_t *,	Pointer to input #1 array
SLData_t *,	Pointer to input #2 array
SLData_t *,	Pointer to output #1 array
SLData_t *,	Pointer to output #2 array
const SLData_t *,	Pointer to FFT coefficients
const SLArrayIndex_t *,	Bit reverse mode flag / Pointer to bit
reverse address table	
const SLArrayIndex_t,	FFT length
const SLArrayIndex_t);	log2 FFT length

DESCRIPTION

This function performs two radix-2 decimation in frequency, real to complex fast Fourier transforms using a single complex radix-2 FFT. The FFT can be of arbitrary order greater than 3 (8 points).

The results are returned in two separate arrays, one for each channel. Each array contains real and imaginary results:

real[0],...,real[N-1],imag[0],...,imag[N-1]

This function does not scale the output, different applications may require different scaling, this can be achieved using the functions SDA_Divide and SDA_Multiply.

NOTES ON USE

The original input data is destroyed by this function as it is used to calculate the intermediate results.

This function is initialized by SIF_Fft function, which must be called prior to calling this function.

See notes at top of FFT section.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_Fft, SDA_Rfft, SDA_Cfft, SDA_Cifft, SDA_FftShift, SDA_CfftShift, SDA_Rfftr, SDA_Cfft2rBy1cr, SDA_Cfft42rBy1c, SDA_Cfft42rBy1cr.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_Cfft2rBy1cr (SLData_t *,	Pointer to input #1 array
SLData_t *,	Pointer to input #2 array
SLData_t *,	Pointer to output #1 array
SLData_t *,	Pointer to output #2 array
const SLData_t *,	Pointer to FFT coefficients
const SLArrayIndex_t *,	Bit reverse mode flag / Pointer to bit
reverse address table	
const SLArrayIndex_t,	FFT length
const SLArrayIndex_t);	log2 FFT length

DESCRIPTION

This function performs two radix-2 decimation in frequency, real to real fast Fourier transforms using a single complex radix-2 FFT. The FFT can be of arbitrary order greater than 3 (8 points).

The results are returned in two separate arrays, one for each channel. Each array contains real and imaginary results:

real[0],...,real[N-1]

This function does not scale the output, different applications may require different scaling, this can be achieved using the functions SDA_Divide and SDA_Multiply.

NOTES ON USE

The original input data is destroyed by this function as it is used to calculate the intermediate results.

This function is initialized by SIF_Fft function, which must be called prior to calling this function.

See notes at top of FFT section.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_Fft, SDA_Rfft, SDA_Cfft, SDA_Cifft, SDA_FftShift, SDA_CfftShift, SDA_Rfftr, SDA_Cfft2rBy1c, SDA_Cfft42rBy1c, SDA_Cfft42rBy1cr.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_Cfft42rBy1c (SLData_t *,	Pointer to input #1 array
SLData_t *,	Pointer to input #2 array
SLData_t *,	Pointer to output #1 array
SLData_t *,	Pointer to output #2 array
const SLData_t *,	Pointer to FFT coefficients
const SLArrayIndex_t *,	Digit reverse mode flag / Pointer to digit
reverse address table	
const SLArrayIndex_t,	FFT length
const SLArrayIndex_t);	log2 FFT length

DESCRIPTION

This function performs two radix-4 decimation in frequency, real to complex fast Fourier transforms using a single complex radix-4 FFT. The FFT can be of arbitrary order greater than 2 (16 points).

The results are returned in two separate arrays, one for each channel. Each array contains real and imaginary results:

real[0],...,real[N-1],imag[0],...,imag[N-1]

This function does not scale the output, different applications may require different scaling, this can be achieved using the functions SDA_Divide and SDA_Multiply.

NOTES ON USE

The original input data is destroyed by this function as it is used to calculate the intermediate results.

This function is initialized by SIF_Fft4 function, which must be called prior to calling this function.

See notes at top of FFT section.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_Fft, SDA_Rfft, SDA_Cfft, SDA_Cifft, SDA_FftShift, SDA_CfftShift, SDA_Rfftr, SDA_Cfft2rBy1c, SDA_Cfft2rBy1cr, SDA_Cfft42rBy1cr.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_Cfft42rBy1cr (SLData_t *,	Pointer to input #1 array
SLData_t *,	Pointer to input #2 array
SLData_t *,	Pointer to output #1 array
SLData_t *,	Pointer to output #2 array
const SLData_t *,	Pointer to FFT coefficients
const SLArrayIndex_t *,	Digit reverse mode flag / Pointer to digit
reverse address table	
const SLArrayIndex_t,	FFT length
const SLArrayIndex_t);	log2 FFT length

DESCRIPTION

This function performs two radix-4 decimation in frequency, real to real fast Fourier transforms using a single complex radix-4 FFT. The FFT can be of arbitrary order greater than 2 (16 points).

The results are returned in two separate arrays, one for each channel. Each array contains real and imaginary results:

real[0],...,real[N-1]

This function does not scale the output, different applications may require different scaling, this can be achieved using the functions SDA_Divide and SDA_Multiply.

NOTES ON USE

The original input data is destroyed by this function as it is used to calculate the intermediate results.

This function is initialized by SIF_Fft4 function, which must be called prior to calling this function.

See notes at top of FFT section.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_Fft, SDA_Rfft, SDA_Cfft, SDA_Cifft, SDA_FftShift, SDA_CfftShift, SDA_Rfftr, SDA_Cfft2rBy1c, SDA_Cfft2rBy1cr, SDA_Cfft42rBy1c.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLError_t SIF_ZoomFft (SLData_t *,	Pointer to real comb filter state array
SLData_t *,	Real comb filter sum
SLData_t *,	Pointer to imag. comb filter state array
SLData_t *,	Imaginary comb filter sum
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Comb filter phase
SLData_t *,	Pointer to sine look-up table
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Sine table phase for mixer
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to real decimator index
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to imaginary decimator index
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to real LPF index
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to imaginary LPF index
SLData_t *,	Pointer to real LPF state array
SLData_t *,	Pointer to imaginary LPF state array
SLData_t *,	Pointer to window look-up table
SLData_t *,	Pointer to FFT coefficient table
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to bit reverse address table
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Comb filter length
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Mixer sine table size
const SLArrayIndex_t,	FIR filter length
const SLArrayIndex_t)	FFT length

DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the zoom FFT function, including twiddle factor array. Amongst other things, this function initialises the twiddle factor tables and the sine wave table, for the mixer. If an application requires zoom-FFTs of different lengths then this function must be called, to change the length, between use.

NOTES ON USE

This function returns the error code from the SIF_Fft() and SIF_ComplexShift () functions that it calls.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Rfft, SDA_Cfft, SDA_Cifft, SDA_ZoomFft, SIF_ZoomFftSimple, SDA_ZoomFftSimple.

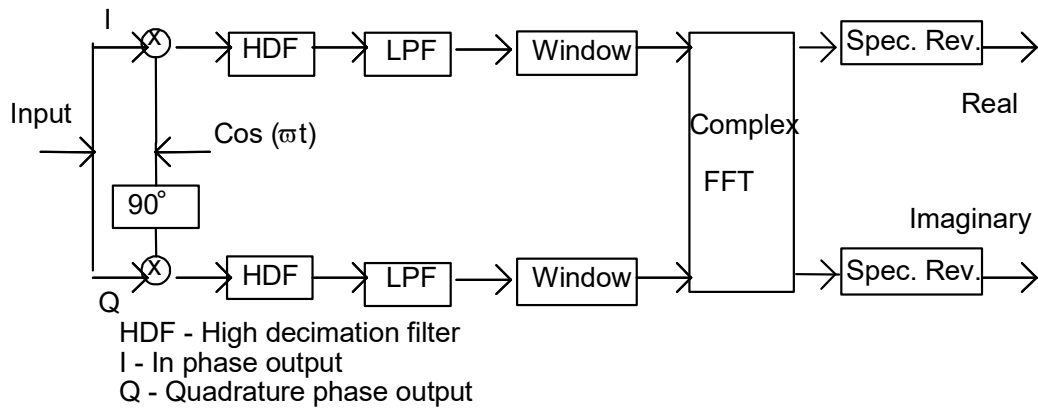
 PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_ZoomFft (const SLData_t *,	Pointer to input array
SLData_t *,	Pointer to real result array
SLData_t *,	Pointer to imaginary result array
SLData_t *,	Pointer to real comb filter state array
SLData_t *,	Real comb filter sum
SLData_t *,	Pointer to imag. comb filter state array
SLData_t *,	Imaginary comb filter sum
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Comb filter phase
const SLData_t *,	Pointer to sine look-up table
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to sine table phase for mixer
const SLData_t,	Mix frequency
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Length of comb filter
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Sine table size for mixer
const SLArrayIndex_t,	High decimation ratio
SLData_t *,	Pointer to real LPF state array
SLData_t *,	Pointer to imaginary LPF state array
const SLData_t *,	Pointer to LPF coefficients
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to real decimator index
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to imaginary decimator index
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to real LPF index
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to imaginary LPF index
const SLData_t *,	Pointer to window look-up table
const SLData_t *,	Pointer to FFT coefficient table
const SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to bit reverse address table
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Source array length
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Intermediate array length
const SLArrayIndex_t,	FIR filter length
const SLFixData_t,	FIR decimation ratio
const SLFixData_t,	Frequency reverse flag
const SLArrayIndex_t,	FFT length
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Log2 FFT length

DESCRIPTION

This function performs the following operations on the input signal: complex mix and high decimation comb filter, FIR low pass filter decimation, windowing, FFT and optional spectral reversal. The mix uses an arbitrary length sine table and mix frequency, the high decimation filter is a comb filter, again of arbitrary length. The FFT is a radix-2, decimation in frequency, complex fast Fourier transform, that must be a power of 2 in length and greater than 8 points. The transform is performed in-place, i.e. the result data is placed back in the source arrays.

The following diagram shows the complete structure of the zoom-FFT:



NOTES ON USE

The SDA_ZoomFft function does not scale the output, different applications may require different scaling, this can be achieved using the functions SDA_Divide and SDA_Multiply.

The decimation ratio of the high decimation filter should be a power of 2 where as that of the FIR filter can be any integer value.

See Notes for SDA_Cfft function.

Prior to using this function, the function SIF_ZoomFft must be called.

The frequency resolution = sample rate / number of input samples – it is important that the algorithm is provided with a long enough input array.

The accuracy of the frequencies in the decimated output array are defined by to the resolution of the mix frequency. The incoming signal is mixed with the in-phase (cos) and quadrature-phase (sin) carriers and these are generated from a look-up table for maximum performance. The resolution of the carrier frequencies is defined by the length of the table. In most zoom-FFT algorithms it is best to use a look-up table that is at least as long as the FFT length and preferably longer. The higher the decimation factor, the longer the look-up-tables must be.

The first NULL in the high decimation filter is at the sample frequency / decimation filter length.

The decimation filter length is the length of the comb filter and must be chosen to match the signal bandwidth. The sine array length defines the length of the sinusoid array used for the mixing process. The decimation filter length and sine array length need to be chosen to optimise performance (Signal to noise ratio) and minimise memory usage.

The decimation FIR filters should be linear phase filter to maintain the phase relationships of all the frequencies in the signal being decimated.

The decimation ratios must be integer values.

The “Intermediate array length” parameter specifies the length of the real and complex arrays that are used between the high decimation filter and the FIR filter.

The “Frequency reverse flag” parameter allows the frequency spectrum to be reversed in situations where the down conversion process has reversed it with respect to the original input.

Ghost frequencies in the output spectrum are very common artefacts of using the traditional zoom FFT algorithm. The artefacts are usually created by the first stage of decimation (the high decimation comb filters) and are due to the fact that the roll-off of these filters is not very sharp and they have little attenuation. It is possible to remove them by using pure FIR filters instead of comb filters but this has massive performance implications for the algorithm so the practical solution to the problem is to try to ensure that these artefacts are located out of the frequency band of interest after the first stage and then to remove them using the second (FIR) stage.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_Fft, SDA_Cfft, SDA_Cifft, SDA_FftShift, SDA_CfftShift, SIF_ZoomFft, SIF_ZoomFftSimple, SDA_ZoomFftSimple.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SIF_ZoomFftSimple (SLData_t *,	Comb filter 1 pointer
SLData_t *,	Comb filter 1 sum
SLData_t *,	Comb filter 2 pointer
SLData_t *,	Comb filter 2 sum
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Comb filter phase
SLData_t *,	Sine table pointer
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Sine table phase for mixer
SLData_t *,	FFT coefficient pointer
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Bit reverse mode flag / Pointer to bit
reverse address table	
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Decimation filter length
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Mixer sine table length
const SLArrayIndex_t)	FFT length

DESCRIPTION

This function initialises the simple zoom FFT function, including twiddle factor array. Amongst other things, this function initialises the twiddle factor tables and the sine wave table, for the mixer. If an application requires zoom-FFTs of different lengths then this function must be called, to change the length, between use.

NOTES ON USE

This function returns the error code from the SIF_Fft() and SIF_ComplexShift () functions that it calls.

CROSS REFERENCE

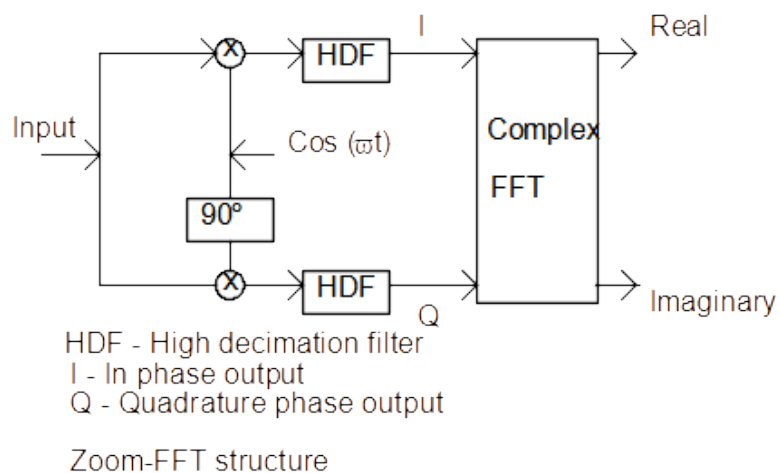
SDA_Rfft, SDA_Cfft, SDA_Cifft, SDA_ZoomFftSimple, SIF_ZoomFft, SDA_ZoomFft.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_ZoomFftSimple (const SLData_t *,	Input array pointer
SLData_t *,	Real result array pointer
SLData_t *,	Imaginary result array pointer
SLData_t *,	Comb filter 1 pointer
SLData_t *,	Comb filter 1 sum
SLData_t *,	Comb filter 2 pointer
SLData_t *,	Comb filter 2 sum
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Comb filter phase
const SLData_t *,	Sine table pointer
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Sine table phase for mixer
const SLData_t,	Mix frequency
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Length of comb filter
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Sine table length for mixer
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Decimation ratio
const SLData_t *,	FFT coefficient pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t *,	Bit reverse mode flag / Pointer to bit
reverse address table	
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Source array length
const SLArrayIndex_t,	FFT length
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Log2 FFT length

DESCRIPTION

This function performs complex mix and decimate on a signal and FFT. The mix uses an arbitrary length sine table and mix frequency, the decimation filter is a comb filter, again of arbitrary length. The filter is followed by a radix-2, decimation in frequency, complex fast Fourier transform that must be a power of two in length and greater than 8 points. The transform is performed in-place, i.e. the result data is placed back in the source arrays.



NOTES ON USE

This function does not scale the output, different applications may require different scaling, this can be achieved using the functions `SDA_Divide` and `SDA_Multiply`.

The decimation ratio is a power of 2 and defines the change in sample rate between the input and output frequencies.

The decimation filter length is the length of the comb filter and must be chosen to match the signal bandwidth. The sine array length defines the length of the sinusoid array used for the mixing process. The decimation filter length and sine array length need to be chosen to optimise performance (Signal to noise ratio) and minimise memory usage.

See Notes for `SDA_Cfft` function.

Prior to using this function, the function `SIF_ZoomFftSimple` must be called.

The frequency resolution = sample rate / number of input samples – it is important that the algorithm is provided with a long enough input array.

The accuracy of the frequencies in the decimated output array are defined by to the resolution of the mix frequency. The incoming signal is mixed with the in-phase (cos) and quadrature-phase (sin) carriers and these are generated from a look-up table for maximum performance. The resolution of the carrier frequencies is defined by the length of the table. In most zoom-FFT algorithms it is best to use a look-up table that is at least as long as the FFT length and preferably longer. The higher the decimation factor, the longer the look-up-tables must be.

The first NULL in the decimation filter is at the sample frequency / decimation filter length.

The sine look-up tables that are allocated in the initialisation routine should be large enough for the required decimation ratio. The typical length should be at least 4 times the required decimation ratio. This function uses a single length N sine table. The cosine pointer index starts at (length >> 2) to account for the phase.

Ghost frequencies in the output spectrum are very common artefacts of using the traditional zoom FFT algorithm. The artefacts are usually created by the high decimation comb filters and are due to the fact that the roll-off of these filters is not very sharp and they have little attenuation. If this output from this function exhibits ghost frequencies then the `SDA_ZoomFft` function should be used instead.

CROSS REFERENCE

`SIF_Fft`, `SDA_Cfft`, `SDA_Cifft`, `SDA_FftShift`, `SDA_CfftShift`,
`SIF_ZoomFftSimple`, `SIF_ZoomFft`, `SDA_ZoomFft`.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SIF_FdHilbert (SLData_t *,	FFT coefficient pointer
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Bit reverse mode flag / Pointer to bit
reverse address table	
SLData_t *,	Pointer to inverse FFT length
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Hilbert transformer length

DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the frequency domain Hilbert transformer function.

NOTES ON USE

The transform length must be a power of 2.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_FdHilbert, SDA_Rfft

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_FdHilbert (const SLData_t *,	Input array pointer
SLData_t *,	Real destination array pointer
SLData_t *,	Imaginary destination array pointer
SLData_t *,	FFT coefficient pointer
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Bit reverse mode flag / Pointer to bit
reverse address table	
const SLData_t,	Inverse FFT length
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Hilbert transform length
const SLArrayIndex_t)	log ₂ Hilbert transform length

DESCRIPTION

This function implements the frequency domain Hilbert transformer function.

The Hilbert transform phase shifts every component in a signal by 90 degrees.

NOTES ON USE

The transform length must be a power of 2.

The function SIF_FdHilbert must be called prior to calling this function.

This function operates by taking the FFT of the input, rotating it through 90 degrees and performing the inverse complex FFT. The real destination array returns the real FFT output i.e. the phase shifted data, the imaginary destination array returns the imaginary FFT output i.e. noise due to calculation errors.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_FdHilbert, SIF_FdAnalytic, SDA_FdAnalytic, SDA_Rfft

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SIF_FdAnalytic (SLData_t *,	FFT coefficient pointer
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Bit reverse mode flag / Pointer to bit
reverse address table	
SLData_t *,	Pointer to inverse FFT length
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Hilbert transformer length

DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the frequency domain analytic transform function.

NOTES ON USE

The transform length must be a power of 2.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_FdHilbert, SDA_Rfft

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_FdAnalytic (const SLData_t *,	Input array pointer
SLData_t *,	Real destination array pointer
SLData_t *,	Imaginary destination array pointer
SLData_t *,	FFT coefficient pointer
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Bit reverse mode flag / Pointer to bit
reverse address table	
const SLData_t,	Inverse FFT length
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Hilbert transform length
const SLArrayIndex_t)	log ₂ Hilbert transform length

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the analytic version of the input signal where the complex output contains the original input in the real array and the Hilbert transform of the input in the imaginary array. The Hilbert transform phase shifts every component in a signal by 90 degrees.

NOTES ON USE

The transform length must be a power of 2.

The function SIF_FdAnalytic must be called prior to calling this function.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_FdHilbert, SDA_FdHilbert, SIF_FdAnalytic, SDA_Rfft

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_InstantFreq (const SLData_t *,	Leading phase input pointer
const SLData_t *,	Lagging phase input pointer
SLData_t *,	Destination array pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the instantaneous frequency from two waveforms which are $\pi/2$ out of phase. This function is implemented as a two point differentiator and assumes that the sample rate is normalised to 1.

NOTES ON USE

The accuracy of the result is greatly affected by the purity of the sine wave.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_FdHilbert, SIF_HilbertTransformer

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_Rft (const SLData_t *,	Real input array pointer
SLData_t *,	Real output array pointer
SLData_t *,	Imaginary output array pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Transform length

DESCRIPTION

This function performs a real forward Fourier transform on the input data set.

NOTES ON USE

This function is included for reference purposes, in practice, the real FFT or arbitrary length FFT functions should always be used for reasons of speed.

There is no scaling on either the input or output of this function. 1/N DFT scaling is performed on the output of the inverse DFT function.

This function does not work “in-place”.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Rift, SDA_Cft, SDA_Cift, SDA_Rfft, SDA_RfftArb.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_Rift (const SLData_t *,	Real input array pointer
SLData_t *,	Real output array pointer
SLData_t *,	Imaginary output array pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Transform length

DESCRIPTION

This function performs a real inverse Fourier transform on the input data set.

NOTES ON USE

The complex inverse FFT function should always be used for reasons of speed.

This function performs the 1/N DFT scaling on the output results.

This function does not work “in-place”.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Rft, SDA_Cft, SDA_Cift, SDA_Cifft.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_Rft (const SLData_t *,	Real input array pointer
const SLData_t *,	Imaginary input array pointer
SLData_t *,	Real output array pointer
SLData_t *,	Imaginary output array pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Transform length

DESCRIPTION

This function performs a complex forward Fourier transform on the input data set.

NOTES ON USE

The FFT or arbitrary length FFT functions should always be used for reasons of speed.

There is no scaling on either the input or output of this function. 1/N DFT scaling is performed on the output of the inverse DFT function.

This function does not work “in-place”.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Rft, SDA_Rift, SDA_Cift, SDA_Rfft, SDA_RfftArb.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_Rift (const SLData_t *,	Real input array pointer
SLData_t *,	Real output array pointer
SLData_t *,	Imaginary output array pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Transform length

DESCRIPTION

This function performs a complex inverse Fourier transform on the input data set.

NOTES ON USE

The complex inverse FFT function should always be used for reasons of speed.

This function performs the 1/N DFT scaling on the output results.

This function does not work “in-place”.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Rft, SDA_Rift, SDA_Cft, SDA_Cifft.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_FftShift (const SLData_t *,	Input array pointer
SLData_t *,	Destination array pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function shifts the FFT results to locate the D.C. bin at the centre of the array, i.e. swap the left and right halves of the FFT result.

NOTES ON USE

This function is reversible, i.e. calling the same function will reverse the effect. SDA_FftShift will also work "in-place".

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Rfft, SDA_Cfft, SDA_Cifft, SDA_ZoomFft.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_CfftShift (const SLData_t *,	Real source array pointer
const SLData_t *,	Imaginary source array pointer
SLData_t *,	Real destination array pointer
SLData_t *,	Imaginary destination array pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function shifts the FFT results to locate the D.C. bin at the centre of the array, i.e. swap the left and right halves of the FFT result.

NOTES ON USE

This function is reversible, i.e. calling the same function will reverse the effect. SDA_CfftShift will also work "in-place".

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Rfft, SDA_Cfft, SDA_Cifft, SDA_ZoomFft.

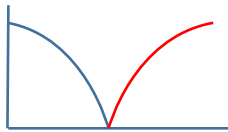
PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_FftExtend (const SLData_t *,	Source array pointer
SLData_t *,	Destination array pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Source array length
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Destination array length

DESCRIPTION

This function extends the real frequency domain dataset to a longer length by zero padding the centre. This is shown in the following diagrams.

Source frequency domain:



Destination extended frequency domain:



NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Rfft, SDA_Cfft, SDA_Cifft, SDA_CfftExtend.

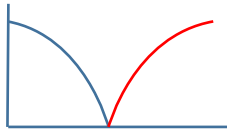
PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_CfftExtend (const SLData_t *,   Real source array pointer
                    const SLData_t *,   Imaginary source array pointer
                    SLData_t *,         Real destination array pointer
                    SLData_t *,         Imaginary destination array pointer
                    const SLArrayIndex_t, Source array length
                    const SLArrayIndex_t, Destination array length)
```

DESCRIPTION

This function extends the complex frequency domain dataset to a longer length by zero padding the centre. This is shown in the following diagrams.

Source frequency domain:



Destination extended frequency domain:



NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Rfft, SDA_Cfft, SDA_Cifft, SDA_FftExtend.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SIGLIB_FUNC_DECL SIF_DctII (SLData_t *, Pointer to cosine look up table  
    const SLArrayIndex_t);          DCT length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function initialises the type II DCT cosine table.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_DctII, SIF_DctIIOrthogonal, SDA_DctIIOrthogonal.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SIGLIB_FUNC_DECL SDA_DctII (const SLData_t *, Pointer to source array
    SLData_t *,                               Pointer to destination array
    const SLData_t *,                         Pointer to cosine look up table
    SLArrayIndex_t);                          DCT length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function performs the type II DCT.

NOTES ON USE

Reference:

https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Discrete_cosine_transform#Formal_definition

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_DctII, SIF_DctIIOrthogonal, SDA_DctIIOrthogonal.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SIGLIB_FUNC_DECL SIF_DctIIOrthogonal (SLData_t *, Pointer to square  
root half parameter  
    SLData_t *,           Pointer to output scale parameter  
    SLData_t *,           Pointer to cosine look up table  
    const SLArrayIndex_t); DCT length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function initialises the type II DCT cosine table and orthogonal scaling parameters.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_DctII, SDA_DctII, SDA_DctIIOrthogonal.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SIGLIB_FUNC_DECL SDA_DctIIOrthogonal (const SLData_t *, Pointer to source array

SLData_t *,	Pointer to destination array
const SLData_t,	Square root half parameter
const SLData_t,	Output scale parameter
const SLData_t *,	Pointer to cosine look up table
SLArrayIndex_t);	DCT length

DESCRIPTION

This function performs the type II DCT with orthogonal scaling.

NOTES ON USE

Reference:

https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Discrete_cosine_transform#Formal_definition

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_DctII, SDA_DctII, SIF_DctIIOrthogonal.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SIF_FftArb (SLData_t *,	AWNr coefficients pointer
SLData_t *,	AWNi coefficients pointer
SLData_t *,	WMr coefficients pointer
SLData_t *,	WMi coefficients pointer
SLData_t *,	vLr coefficients pointer
SLData_t *,	vLi coefficients pointer
SLData_t *,	FFT coefficient pointer
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Bit reverse mode flag / Pointer to bit
reverse address table	
enum SLArbitraryFFT_t *,	Switch to indicate CZT or FFT pointer
SLData_t *,	Pointer to the inverse FFT length
SLData_t *,	Ptr. to inverse (array length * FFT
length)	
SLArrayIndex_t *,	FFT length pointer
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Log 2 FFT length pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Source array length

DESCRIPTION

This function initialises the arbitrary length FFT functionality. When using this function, all of the parameters should be pointers to arrays or variables, except the array length parameter. The latter is the only parameter that needs to be specified prior to use, the contents of the remainder are initialised in this function. For further information on the parameters, for example the array lengths, please refer to the documentation for the FFT and chirp z-transform.

NOTES ON USE

This function requires that the FFT coefficient array at least the length of the largest FFT length. I.E. the next largest power of 2 that is greater than or equal to twice the length of the input data set.

The chirp z-transform is used for transforms where the vector length is not a power of 2.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_RfftArb, SDA_CfftArb, SUF_FftArbAllocLength.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLArrayIndex_t SUF_FftArbAllocLength (const SLArrayIndex_t) Source array length

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the length of the FFT that is required for the Arbitrary length FFT functions.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_FftArb, SDA_RfftArb, SDA_CfftArb.

 PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_RfftArb (const SLData_t *,	Real source array pointer
SLData_t *,	Real destination array pointer
SLData_t *,	Imaginary destination array pointer
SLData_t *,	Real temporary array pointer
SLData_t *,	Imaginary temporary array pointer
const SLData_t *,	AWNr coefficients pointer
const SLData_t *,	AWNi coefficients pointer
const SLData_t *,	WMr coefficients pointer
const SLData_t *,	WMi coefficients pointer
const SLData_t *,	vLr coefficients pointer
const SLData_t *,	vLi coefficients pointer
const SLData_t *,	FFT coefficient pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t *,	Bit reverse mode flag / Pointer to bit
reverse address table	
const enum SLArbitraryFFT_t,	Switch to indicate CZT or FFT
const SLData_t,	Inverse FFT length
const SLData_t,	Inverse (array length * FFT length)
const SLArrayIndex_t,	FFT length
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Log 2 FFT length
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Arbitrary FFT length

DESCRIPTION

This function will calculate the forward real Fourier transform of an arbitrary length data set using either of two techniques, depending on the vector length. If the vector length is an integer power of two that the function performs a radix-2, decimation in frequency, real to complex fast Fourier transform, of arbitrary order greater than 3 (8 points). The transform is not performed in-place, i.e. the result data is placed in separate arrays to the source arrays.

If the array length is not an integer power of 2 then the function will use the chirp z-transform to calculate the Fourier transform. The SDA_Rfft function does scale the output, in order that it will exactly equal that of the same length pure Fourier transform.

NOTES ON USE

Care must be taken with the windowing of the input data to avoid edge effects. This function requires that the FFT coefficient array at least the length of the largest FFT length. I.E. the next largest power of 2 that is greater than or equal to twice the length of the input data set. The operational parameters (e.g. chirp z or FFT coefficients) for this function are initialised by the function SIF_FftArb.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Rfft, SUF_FftArbAllocLength, SDA_Rft, SIF_FftArb, SDA_CfftArb.

 PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_CfftArb (const SLData_t *,	Real source array pointer
const SLData_t *,	Imaginary source array pointer
SLData_t *,	Real destination array pointer
SLData_t *,	Imaginary destination array pointer
SLData_t *,	Real temporary array pointer
SLData_t *,	Imaginary temporary array pointer
const SLData_t *,	AWNr coefficients pointer
const SLData_t *,	AWNi coefficients pointer
const SLData_t *,	WMr coefficients pointer
const SLData_t *,	WMi coefficients pointer
const SLData_t *,	vLr coefficients pointer
const SLData_t *,	vLi coefficients pointer
const SLData_t *,	FFT coefficient pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t *,	Bit reverse mode flag / Pointer to bit
reverse address table	
const enum SLArbitraryFFT_t,	Switch to indicate CZT or FFT
const SLData_t,	Inverse FFT length
const SLData_t,	Inverse (array length * FFT length)
const SLArrayIndex_t,	FFT length
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Log 2 FFT length
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Arbitrary FFT length

DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the forward complex Fourier transform of an arbitrary length data set using either of two techniques, depending on the vector length. If the vector length is an integer power of two then the function performs a radix-2, decimation in frequency, complex fast Fourier transform, of arbitrary order greater than 3 (8 points). The transform is not performed in-place, i.e. the result data is placed in separate arrays to the source arrays.

If the array length is not an integer power of 2 then the function will use the chirp z-transform to calculate the Fourier transform. The function does scales the output, in order that it will exactly equal that of the same length pure Fourier transform.

NOTES ON USE

Care must be taken with the windowing of the input data to avoid edge effects. This function requires that the FFT coefficient array at least the length of the largest FFT length. I.E. the next largest power of 2 that is greater than or equal to twice the length of the input data set. The operational parameters (e.g. chirp z or FFT coefficients) for this function are initialised by the function SIF_FftArb.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Cfft, SUF_FftArbAllocLength, SDA_Cifft, SIF_FftArb, SDA_RfftArb, SDA_CifftArb.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_CifftArb (const SLData_t *,	Real source array pointer
const SLData_t *,	Imaginary source array pointer
SLData_t *,	Real destination array pointer
SLData_t *,	Imaginary destination array pointer
SLData_t *,	Real temporary array pointer
SLData_t *,	Imaginary temporary array pointer
const SLData_t *,	AWNr coefficients pointer
const SLData_t *,	AWNi coefficients pointer
const SLData_t *,	WMr coefficients pointer
const SLData_t *,	WMi coefficients pointer
const SLData_t *,	vLr coefficients pointer
const SLData_t *,	vLi coefficients pointer
const SLData_t *,	FFT coefficient pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t *,	Bit reverse mode flag / Pointer to bit
reverse address table	
const enum SLArbitraryFFT_t,	Switch to indicate CZT or FFT
const SLArrayIndex_t,	FFT length
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Log 2 FFT length
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Arbitrary FFT length

DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the inverse complex Fourier transform of an arbitrary length data set using either of two techniques, depending on the vector length. If the vector length is an integer power of two then the function performs a radix-2, decimation in frequency, complex inverse fast Fourier transform, of arbitrary order greater than 3 (8 points). The transform is not performed in-place, i.e. the result data is placed in separate arrays to the source arrays.

If the array length is not an integer power of 2 then the function calculates the inverse Fourier transform by conjugating the input sequence, applying the arbitrary length forward transform, using the chirp z-transform, and then conjugating the result. The function scales the output, in order that it will exactly equal that of the same length pure Fourier transform.

NOTES ON USE

Care must be taken with the windowing of the input data to avoid edge effects. This function requires that the FFT coefficient array at least the length of the largest FFT length. I.E. the next largest power of 2 that is greater than or equal to twice the length of the input data set. The operational parameters (e.g. chirp z or FFT coefficients) for this function are initialised by the function SIF_FftArb.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Cfft, SUF_FftArbAllocLength, SDA_Cfft, SIF_FftArb, SDA_RfftArb, SDA_CfftArb.

Power Spectrum Functions (*pspect.c*)

The XXX_FastAutoPowerSpectrum and XXX_FastCrossPowerSpectrum functions will perform the given functions on sequences where the length is a power of two and use the Fast Fourier transform functions.

The XXX_ArbAutoPowerSpectrum and XXX_ArbCrossPowerSpectrum functions will perform the given functions on an arbitrary length sequence and will use the arbitrary length Fourier transform functions. The use of the SigLib arbitrary length Fourier transform functionality makes this function more complex than performing a regular Fourier transform but this does provide a far higher level of performance.

SIF_FastAutoCrossPowerSpectrum

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SIF_FastAutoCrossPowerSpectrum (SLData_t *,    FFT coefficient pointer  
    SLArrayIndex_t *,                          Bit reverse mode flag / Pointer to bit  
reverse address table  
    const SLArrayIndex_t,                      FFT Size  
    SLData_t *)                               Pointer to inverse FFT Size
```

DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the fast auto power spectrum and cross power spectrum function tables.

NOTES ON USE

Please refer to the documentation for the FFT functions for further details.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_FastAutoPowerSpectrum, SDA_FastCrossPowerSpectrum,
SIF_ArbAutoCrossPowerSpectrum, SDA_ArbAutoPowerSpectrum,
SDA_ArbCrossPowerSpectrum, SIF_WelchPowerSpectrum,
SDA_WelchRealPowerSpectrum, SDA_WelchComplexPowerSpectrum,
SIF_MagnitudeSquaredCoherence, SDA_MagnitudeSquaredCoherence.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_FastAutoPowerSpectrum (SLData_t *,   Real array pointer
                                SLData_t *,   Imaginary array pointer
                                const SLData_t *,   FFT coefficient pointer
                                const SLArrayIndex_t *,   Bit reverse mode flag / Pointer to bit
reverse address table
                                const SLArrayIndex_t,   FFT length
                                const SLArrayIndex_t,   Log2 FFT length
                                const SLData_t)   Inverse FFT Size
```

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the real auto power spectrum of the supplied data.

This function performs the following operations:

FFT

Scaling to ensure that the FFT output matches the DFT

$$X_{re}^2 + X_{im}^2$$

NOTES ON USE

This function works in-place so the input data is destroyed.

The imaginary input array is only used in the function, any input data is discarded.

The results are returned in the real input array.

The result array is of length (N/2)+1 because the results in bins 0 and N/2 are purely real.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_FastAutoCrossPowerSpectrum, SDA_FastCrossPowerSpectrum,
SIF_ArbAutoCrossPowerSpectrum, SDA_ArbAutoPowerSpectrum,
SDA_ArbCrossPowerSpectrum, SIF_WelchPowerSpectrum,
SDA_WelchRealPowerSpectrum, SDA_WelchComplexPowerSpectrum,
SIF_MagnitudeSquaredCoherence, SDA_MagnitudeSquaredCoherence.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_FastCrossPowerSpectrum (SLData_t *, Real array 1 pointer
    SLData_t *,                      Imaginary array 1 pointer
    SLData_t *,                      Real source array 2 pointer
    SLData_t *,                      Imaginary source array 2 pointer
    const SLData_t *,                FFT coefficient pointer
    const SLArrayIndex_t *,          Bit reverse mode flag / Pointer to bit
reverse address table
    const SLArrayIndex_t,            FFT length
    const SLArrayIndex_t,            Log2 FFT length
    const SLData_t)                  Inverse FFT Size
```

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the real cross power spectrum of the supplied data.

This function performs the following operations:

- FFTs
- Scaling to ensure that the FFT output matches the DFT
- $(X_{re} \cdot Y_{re}) + (X_{im} + Y_{im})$

NOTES ON USE

This function works in-place so the input data is destroyed.

The imaginary input arrays are only used in the function, any input data is discarded.

The results are returned in the first real input array.

If the real source array 1 pointer and the real source array 1 pointer point to the same array (i.e. auto power spectrum) then the result will be corrupted.

The result array is of length $(N/2)+1$ because the results in bins 0 and $N/2$ are purely real.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_FastAutoCrossPowerSpectrum, SDA_FastAutoPowerSpectrum,
 SIF_ArbAutoCrossPowerSpectrum, SDA_ArbAutoPowerSpectrum,
 SDA_ArbCrossPowerSpectrum, SIF_WelchPowerSpectrum,
 SDA_WelchRealPowerSpectrum, SDA_WelchComplexPowerSpectrum,
 SIF_MagnitudeSquaredCoherence, SDA_MagnitudeSquaredCoherence.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SIF_ArbAutoCrossPowerSpectrum (SLData_t *, Pointer to AWNr coefficients
    SLData_t *,                               Pointer to AWNi coefficients
    SLData_t *,                               Pointer to WMr coefficients
    SLData_t *,                               Pointer to WMi coefficients
    SLData_t *,                               Pointer to vLr coefficients
    SLData_t *,                               Pointer to vLi coefficients
    SLData_t *,                               FFT coefficients pointer
    SLArrayIndex_t *,                         Bit reverse mode flag / Pointer to bit
reverse address table
    enum SLArbitraryFFT_t *,                 Pointer to switch to indicate CZT or FFT
    SLArrayIndex_t *,                       Pointer to FFT length
    SLArrayIndex_t *,                       Pointer to Log 2 FFT length
    SLData_t *,                             Pointer to inverse FFT Size
    SLData_t *,                             Ptr. to inverse (array length * FFT
length)
    const SLArrayIndex_t)                   Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the arbitrary length auto power spectrum and cross power spectrum function tables.

These functions use the arbitrary length FFT functions further details can be found in the documentation section for these functions.

NOTES ON USE

Please refer to the documentation for the FFT functions for further details.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_FastAutoCrossPowerSpectrum, SDA_FastAutoPowerSpectrum,
 SDA_FastCrossPowerSpectrum, SDA_ArbAutoPowerSpectrum,
 SDA_ArbCrossPowerSpectrum, SIF_WelchPowerSpectrum,
 SDA_WelchRealPowerSpectrum, SDA_WelchComplexPowerSpectrum,
 SIF_MagnitudeSquaredCoherence, SDA_MagnitudeSquaredCoherence.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_ArbAutoPowerSpectrum (SLData_t *,   Real array pointer
                               SLData_t *,   Imaginary array pointer
                               SLData_t *,   Real temporary array pointer
                               SLData_t *,   Imaginary temporary array pointer
                               const SLData_t *, Pointer to AWNr coefficients
                               const SLData_t *, Pointer to AWNi coefficients
                               const SLData_t *, Pointer to WMr coefficients
                               const SLData_t *, Pointer to WMi coefficients
                               const SLData_t *, Pointer to vLr coefficients
                               const SLData_t *, Pointer to vLi coefficients
                               const SLData_t *, FFT coefficient pointer
                               const SLArrayIndex_t *, Bit reverse mode flag / Pointer to bit
reverse address table
                               const enum SLArbitraryFFT_t, Switch to indicate CZT or FFT
                               const SLArrayIndex_t,      FFT length
                               const SLArrayIndex_t,      Log 2 FFT length
                               const SLData_t,             Inverse FFT Size
                               const SLData_t,             Inverse (array length * FFT length)
                               const SLArrayIndex_t)       Arbitrary FFT length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the real auto power spectrum of an arbitrary length sequence.

This function performs the following operations:

FFT

Scaling to ensure that the FFT output matches the DFT

$$X_{re}^2 + X_{im}^2$$

NOTES ON USE

This function works in-place so the input data is destroyed.

The imaginary input array is only used in the function, any input data is discarded.

The results are returned in the real input array.

The result array is of length (N/2)+1 because the results in bins 0 and N/2 are purely real.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_FastAutoCrossPowerSpectrum, SDA_FastAutoPowerSpectrum,
 SDA_FastCrossPowerSpectrum, SIF_ArbAutoCrossPowerSpectrum,
 SDA_ArbCrossPowerSpectrum, SIF_WelchPowerSpectrum,
 SDA_WelchRealPowerSpectrum, SDA_WelchComplexPowerSpectrum,
 SIF_MagnitudeSquaredCoherence, SDA_MagnitudeSquaredCoherence.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```

void SDA_ArbCrossPowerSpectrum (SLData_t *, Real array 1 pointer
    SLData_t *,           Imaginary array 1 pointer
    SLData_t *,           Real source array 2 pointer
    SLData_t *,           Imaginary source array 2 pointer
    SLData_t *,           Real temporary array pointer
    SLData_t *,           Imaginary temporary array pointer
    const SLData_t *,     Pointer to AWNr coefficients
    const SLData_t *,     Pointer to AWNi coefficients
    const SLData_t *,     Pointer to WMr coefficients
    const SLData_t *,     Pointer to WMi coefficients
    const SLData_t *,     Pointer to vLr coefficients
    const SLData_t *,     Pointer to vLi coefficients
    const SLData_t *,     FFT coefficient pointer
    const SLArrayIndex_t *, Bit reverse mode flag / Pointer to bit
reverse address table
    const enum SLArbitraryFFT_t, Switch to indicate CZT or FFT
    const SLArrayIndex_t,       FFT length
    const SLArrayIndex_t,       Log 2 FFT length
    const SLData_t,             Inverse FFT Size
    const SLData_t,             Inverse (array length * FFT length)
    const SLArrayIndex_t)       Arbitrary FFT length

```

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the real cross power spectrum of the supplied data.

This function performs the following operations:

FFTs

Scaling to ensure that the FFT output matches the DFT

$$(X_{re} \cdot Y_{re}) + (X_{im} + Y_{im})$$

NOTES ON USE

This function works in-place so the input data is destroyed.

The imaginary input arrays are only used in the function, any input data is discarded.

The results are returned in the first real input array.

If the real source array 1 pointer and the real source array 1 pointer point to the same array (i.e. auto power spectrum) then the result will be corrupted.

The result array is of length (N/2)+1 because the results in bins 0 and N/2 are purely real.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_FastAutoCrossPowerSpectrum, SDA_FastAutoPowerSpectrum,
SDA_FastCrossPowerSpectrum, SIF_ArbAutoCrossPowerSpectrum,
SDA_ArbAutoPowerSpectrum, SIF_WelchPowerSpectrum,
SDA_WelchRealPowerSpectrum, SDA_WelchComplexPowerSpectrum,
SIF_MagnitudeSquaredCoherence, SDA_MagnitudeSquaredCoherence.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SL_Error_t SIF_WelchPowerSpectrum (SLArrayIndex_t *, Pointer to overlap source array index

SLData_t *,	Window array pointer
const enum SLWindow_t,	Window type
const SLData_t,	Window coefficient
SLData_t *,	FFT coefficient pointer
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Bit reverse mode flag / Pointer to bit
reverse address table	
SLData_t *,	Pointer to the inverse FFT length
const SLArrayIndex_t,	FFT length
SLData_t *,	Pointer to the inverse of the number of
arrays averaged	
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Number of arrays averaged

DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the Welch power function.

NOTES ON USE

This function returns SIGLIB_NO_ERROR if No error occurred or SIGLIB_PARAMETER_ERROR if the window type parameter was incorrect.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_FastAutoCrossPowerSpectrum, SDA_FastAutoPowerSpectrum, SDA_FastCrossPowerSpectrum, SDA_ArbAutoPowerSpectrum, SDA_ArbCrossPowerSpectrum, SDA_WelchRealPowerSpectrum, SDA_WelchComplexPowerSpectrum, SIF_MagnitudeSquaredCoherence, SDA_MagnitudeSquaredCoherence.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_WelchRealPowerSpectrum (const SLData_t *,  Pointer to source data
    SLData_t *,                                Pointer to destination data
    SLData_t *,                                Pointer to real internal processing array
    SLData_t *,                                Pointer to imag. internal processing array
    SLData_t *,                                Pointer to internal overlap array
    SLArrayIndex_t *,                          Pointer to overlap source array index
    SLArrayIndex_t,                            Overlap between successive arrays
    const SLData_t *,                          Pointer to window coefficients
    const SLData_t *,                          Pointer to FFT coefficients
    const SLArrayIndex_t *,                    Bit reverse mode flag / Pointer to bit
reverse address table
    const SLArrayIndex_t,                      FFT length
    const SLArrayIndex_t,                      Log2 FFT length
    const SLData_t,                            Inverse FFT length
    const SLArrayIndex_t,                      Number of arrays averaged
    const SLData_t,                            Inverse of number of arrays averaged
    const SLArrayIndex_t)                      Source array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the Welch real auto power spectrum of the supplied data.

This function performs the following operations:

- Overlapping of data from the source array into the FFT processing arrays
- Windowing
- FFT
- $X_{re}^2 + X_{im}^2$
- Averaging of a given number of FFT periodograms

NOTES ON USE

This function does not work in-place. The results are placed in the result array.

It is important to ensure that there is enough data in the source array to avoid overflow.

The result array is of length (N/2)+1 because the results in bins 0 and N/2 are purely real.

The imaginary input array is only used in the function, any input data is discarded.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_FastAutoCrossPowerSpectrum, SDA_FastCrossPowerSpectrum,
 SIF_ArbAutoCrossPowerSpectrum, SDA_ArbAutoPowerSpectrum,
 SDA_ArbCrossPowerSpectrum, SIF_WelchPowerSpectrum,
 SDA_WelchRealPowerSpectrum, SDA_WelchComplexPowerSpectrum,
 SIF_MagnitudeSquaredCoherence, SDA_MagnitudeSquaredCoherence.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_WelchComplexPowerSpectrum (const SLData_t *, Ptr. to real source data
    const SLData_t *,           Pointer to imaginary source data
    SLData_t *,                 Pointer to destination data
    SLData_t *,                 Pointer to real internal processing array
    SLData_t *,                 Pointer to imag. internal processing array
    SLData_t *,                 Pointer to internal real overlap array
    SLData_t *,                 Pointer to internal imag. overlap array
    SLArrayIndex_t *,           Pointer to overlap source array index
    SLArrayIndex_t,             Overlap between successive arrays
    const SLData_t *,           Pointer to window coefficients
    const SLData_t *,           Pointer to FFT coefficients
    const SLArrayIndex_t *,     Bit reverse mode flag / Pointer to bit
reverse address table
    const SLArrayIndex_t,       FFT length
    const SLArrayIndex_t,       Log2 FFT length
    const SLData_t,             Inverse FFT length
    const SLArrayIndex_t,       Number of arrays averaged
    const SLData_t,             Inverse of number of arrays averaged
    const SLArrayIndex_t)       Source array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the Welch complex auto power spectrum of the supplied data.

This function performs the following operations:

- Overlapping of data from the source array into the FFT processing arrays
- Windowing
- FFT
- $X_{re}^2 + X_{im}^2$
- Averaging of a given number of FFT periodograms

NOTES ON USE

This function does not work in-place. The results are placed in the result array.

It is important to ensure that there is enough data in the source array to avoid overflow.

The result array is of length $(N/2)+1$ because the results with real data, in bins 0 and $N/2$, are purely real.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_FastAutoCrossPowerSpectrum, SDA_FastCrossPowerSpectrum,
 SIF_ArbAutoCrossPowerSpectrum, SDA_ArbAutoPowerSpectrum,
 SDA_ArbCrossPowerSpectrum, SIF_WelchPowerSpectrum,
 SDA_WelchRealPowerSpectrum, SIF_MagnitudeSquaredCoherence,
 SDA_MagnitudeSquaredCoherence.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SIF_MagnitudeSquaredCoherence (SLData_t *,    FFT coefficient pointer  
    SLArrayIndex_t *,                          Bit reverse mode flag / Pointer to bit  
reverse address table  
    const SLArrayIndex_t,                      FFT Size  
    SLData_t *)                               Pointer to inverse FFT Size
```

DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the magnitude squared coherence function tables.

NOTES ON USE

Please refer to the documentation for the FFT functions for further details.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_FastAutoPowerSpectrum, SDA_FastCrossPowerSpectrum,
SIF_ArbAutoCrossPowerSpectrum, SDA_ArbAutoPowerSpectrum,
SDA_ArbCrossPowerSpectrum, SIF_WelchPowerSpectrum,
SDA_WelchRealPowerSpectrum, SDA_WelchComplexPowerSpectrum,
SDA_MagnitudeSquaredCoherence.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_MagnitudeSquaredCoherence (SLData_t *,      Pointer to real array 1
    SLData_t *,      Pointer to internal imaginary data 1
    SLData_t *,      Pointer to real source data 2
    SLData_t *,      Pointer to internal imaginary data 2
    SLData_t *,      Pointer to internal temporary real data 1
    SLData_t *,      Pointer to internal temp. imag. data 1
    SLData_t *,      Pointer to internal temporary real data 2
    SLData_t *,      Pointer to internal temp. imag. data 2
    const SLData_t *, Pointer to FFT coefficients
    const SLArrayIndex_t *, Bit reverse mode flag / Pointer to bit
reverse address table
    const SLArrayIndex_t,   FFT length
    const SLArrayIndex_t,   Log2 FFT length
    const SLData_t)         Inverse FFT length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the magnitude squared coherence of the supplied data, according to the following equation:

$$MSC(f) = \frac{|P_{xy}(f)|^2}{P_{xx}(f) \cdot P_{yy}(f)}$$

Where:

Is $P_{xy}(f)$ the cross power spectrum of inputs $x[n]$ and $y[n]$
and:

and $P_{xx}(f)$ are the $P_{yy}(f)$ auto power spectra of inputs $x[n]$ and $y[n]$

NOTES ON USE

This function places the results in real array 1. The data in imaginary array 1 and both array 2s are destroyed.

This function does not check for numerical overflow in the internal divide operation. The imaginary input arrays are only used in the function, any input data is discarded. The result array is of length (N/2)+1 because the results in bins 0 and N/2 are purely real.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_FastAutoCrossPowerSpectrum, SDA_FastCrossPowerSpectrum,
SIF_ArbAutoCrossPowerSpectrum, SDA_ArbAutoPowerSpectrum,
SDA_ArbCrossPowerSpectrum, SIF_WelchPowerSpectrum,
SDA_WelchRealPowerSpectrum, SDA_WelchComplexPowerSpectrum,
SIF_MagnitudeSquaredCoherence.

Frequency Domain Filtering Functions (*fdfilter.c*)

SIF_FirOverlapAdd

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SIF_FirOverlapAdd (const SLData_t *, Time Domain coeffs pointer
    SLData_t *, Real freq. domain coeffs pointer
    SLData_t *, Imag. freq. domain coeffs pointer
    SLData_t *, Overlap array pointer
    SLArrayIndex_t *, FFT coefficients pointer
reverse address table FFT Bit reverse mode flag / Pointer to bit
    SLData_t *, Pointer to inverse FFT length
    const SLArrayIndex_t, FFT Length
    const SLArrayIndex_t, Log10 FFT Length
    const SLArrayIndex_t) Filter length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the frequency domain overlap-add function. The primary role for this function is to convert the time domain coefficients to the frequency domain and prepare the overlap array.

The overlap array must be of length "filter length -1".

NOTES ON USE

The FFT length must be greater than (Input length + Filter Length - 1).

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_FirOverlapAdd.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_FirOverlapAdd (const SLData_t *,	Source data pointer
SLData_t *,	Destination data pointer
const SLData_t *,	Real freq. domain coeffs pointer
const SLData_t *,	Imaginary freq. domain coeffs pointer
SLData_t *,	Overlap array pointer
SLData_t *,	Temporary array pointer
SLData_t *,	FFT coefficients pointer
SLArrayIndex_t *,	FFT Bit reverse mode flag / Pointer to bit
reverse address table	
const SLData_t,	Inverse FFT length
const SLArrayIndex_t,	FFT Length
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Log 10 FFT Length
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Filter length
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Data set length

DESCRIPTION

This function implements the frequency domain overlap-add function. The continuous time domain data stream is split into blocks and the Fourier transform performed on the blocks. The final results are identical to those obtained with time domain filtering.

NOTES ON USE

The FFT length must be greater than (Input length + Filter Length - 1).

The processing delay is greater than the delay experienced with time domain filtering.

The overlap array must be of length "filter length -1".

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_FirOverlapAdd.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SIF_FirOverlapSave (const SLData_t *,	Time Domain coeffs pointer
SLData_t *,	Real freq. domain coeffs pointer
SLData_t *,	Imag. freq. domain coeffs pointer
SLData_t *,	Overlap array pointer
SLData_t *,	FFT coefficients pointer
SLArrayIndex_t *,	FFT Bit reverse mode flag / Pointer to bit
reverse address table	
SLData_t *,	Pointer to inverse FFT length
const SLArrayIndex_t,	FFT Length
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Log10 FFT Length
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Filter length

DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the frequency domain overlap-save function. The primary role for this function is to convert the time domain coefficients to the frequency domain and prepare the overlap array.

NOTES ON USE

The FFT length must be greater than (Input length + Filter Length - 1). The array length must be greater than or equal to the length on the filter.

The overlap array must be of length "FFT length".

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_FirOverlapSave.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```

void SDA_FirOverlapSave (const SLData_t *,      Source data pointer
                        SLData_t *,            Destination data pointer
                        const SLData_t *,       Real freq. domain coeffs pointer
                        const SLData_t *,       Imaginary freq. domain coeffs pointer
                        SLData_t *,             Overlap array pointer
                        SLData_t *,             Temporary array pointer
                        SLData_t *,             FFT coefficients pointer
                        SLArrayIndex_t *,       FFT Bit reverse mode flag / Pointer to bit
reverse address table
                        const SLData_t,        Inverse FFT length
                        const SLArrayIndex_t,   FFT Length
                        const SLArrayIndex_t,   Log 10 FFT Length
                        const SLArrayIndex_t,   Filter length
                        const SLArrayIndex_t)   Data set length

```

DESCRIPTION

This function implements the frequency domain overlap-save function. The continuous time domain data stream is split into blocks and the Fourier transform performed on the blocks. The final results are identical to those obtained with time domain filtering.

NOTES ON USE

The FFT length must be greater than (Input length + Filter Length - 1). The array length must be greater than or equal to the length on the filter.

The processing delay is greater than the delay experienced with time domain filtering.

The overlap array must be of length "FFT length".

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_FirOverlapSave.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SIF_FftConvolvePre (const SLData_t *,   Pointer to time domain filter coeffs
                        SLData_t *,           Pointer to real freq. domain filter coeffs
                        SLData_t *,           Pointer to imag freq. domain filter coeffs
                        SLData_t *,           Pointer to FFT coefficients
                        SLArrayIndex_t *,     Pointer to bit reverse address table
                        const SLArrayIndex_t, Filter length
                        const SLArrayIndex_t, FFT length
                        const SLArrayIndex_t) Log 2 FFT length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the frequency convolution function (SDA_FftConvolvePre).

This function converts the time domain filter coefficients to the frequency domain.

NOTES ON USE

The FFT length must be greater than $(N + M - 1)$. Where N and M are the lengths of the two time domain arrays provided to the function SDA_FftConvolvePre.

The processing delay is greater than the delay experienced with time domain convolution.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_FftConvolvePre, SDA_FftConvolveArb, SIF_FftCorrelatePre,
SDA_FftCorrelatePre, SDA_FftCorrelateArb.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_FftConvolvePre (SLData_t *,	Pointer to real time domain source data
SLData_t *,	Pointer to imag time domain source data
SLData_t *,	Pointer to real freq. domain filter coeffs
SLData_t *,	Pointer to imag freq. domain filter coeffs
SLData_t *,	Pointer to destination array
const SLData_t *,	Pointer to FFT coefficients
const SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to bit reverse address table
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Source length
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Filter length
const SLArrayIndex_t,	FFT length
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Log 2 FFT length
const SLData_t)	Inverse FFT length

DESCRIPTION

This function performs the frequency convolution function of two discrete time domain sequences.

The time domain filter coefficients are pre-converted to the frequency domain using the function SIF_FftConvolvePre so this function is more efficient than performing the time domain to frequency domain conversion on both time domain sequences.

NOTES ON USE

The FFT length must be greater than $(N + M - 1)$. Where N and M are the lengths of the two time domain arrays provided to the function.

The processing delay is greater than the delay experienced with time domain convolution.

The data in the source arrays is destroyed when this function is called. This function is not able to process the data “in-place”.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_FftConvolvePre, SDA_FftConvolveArb, SIF_FftCorrelatePre,
SDA_FftCorrelatePre, SDA_FftCorrelateArb.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_FftConvolveArb (SLData_t *,      Pointer to real time domain source data 1
                        SLData_t *,      Pointer to imag. time domain src data 1
                        SLData_t *,      Pointer to real time domain source data 2
                        SLData_t *,      Pointer to imag. time domain src data 2
                        SLData_t *,      Pointer to destination array
                        const SLData_t *, Pointer to FFT coefficients
                        const SLArrayIndex_t *, Pointer to bit reverse address table
                        const SLArrayIndex_t, Source 1 length
                        const SLArrayIndex_t, Source 2 length
                        const SLArrayIndex_t, FFT length
                        const SLArrayIndex_t, Log 2 FFT length
                        const SLData_t)     Inverse FFT length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function performs the frequency convolution function of two discrete time domain sequences.

NOTES ON USE

The FFT length must be greater than $(N + M - 1)$. Where N and M are the lengths of the two time domain arrays provided to the function.

The processing delay is greater than the delay experienced with time domain convolution.

The data in the source arrays is destroyed when this function is called. This function is not able to process the data “in-place”.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_FftConvolvePre, SDA_FftConvolvePre, SIF_FftCorrelatePre,
SDA_FftCorrelatePre, SDA_FftCorrelateArb.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SIF_FftCorrelatePre (const SLData_t *,Pointer to time domain filter coefficients
    SLData_t *,                          Pointer to real freq. domain filter coeffs
    SLData_t *,                          Pointer to imag freq. domain filter coeffs
    SLData_t *,                          Pointer to FFT coefficients
    SLArrayIndex_t *,                    Pointer to bit reverse address table
    const SLArrayIndex_t,                Filter length
    const SLArrayIndex_t,                FFT length
    const SLArrayIndex_t)                Log 2 FFT length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the frequency correlation function (SDA_FftCorrelatePre).

This function converts the time domain sequence to the frequency domain.

NOTES ON USE

The FFT length must be greater than $(N + M - 1)$. Where N and M are the lengths of the two time domain arrays provided to the function.

The processing delay is greater than the delay experienced with time domain correlation SDA_FftCorrelatePre.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_FftConvolvePre, SDA_FftConvolvePre, SDA_FftConvolveArb,
SDA_FftCorrelatePre, SDA_FftCorrelateArb.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_FftCorrelatePre (SLData_t *,	Pointer to real time domain source data
SLData_t *,	Pointer to imag time domain source data
SLData_t *,	Pointer to real freq. domain filter coeffs
SLData_t *,	Pointer to imag freq. domain filter coeffs
SLData_t *,	Pointer to destination array
const SLData_t *,	Pointer to FFT coefficients
const SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to bit reverse address table
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Source length
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Filter length
const SLArrayIndex_t,	FFT length
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Log 2 FFT length
const SLData_t)	Inverse FFT length

DESCRIPTION

This function performs the frequency domain correlation of two discrete time domain sequences.

The time domain filter coefficients are pre-converted to the frequency domain using the function SIF_FftCorrelatePre so this function is more efficient than performing the time domain to frequency domain conversion on both time domain sequences.

NOTES ON USE

The FFT length must be greater than $(N + M - 1)$. Where N and M are the lengths of the two time domain arrays provided to the function.

The processing delay is greater than the delay experienced with time domain filtering.

The data in the source arrays is destroyed when this function is called. This function is not able to process the data “in-place”.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_FftConvolvePre, SDA_FftConvolvePre, SDA_FftConvolveArb,
SIF_FftCorrelatePre, SDA_FftCorrelateArb.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_FftCorrelateArb (SLData_t *,	Pointer to real time domain source data 1
SLData_t *,	Pointer to imag time domain src. data 1
SLData_t *,	Pointer to real time domain source data 2
SLData_t *,	Pointer to imag time domain src. data 2
SLData_t *,	Pointer to destination array
const SLData_t *,	Pointer to FFT coefficients
const SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to bit reverse address table
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Source 1 length
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Source 2 length
const SLArrayIndex_t,	FFT length
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Log 2 FFT length
const SLData_t)	Inverse FFT length

DESCRIPTION

This function performs the frequency domain correlation of two discrete time domain sequences.

NOTES ON USE

The FFT length must be greater than $(N + M - 1)$. Where N and M are the lengths of the two time domain arrays provided to the function.

The processing delay is greater than the delay experienced with time domain filtering.

The data in the source arrays is destroyed when this function is called. This function is not able to process the data “in-place”.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_FftConvolvePre, SDA_FftConvolvePre, SDA_FftConvolveArb,
SIF_FftCorrelatePre, SDA_FftCorrelatePre.

CHIRP Z-TRANSFORM FUNCTIONS (*chirpz.c*)

The contour used for the chirp z-transform is defined as:

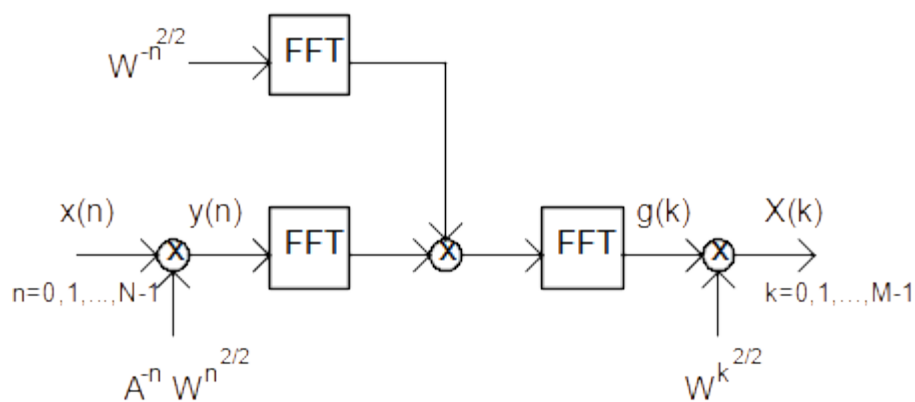
$$z_k = AW^{-k} \quad k=0,1,\dots,M-1$$

A and W are complex numbers of the type:

$$W = W_0 e^{-j\phi_0}$$

$$A = A_0 e^{j\theta_0}$$

The Chirp z-transform



PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SIF_Czt (SLData_t *,	AWN _r coefficients pointer
SLData_t *,	AWN _i coefficients pointer
SLData_t *,	WMr coefficients pointer
SLData_t *,	WMi coefficients pointer
SLData_t *,	vL _r coefficients pointer
SLData_t *,	vL _i coefficients pointer
SLData_t *,	FFT coefficient pointer
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Bit reverse mode flag / Pointer to bit
reverse address table	
const SLData_t,	Contour start radius
const SLData_t,	Contour decay rate
const SLData_t,	Contour start frequency
const SLData_t,	Contour end frequency
const SLData_t,	System sample rate
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Source array lengths
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Destination array lengths
const SLArrayIndex_t,	FFT length
const SLArrayIndex_t)	log2 FFT length

DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the coefficients for the Chirp z-Transform, according to the contour specification supplied.

NOTES ON USE

The FFT length must be greater than (Input length + Output Length - 1). The contour spirals in for decays < 0 and out for decays > 0. The sampling, start and end frequencies should all be in the same units, usually Hertz.

This function requires that the FFT coefficient array at least the length of the largest FFT length. I.E. the next largest power of 2 that is greater than or equal to twice the length of the input data set.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_Vl, SIF_Awn, SIF_Wm.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SIF_Awn (SLData_t *,	Real coefficient pointer
SLData_t *,	Imaginary coefficient pointer
const Complex,	A^{-1}
const Complex,	W
const Complex,	$W^{1/2}$
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function generates the complex window coefficients for the Chirp z-Transform.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_Vl, SIF_Wm, SIF_Czt.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SIF_VI (SLData_t *,	Real coefficient pointer
SLData_t *,	Imaginary coefficient pointer
const Complex,	$W^{(-1)}$
const Complex,	$W^{(-1/2)}$
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Source array length
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Destination array length
const SLArrayIndex_t)	FFT array length

DESCRIPTION

This function generates the contour definition coefficients for the Chirp z-Transform.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_Awn, SIF_Wm, SIF_Czt.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SIF_Wm (SLData_t *,	Real coefficient pointer
SLData_t *,	Imaginary coefficient pointer
const Complex,	W
const Complex,	$W^{(1/2)}$
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function generates the weighting coefficients for the Chirp z-Transform.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_Vl, SIF_Awn, SIF_Czt.

WINDOWING FUNCTIONS (*window.c*)

SIF_Window

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLError_t SIF_Window (SLData_t *,
 const enum SLWindow_t,
 const SLData_t,
 const SLArrayIndex_t)

Window array pointer
Window type
Window coefficient
Window length

DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the window coefficient array. The window types are defined as follows:

Enumerated type	Window type
SIGLIB_HANNING	Hanning
SIGLIB_HAMMING	Hamming
SIGLIB_GENERALIZED_COSINE	Generalized cosine
SIGLIB_BLACKMAN	Blackman
SIGLIB_BARTLETT_TRIANGLE_ZERO_END_POINTS	Bartlett / triangle with zero end points
SIGLIB_BARTLETT_TRIANGLE_NON_ZERO_END_POINTS	Bartlett / triangle with non-zero end points
SIGLIB_KAISER	Kaiser
SIGLIB_BLACKMAN_HARRIS	4th order Blackman-Harris
SIGLIB_RECTANGLE	Rectangle / none
SIGLIB_FLAT_TOP	Flat top

The window coefficient parameter is used to supply the beta coefficient to the Kaiser window. It is now used for any of the other window functions.

NOTES ON USE

This function returns SIGLIB_PARAMETER_ERROR if an incorrect window type is specified, otherwise it returns SIGLIB_NO_ERROR.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Window, SDA_ComplexWindow, SDA_WindowInverseCoherentGain, SDA_WindowEquivalentNoiseBandwidth, SDA_WindowProcessingGain, SDS_I0Bessel.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```

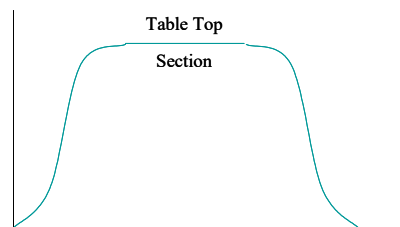
SL_Error_t SIF_TableTopWindow (SLData_t *,      Window array pointer
                               const enum SL_Window_t,      Window type
                               const SLData_t,      Window coefficient
                               const SLArrayIndex_t,      Table top length
                               const SLArrayIndex_t)      Window length

```

DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the window coefficient array. Please refer to the function `SIF_Window` for a list of the window types supported.

The window generated will have a flat “table top” section in the middle of the array so the coefficient array will look like the following diagram:



The window coefficient parameter is used to supply the beta coefficient to the Kaiser window. It is now used for any of the other window functions.

NOTES ON USE

This function returns `SIGLIB_PARAMETER_ERROR` if an incorrect window type is specified, otherwise it returns `SIGLIB_NO_ERROR`.

CROSS REFERENCE

`SDA_Window`, `SDA_ComplexWindow`, `SDA_WindowInverseCoherentGain`,
`SDA_WindowEquivalentNoiseBandwidth`, `SDA_WindowProcessingGain`,
`SDS_I0Bessel`.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_Window (const SLData_t *,	Source array pointer
SLData_t *,	Destination array pointer
const SLData_t *,	Window array pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Window length

DESCRIPTION

This function applies a window to the time domain array, prior to performing the FFT.

NOTES ON USE

The functions SIF_Window or SIF_TableTopWindow should be called prior to calling this function.

This function can operate in-place.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_Window, SIF_TableTopWindow, SDA_ComplexWindow,
SDA_WindowInverseCoherentGain, SDA_WindowEquivalentNoiseBandwidth,
SDA_WindowProcessingGain.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_ComplexWindow (const SLData_t *,    Real source pointer
                        const SLData_t *,    Imaginary source array pointer
                        SLData_t *,          Real destination array pointer
                        SLData_t *,          Imaginary destination array pointer
                        const SLData_t *,    Real window array pointer
                        const SLData_t *,    Imaginary window array pointer
                        const SLArrayIndex_t) Window length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function applies window to the time domain array, prior to performing the FFT.

NOTES ON USE

This function can operate in-place.

The same window can be applied to both real and imaginary streams if the real and imaginary window pointers point to the same window array.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_Window, SDA_Window, SDA_WindowInverseCoherentGain,
SDA_WindowEquivalentNoiseBandwidth, SDA_WindowProcessingGain.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDA_WindowInverseCoherentGain (const SLData_t *, Window data ptr.
const SLArrayIndex_t) Window length

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the inverse coherent gain of the window, so that the gain can be normalised.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_Window, SDA_Window, SDA_ComplexWindow,
SDA_WindowEquivalentNoiseBandwidth, SDA_WindowProcessingGain.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDA_WindowEquivalentNoiseBandwidth (const SLData_t *, Window
data pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t) Window length

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the equivalent noise bandwidth (ENBW) of the window.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_Window, SDA_Window, SDA_ComplexWindow,
SDA_WindowInverseCoherentGain, SDA_WindowProcessingGain.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDA_WindowProcessingGain (const SLData_t *, Window data pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t) Window length

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the processing gain of the window.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_Window, SDA_Window, SDA_ComplexWindow,
SDA_WindowInverseCoherentGain, SDA_WindowEquivalentNoiseBandwidth.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDS_I0Bessel (const )
```

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the modified Bessel function $I_0(x)$.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_Window, SDA_Window, SDA_ComplexWindow.

FIXED COEFFICIENT FILTER FUNCTIONS

FIR Filtering Functions (*firfilt.c*)

SIF_Fir

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SIF_Fir (SLData_t *,	Filter state array pointer
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Filter offset pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Filter length

DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the FIR filter functionality and clears the state array and filter offset to zero.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

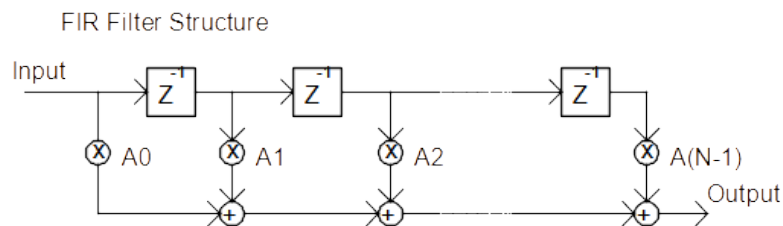
SDS_Fir, SDA_Fir, SIF_FirWithStore, SDS_FirWithStore,
SDA_FirWithStore, SDS_FirAddSample

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDS_Fir (const SLData_t,	Input data sample to be filtered
SLData_t *,	Filter state array pointer
const SLData_t *,	Filter coefficients array pointer
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Filter offset pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Filter length

DESCRIPTION

This function performs FIR filtering on a data sample. The coefficients (taps) for the FIR filter are in the form of a linear array of N points, where N is the filter length.



NOTES ON USE

The traditional method of viewing the state array is as a bucket brigade FIFO array, with data flowing in one end and falling out the other. On DSP devices that implement modulo addressing it is more efficient to use a circular array, so that for each new sample all the data does not have to be shifted up. For this reason each time the SDA_Fir function is called the current array pointer must be known. In order to make this function reusable it is necessary that each instance has a separate state array pointer, the address of which is passed to the function at call time.

Use of this function showed that the explicit test and modify for the array pointers, reaching the end of the array was more computationally efficient than using the modulo operator, which was usually handled via a function call.

SIF_Fir should be called prior to using this function, to perform the required initialisation.

CROSS REFERENCE

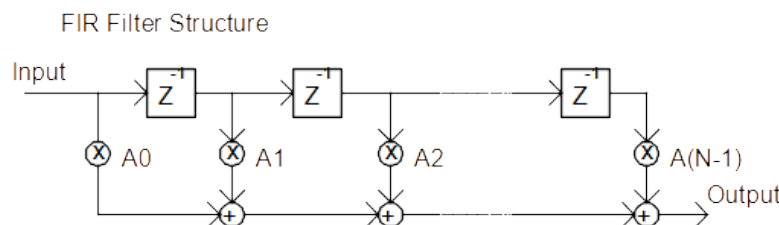
SIF_Fir, SDA_Fir, SIF_FirWithStore, SDS_FirWithStore, SDA_FirWithStore, SDS_FirAddSample

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

<code>void SDA_Fir (const SLData_t *,</code>	Input array to be filtered
<code>SLData_t *,</code>	Filtered output array
<code>SLData_t *,</code>	Filter state array pointer
<code>const SLData_t *,</code>	Filter coefficients array pointer
<code>SArrayIndex_t *,</code>	Filter offset register pointer
<code>const SArrayIndex_t,</code>	Filter length
<code>const SArrayIndex_t)</code>	Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function performs an FIR filtering on the array. The coefficients (taps) for the FIR filter are in the form of a linear array of N points, where N is the filter length.



NOTES ON USE

The traditional method of viewing the state array is as a bucket brigade FIFO array, with data flowing in one end and falling out the other. On DSP devices that implement modulo addressing it is more efficient to use a circular array, so that for each new sample all the data does not have to be shifted up. For this reason each time the SDA_Fir function is called the current array pointer must be known. In order to make this function reusable it is necessary that each instance has a separate state array pointer, the address of which is passed to the function at call time.

The input and output array pointers can point to the same array. SIF_Fir should be called prior to using this function, to perform the required initialisation.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_Fir, SDS_Fir, SIF_FirWithStore, SDS_FirWithStore, SDA_FirWithStore, SDS_FirAddSample

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDS_FirAddSample (const SLData_t,  Sample to add to delay line
                      SLData_t *,      Filter state array pointer
                      SLArrayIndex_t *,  Filter offset register pointer
                      const SLArrayIndex_t)  Filter length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function adds a new input sample into the filter delay line, without calculating the new output sample, thus saving a whole load of multiply accumulate functions.

NOTES ON USE

If you want to add samples to a complex FIR filter then this function should be called separately for the real sample/state array and the imaginary sample/state array.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_Fir, SDS_Fir, SDA_Fir, SIF_FirComplex, SDS_FirComplex,
SDA_FirComplex

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_FirAddSamples (const SLData_t *,    Array of samples to add to delay line
                        SLData_t *,          Pointer to filter state array
                        SLArrayIndex_t *,     Pointer to filter index register
                        const SLArrayIndex_t, Filter length
                        const SLArrayIndex_t) Source array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function adds a new input array of samples into the filter delay line, without calculating the new output sample, thus saving a whole load of multiply accumulate functions.

NOTES ON USE

If you want to add samples to a complex FIR filter then this function should be called separately for the real sample/state array and the imaginary sample/state array.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_Fir, SDS_Fir, SDA_Fir, SDS_FirAddSample, SIF_FirComplex,
SDS_FirComplex, SDA_FirComplex

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SIF_Comb (SLData_t *,	Filter state array pointer
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to filter index register
SLData_t *,	Pointer to filter sum register
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Filter length

DESCRIPTION

This function initializes an N delay comb (moving average) filter functionality and clears the state array, filter index and filter sum to zero.

$$\text{Comb filter output} = \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} x(n)$$

NOTES ON USE

This is a very efficient filter form, giving complete nulls at a frequency equal to the sample rate divided by the delay length and its harmonics.

When calculating the moving average it is common to expect the output to be:

$$\text{Moving Average} = \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} x(n) / N$$

The only difference between the result returned from the Comb filter and the moving average sequences is the divide by N . The reason that the divide by N is not commonly calculated in DSP is because the divide operation is very expensive in terms of MIPS and the difference is purely in the scaling of the output. If you wish to account for the scaling then the easiest way to do it is to perform the following operation:

```
SDA_Multiply (DstArray, DstArray,  
              INVERSE_COMB_FILTER_LENGTH, SAMPLE_LENGTH)
```

A more run-time efficient solution is to perform all of the DSP operations and leave the scaling to the very end.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS_Comb, SDA_Comb

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDS_Comb (const SLData_t,	Input sample to be filtered
SLData_t *,	Filter state array pointer
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Filter index pointer
SLData_t *,	Filter sum register pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Filter length

DESCRIPTION

This function performs a comb (moving average) filter on a data sample. The filter will output the running sum of the previous N samples of the input signal.

NOTES ON USE

Please refer to SIF_Comb for further information.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_Comb, SDA_Comb

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

<code>void SDA_Comb (const SLData_t *,</code>	Source array pointer
<code>SLData_t *,</code>	Destination array pointer
<code>SLData_t *,</code>	Pointer to filter state array
<code>SLArrayIndex_t *,</code>	Pointer to filter index register
<code>SLData_t *,</code>	Pointer to filter sum register
<code>const SLArrayIndex_t,</code>	Filter length
<code>const SLArrayIndex_t)</code>	Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function performs a comb (moving average) filter on the data in the source array. The filter will output the running sum of the previous N samples of the input signal.

NOTES ON USE

Please refer to SIF_Comb for further information.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_Comb, SDS_Comb

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SIF_FirComplex (SLData_t *,	Real filter state array pointer
SLData_t *,	Imaginary filter state array pointer
SArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to filter index register
const SArrayIndex_t)	Filter length

DESCRIPTION

This function initializes complex FIR filter functionality and clears the state arrays and filter index to zero.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDS_FirComplex, SDA_FirComplex

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDS_FirComplex (const SLData_t *,	Real input data sample
const SLData_t *,	Imaginary input data sample
SLData_t *,	Pointer to real destn. sample location
SLData_t *,	Pointer to imag. destn. sample location
SLData_t *,	Real state array pointer
SLData_t *,	Imaginary state array pointer
const SLData_t *,	Real coefficient array pointer
const SLData_t *,	Imaginary coefficient array pointer
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Filter index
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Filter length

DESCRIPTION

This function performs a complex FIR filter on a complex data sample. The coefficients (taps) for the FIR filter are in the form of two linear arrays (real and imaginary) of N points, where N is the filter length.

NOTES ON USE

The real and imaginary components of the complex result are returned in the locations pointed to by the destination pointers.

The traditional method of viewing the state arrays is as a bucket brigade FIFO array, with data flowing in one end and falling out the other. For execution efficiency however it is more efficient to use a circular array, so that for each new sample all the data does not have to be shifted up. For this reason each time the SDS_FirComplex function is called the current array pointer must be known. In order to make this function reusable it is necessary that each instance has a separate state array pointer, the address of which is passed to the function at call time.

The input and output array pointers can point to the same array.

SIF_FirComplex should be called prior to using this function, to perform the required initialisation.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_FirComplex, SDA_FirComplex, SDS_FirAddSample,
SDA_FirAddSamples

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_FirComplex (const SLData_t *,	Real input data to be filtered
const SLData_t *,	Imaginary input data to be filtered
SLData_t *,	Real destination array pointer
SLData_t *,	Imaginary destination array pointer
SLData_t *,	Real state array pointer
SLData_t *,	Imaginary state array pointer
const SLData_t *,	Real coefficient array pointer
const SLData_t *,	Imaginary coefficient array pointer
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Filter index
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Filter length
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function performs a complex FIR filter on a complex data array. The coefficients (taps) for the FIR filter are in the form of two linear arrays of N points (real and imaginary), where N is the filter length.

NOTES ON USE

The traditional method of viewing the state arrays is as a bucket brigade FIFO array, with data flowing in one end and falling out the other. For execution efficiency however it is more efficient to use a circular array, so that for each new sample all the data does not have to be shifted up. For this reason each time the SDA_FirComplex function is called the current array pointer must be known. In order to make this function reusable it is necessary that each instance has a separate state array pointer, the address of which is passed to the function at call time.

The input and output array pointers can point to the same array.

SIF_FirComplex should be called prior to using this function, to perform the required initialisation.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_FirComplex, SDS_FirComplex, SDS_FirAddSample,
SDA_FirAddSamples

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SIF_FirWithStore (SLData_t *,	Filter state array pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Filter length

DESCRIPTION

This function initializes FIR With Store filter functionality and clears the state array to zero.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

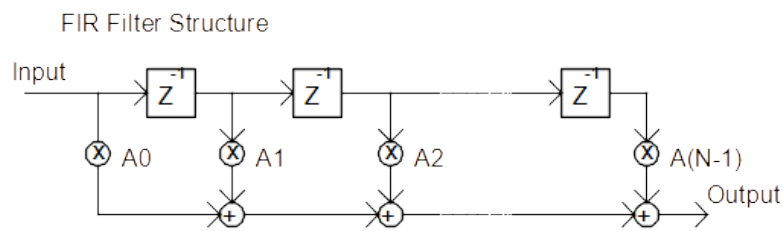
SDS_FirWithStore, SDA_FirWithStore, SIF_Fir, SDS_Fir, SDA_Fir,
SDS_FirAddSample

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDS_FirWithStore (const SLData_t, Input data sample to be filtered
 SLData_t *, Filter state array pointer
 const SLData_t *, Filter coefficients array pointer
 const SLArrayIndex_t) Filter length

DESCRIPTION

This function performs an FIR filter on a data sample. The coefficients (taps) for the FIR filter are in the form of a linear array of N points, where N is the filter length.



NOTES ON USE

This function implements the traditional method of viewing the state array, as a bucket brigade FIFO array, with data flowing in one end and falling out the other. This means that this implementation performs additional stores for the filter state but can be more efficient on architectures that do not support modulo data addressing.

The input and output array pointers can point to the same array.

SIF_FirWithStore should be called prior to using this function, to perform the required initialisation.

CROSS REFERENCE

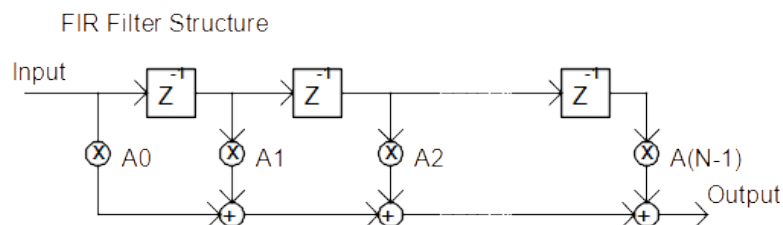
SIF_FirWithStore, SDA_FirWithStore, SIF_Fir, SDS_Fir, SDA_Fir,
 SDS_FirAddSample

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_FirWithStore (const SLData_t *, Input array to be filtered
    SLData_t *,           Filtered output array
    SLData_t *,           Filter state array pointer
    const SLData_t *,     Filter coefficients array pointer
    SLArrayIndex_t *,     Filter offset register pointer
    const SLArrayIndex_t, Filter length
    const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function performs an FIR filter on the array. The coefficients (taps) for the FIR filter are in the form of a linear array of N points, where N is the filter length.



NOTES ON USE

This function implements the traditional method of viewing the state array, as a bucket brigade FIFO array, with data flowing in one end and falling out the other. This means that this implementation performs additional stores for the filter state but can be more efficient on architectures that do not support modulo data addressing.

The input and output array pointers can point to the same array.

SIF_FirWithStore should be called prior to using this function, to perform the required initialisation.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_FirWithStore, SDS_FirWithStore, SIF_Fir, SDS_Fir, SDA_Fir, SDS_FirAddSample

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SIF_FirComplexWithStore (SLData_t *,      Real filter state array pointer
                               SLData_t *,      Imaginary filter state array pointer
                               const SLArrayIndex_t)  Filter length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function initializes complex FIR With Store filter functionality and clears the state arrays and filter index to zero.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS_FirComplexWithStore, SDA_FirComplexWithStore

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDS_FirComplexWithStore (const SLData_t *,      Real input data sample
                             const SLData_t *,      Imaginary input data sample
                             SLData_t *,            Pointer to real destn. sample location
                             SLData_t *,            Pointer to imag. destn. sample location
                             SLData_t *,            Real state array pointer
                             SLData_t *,            Imaginary state array pointer
                             const SLData_t *,      Real coefficient array pointer
                             const SLData_t *,      Imaginary coefficient array pointer
                             const SLArrayIndex_t)   Filter length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function performs a complex FIR With Store filter on a complex data sample. The coefficients (taps) for the FIR filter are in the form of two linear arrays (real and imaginary) of N points, where N is the filter length.

NOTES ON USE

The real and imaginary components of the complex result are returned in the locations pointed to by the destination pointers.

This function implements the traditional method of viewing the state array, as a bucket brigade FIFO array, with data flowing in one end and falling out the other. This means that this implementation performs additional stores for the filter state but can be more efficient on architectures that do not support modulo data addressing.

The input and output array pointers can point to the same array.

SIF_FirComplexWithStore should be called prior to using this function, to perform the required initialisation.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_FirComplexWithStore, SDA_FirComplexWithStore,
SDS_FirAddSampleWithStore, SDA_FirAddSamplesWithStore

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_FirComplexWithStore (const SLData_t *,	Real input data to be filtered
filtered	
const SLData_t *,	Imaginary input data to be filtered
SLData_t *,	Real destination array pointer
SLData_t *,	Imaginary destination array pointer
SLData_t *,	Real state array pointer
SLData_t *,	Imaginary state array pointer
const SLData_t *,	Real coefficient array pointer
const SLData_t *,	Imaginary coefficient array pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Filter length
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function performs a complex FIR With Store filter on a complex data array. The coefficients (taps) for the FIR filter are in the form of two linear arrays of N points (real and imaginary), where N is the filter length.

NOTES ON USE

This function implements the traditional method of viewing the state array, as a bucket brigade FIFO array, with data flowing in one end and falling out the other. This means that this implementation performs additional stores for the filter state but can be more efficient on architectures that do not support modulo data addressing.

The input and output array pointers can point to the same array.

SIF_FirComplexWithStore should be called prior to using this function, to perform the required initialisation.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_FirComplexWithStore, SDS_FirComplexWithStore,
SDS_FirAddSampleWithStore, SDA_FirAddSamplesWithStore

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDS_FirAddSampleWithStore (const SLData_t,      Sample to add to delay  
line  
                                SLData_t *,          Filter state array pointer  
                                const SLArrayIndex_t) Filter length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function adds a new input sample into the filter delay line, without calculating the new output sample, thus saving a whole load of multiply accumulate functions.

NOTES ON USE

If you want to add samples to a complex FIR filter then this function should be called separately for the real sample/state array and the imaginary sample/state array.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_FirWithStore, SDS_FirWithStore, SDA_FirWithStore,
SIF_FirComplexWithStore, SDS_FirComplexWithStore, SDA_FirComplexWithStore

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_FirAddSamplesWithStore (const SLData_t *, Array of samples to add to delay line

SLData_t *,	Pointer to filter state array
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Filter length
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Source array length

DESCRIPTION

This function adds a new input array of samples into the filter delay line, without calculating the new output sample, thus saving a whole load of multiply accumulate functions.

NOTES ON USE

If you want to add samples to a complex FIR filter then this function should be called separately for the real sample/state array and the imaginary sample/state array.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_FirWithStore, SDS_FirWithStore, SDA_FirWithStore,
SIF_FirComplexWithStore, SDS_FirComplexWithStore, SDA_FirComplexWithStore

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

<code>void SIF_FirExtendedArray (SLData_t *,</code>	Filter state array pointer
<code>const SLData_t *,</code>	Pointer to filter coefficients
<code>SLData_t *,</code>	Pointer to filter processing coefficients
<code>SLArrayIndex_t *,</code>	Filter offset pointer
<code>const SLArrayIndex_t)</code>	Filter length

DESCRIPTION

This function initializes FIR filter with extended state and coefficient array functionality and clears the state array and filter offset to zero.

NOTES ON USE

The extended array functions use double length coefficient processing and state arrays to reduce the circular buffer overhead. These arrays should be created using the function `SUF_FirExtendedArrayAllocate()`.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS_FirExtendedArray, SDA_FirExtendedArray,
SIF_FirComplexExtendedArray, SDS_FirComplexExtendedArray,
SDA_FirComplexExtendedArray, SDS_FirExtendedArrayAddSample,
SDA_FirExtendedArrayAddSamples

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLData_t SDS_FirExtendedArray (const SLData_t, Input data sample to be filtered
    SLData_t *,                               Filter state array pointer
    const SLData_t *,                         Filter coefficients array pointer
    SLArrayIndex_t *,                        Filter offset pointer
    const SLArrayIndex_t)                    Filter length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function performs the FIR filter with extended state and coefficient array on a data sample. The coefficients (taps) for the FIR filter are in the form of a duplicated linear array of 2xN points, where N is the filter length.

NOTES ON USE

The extended array functions use double length coefficient processing and state arrays to reduce the circular buffer overhead. These arrays should be created using the function `SUF_FirExtendedArrayAllocate()`. This algorithm requires additional memory for the filter state and coefficients but can be more efficient on architectures that do not support modulo data addressing.

`SIF_FirExtendedArray()` should be called prior to using this function, to perform the required initialisation.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_FirExtendedArray, SDA_FirExtendedArray,
SIF_FirComplexExtendedArray, SDS_FirComplexExtendedArray,
SDA_FirComplexExtendedArray, SDS_FirExtendedArrayAddSample,
SDA_FirExtendedArrayAddSamples

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_FirExtendedArray (const SLData_t *,    Input array to be filtered
                          SLData_t *,          Filtered output array
                          SLData_t *,          Filter state array pointer
                          const SLData_t *,     Filter coefficients array pointer
                          SLArrayIndex_t *,     Filter offset register pointer
                          const SLArrayIndex_t, Filter length
                          const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function performs the FIR filter with extended state and coefficient array on a data array. The coefficients (taps) for the FIR filter are in the form of a duplicated linear array of $2 \times N$ points, where N is the filter length.

NOTES ON USE

The extended array functions use double length coefficient processing and state arrays to reduce the circular buffer overhead. These arrays should be created using the function `SUF_FirExtendedArrayAllocate()`. This algorithm requires additional memory for the filter state and coefficients but can be more efficient on architectures that do not support modulo data addressing.

`SIF_FirExtendedArray()` should be called prior to using this function, to perform the required initialisation.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_FirExtendedArray, SDS_FirExtendedArray,
SIF_FirComplexExtendedArray, SDS_FirComplexExtendedArray,
SDA_FirComplexExtendedArray, SDS_FirExtendedArrayAddSample,
SDA_FirExtendedArrayAddSamples

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SIF_FirComplexExtendedArray (SLData_t *, Real filter state array pointer
    SLData_t *,                      Imaginary filter state array pointer
    const SLData_t *,                Pointer to real filter coefficients
    const SLData_t *,                Pointer to imaginary filter coefficients
    SLData_t *,                      Pointer to real filter processing
coefficients
    SLData_t *,                      Pointer to imaginary filter processing
coefficients
    SLArrayIndex_t *,                Pointer to filter index register
    const SLArrayIndex_t)            Filter length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function initializes complex FIR filter with extended state and coefficient array functionality and clears the state arrays and filter index to zero.

NOTES ON USE

The coefficient processing and state arrays should be created using the function `SUF_FirExtendedArrayAllocate()`.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_FirExtendedArray, SDS_FirExtendedArray, SDA_FirExtendedArray,
SDS_FirComplexExtendedArray, SDA_FirComplexExtendedArray,
SDS_FirExtendedArrayAddSample, SDA_FirExtendedArrayAddSamples

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDS_FirComplexExtendedArray (const SLData_t *,   Real input data sample
    const SLData_t *,                               Imaginary input data sample
    SLData_t *,                                     Pointer to real destn. sample location
    SLData_t *,                                     Pointer to imag. destn. sample location
    SLData_t *,                                     Real state array pointer
    SLData_t *,                                     Imaginary state array pointer
    const SLData_t *,                               Real coefficient array pointer
    const SLData_t *,                               Imaginary coefficient array pointer
    SLArrayIndex_t *,                               Filter index
    const SLArrayIndex_t)                           Filter length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function performs the FIR filter with extended state and coefficient array on a complex data sample. The coefficients (taps) for the FIR filter are in the form of two extended linear arrays (real and imaginary) of 2xN points, where N is the filter length.

NOTES ON USE

The real and imaginary components of the complex result are returned in the locations pointed to by the destination pointers.

This FIR filter method uses a duplicated state array and coefficient array to reduce the overhead of implementing a bucket brigade state array. This means that this implementation requires additional memory for the filter state and coefficients but can be more efficient on architectures that do not support modulo data addressing.

SIF_FirComplexExtendedArray should be called prior to using this function, to perform the required initialisation.

The input and output array pointers can point to the same array.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_FirExtendedArray, SDS_FirExtendedArray, SDA_FirExtendedArray,
SIF_FirComplexExtendedArray, SDA_FirComplexExtendedArray,
SDS_FirExtendedArrayAddSample, SDA_FirExtendedArrayAddSamples

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_FirComplexExtendedArray (const SLData_t *, Real input data to be
filtered
    const SLData_t *,           Imaginary input data to be filtered
    SLData_t *,                 Real destination array pointer
    SLData_t *,                 Imaginary destination array pointer
    SLData_t *,                 Real state array pointer
    SLData_t *,                 Imaginary state array pointer
    const SLData_t *,           Real coefficient array pointer
    const SLData_t *,           Imaginary coefficient array pointer
    SLArrayIndex_t *,           Filter index
    const SLArrayIndex_t,       Filter length
    const SLArrayIndex_t)       Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function performs the FIR filter with extended state and coefficient array on a complex data array. The coefficients (taps) for the FIR filter are in the form of two extended linear arrays (real and imaginary) of $2 \times N$ points, where N is the filter length.

NOTES ON USE

The real and imaginary components of the complex result are returned in the locations pointed to by the destination pointers.

This FIR filter method uses a duplicated state array and coefficient array to reduce the overhead of implementing a bucket brigade state array. This means that this implementation requires additional memory for the filter state and coefficients but can be more efficient on architectures that do not support modulo data addressing.

SIF_FirComplexExtendedArray should be called prior to using this function, to perform the required initialisation.

The input and output array pointers can point to the same array.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_FirExtendedArray, SDS_FirExtendedArray, SDA_FirExtendedArray,
 SIF_FirComplexExtendedArray, SDS_FirComplexExtendedArray,
 SDS_FirExtendedArrayAddSample, SDA_FirExtendedArrayAddSamples

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDS_FirExtendedArrayAddSample (const SLData_t, Sample to add to delay line

SLData_t *,	Filter state array pointer
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Filter offset register pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Filter length

DESCRIPTION

This function adds a new input sample into the filter with extended state and coefficient delay line, without calculating the new output sample, thus saving a whole load of multiply accumulate functions.

NOTES ON USE

If you want to add samples to a complex FIR filter then this function should be called separately for the real sample/state array and the imaginary sample/state array.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_FirExtendedArray, SDS_FirExtendedArray, SDA_FirExtendedArray,
SIF_FirComplexExtendedArray, SDS_FirComplexExtendedArray,
SDA_FirComplexExtendedArray, SDA_FirExtendedArrayAddSamples

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_FirExtendedArrayAddSamples (const SLData_t *, Array of samples to add to delay line

SLData_t *,	Pointer to filter state array
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to filter index register
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Filter length
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Source array length

DESCRIPTION

This function adds a new input array of samples into the filter with extended state and coefficient delay line, without calculating the new output sample, thus saving a whole load of multiply accumulate functions.

NOTES ON USE

If you want to add samples to a complex FIR filter then this function should be called separately for the real sample/state array and the imaginary sample/state array.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_FirExtendedArray, SDS_FirExtendedArray, SDA_FirExtendedArray,
SIF_FirComplexExtendedArray, SDS_FirComplexExtendedArray,
SDA_FirComplexExtendedArray, SDS_FirExtendedArrayAddSample

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SL_Error_t SIF_FirLowPassFilter (SLData_t *, Filter coefficients array
 const SLData_t, Filter cut off frequency
 const enum SL_Window_t, Window type
 const SLArrayIndex_t) Filter length

DESCRIPTION

This function generates the coefficients for a low-pass FIR filter. The coefficients (taps) for the FIR filter are in the form of a linear array of N points, where N is the filter length.

The filter is designed using the windowing method and the required window type can be chosen as a parameter to the function.

NOTES ON USE

This function generates a linear phase filter so the delay through the filter is equal to the middle sample in the coefficient array. So if the filter is 27 coefficients long then the middle sample is number 14 – C index 13. This means that the filter should always have an odd number of coefficients.

This function uses the malloc and free functions, it will return an error if these functions fail.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_Fir, SDA_Fir, SIF_FirHighPassFilter, SIF_FirBandPassFilter,
SIF_FirLowPassFilterWindow, SIF_FirHighPassFilterWindow,
SIF_FirBandPassFilterWindow

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

`SL_Error_t SIF_FirHighPassFilter (SLData_t *, Filter coefficients array
 const SLData_t, Filter cut off frequency
 const enum SL_Window_t, Window type
 const SLArrayIndex_t) Filter length`

DESCRIPTION

This function generates the coefficients for a high-pass FIR filter. The coefficients (taps) for the FIR filter are in the form of a linear array of N points, where N is the filter length.

The filter is designed using the windowing method and the required window type can be chosen as a parameter to the function.

NOTES ON USE

This function generates a linear phase filter so the delay through the filter is equal to the middle sample in the coefficient array. So if the filter is 27 coefficients long then the middle sample is number 14 – C index 13. This means that the filter should always have an odd number of coefficients.

This function uses the malloc and free functions, it will return an error if these functions fail.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_Fir, SDA_Fir, SIF_FirLowPassFilter, SIF_FirBandPassFilter,
SIF_FirLowPassFilterWindow, SIF_FirHighPassFilterWindow,
SIF_FirBandPassFilterWindow

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SL_Error_t SIF_FirBandPassFilter (SLData_t *,      Filter coefficients array
                                const SLData_t,    Filter centre frequency
                                const SLData_t,    Filter bandwidth
                                const enum SLWindow_t, Window type
                                const SLArrayIndex_t) Filter length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function generates the coefficients for a band-pass FIR filter. The coefficients (taps) for the FIR filter are in the form of a linear array of N points, where N is the filter length.

The filter is designed using the windowing method and the required window type can be chosen as a parameter to the function.

With appropriate parameter choice, this function can also generate low-pass and high-pass filters.

NOTES ON USE

This function generates a linear phase filter so the delay through the filter is equal to the middle sample in the coefficient array. So if the filter is 27 coefficients long then the middle sample is number 14 – C index 13. This means that the filter should always have an odd number of coefficients.

This function uses the malloc and free functions, it will return an error if these functions fail.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_Fir, SDA_Fir, SIF_FirLowPassFilter, SIF_FirHighPassFilter,
SIF_FirLowPassFilterWindow, SIF_FirHighPassFilterWindow,
SIF_FirBandPassFilterWindow

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SIF_FirLowPassFilterWindow (SLData_t *,   Filter coefficients array
                                const SLData_t,   Filter cut off frequency
                                const SLData_t *,   Pointer to window coefficients
                                const SLArrayIndex_t) Filter length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function generates the coefficients for a low-pass FIR filter. The coefficients (taps) for the FIR filter are in the form of a linear array of N points, where N is the filter length.

The filter is designed using the windowing method and the required window coefficients can be passed as a parameter to the function.

NOTES ON USE

This function generates a linear phase filter so the delay through the filter is equal to the middle sample in the coefficient array. So if the filter is 27 coefficients long then the middle sample is number 14 – C index 13. This means that the filter should always have an odd number of coefficients.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_Fir, SDA_Fir, SIF_FirLowPassFilter, SIF_FirHighPassFilter,
SIF_FirBandPassFilter, SIF_FirHighPassFilterWindow,
SIF_FirBandPassFilterWindow

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SIF_FirHighPassFilterWindow (SLData_t *,   Filter coefficients array  
    const SLData_t,                          Filter cut off frequency  
    const SLData_t *,                        Pointer to window coefficients  
    const SLArrayIndex_t)                   Filter length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function generates the coefficients for a high-pass FIR filter. The coefficients (taps) for the FIR filter are in the form of a linear array of N points, where N is the filter length.

The filter is designed using the windowing method and the required window coefficients can be passed as a parameter to the function.

NOTES ON USE

This function generates a linear phase filter so the delay through the filter is equal to the middle sample in the coefficient array. So if the filter is 27 coefficients long then the middle sample is number 14 – C index 13. This means that the filter should always have an odd number of coefficients.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_Fir, SDA_Fir, SIF_FirLowPassFilter, SIF_FirHighPassFilter,
SIF_FirBandPassFilter, SIF_FirLowPassFilterWindow,
SIF_FirBandPassFilterWindow

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SIF_FirBandPassFilterWindow (SLData_t *,  Filter coefficients array
    const SLData_t,                          Filter centre frequency
    const SLData_t,                          Filter bandwidth
    const SLData_t *,                        Pointer to window coefficients
    const SLArrayIndex_t)                   Filter length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function generates the coefficients for a band-pass FIR filter. The coefficients (taps) for the FIR filter are in the form of a linear array of N points, where N is the filter length.

The filter is designed using the windowing method and the required window coefficients can be passed as a parameter to the function.

With appropriate parameter choice, this function can also generate low-pass and high-pass filters.

NOTES ON USE

This function generates a linear phase filter so the delay through the filter is equal to the middle sample in the coefficient array. So if the filter is 27 coefficients long then the middle sample is number 14 – C index 13. This means that the filter should always have an odd number of coefficients.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_Fir, SDA_Fir, SIF_FirLowPassFilter, SIF_FirHighPassFilter,
SIF_FirBandPassFilter, SIF_FirLowPassFilterWindow,
SIF_FirHighPassFilterWindow

DESCRIPTION

$$N = (((-20.0 * \log_{10}(\sqrt{\delta_l - \delta_2}))) - 13.0) / (14.6 * \delta_f) + 1$$

Where:

$$\delta_l = 1 - 10^{(-A_{pass}/40)}$$

$$\delta_2 = 10^{(-A_{stop}/20)}$$

$$\delta_f = (F_{stop} - F_{pass}) / F_s$$

$$A_{pass} = \text{Maximum pass-band ripple (dB)}$$

$$A_{stop} = \text{Minimum stop-band ripple (dB)}$$

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF Fir, SDA Fir, SDS Fir

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SIF_FirMatchedFilter (SLData_t *,	Source signal
SLData_t *,	Output matched filter coefficients
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Filter length

DESCRIPTION

This function generates a set of coefficients for an FIR matched filter from a given input signal. The source signal should represent a single symbol of information.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF_Fir, SDA_Fir, SDS_Fir

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDA_FirFilterInverseCoherentGain (const SLData_t *, Filter coeff. ptr.
const SLArrayIndex_t) Filter length

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the inverse coherent gain of the FIR filter, so that the gain can be normalised.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_Fir, SDS_Fir, SDA_Fir, SIF_FirBandPassFilter, SIF_FirLowPassFilter,
SIF_FirHighPassFilter.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SIF_TappedDelayLine (SLData_t *,    Pointer to state array
                          SLArrayIndex_t *, Pointer to delay index
                          const SLArrayIndex_t) State array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the scalar tapped delay line functions.

NOTES ON USE

For a discussion on how to use this function for implementing a sparse tapped delay line or multi-path delay line, please refer to the NOTES for the function SDS_TappedDelayLine.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS_TappedDelayLine, SDA_TappedDelayLine,
SIF_TappedDelayLineComplex, SDS_TappedDelayLineComplex,
SDA_TappedDelayLineComplex, SIF_TappedDelayLineIQ,
SDS_TappedDelayLineIQ, SDA_TappedDelayLineIQ.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLData_t SDS_TappedDelayLine (const SLData_t, Source sample
    SLData_t *,                      Pointer to state array
    SLArrayIndex_t *,                Pointer to delay index
    SLArrayIndex_t *,                Pointer to taps locations
    const SLData_t *,                Pointer to taps gains
    const SLArrayIndex_t,            Number of taps
    const SLArrayIndex_t)            State array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the scalar tapped delayed value on a per-sample basis.

NOTES ON USE

The tapped delay function allows the implementation of a sparse tapped delay line (AKA FIR filter). This type of filter is typically used to implement a multi-path delay line for mobile communications simulation. The two primary source parameters are:

- Pointer to taps locations array
- Pointer to taps gains array

An example sparse tapped delay line is shown in the following table:

0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
10.0	0	0	13.1	0	15.2	0	17.3	0	19.4

The appropriate taps location array is as follows:

0	3	5	7	9
---	---	---	---	---

The appropriate taps location array is as follows:

10.0	13.1	15.2	17.3	19.4
------	------	------	------	------

The delay length (state array length) parameter is set to 10.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_TappedDelayLine, SDA_TappedDelayLine,
 SIF_TappedDelayLineComplex, SDS_TappedDelayLineComplex,
 SDA_TappedDelayLineComplex, SIF_TappedDelayLineIQ,
 SDS_TappedDelayLineIQ, SDA_TappedDelayLineIQ.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_TappedDelayLine (const SLData_t *,    Pointer to source array
                          SLData_t *,          Pointer to destination array
                          SLData_t *,          Pointer to state array
                          SLArrayIndex_t *,    Pointer to delay index
                          SLArrayIndex_t *,    Pointer to taps locations
                          const SLData_t *,    Pointer to taps gains
                          const SLArrayIndex_t, Number of taps
                          const SLArrayIndex_t, State array length
                          const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the scalar tapped delayed value on an array basis.

NOTES ON USE

For a discussion on how to use this function for implementing a sparse tapped delay line or multi-path delay line, please refer to the NOTES for the function SDS_TappedDelayLine.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_TappedDelayLine, SDS_TappedDelayLine,
 SIF_TappedDelayLineComplex, SDS_TappedDelayLineComplex,
 SDA_TappedDelayLineComplex, SIF_TappedDelayLineIQ,
 SDS_TappedDelayLineIQ, SDA_TappedDelayLineIQ.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SIF_TappedDelayLineComplex (SLData_t *, Pointer to real state array
                                SLData_t *,           Pointer to imaginary state array
                                SLArrayIndex_t *,       Pointer to delay index
                                const SLArrayIndex_t)   State array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the complex tapped delay line functions.

NOTES ON USE

For a discussion on how to use this function for implementing a sparse tapped delay line or multi-path delay line, please refer to the NOTES for the function SDS_TappedDelayLine.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_TappedDelayLine, SDS_TappedDelayLine, SDA_TappedDelayLine,
SDS_TappedDelayLineComplex, SDA_TappedDelayLineComplex,
SIF_TappedDelayLineIQ, SDS_TappedDelayLineIQ, SDA_TappedDelayLineIQ.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDS_TappedDelayLineComplex (const SLData_t,    Real source sample
                                const SLData_t,    Imaginary source sample
                                SLData_t *,        Pointer to real destination sample
                                SLData_t *,        Pointer to imaginary destination sample
                                SLData_t *,        Pointer to real state array
                                SLData_t *,        Pointer to imaginary state array
                                SLArrayIndex_t *,   Pointer to delay index
                                SLArrayIndex_t *,   Pointer to taps locations
                                const SLData_t *,   Pointer to real taps gains
                                const SLData_t *,   Pointer to imaginary taps gains
                                const SLArrayIndex_t, Number of taps
                                const SLArrayIndex_t) State array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the complex tapped delayed value on a per-sample basis. The function implements a complex sum of products operation between the data and the coefficients.

NOTES ON USE

For a discussion on how to use this function for implementing a sparse tapped delay line or multi-path delay line, please refer to the NOTES for the function SDS_TappedDelayLine.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_TappedDelayLine, SDS_TappedDelayLine, SDA_TappedDelayLine,
SIF_TappedDelayLineComplex, SDA_TappedDelayLineComplex,
SIF_TappedDelayLineIQ, SDS_TappedDelayLineIQ, SDA_TappedDelayLineIQ.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_TappedDelayLineComplex (const SLData_t *,  Ptr. to real source array
    const SLData_t *,                               Pointer to imaginary source array
    SLData_t *,                                     Pointer to real destination array
    SLData_t *,                                     Pointer to imaginary destination array
    SLData_t *,                                     Pointer to real state array
    SLData_t *,                                     Pointer to imaginary state array
    SLArrayIndex_t *,                              Pointer to delay index
    SLArrayIndex_t *,                              Pointer to taps locations
    const SLData_t *,                               Pointer to real taps gains
    const SLData_t *,                               Pointer to imaginary taps gains
    const SLArrayIndex_t,                           Number of taps
    const SLArrayIndex_t,                           State array length
    const SLArrayIndex_t)                           Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the complex tapped delayed value on an array basis. The function implements a complex sum of products operation between the data and the coefficients.

NOTES ON USE

For a discussion on how to use this function for implementing a sparse tapped delay line or multi-path delay line, please refer to the NOTES for the function SDS_TappedDelayLine.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_TappedDelayLine, SDS_TappedDelayLine, SDA_TappedDelayLine,
 SIF_TappedDelayLineComplex, SDS_TappedDelayLineComplex,
 SIF_TappedDelayLineIQ, SDS_TappedDelayLineIQ, SDA_TappedDelayLineIQ.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SIF_TappedDelayLineIQ (SLData_t *, Pointer to real state array
    SLData_t *,                      Pointer to imaginary state array
    SLArrayIndex_t *,                Pointer to delay index
    const SLArrayIndex_t)            State array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the IQ tapped delay line functions.

NOTES ON USE

For a discussion on how to use this function for implementing a sparse tapped delay line or multi-path delay line, please refer to the NOTES for the function SDS_TappedDelayLine.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_TappedDelayLine, SDS_TappedDelayLine, SDA_TappedDelayLine,
SIF_TappedDelayLineComplex, SDS_TappedDelayLineComplex,
SDA_TappedDelayLineComplex, SDS_TappedDelayLineIQ,
SDA_TappedDelayLineIQ.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDS_TappedDelayLineIQ (const SLData_t,    Real source sample
                           const SLData_t,    Imaginary source sample
                           SLData_t *,        Pointer to real destination sample
                           SLData_t *,        Pointer to imaginary destination sample
                           SLData_t *,        Pointer to real state array
                           SLData_t *,        Pointer to imaginary state array
                           SLArrayIndex_t *,  Pointer to delay index
                           SLArrayIndex_t *,  Pointer to taps locations
                           const SLData_t *,  Pointer to real taps gains
                           const SLData_t *,  Pointer to imaginary taps gains
                           const SLArrayIndex_t, Number of taps
                           const SLArrayIndex_t) State array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the complex tapped delayed value on a per-sample basis. The function implements a scalar sum of products operation between the data and the coefficients i.e. it separately multiplies the real data samples by the real coefficients and the imaginary data samples by the imaginary coefficients.

NOTES ON USE

For a discussion on how to use this function for implementing a sparse tapped delay line or multi-path delay line, please refer to the NOTES for the function SDS_TappedDelayLine.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_TappedDelayLine, SDS_TappedDelayLine, SDA_TappedDelayLine, SIF_TappedDelayLineComplex, SDS_TappedDelayLineComplex, SDA_TappedDelayLineComplex, SIF_TappedDelayLineIQ, SDA_TappedDelayLineIQ.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_TappedDelayLineIQ (const SLData_t *, Pointer to real source array
    const SLData_t *,           Pointer to imaginary source array
    SLData_t *,                 Pointer to real destination array
    SLData_t *,                 Pointer to imaginary destination array
    SLData_t *,                 Pointer to real state array
    SLData_t *,                 Pointer to imaginary state array
    SLArrayIndex_t *,           Pointer to delay index
    SLArrayIndex_t *,           Pointer to taps locations
    const SLData_t *,           Pointer to real taps gains
    const SLData_t *,           Pointer to imaginary taps gains
    const SLArrayIndex_t,       Number of taps
    const SLArrayIndex_t,       State array length
    const SLArrayIndex_t)       Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the complex tapped delayed value on an array basis. The function implements a scalar sum of products operation between the data and the coefficients i.e. it separately multiplies the real data samples by the real coefficients and the imaginary data samples by the imaginary coefficients.

NOTES ON USE

For a discussion on how to use this function for implementing a sparse tapped delay line or multi-path delay line, please refer to the NOTES for the function SDS_TappedDelayLine.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_TappedDelayLine, SDS_TappedDelayLine, SDA_TappedDelayLine,
 SIF_TappedDelayLineComplex, SDS_TappedDelayLineComplex,
 SDA_TappedDelayLineComplex, SIF_TappedDelayLineIQ,
 SDS_TappedDelayLineIQ.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SIF_FirPolyPhaseGenerate (const SLData_t *,   Input FIR coefficient pointer
                               SLData_t *,         Output poly-phase coefficient pointer
                               SLData_t **,         Output filter coefficient pointers
                               SLArrayIndex_t *,    Output filter lengths
                               const SLArrayIndex_t, Number of output filter phases
                               const SLArrayIndex_t) Input filter length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function converts the coefficients for an FIR filter into those for an M phase poly-phase FIR filter.

NOTES ON USE

The input and output arrays are the same length but the coefficients are re-ordered into separate banks for each phase.

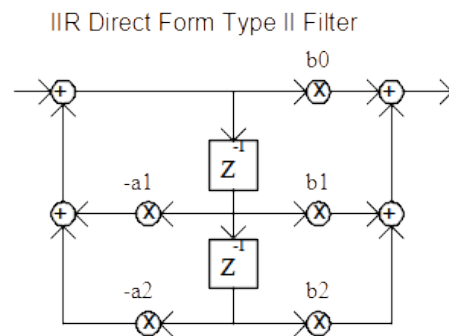
This function also returns an array of M pointers to the start of each phase within the output array and the lengths of each phase filter.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_Fir, SDS_Fir, SDA_Fir.

IIR Filtering Functions (*iirfilt.c*)

The SigLib IIR filter functions implement cascaded second order biquad Direct Form II filters, as shown in the following diagram:



The coefficients for the IIR filter are stored in a linear array, as follows:

stage 1	$b(0), b(1), b(2), a(1), a(2)$
stage 2	$b(0), b(1), b(2), a(1), a(2)$
	\vdots
stage N	$b(0), b(1), b(2), a(1), a(2)$

This filter structure has been chosen for the best compromise between processing efficiency and stability. Odd order filters can be implemented using a cascade of second order structures with the final stage having coefficients a_2 and b_2 set to zero. This technique gives better run time performance for a generic IIR filter function than having to choose between first and second order sections within the filter function.

SigLib includes a defined constant `IIR_COEFFS_PER_BIQUAD` that defines the length of the memory space to store the coefficients for each biquad section. This can be used to allocate the necessary memory space.

The z -transform for the IIR biquad is as follows:

$$Y(z) = \frac{b(0) + b(1)z^{-1} + b(2)z^{-2}}{1 + a(1)z^{-1} + a(2)z^{-2}} X(z)$$

The negation of the denominator ($a(1)$ and $a(2)$) coefficients is compatible with signal processing packages such as Digital Filter Plus and Matlab. If your filter design tools do not support this configuration then you will need to negate these coefficients prior to using them with SigLib (using the function `SDA_IirNegateAlphaCoeffs()`). Or you can also use the `SDS_IirMac()` or `SDA_IirMac()` functions which do not negate the coefficients.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SIF_Iir (SLData_t *,	Filter state array pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Number of biquads

DESCRIPTION

This function initializes IIR filter functionality and clears all state arrays to zero.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDS_Iir, SDA_Iir, SDS_IirMac, SDA_IirMac, SDA_BilinearTransform,
SDA_IirZplaneToCoeffs.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDS_Iir (const SLData_t,	Input sample to be filtered
SLData_t *,	Filter state array pointer
const SLData_t *,	Filter coefficients array pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Number of biquads

DESCRIPTION

This function applies infinite impulse response (IIR) filter to a data stream, a sample at a time.

NOTES ON USE

Even though floating point data is used and the form of the filter chosen is very stable, care should be taken when dealing with filter poles that lie on, or near the unit circle.

SIF_Iir should be called prior to using this function, to perform the required initialisation.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_Iir, SDA_Iir, SDS_IirMac, SDA_IirMac, SDA_BilinearTransform, SDA_IirZplaneToCoeffs, SDA_IirNegateAlphaCoeffs.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_Iir (const SLData_t *,	Input array to be filtered
SLData_t *,	Filtered output array
SLData_t *,	Filter state array pointer
const SLData_t *,	Filter coefficients array pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Number of biquads
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function applies an infinite impulse response (IIR) filter to an array. The filter structure is Direct Form II (as shown in the following diagram) and has been chosen for the best compromise between processing efficiency and stability.

NOTES ON USE

Even though floating point data is used and the form of the filter chosen is very stable, care should be taken when dealing with filter poles that lie on, or near the unit circle.

SIF_Iir should be called prior to using this function, to perform the required initialisation.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_Iir, SDS_Iir, SDS_IirMac, SDA_IirMac, SDA_IirNc,
SDA_BilinearTransform, SDA_IirZplaneToCoeffs, SDA_IirNegateAlphaCoeffs.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDS_IirMac (const SLData_t,	Input sample to be filtered
SLData_t *,	Filter state array pointer
const SLData_t *,	Filter coefficients array pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Number of biquads

DESCRIPTION

This function applies an infinite impulse response (IIR) filter to a data stream, a sample at a time.

NOTES ON USE

Even though floating point data is used and the form of the filter chosen is very stable, care should be taken when dealing with filter poles that lie on, or near the unit circle.

SIF_Iir should be called prior to using this function, to perform the required initialisation.

This function uses the MAC rather than MSUB operation so it does not negate the denominator (feedback) coefficients. If you wish to use the SigLib IIR filter design functions (or other similar filter design applications) then you will need to use the SDA_IirNegateAlphaCoeffs() function to negate the coefficients.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_Iir, SDS_Iir, SDA_Iir, SDA_IirMac, SDA_BilinearTransform, SDA_IirZplaneToCoeffs, SDA_IirNegateAlphaCoeffs.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_IirMac (const SLData_t *,	Input array to be filtered
SLData_t *,	Filtered output array
SLData_t *,	Filter state array pointer
const SLData_t *,	Filter coefficients array pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Number of biquads
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function applies an infinite impulse response (IIR) filter to an array. The filter structure is Direct Form II (as shown in the following diagram) and has been chosen for the best compromise between processing efficiency and stability.

NOTES ON USE

Even though floating point data is used and the form of the filter chosen is very stable, care should be taken when dealing with filter poles that lie on, or near the unit circle.

SIF_Iir should be called prior to using this function, to perform the required initialisation

This function uses the MAC rather than MSUB operation so it does not negate the denominator (feedback) coefficients. If you wish to use the SigLib IIR filter design functions (or other similar filter design applications) then you will need to use the SDA_IirNegateAlphaCoeffs() function to negate the coefficients.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_Iir, SDS_Iir, SDA_Iir, SDS_IirMac, SDA_IirNc,
SDA_BilinearTransform, SDA_IirZplaneToCoeffs, SDA_IirNegateAlphaCoeffs.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SIF_IirOrderN (SLData_t *,	Filter state array pointer
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Filter index pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Filter order

DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the Nth order IIR filter functionality and clears the state array to zero.

NOTES ON USE

The Nth order IIR filter functions implement a single structure for the entire filter, rather than the more traditional biquad implementation.

The state array should be the same size as the filter order.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS_IirOrderN, SDA_IirOrderN.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLData_t SDS_IirOrderN (const SLData_t, Input sample
                        SLData_t *,      Pointer to state array
                        const SLData_t *,  Pointer to filter coefficients
                        SLArrayIndex_t *,  Pointer to filter index
                        const SLArrayIndex_t) Filter order
```

DESCRIPTION

This function applies an N^{th} order filter to a data stream, a sample at a time.

NOTES ON USE

The N^{th} order IIR filter functions implement a single structure for the entire filter, rather than the more traditional biquad implementation.

Be aware that N^{th} order IIR filters can easily be unstable. Biquad format IIR filters are generally more stable.

The coefficient array is $N+1$ feedforward coefficients followed by N feedback coefficients followed by:

$N+1$ feedforward coefficients	- $b(0), b(1), \dots b(N)$
N feedback coefficients	- $a(1), \dots a(N)$

SIF_IirOrderN should be called prior to using this function, to perform the required initialisation.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_IirOrderN, SDA_IirOrderN.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_IirOrderN (const SLData_t *,	Pointer to source array to be filtered
SLData_t *,	Pointer to filter output array
SLData_t *,	Pointer to filter state array
SLData_t *,	Pointer to filter coefficients
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to filter state index
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Filter order
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function applies an N^{th} order IIR filter to a data stream.

NOTES ON USE

The N^{th} order IIR filter functions implement a single structure for the entire filter, rather than the more traditional biquad implementation.

Be aware that N^{th} order IIR filters can easily be unstable. Biquad format IIR filters are generally more stable.

The coefficient array is $N+1$ feedforward coefficients followed by N feedback coefficients followed by:

$N+1$ feedforward coefficients	- $b(0), b(1), \dots b(N)$
N feedback coefficients	- $a(1), \dots a(N)$

SIF_IirOrderN should be called prior to using this function, to perform the required initialisation.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_IirOrderN, SDS_IirOrderN.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SIF_IirNc (SLData_t *,	Filter 1 state array pointer
SLData_t *,	Filter 2 state array pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Source array length

DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the non-causal zero phase IIR filter functionality and clear all state arrays to zero.

NOTES ON USE

The defined constant IIR_COEFFS_PER_BIQUAD defines the length of the memory space to store the coefficients for each biquad section. This can be used to allocate the necessary memory space form within the application.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_IirNc, SDA_BilinearTransform, SDA_IirZplaneToCoeffs.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

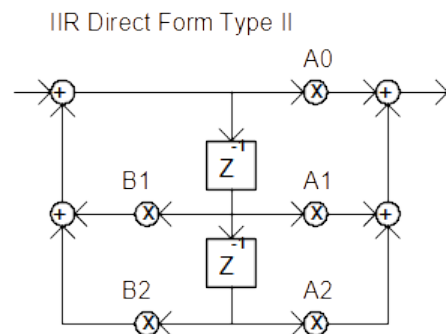
<code>void SDA_IirNc (const SLData_t *,</code>	Input array to be filtered
<code>SLData_t *,</code>	Filtered output array pointer
<code>SLData_t *,</code>	Filter 1 state array pointer
<code>SLData_t *,</code>	Filter 2 state array pointer
<code>const SLData_t *,</code>	Filter coefficients array pointer
<code>const SLArrayIndex_t,</code>	Number of biquads
<code>const SLArrayIndex_t)</code>	Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function applies a non-causal zero phase infinite impulse response (IIR) filter coefficients to the array. The coefficients for the IIR filter are stored in a linear array, however the array locations represent:

stage 1	A0, A1, A2, B1, B2
stage 2	A0, A1, A2, B1, B2
	.
	.
stage N	A0, A1, A2, B1, B2

The IIR filter form is Direct Form II and has been chosen for the best compromise between processing efficiency and stability.



NOTES ON USE

Even though floating point data is used and the form of the filter chosen is very stable, care should be taken when dealing with filter poles that lie on, or near the unit circle.

The input and output array pointers can point to the same array.

The two IIR filters use the same coefficients and are continuous across array boundaries however each filter must have a separate state array.

For more information, please see the documentation for `SDA_Iir_` function.

The defined constant `IIR_COEFFS_PER_BIQUAD` defines the length of the memory space to store the coefficients for each biquad section. This can be used to allocate the necessary memory space.

CROSS REFERENCE

`SIF_IirNc`, `SDA_Iir`, `SDA_Iir`, `SDA_BilinearTransform`,
`SDA_IirZplaneToCoeffs`.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_BilinearTransform (const SLComplexRect_s *, S-plane zeros
    const SLComplexRect_s *,      S-plane poles
    SLComplexRect_s *,           Z-plane zeros
    SLComplexRect_s *,           Z-plane poles
    const SLData_t,              Sample rate
    const SLData_t,              Pre-warp frequency
    const SLArrayIndex_t,        Pre-warp switch
    const SLArrayIndex_t,        Number of zeros
    const SLArrayIndex_t)        Number of poles
```

DESCRIPTION

This function converts s-plane poles and zeros to the z-plane, using the bilinear transformation:

$$z = \frac{1 + (T/2)s}{1 - (T/2)s}$$

This function provides optional pre-warping of the frequencies using the following equation:

$$\omega = \tan^{-1}\left(\frac{\Omega}{2} T\right)$$

The pre-warp switch parameter should be set to either 'SIGLIB_ON' or 'SIGLIB_OFF'.

NOTES ON USE

The poles and zeros returned are complex conjugate.

This function can accept filter specifications with a different number of poles and zeros. If the number of poles is greater than the number of zeros then additional zeros are added at $z = 0$ to make the numbers equal.

The function SDA_IirModifyFilterGain can be used to set the filter gain.

Although this function supports pre-warping of the frequencies, it is often easier to pre-warp the frequencies of the filter before using this function. This can be done by using the function SDS_PreWarp.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Iir, SDA_Iir, SDA_IirZplaneToCoeffs, SDA_IirModifyFilterGain,
SDA_MatchedZTransform, SDS_PreWarp.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDS_PreWarp (const SLData_t, Desired frequency
 const SLData_t) Sample rate

DESCRIPTION

This function pre-warps the desired analog frequency, so that it may be used in the bilinear transform. The function returns the warped frequency.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_BilinearTransform.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_MatchedZTransform (const SLComplexRect_s *, S-plane zeros
    const SLComplexRect_s *,      S-plane poles
    SLComplexRect_s *,           Z-plane zeros
    SLComplexRect_s *,           Z-plane poles
    const SLData_t,              Sample rate
    const SLArrayIndex_t,        Number of zeros
    const SLArrayIndex_t)        Number of poles
```

DESCRIPTION

This function converts s-plane poles and zeros to the z-plane, using the matched z-transform.

NOTES ON USE

The poles and zeros returned are complex conjugate.

This function can accept filter specifications with a different number of poles and zeros.

The function SDA_IirModifyFilterGain can be used to set the filter gain.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Iir, SDA_Iir, SDA_IirZplaneToCoeffs, SDA_IirModifyFilterGain,
SDA_BilinearTransform.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_IirZplaneToCoeffs (const SLComplexRect_s *, Source Z-plane zeros
    const SLComplexRect_s *,      Source Z-plane poles
    SLData_t *,                  IIR filter coefficients
    const SLArrayIndex_t,        Number of zero conjugate pairs
    const SLArrayIndex_t)        Number of pole conjugate pairs
```

DESCRIPTION

This function converts z-plane poles and zeros, in rectangular format, to second order (biquad) filter coefficients. The coefficients are stored in the order: A0, A1, A2, B1, B2,

NOTES ON USE

The poles and zeros are assumed to be complex conjugate I.E. each biquad will consist of a complex conjugate pair of poles and a complex conjugate pair of zeros. For example a simple 2nd order low-pass filter may have the following pole and zero conjugate pairs:

 Poles: Magnitude 0.9, Angle 30 degrees ($0.778 + j 0.45$)

 Magnitude 0.9, Angle -30 degrees ($0.778 - j 0.45$)

 Zeros: Magnitude 1.0, Angle 90 degrees ($0.0 + j 1.0$)

 Magnitude 1.0, Angle -90 degrees ($0.0 - j 1.0$)

These only need to be specified using either of the conjugate pair values, for example:

 Pole: $0.778 + j 0.45$

 Zero: $0.0 + j 1.0$

I.E. you should not specify both of the conjugate poles and zeros as inputs.

This function can accept filter specifications with a different number of poles and zeros. Additional poles and zeros for the IIR biquads will be added and these will be located at the origin.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Iir, SDS_Iir, SDA_IirZplanePolarToCoeffs, SDA_BilinearTransform.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_IirZplanePolarToCoeffs (const SLComplexPolar_s *,   Z-plane zeros
                                const SLComplexPolar_s *,   Z-plane zeros
                                SLData_t *,                 IIR filter coefficients
                                const SLArrayIndex_t,        Number of zeros
                                const SLArrayIndex_t)        Number of poles
```

DESCRIPTION

This function converts z-plane poles and zeros, in polar format, to second order (biquad) filter coefficients. The coefficients are stored in the order: A0, A1, A2, B1, B2,

NOTES ON USE

The poles and zeros are assumed to be complex conjugate I.E. each biquad will consist of a complex conjugate pair of poles and a complex conjugate pair of zeros. For example a simple 2nd order low-pass filter may have the following pole and zero conjugate pairs:

Poles: Magnitude 0.9, Angle 30 degrees
 Magnitude 0.9, Angle -30 degrees
Zeros: Magnitude 1.0, Angle 90 degrees
 Magnitude 1.0, Angle -90 degrees

These only need to be specified using either of the conjugate pair values, for example:

Pole: $0.778 + j 0.45$
Zero: $0.0 + j 1.0$

And the number of pole and zero conjugate pairs specified to the function will both be 1.

This function can accept filter specifications with a different number of poles and zeros.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Iir, SDS_Iir, SDA_IirZplaneToCoeffs, SDA_BilinearTransform.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_IirZplaneLpfToLpf (const SLComplexRect_s *, Source z-plane zeros
    const SLComplexRect_s *,      Source Z-plane poles
    SLComplexRect_s *,            Destination Z-plane zeros
    SLComplexRect_s *,            Destination Z-plane poles
    const SLData_t,                Source cut-off frequency
    const SLData_t,                Destination cut-off frequency
    const SLData_t,                System sample rate
    const SLArrayIndex_t,          Number of zero conjugate pairs
    const SLArrayIndex_t)          Number of pole conjugate pairs
```

DESCRIPTION

This function converts the z-plane poles and zeros of a low-pass filter with a different cut-off frequency.

NOTES ON USE

The poles and zeros are assumed to be complex conjugate.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_IirZplaneLpfToLpf, SDA_IirZplaneLpfToHpf,
SDA_IirZplaneLpfToBpf, SDA_IirZplaneLpfToBsf.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_IirZplaneLpfToHpf (const SLComplexRect_s *, Source Z-plane zeros
    const SLComplexRect_s *,      Source Z-plane poles
    SLComplexRect_s *,           Destination Z-plane zeros
    SLComplexRect_s *,           Destination Z-plane poles
    const SLData_t,              Source cut-off frequency
    const SLData_t,              Destination cut-off frequency
    const SLData_t,              System sample rate
    const SLArrayIndex_t,        Number of zero conjugate pairs
    const SLArrayIndex_t)        Number of pole conjugate pairs
```

DESCRIPTION

This function converts the z-plane poles and zeros of a low-pass filter to a high-pass filter.

NOTES ON USE

The poles and zeros are assumed to be complex conjugate.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_IirZplaneLpfToLpf, SDA_IirZplaneLpfToBpf,
SDA_IirZplaneLpfToBsf.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_IirZplaneLpfToBpf (const SLComplexRect_s *,   Source Z-plane zeros
                           const SLComplexRect_s *,   Source Z-plane poles
                           SLComplexRect_s *,         Destination Z-plane zeros
                           SLComplexRect_s *,         Destination Z-plane poles
                           const SLData_t,            Source cut-off frequency
                           const SLData_t,            Destination lower cut-off frequency
                           const SLData_t,            Destination upper cut-off frequency
                           const SLData_t,            System sample rate
                           const SLArrayIndex_t,       Number of zero conjugate pairs
                           const SLArrayIndex_t)       Number of pole conjugate pairs
```

DESCRIPTION

This function converts the z-plane poles and zeros of a low-pass filter to a band-pass filter.

NOTES ON USE

The poles and zeros are assumed to be complex conjugate.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_IirZplaneLpfToLpf, SDA_IirZplaneLpfToHpf,
SDA_IirZplaneLpfToBsf.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_IirZplaneLpfToBsf (const SLComplexRect_s *,   Source Z-plane zeros
                           const SLComplexRect_s *,   Source Z-plane poles
                           SLComplexRect_s *,         Destination Z-plane zeros
                           SLComplexRect_s *,         Destination Z-plane poles
                           const SLData_t,            Source cut-off frequency
                           const SLData_t,            Destination lower cut-off frequency
                           const SLData_t,            Destination upper cut-off frequency
                           const SLData_t,            System sample rate
                           const SLArrayIndex_t,       Number of zero conjugate pairs
                           const SLArrayIndex_t)       Number of pole conjugate pairs
```

DESCRIPTION

This function converts the z-plane poles and zeros of a low-pass filter to a band-stop filter.

NOTES ON USE

The poles and zeros are assumed to be complex conjugate.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_IirZplaneLpfToLpf, SDA_IirZplaneLpfToHpf,
SDA_IirZplaneLpfToBpf.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDA_IirModifyFilterGain (const SLData_t *, Source IIR filter coefficients
SLData_t *, Destination IIR filter coefficients
const SLData_t, Centre Frequency
const SLData_t, Desired filter gain
const SLArrayIndex_t) Number of biquads

DESCRIPTION

This function modifies the gain of the IIR filter at a particular centre frequency to any desired value. The function will return to gain of the original filter at the desired frequency. The centre frequency is normalised to a sample rate of 1 Hz.

NOTES ON USE

Reference: Maurice Bellanger; Digital Processing Of Signals (Theory and Practice), P160.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_BilinearTransform.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

<code>void SIF_IirLowPassFilter (SLData_t *,</code>	Pointer to output IIR filter coefficients
<code> const SLData_t,</code>	Filter cut-off frequency
<code> const SLData_t)</code>	Filter Q factor

DESCRIPTION

This function generates the coefficients for a single IIR Biquad low-pass filter, from the supplied parameters.

NOTES ON USE

The coefficients are in the standard SigLib order: b(0), b(1), b(2), a(1), a(2).

References:

Discrete-Time Digital Signal Processing - Oppenheim, Schafer & Buck, 2ed, 1998, Chapter 7 Filter Design Techniques

Robert Bristow-Johnson "Cookbook formulae for audio EQ biquad filter coefficients": <http://www.musicdsp.org/files/audio-eq-cookbook.txt>.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_IirHighPassFilter, SIF_IirAllPassFilter, SIF_IirBandPassFilter, SIF_IirNotchFilter, SIF_IirPeakingFilter, SIF_IirLowShelfFilter, SIF_IirHighShelfFilter.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SIF_IirHighPassFilter (SLData_t *,	Pointer to output IIR filter coefficients
const SLData_t,	Filter cut-off frequency
const SLData_t)	Filter Q factor

DESCRIPTION

This function generates the coefficients for a single IIR Biquad high-pass filter, from the supplied parameters.

NOTES ON USE

The coefficients are in the standard SigLib order: b(0), b(1), b(2), a(1), a(2).

References:

Discrete-Time Digital Signal Processing - Oppenheim, Schafer & Buck, 2ed, 1998, Chapter 7 Filter Design Techniques

Robert Bristow-Johnson "Cookbook formulae for audio EQ biquad filter coefficients": <http://www.musicdsp.org/files/audio-eq-cookbook.txt>.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_IirLowPassFilter, SIF_IirAllPassFilter, SIF_IirBandPassFilter, SIF_IirNotchFilter, SIF_IirPeakingFilter, SIF_IirLowShelfFilter, SIF_IirHighShelfFilter.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

<code>void SIF_IirAllPassFilter (SLData_t *,</code>	Pointer to output IIR filter coefficients
<code> const SLData_t,</code>	Filter cut-off frequency
<code> const SLData_t)</code>	Filter Q factor

DESCRIPTION

This function generates the coefficients for a single IIR Biquad all-pass filter, from the supplied parameters.

NOTES ON USE

The coefficients are in the standard SigLib order: b(0), b(1), b(2), a(1), a(2).

References:

Discrete-Time Digital Signal Processing - Oppenheim, Schafer & Buck, 2ed, 1998, Chapter 7 Filter Design Techniques

Robert Bristow-Johnson "Cookbook formulae for audio EQ biquad filter coefficients": <http://www.musicdsp.org/files/audio-eq-cookbook.txt>.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_IirLowPassFilter, SIF_IirHighPassFilter, SIF_IirBandPassFilter, SIF_IirNotchFilter, SIF_IirPeakingFilter, SIF_IirLowShelfFilter, SIF_IirHighShelfFilter.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SIF_IirBandPassFilter (SLData_t *,      Pointer to output IIR filter coefficients
                           const SLData_t,    Filter cut-off frequency (low)
                           const SLData_t)    Filter cut-off frequency (high)
```

DESCRIPTION

This function generates the coefficients for a single IIR Biquad band-pass filter, from the supplied parameters.

NOTES ON USE

The coefficients are in the standard SigLib order: b(0), b(1), b(2), a(1), a(2).

References:

Discrete-Time Digital Signal Processing - Oppenheim, Schafer & Buck, 2ed, 1998, Chapter 7 Filter Design Techniques

Robert Bristow-Johnson "Cookbook formulae for audio EQ biquad filter coefficients": <http://www.musicdsp.org/files/audio-eq-cookbook.txt>.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_IirLowPassFilter, SIF_IirHighPassFilter, SIF_IirAllPassFilter,
SIF_IirNotchFilter, SIF_IirPeakingFilter, SIF_IirLowShelfFilter,
SIF_IirHighShelfFilter.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SIF_IirNotchFilter (SLData_t *, Pointer to output IIR filter coefficients
                        const SLData_t,           Filter cut-off frequency
                        const SLData_t)           Filter Q factor
```

DESCRIPTION

This function generates the coefficients for a single IIR Biquad notch filter, from the supplied parameters.

NOTES ON USE

The coefficients are in the standard SigLib order: b(0), b(1), b(2), a(1), a(2).

References:

Discrete-Time Digital Signal Processing - Oppenheim, Schafer & Buck, 2ed, 1998, Chapter 7 Filter Design Techniques

Robert Bristow-Johnson "Cookbook formulae for audio EQ biquad filter coefficients": <http://www.musicdsp.org/files/audio-eq-cookbook.txt>.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_IirLowPassFilter, SIF_IirHighPassFilter, SIF_IirAllPassFilter,
SIF_IirBandPassFilter, SIF_IirPeakingFilter, SIF_IirLowShelfFilter,
SIF_IirHighShelfFilter.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SIF_IirPeakingFilter (SLData_t *,	Pointer to output IIR filter coefficients
const SLData_t,	Filter cut-off frequency
const SLData_t,	Filter Q factor
const SLData_t)	Filter gain (dB)

DESCRIPTION

This function generates the coefficients for a single IIR Biquad peaking filter, from the supplied parameters.

NOTES ON USE

The coefficients are in the standard SigLib order: b(0), b(1), b(2), a(1), a(2).

References:

Discrete-Time Digital Signal Processing - Oppenheim, Schafer & Buck, 2ed, 1998, Chapter 7 Filter Design Techniques

Robert Bristow-Johnson "Cookbook formulae for audio EQ biquad filter coefficients": <http://www.musicdsp.org/files/audio-eq-cookbook.txt>.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_IirLowPassFilter, SIF_IirHighPassFilter, SIF_IirAllPassFilter,
SIF_IirBandPassFilter, SIF_IirNotchFilter, SIF_IirLowShelfFilter,
SIF_IirHighShelfFilter.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SIF_IirLowShelfFilter (SLData_t *,	Pointer to output IIR filter coefficients
const SLData_t,	Filter cut-off frequency
const SLData_t,	Filter Q factor
const SLData_t)	Filter shelf gain (dB)

DESCRIPTION

This function generates the coefficients for a single IIR Biquad low shelf filter, from the supplied parameters.

NOTES ON USE

The coefficients are in the standard SigLib order: b(0), b(1), b(2), a(1), a(2).

References:

Discrete-Time Digital Signal Processing - Oppenheim, Schafer & Buck, 2ed, 1998, Chapter 7 Filter Design Techniques

Robert Bristow-Johnson "Cookbook formulae for audio EQ biquad filter coefficients": <http://www.musicdsp.org/files/audio-eq-cookbook.txt>.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_IirLowPassFilter, SIF_IirHighPassFilter, SIF_IirAllPassFilter,
SIF_IirBandPassFilter, SIF_IirNotchFilter, SIF_IirPeakingFilter,
SIF_IirHighShelfFilter.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SIF_IirHighShelfFilter (SLData_t *,	Pointer to output IIR filter coefficients
const SLData_t,	Filter cut-off frequency
const SLData_t,	Filter Q factor
const SLData_t)	Filter shelf gain (dB)

DESCRIPTION

This function generates the coefficients for a single IIR Biquad high shelf filter, from the supplied parameters.

NOTES ON USE

The coefficients are in the standard SigLib order: b(0), b(1), b(2), a(1), a(2).

References:

Discrete-Time Digital Signal Processing - Oppenheim, Schafer & Buck, 2ed, 1998, Chapter 7 Filter Design Techniques

Robert Bristow-Johnson "Cookbook formulae for audio EQ biquad filter coefficients": <http://www.musicdsp.org/files/audio-eq-cookbook.txt>.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_IirLowPassFilter, SIF_IirHighPassFilter, SIF_IirAllPassFilter,
SIF_IirBandPassFilter, SIF_IirNotchFilter, SIF_IirPeakingFilter,
SIF_IirLowShelfFilter.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDS_IirRemoveDC (SLData_t,	Input sample
SLData_t *,	Previous input sample
SLData_t *,	Previous output sample
const SLData_t)	Convergence rate

DESCRIPTION

This function uses a simple feedback filter to remove the D.C. component of a signal. The convergence rate parameter defines the rate at which the filter will converge on the D.C. level. A value of 0.9 will converge (and hence diverge) quickly, where as a value of 0.99999 will converge slowly.

This function works on a per-sample basis.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_IirRemoveDC.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_IirRemoveDC (const SLData_t *,Pointer to input array
    SLData_t *,           Pointer to output array
    SLData_t *,           Previous input sample
    SLData_t *,           Previous output sample
    const SLData_t,       Convergence rate
    const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function uses a simple feedback filter to remove the D.C. component of a signal. The convergence rate parameter defines the rate at which the filter will converge on the D.C. level. A value of 0.9 will converge (and hence diverge) quickly, where as a value of 0.99999 will converge slowly.

This function works on an array of data.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS_IirRemoveDC.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SIF_OnePole (SLData_t *) Feedback state

DESCRIPTION

This function initialises the state variable for the functions SDS_OnePole, SDA_OnePole, SDS_OnePoleNormalized and SDA_OnePoleNormalized.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDS_OnePole, SDA_OnePole, SDS_OnePoleNormalized,
SDA_OnePoleNormalized, SDA_OnePolePerSample, SIF_OnePoleHighPass,
SDS_OnePoleHighPass, SDA_OnePoleHighPass,
SDS_OnePoleHighPassNormalized, SDA_OnePoleHighPassNormalized,
SDA_OnePoleHighPassPerSample, SDS_OnePoleTimeConstantToFilterCoeff,
SDS_OnePoleCutOffFrequencyToFilterCoeff,
SDS_OnePoleHighPassCutOffFrequencyToFilterCoeff

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDS_OnePole (const SLData_t,	Input data to be filtered
const SLData_t,	Feedback alpha
SLData_t *)	Feedback state

DESCRIPTION

This function performs a one pole filter on single samples of data. The coefficient for the filter is specified in the parameter list. The "feedback state" parameter is a pointer to a single SLData_t location. Separate "feedback states" are required for each filter.

The one pole filter implements the following equation:

$$y(n) = x(n) + \alpha \cdot y(n-1)$$

NOTES ON USE

The function SIF_OnePole should be called to initialise "feedback state" to zero.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_OnePole, SDA_OnePole, SDS_OnePoleNormalized,
 SDA_OnePoleNormalized, SDA_OnePolePerSample, SIF_OnePoleHighPass,
 SDS_OnePoleHighPass, SDA_OnePoleHighPass,
 SDS_OnePoleHighPassNormalized, SDA_OnePoleHighPassNormalized,
 SDA_OnePoleHighPassPerSample, SDS_OnePoleTimeConstantToFilterCoeff,
 SDS_OnePoleCutOffFrequencyToFilterCoeff,
 SDS_OnePoleHighPassCutOffFrequencyToFilterCoeff

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_OnePole (const SLData_t *,	Input array to be filtered
SLData_t *,	Filtered output array
const SLData_t,	Feedback alpha
SLData_t *,	Feedback state
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function performs a one pole filter on successive samples in the array. The coefficient for the filter is specified in the parameter list. The "feedback state" parameter is a pointer to a single SLData_t location. Separate "feedback states" are required for each filter.

The one pole filter implements the following equation:

$$y(n)=x(n)+alpha.y(n-1)$$

NOTES ON USE

The function SIF_OnePole should be called to initialise "feedback state" to zero.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_OnePole, SDS_OnePole, SDS_OnePoleNormalized,
SDA_OnePoleNormalized, SDA_OnePolePerSample, SIF_OnePoleHighPass,
SDS_OnePoleHighPass, SDA_OnePoleHighPass,
SDS_OnePoleHighPassNormalized, SDA_OnePoleHighPassNormalized,
SDA_OnePoleHighPassPerSample, SDS_OnePoleTimeConstantToFilterCoeff,
SDS_OnePoleCutOffFrequencyToFilterCoeff,
SDS_OnePoleHighPassCutOffFrequencyToFilterCoeff

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLData_t SDS_OnePoleNormalized (const SLData_t,      Input data to be filtered
                                const SLData_t,      Feedback alpha
                                SLData_t *)           Feedback state
```

DESCRIPTION

This function performs a one pole filter on single samples of data. The coefficient for the filter is specified in the parameter list. The one pole filter has been designed so that the step response gain is normalized to 1.0, i.e. the input data is multiplied by (1.0 – Alpha). The "feedback state" parameter is a pointer to a single SLData_t location. Separate "feedback states" are required for each filter.

NOTES ON USE

The function SIF_OnePole should be called to initialise "feedback state" to zero.

The one pole filter implements the following equation:

$$y(n) = (1 - \alpha) \cdot x(n) + \alpha \cdot y(n-1)$$

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_OnePole, SDS_OnePole, SDA_OnePole, SDA_OnePoleNormalized,
SDA_OnePolePerSample, SIF_OnePoleHighPass, SDS_OnePoleHighPass,
SDA_OnePoleHighPass, SDS_OnePoleHighPassNormalized,
SDA_OnePoleHighPassNormalized, SDA_OnePoleHighPassPerSample,
SDS_OnePoleTimeConstantToFilterCoeff,
SDS_OnePoleCutOffFrequencyToFilterCoeff,
SDS_OnePoleHighPassCutOffFrequencyToFilterCoeff

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_OnePoleNormalized (const SLData_t *, Input array to be filtered
    SLData_t *,                               Filtered output array
    const SLData_t,                           Feedback alpha
    SLData_t *,                               Feedback state
    const SLArrayIndex_t)                     Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function performs a one pole filter on successive samples in the array. The coefficient for the filter is specified in the parameter list. The one pole filter has been designed so that the step response gain is normalized to 1.0, i.e. the input data is multiplied by $(1.0 - \text{Alpha})$. The "feedback state" parameter is a pointer to a single SLData_t location. Separate "feedback states" are required for each filter.

The one pole filter implements the following equation:

$$y(n) = (1 - \text{alpha}) \cdot x(n) + \text{alpha} \cdot y(n-1)$$

NOTES ON USE

The function SIF_OnePole should be called to initialise "feedback state" to zero.

CROSS REFERENCE

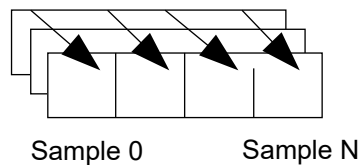
SIF_OnePole, SDS_OnePole, SDA_OnePole, SDS_OnePoleNormalized,
SDA_OnePolePerSample, SIF_OnePoleHighPass, SDS_OnePoleHighPass,
SDA_OnePoleHighPass, SDS_OnePoleHighPassNormalized,
SDA_OnePoleHighPassNormalized, SDA_OnePoleHighPassPerSample,
SDS_OnePoleTimeConstantToFilterCoeff,
SDS_OnePoleCutOffFrequencyToFilterCoeff,
SDS_OnePoleHighPassCutOffFrequencyToFilterCoeff

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_OnePolePerSample (const SLData_t *, Data to be filtered
    SLData_t *,           Filtered output array
    SLData_t *,           State array
    const SLData_t,       Feedback alpha
    const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function performs a normalized one pole filter on data between successive arrays. The coefficient for the filter is specified in the parameter list. The one pole filter has been designed so that the net gain to the signal is zero.



The one pole filter implements the following equation:

$$y(n) = (1 - \alpha) \cdot x(n) + \alpha \cdot y(n-1)$$

NOTES ON USE

For initialisation, the "feedback state" array should be initialised to zero.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_OnePole, SDS_OnePole, SDA_OnePole, SDS_OnePoleNormalized,
 SDA_OnePoleNormalized, SIF_OnePoleHighPass, SDS_OnePoleHighPass,
 SDA_OnePoleHighPass, SDS_OnePoleHighPassNormalized,
 SDA_OnePoleHighPassNormalized, SDA_OnePoleHighPassPerSample,
 SDS_OnePoleTimeConstantToFilterCoeff,
 SDS_OnePoleCutOffFrequencyToFilterCoeff,
 SDS_OnePoleHighPassCutOffFrequencyToFilterCoeff

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SIF_OnePoleHighPass (SLData_t *) Feedback state

DESCRIPTION

This function initialises the state variable for the functions SDS_OnePoleHighPass, SDA_OnePoleHighPass, SDS_OnePoleHighPassNormalized and SDA_OnePoleHighPassNormalized.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF_OnePole, SDS_OnePole, SDA_OnePole, SDS_OnePoleNormalized, SDA_OnePoleNormalized, SDA_OnePolePerSample, SDS_OnePoleHighPass, SDA_OnePoleHighPass, SDS_OnePoleHighPassNormalized, SDA_OnePoleHighPassNormalized, SDA_OnePoleHighPassPerSample, SDS_OnePoleTimeConstantToFilterCoeff, SDS_OnePoleCutOffFrequencyToFilterCoeff, SDS_OnePoleHighPassCutOffFrequencyToFilterCoeff

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLData_t SDS_OnePoleHighPass (const SLData_t, Input data to be filtered
                             const SLData_t,      Feedback alpha
                             SLData_t *)          Feedback state
```

DESCRIPTION

This function performs a one pole high pass filter on single samples of data. The coefficient for the filter is specified in the parameter list. The "feedback state" parameter is a pointer to a single SLData_t location. Separate "feedback states" are required for each filter.

The one pole filter implements the following equation:

$$y(n) = x(n) + \alpha \cdot y(n-1)$$

NOTES ON USE

The function SIF_OnePoleHighPass should be called to initialise "feedback state" to zero.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_OnePole, SDS_OnePole, SDA_OnePole, SDS_OnePoleNormalized,
 SDA_OnePoleNormalized, SDA_OnePolePerSample, SIF_OnePoleHighPass,
 SDA_OnePoleHighPass, SDS_OnePoleHighPassNormalized,
 SDA_OnePoleHighPassNormalized, SDA_OnePoleHighPassPerSample,
 SDS_OnePoleTimeConstantToFilterCoeff,
 SDS_OnePoleCutOffFrequencyToFilterCoeff,
 SDS_OnePoleHighPassCutOffFrequencyToFilterCoeff

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_OnePoleHighPass (const SLData_t *,	Input array to be filtered
SLData_t *,	Filtered output array
const SLData_t,	Feedback alpha
SLData_t *,	Feedback state
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function performs a one pole high pass filter on successive samples in the array. The coefficient for the filter is specified in the parameter list. The "feedback state" parameter is a pointer to a single SLData_t location. Separate "feedback states" are required for each filter.

The one pole filter implements the following equation:

$$y(n) = x(n) + \alpha \cdot y(n-1)$$

NOTES ON USE

The function SIF_OnePoleHighPass should be called to initialise "feedback state" to zero.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_OnePole, SDS_OnePole, SDA_OnePole, SDS_OnePoleNormalized,
SDA_OnePoleNormalized, SDA_OnePolePerSample, SIF_OnePoleHighPass,
SDS_OnePoleHighPass, SDS_OnePoleHighPassNormalized,
SDA_OnePoleHighPassNormalized, SDA_OnePoleHighPassPerSample,
SDS_OnePoleTimeConstantToFilterCoeff,
SDS_OnePoleCutOffFrequencyToFilterCoeff,
SDS_OnePoleHighPassCutOffFrequencyToFilterCoeff

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDS_OnePoleHighPassNormalized (const SLData_t, Input data to be filtered
 const SLData_t, Feedback alpha
 SLData_t *) Feedback state

DESCRIPTION

This function performs a one pole filter high pass on single samples of data. The coefficient for the filter is specified in the parameter list. The one pole filter has been designed so that the step response gain is normalized to 1.0, i.e. the input data is multiplied by (1.0 – Alpha). The "feedback state" parameter is a pointer to a single SLData_t location. Separate "feedback states" are required for each filter.

NOTES ON USE

The function SIF_OnePoleHighPass should be called to initialise "feedback state" to zero.

The one pole filter implements the following equation:

$$y(n)=(1-\alpha).x(n)+\alpha.y(n-1)$$

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_OnePole, SDS_OnePole, SDA_OnePole, SDS_OnePoleNormalized,
SDA_OnePoleNormalized, SDA_OnePolePerSample, SIF_OnePoleHighPass,
SDS_OnePoleHighPass, SDA_OnePoleHighPass,
SDA_OnePoleHighPassNormalized, SDA_OnePoleHighPassPerSample,
SDS_OnePoleTimeConstantToFilterCoeff,
SDS_OnePoleCutOffFrequencyToFilterCoeff,
SDS_OnePoleHighPassCutOffFrequencyToFilterCoeff

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_OnePoleHighPassNormalized (const SLData_t *,	Input array to be filtered
SLData_t *,	Filtered output array
const SLData_t,	Feedback alpha
SLData_t *,	Feedback state
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function performs a one pole high pass filter on successive samples in the array. The coefficient for the filter is specified in the parameter list. The one pole filter has been designed so that the step response gain is normalized to 1.0, i.e. the input data is multiplied by (1.0 – Alpha). The "feedback state" parameter is a pointer to a single SLData_t location. Separate "feedback states" are required for each filter.

The one pole filter implements the following equation:

$$y(n)=(1-\alpha).x(n)+\alpha.y(n-1)$$

NOTES ON USE

The function SIF_OnePole should be called to initialise "feedback state" to zero.

CROSS REFERENCE

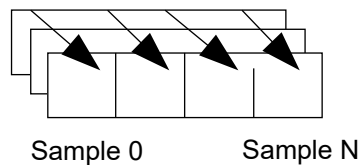
SIF_OnePole, SDS_OnePole, SDA_OnePole, SDS_OnePoleNormalized, SDA_OnePoleNormalized, SDA_OnePolePerSample, SIF_OnePoleHighPass, SDS_OnePoleHighPass, SDA_OnePoleHighPass, SDS_OnePoleHighPassNormalized, SDA_OnePoleHighPassPerSample, SDS_OnePoleTimeConstantToFilterCoeff, SDS_OnePoleCutOffFrequencyToFilterCoeff, SDS_OnePoleHighPassCutOffFrequencyToFilterCoeff

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_OnePoleHighPassPerSample (const SLData_t *, Data to be filtered
    SLData_t *,           Filtered output array
    SLData_t *,           State array
    const SLData_t,       Feedback alpha
    const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function performs a normalized one pole high pass filter on data between successive arrays. The coefficient for the filter is specified in the parameter list. The one pole filter has been designed so that the net gain to the signal is zero.



The one pole filter implements the following equation:

$$y(n) = (1 - \alpha) \cdot x(n) + \alpha \cdot y(n-1)$$

NOTES ON USE

For initialisation, the "feedback state" array should be initialised to zero.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_OnePole, SDS_OnePole, SDA_OnePole, SDS_OnePoleNormalized,
 SDA_OnePoleNormalized, SDA_OnePolePerSample, SIF_OnePoleHighPass,
 SDS_OnePoleHighPass, SDA_OnePoleHighPass,
 SDS_OnePoleHighPassNormalized, SDA_OnePoleHighPassNormalized,
 SDS_OnePoleTimeConstantToFilterCoeff,
 SDS_OnePoleCutOffFrequencyToFilterCoeff,
 SDS_OnePoleHighPassCutOffFrequencyToFilterCoeff

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDS_OnePoleTimeConstantToFilterCoeff (const SLData_t, Period (ms)
 const SLData_t) Sample rate

DESCRIPTION

This function converts the one-pole time constant (in milliseconds) to a coefficient that decays to -3 dB in the specified time period. The following equation is used:

$$attack_decay_coeff = \exp(\exp(-1.0) / (attack_decay_period_ms * sample_frequency * 0.001))$$

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_OnePole, SDS_OnePole, SDA_OnePole, SDS_OnePoleNormalized,
 SDA_OnePoleNormalized, SDA_OnePolePerSample, SIF_OnePoleHighPass,
 SDS_OnePoleHighPass, SDA_OnePoleHighPass,
 SDS_OnePoleHighPassNormalized, SDA_OnePoleHighPassNormalized,
 SDA_OnePoleHighPassPerSample, SDS_OnePoleCutOffFrequencyToFilterCoeff,
 SDS_OnePoleHighPassCutOffFrequencyToFilterCoeff

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SIF_AllPole (SLData_t *,	Filter state array pointer
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Filter index pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Filter order

DESCRIPTION

This function initialises the all pole filter functionality and clears the state array to zero.

NOTES ON USE

The state array should be the same size as the filter order.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS_AllPole, SDA_AllPole.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDS_AllPole (const SLData_t,	Input sample
SLData_t *,	Pointer to state array
const SLData_t *,	Pointer to filter coefficients
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to filter index
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Filter order

DESCRIPTION

This function applies an all-pole filter to a data stream, a sample at a time.

NOTES ON USE

Be aware that all-pole filters can easily be unstable.

SIF_AllPole should be called prior to using this function, to perform the required initialisation.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_AllPole, SDA_AllPole.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_AllPole (const SLData_t *,	Pointer to source array to be filtered
SLData_t *,	Pointer to filter output array
SLData_t *,	Pointer to filter state array
SLData_t *,	Pointer to filter coefficients
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to filter state index
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Filter order
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function applies an all-pole filter to a data stream.

NOTES ON USE

Be aware that all-pole filters can easily be unstable.

SIF_AllPole should be called prior to using this function, to perform the required initialisation.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_AllPole, SDS_AllPole.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_AllPole (const SLData_t *,	Pointer to source array to be filtered
SLData_t *,	Pointer to filter output array
SLData_t *,	Pointer to filter state array
SLData_t *,	Pointer to filter coefficients
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to filter state index
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Filter order
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function applies an all-pole filter to a data stream.

NOTES ON USE

Be aware that all-pole filters can easily be unstable.

SIF_AllPole should be called prior to using this function, to perform the required initialisation.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_AllPole, SDS_AllPole.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_ZDomainCoefficientReorg (const SLData_t *,   Pointer to z-domain
source coefficient array,
    SLComplexRect_s *,           Pointer to destination z-domain poles
    SLComplexRect_s *,           Pointer to destination z-domain zeros
    const SLArrayIndex_t)        Filter order
```

DESCRIPTION

This function separates and re-organizes the z-domain coefficient array that is generated in Digital Filter Plus so that the coefficients can be used by SigLib. The output results in separate arrays for the poles and zeros..

NOTES ON USE

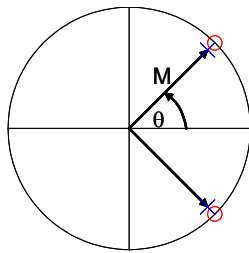
CROSS REFERENCE

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SL_Error_t SIF_IirNotchFilter2 (SLData_t *, Pointer to filter coefficients
const SLData_t, Notch frequency
const SLData_t, Pole magnitude
const SLArrayIndex_t) Filter order

DESCRIPTION

This function initialises the coefficients of an IIR notch filter where the zeros are placed on the unit circle at the specified frequency and the poles are at the same frequency (θ) but located at the given magnitude (M) within the unit circle. The arrangement for a single biquad is shown in the following diagram.



NOTES ON USE

The frequency parameter is in Hz, with a normalized sampling rate of 1.0 Hz.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_Iir, SDA_Iir, SDS_Iir.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```

SLError_t SIF_IirNormalizedCoefficients (SLData_t *,   Pointer to filter coefficients
enum SLIIRNormalizedCoeffs_t,   Filter coefficient type
const SLArrayIndex_t)           Filter order

```

DESCRIPTION

This function returns a set of IIR biquad filter coefficients for a filter with the following cut-off frequency:

$$\begin{array}{ll}
 2\pi \text{ radians sec}^{-1} & 1.0 \text{ radians sec}^{-1} \\
 1.0 \text{ Hz} & 1.0 / 2\pi = 0.15915 \text{ Hz}
 \end{array}$$

The coefficients can be converted to low-pass and high-pass filters using SDA_IirLpLpShift, SDA_IirLpHpShift respectively and from these it is possible to generate band-pass and notch filters.

The type of filter prototypes supported by this function are specified in the “filter coefficient type” parameter and are:

SIGLIB_BUTTERWORTH_IIR_NORM_COEFFS	Butterworth
SIGLIB_BESSEL_IIR_NORM_COEFFS	Bessel

NOTES ON USE

The maximum filter order for this function is 10 and is controlled by the constant: SIGLIB_MAX_NORMALIZED_IIR_FILTER_ORDER.

Transforming the coefficients in the digital domain is not a monotonic transformation. I.E. The transform does not guarantee to maintain the gain and phase responses. If you wish to maintain the gain and phase then you should start with and modify the S-Plane coefficients. You can use the function SIF_IirNormalizedSPlaneCoefficients for this purpose.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_IirLpLpShift, SDA_IirLpHpShift,
SIF_IirNormalizedSPlaneCoefficients.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_TranslateSPlaneCutOffFrequency (const SLComplexRect_s *,
                                          SLComplexRect_s *,
                                          const SLData_t,
                                          const SLArrayIndex_t)
```

Pointer to source filter poles / zeros
Pointer to destination filter poles / zeros
New cut-off frequency
Filter order

DESCRIPTION

This function translates the cut-off frequency of a filter specified in the S-plane by translating the poles or zeros of the filter.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_BilinearTransform, SDA_MatchedZTransform,
SIF_IirNormalizedSPlaneCoefficients.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDA_IirLpLpShift (const SLData_t *,	Source coefficients
SLData_t *,	Destination coefficients
const SLData_t,	Original cut-off frequency
const SLData_t,	Required cut-off frequency
const SLData_t,	Sample rate
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Number of biquads

DESCRIPTION

This function modifies the cut-off frequency of a low pass IIR biquad filter from the original cut-off frequency to the required frequency. This function returns the gain scaling factor at the centre frequency (D.C) of the filter.

NOTES ON USE

When this function is used to modify the cut-off frequency of the filter it will also modify the pass-band gain. There are two options for handling the gain change:
1/ SDA_IirLpLpShift returns the scaling factor to normalise the filter gain this allows the input or output data to be multiplied by the scaling factor to maintain the required pass-band gain.

2/ Use the function SDA_IirModifyFilterGain to adjust the gain of the filter at the centre frequency of the filter (D.C. for a low-pass filter).

Option 2 is usually the preferred method because it maintains the maximum dynamic range of the signal.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_IirLpHpShift.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDA_IirLpHpShift (const SLData_t *,	Source coefficients
SLData_t *,	Destination coefficients
const SLData_t,	Original cut-off frequency
const SLData_t,	Required cut-off frequency
const SLData_t,	Sample rate
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Number of biquads

DESCRIPTION

Convert the low pass biquad IIR filter into a high pass filter and modify the cut-off frequency from the original cut-off frequency to the required frequency. This function returns the gain scaling factor at the centre frequency (Nyquist frequency) of the filter.

NOTES ON USE

When this function is used to modify the cut-off frequency of the filter it will also modify the pass-band gain. There are two options for handling the gain change:
1/ SDA_IirLpHpShift returns the scaling factor to normalise the filter gain this allows the input or output data to be multiplied by the scaling factor to maintain the required pass-band gain.

2/ Use the function SDA_IirModifyFilterGain to adjust the gain of the filter at the centre frequency of the filter (Nyquist frequency for a high-pass filter).

Option 2 is usually the preferred method because it maintains the maximum dynamic range of the signal.

CROSS REFERENCE

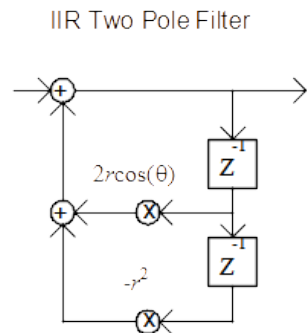
SDA_IirLpLpShift.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

<code>void SIF_Iir2PoleLpf (SLData_t *,</code>	Pointer to filter state array
<code>SLData_t *,</code>	Pointer to filter coefficients array
<code>const SLData_t,</code>	Cut-off frequency
<code>const SLData_t)</code>	Pole radius

DESCRIPTION

This function generates the feedback coefficients for a two-pole IIR low-pass filter, with the following flow diagram:



NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

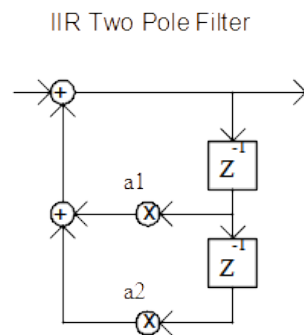
SDS_Iir2Pole, SDA_Iir2Pole.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDS_Iir2Pole (const SLData_t,	Input data sample to be filtered
SLData_t *,	Pointer to filter state array
const SLData_t *)	Pointer to filter coefficients array

DESCRIPTION

This function implements a 2 pole IIR filter, on a per-sample basis, with the following flow diagram:



NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

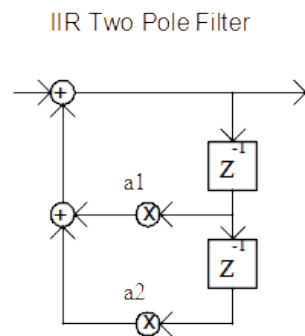
SIF_Iir2PoleLpf, SDS_Iir2Pole, SDA_Iir2Pole.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDS_Iir2Pole (const SLData_t *,	Input array to be filtered
SLData_t *,	Filtered output array
SLData_t *,	Pointer to filter state array
const SLData_t *,	Pointer to filter coefficients array
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function implements a 2 pole IIR filter, on an array basis, with the following flow diagram:



NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_Iir2PoleLpf, SDS_Iir2Pole.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_IirNegateAlphaCoeffs (const SLData_t *,	Pointer to source filter coefficients array
SLData_t *,	Pointer to destn. filter coefficients array
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Number of biquads

DESCRIPTION

This function negates the denominator (feedback) coefficients of an IIR filter to allow support for devices that implement MAC or MSUB operations. Also this allows coefficients to be used with SigLib that have been designed using filter design tools that do negate the feedback coefficients.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF_Iir, SDS_Iir, SDA_Iir, SDS_IirMac, SDA_IirMac.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_Integrate (const SLData_t *,	Input array pointer
SLData_t *,	Output data pointer
const SLData_t,	Integrate reset level
const SLData_t,	Sum decay value
SLData_t *,	Integral sum pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function integrates the signal in the array. The function includes support for decaying the summation by a constant factor and resetting the sum, when it reaches a fixed peak value. The latter function is often termed integrate and dump. The fixed value, to which the integrator is allowed to rise is tested in both the positive and negative direction.

NOTES ON USE

The decay factor is a gain factor on the integration so for 0 decay the value 1.0 must be used.

The pointer to the integral sum value is used for continuity across array boundaries.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Differentiate, SDS_LeakyIntegrator1, SDS_LeakyIntegrator2

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_Differentiate (const SLData_t *, Input array pointer
                        SLData_t *,      Output array pointer
                        SLData_t *,      Previous data value pointer
                        const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

Differentiate the signal in the array, i.e. return the difference between two successive samples.

NOTES ON USE

The pointer to the previous data value is used for continuity across array boundaries.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Integrate

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SIF_LeakyIntegrator (SLData_t *) Pointer to integrator state variable

DESCRIPTION

Initialize the leaky integrator functions.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS_LeakyIntegrator1, SDS_LeakyIntegrator2

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDS_LeakyIntegrator1 (const SLData_t, Source data value	
SLData_t *,	Pointer to integrator state variable
const SLData_t,	Leak output value
const SLData_t)	Peak value of integrator state variable

DESCRIPTION

This function implements a leaky integrator. The state value is not allowed to overflow the peak level, even temporarily

NOTES ON USE

The function SIF_LeakyIntegrator should be called prior to calling this function.

The Leak output value is the constant value that is subtracted from the integrator state variable prior to adding in the new data.

The peak value is that level above which the state variable can not exceed.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Integrate, SIF_LeakyIntegrator, SDS_LeakyIntegrator2

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDS_LeakyIntegrator2 (const SLData_t, Source data value	
SLData_t *,	Pointer to integrator state variable
const SLData_t,	Leak output value
const SLData_t)	Peak value of integrator state variable

DESCRIPTION

Implement a leaky integrator. The state value is allowed to overflow the peak level temporarily as SLArrayIndex_t as the accumulator value is below the peak level when the function returns.

NOTES ON USE

The function SIF_LeakyIntegrator should be called prior to calling this function.

The Leak output value is the constant value that is subtracted from the integrator state variable after adding in the new data.

The peak value is that level above which the state variable can not exceed.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Integrate, SIF_LeakyIntegrator, SDS_LeakyIntegrator1

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SIF_HilbertTransformer (SLData_t *,   Filter coefficients array  
                             const SLArrayIndex_t)   Filter length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function initialises the coefficients of an FIR Hilbert transformer filter.

The Hilbert transform uses an N coefficient FIR filter to phase shift every component in a signal by 90 degrees (N is odd ordered).

The defining equations for the Hilbert transform are:

$$h(n) = \frac{2}{n * \pi} * \sin^2\left(\frac{n * \pi}{2}\right) \quad \text{for } n = \pm 1, \pm 2, \pm \frac{N}{2}$$

and $h(0) = 0$ for $n = 0$

NOTES ON USE

N must be odd.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS_Fir, SDA_Fir, SDA_FdHilbert.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SIF_GoertzelFilter (SLData_t *, State array pointer
 const SLData_t, Centre frequency
 const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the coefficient for a Goertzel IIR filter. This parameter must be passed to the Goertzel filter and detect functions. The filter is a band-pass filter with the specified centre frequency.

NOTES ON USE

The frequency is normalised to $F_s = 1.0$.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_GoertzelFilter, SDA_GoertzelDetect, SUF_EstimateBPFILTERLength,
SUF_EstimateBPFILTERError.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

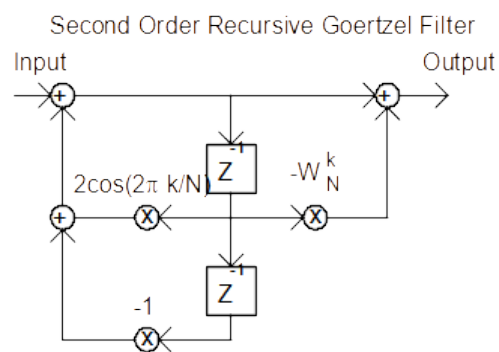
```

void SDA_GoertzelFilter (const SLData_t *, Input array pointer
                        SLData_t *,           Output array pointer
                        SLData_t *,           State array pointer
                        const SLData_t,       Filter coefficient
                        const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length

```

DESCRIPTION

This function applies the real Goertzel IIR filter to the data stream. A Goertzel filter is an IIR filter that selects a specified pass band in a filtered signal. The filter has the following flow diagram:



NOTES ON USE

Best performance can be obtained if N can be chosen so that the array length * the frequency gives a value that is close to an integer. This filter does not maintain the complex (phase) information because the value for $-W_N^k$ is $\cos(2\pi k/N)$.

CROSS REFERENCE

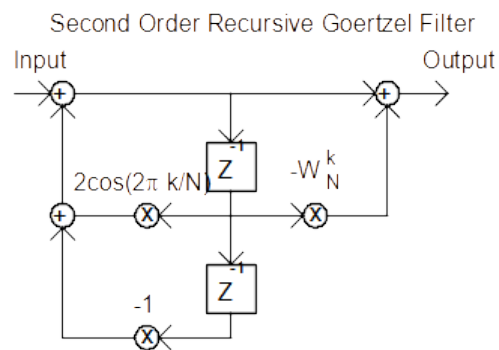
SIF_GoertzelFilter, SDS_GoertzelFilter, SDA_GoertzelDetect,
 SUF_EstimateBPFILTERLength, SUF_EstimateBPFILTERError.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDS_GoertzelFilter (const SLData_t,   Input data sample
                        SLData_t *,       State array pointer
                        const SLData_t)    Filter coefficient
```

DESCRIPTION

This function applies the real Goertzel IIR filter to the data stream, on a per-sample basis. A Goertzel filter is an IIR filter that selects a specified pass band in a filtered signal. The filter has the following flow diagram:



NOTES ON USE

Best performance can be obtained if N can be chosen so that the array length * the frequency gives a value that is close to an integer. This filter does not maintain the complex (phase) information because the value for $-W_N^k$ is $\cos(2\pi k/N)$.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_GoertzelFilter, SDA_GoertzelFilter, SDA_GoertzelDetect,
SUF_EstimateBPFILTERLength, SUF_EstimateBPFILTERError.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SIF_GoertzelDetect (const SLData_t, Centre frequency
 const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the coefficient for a Goertzel detector. This parameter must be passed to the Goertzel detect function. The filter is a band-pass filter with the specified centre frequency.

NOTES ON USE

The frequency is normalised to $F_s = 1.0$.

CROSS REFERENCE

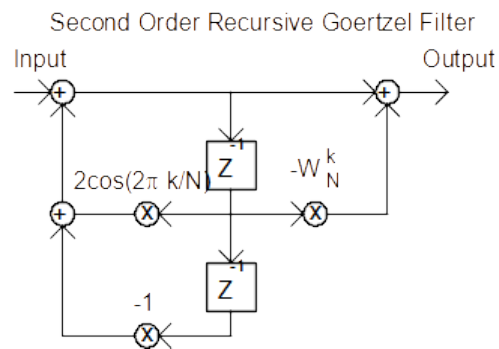
SDA_GoertzelDetect, SUF_EstimateBPFILTERLength,
SUF_EstimateBPFILTERError.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDA_GoertzelDetect (const SLData_t *, Source array pointer
const SLData_t, Filter coefficient
const SLArrayIndex_t) Filter length

DESCRIPTION

This function applies the Goertzel IIR filter to the data stream and returns the power squared of the signal in the filter pass band. The filter has the following flow diagram:



This detector returns the magnitude squared filter output i.e. $\text{real}^2 + \text{imaginary}^2$. The Goertzel detector is often used to detect particular individual frequencies, a common application is the detection of DTMF tones. $-W_N^k = \cos(2\pi k/N) - j \sin(2\pi k/N)$.

NOTES ON USE

Best performance can be obtained if N can be chosen so that the array length * the frequency gives a value that is close to an integer.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_GoertzelDetect, SDA_GoertzelFilter, SUF_EstimateBPFilterLength, SUF_EstimateBPFilterError.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLComplexRect_s SIF_GoertzelDetectComplex (const SLData_t, Centre frequency
const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the complex coefficient for a Goertzel IIR filter. This parameter must be passed to the complex Goertzel detect function. The filter is a band-pass filter with the specified centre frequency.

NOTES ON USE

The frequency is normalised to $F_s = 1.0$.

CROSS REFERENCE

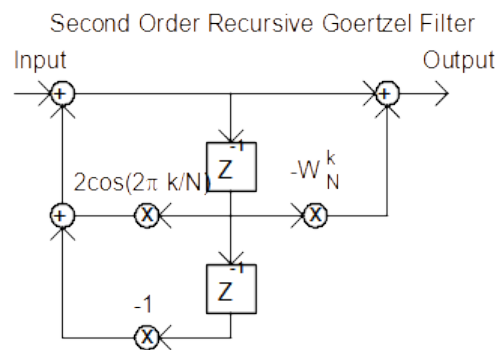
SDA_GoertzelDetect, SDA_GoertzelDetectComplex,
SUF_EstimateBPFILTERLength, SUF_EstimateBPFILTERError.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLComplexRect_s SDA_GoertzelDetectComplex (const SLData_t *, Src pointer
const SLComplexRect_s, Complex filter coefficient
const SLArrayIndex_t) Filter length

DESCRIPTION

This function applies the Goertzel IIR filter to the data stream and returns the frequency domain coefficients for the signal in the filter pass band. The filter has the following flow diagram:



This detector is exactly identical to the discrete Fourier transform. The Goertzel detector is often used to detect particular individual frequencies, a common application is the detection of DTMF tones. $-W_N^k = \cos(2\pi k/N) - j \sin(2\pi k/N)$.

NOTES ON USE

Best performance can be obtained if N can be chosen so that the array length * the frequency gives a value that is close to an integer.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_GoertzelDetectComplex, SDA_GoertzelDetect,
SDA_GoertzelDetectComplex, SUF_EstimateBPFILTERLength,
SUF_EstimateBPFILTERError.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SIF_GaussianFilter (SLData_t *,	Filter coefficients array
const SLData_t,	Standard deviation of the distribution
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Filter length

DESCRIPTION

This function initialises the coefficients of an FIR Gaussian filter.

The distribution has a mean of zero but is centred around the centre coefficient of the array (N is odd ordered). The Gaussian filter exhibits no oscillations in its frequency response, which is also Gaussian in nature.

The defining equations for the Gaussian filter are:

$$G(x) = \frac{1.0}{\sqrt{2\pi} \sigma} e^{-\frac{x^2}{2\sigma^2}}$$

where σ is the standard deviation of the distribution. The coefficient equation is:

$$h(n) = \frac{2}{n * \pi} * \sin^2\left(\frac{n * \pi}{2}\right) \text{ for } n = \pm 1, \pm 2, \pm \frac{N}{2}$$

and $h(0) = 0$ for $n = 0$

NOTES ON USE

The filter length (number of coefficients) must be odd.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_Fir, SDA_Fir, SDS_Fir, SIF_GaussianFilter2.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SIF_GaussianFilter2 (SLData_t *,	Filter coefficients array
const SLData_t,	Filter bandwidth
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Filter length

DESCRIPTION

This function initialises the coefficients of an FIR Gaussian filter.

The pass-band bandwidth is specified by the “Bandwidth” parameter. The coefficient equation is:

$$h(n) = \frac{2}{n * \pi} * \sin^2\left(\frac{n * \pi}{2}\right) \quad \text{for } n = \pm 1, \pm 2, \pm \frac{N}{2}$$

and $h(0) = 0$ for $n = 0$

NOTES ON USE

The filter length (number of coefficients) must be odd.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_Fir, SDA_Fir, SDS_Fir, SIF_GaussianFilter.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SIF_RaisedCosineFilter (SLData_t *,   Filter coefficients pointer
                           const SLData_t, Symbol period
                           const SLData_t, Alpha
                           const SLArrayIndex_t) Filter length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function initialises the coefficients of an FIR raised cosine filter. The defining equation for the coefficients of the raised cosine filter is:

$$h(t) = \frac{\text{sinc}\left(\frac{\pi t}{T}\right) \cos\left(\frac{\pi \alpha t}{T}\right)}{1 - 4\left(\frac{\alpha t}{T}\right)^2}$$

Where $0 \leq \alpha \leq 1.0$ and the symbol rate (B) = 1/T.

$$h(n) = \frac{2}{n * \pi} * \sin^2\left(\frac{n * \pi}{2}\right) \text{ for } n = \pm 1, \pm 2, \pm \frac{N}{2}$$

and $h(0) = 0$ for $n = 0$

NOTES ON USE

The number of coefficients will be odd. This function detects possible issues such as $\cos(\pi/2)$ and generates the coefficient as a linear interpolation of the two adjacent coefficients.

The filter index is $k = -N$ to $+N$, where $N = (\text{Length} - 1) / 2$.

The sample rate is normalised to 1.0 Hz

Alpha is the excess bandwidth of the filter beyond the -3dB point. For the raised cosine filter:

alpha = 0 - Ideal LPF with $F_{\text{cut-off}} = \text{Nyquist Frequency}$

alpha = 1 - Smooth roll off but doubles signal bandwidth

The minimum pre-amble is one symbol when using this function.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_Fir, SDA_Fir, SDS_Fir.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SIF_RootRaisedCosineFilter (SLData_t *,  Filter coeffs. pointer
                                const SLData_t,      Symbol period
                                const SLData_t,      Alpha
                                const SLArrayIndex_t)  Filter length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function initialises the coefficients of an FIR square root raised cosine filter. The defining equation for the coefficients of the square root raised cosine filter is:

$$h(t) = \frac{4\alpha}{\pi\sqrt{T}} \frac{\cos\left((1+\alpha)\frac{\pi}{T}\right) + \frac{\sin\left((1-\alpha)\frac{\pi}{T}\right)}{4\left(\frac{\alpha}{T}\right)}}{1 - \left(4\frac{\alpha}{T}\right)^2}$$

Where $0 < \alpha < 1.0$ and the symbol rate $(B) = 1/T$.

$$h(n) = \frac{2}{n\pi} * \sin^2\left(\frac{n\pi}{2}\right) \text{ for } n = \pm 1, \pm 2, \pm \frac{N}{2}$$

and $h(0) = 0$ for $n = 0$

NOTES ON USE

The number of coefficients will be odd. This function detects possible issues such as $\cos(\pi/2)$ and generates the coefficient as a linear interpolation of the two adjacent coefficients. The filter index is $k = -N$ to $+N$, where $N = (\text{Length} - 1) / 2$. The sample rate is normalised to 1.0 Hz Alpha is the excess bandwidth of the filter beyond the -3dB point. For the square root raised cosine filter

alpha = 0 - Ideal LPF with $F_{\text{cut-off}} = \text{Nyquist Frequency}$

alpha = 1 - Smooth roll off but doubles signal bandwidth

The minimum pre-amble is one symbol when using this function.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_Fir, SDA_Fir, SDS_Fir.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDS_ZTransform (const SLComplexRect_s, Location in z-plane to calculate
 const SLComplexRect_s *, Pointer to numerator coefficients
 const SLComplexRect_s *, Pointer to denominator coefficients
 const SLArrayIndex_t, Number of numerator coefficients
 const SLArrayIndex_t) Number of denominator coefficients

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the magnitude of the z-transform, calculated at the specific location in the z-plane.

NOTES ON USE

The number of numerator or denominator coefficients may be zero. If the number of numerator or denominator coefficients is non zero then they must both be the same otherwise the function will return 0.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS_ZTransformDB.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDS_ZTransformDB (const SLComplexRect_s, Location in z-plane to calculate

const SLComplexRect_s *,	Pointer to numerator coefficients
const SLComplexRect_s *,	Pointer to denominator coefficients
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Number of numerator coefficients
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Number of denominator coefficients

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the magnitude of the z-transform in dB, calculated at the specific location in the z-plane.

NOTES ON USE

The number of numerator or denominator coefficients may be zero. If the number of numerator or denominator coefficients is non zero then they must both be the same otherwise the function will return 0.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS_ZTransform.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLArrayIndex_t SUF_EstimateBPFilterLength (const SLData_t, Sample rate
 const SLData_t, Centre frequency
 const SLArrayIndex_t, Minimum filter length
 const SLArrayIndex_t) Maximum filter length

DESCRIPTION

This function analyzes the given range of band-pass filter lengths and estimates the length that provides the minimum side lobe error / Gibbs effect.

Side lobe error is estimated from the fractional component of the number of cycles of the input waveform in the filter state array, for the given sample rate..

This function is useful for the estimation of filter lengths for band-pass FIR and other equivalent filters (e.g. Goertzel filters, as used in DTMF detectors).

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SUF_EstimateBPFilterError.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SUF_EstimateBPFilterError (const SLData_t, Sample rate
                                const SLData_t,           Centre frequency
                                const SLArrayIndex_t,       Minimum filter length
                                const SLArrayIndex_t,       Maximum filter length
                                SLData_t *)                 Pointer to error array
```

DESCRIPTION

This function analyzes the given range of band-pass filter lengths and estimates the magnitude of the side lobe error / Gibbs effect for each filter length. The error values for all the filter lengths are written into the error array.

Side lobe error is estimated from the fractional component of the number of cycles of the input waveform in the filter state array, for the given sample rate..

This function is useful for the estimation of band-pass filter lengths for FIR and other equivalent filters (e.g. Goertzel filters, as used in DTMF detectors).

NOTES ON USE

It is important to ensure that the error array is long enough to store all of the error results for all of the filter lengths calculated.

CROSS REFERENCE

SUF_EstimateBPFilterLength.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SUF_FrequenciesToOctaves (const SLData_t Fl, Low frequency
const SLData_t Fh) High frequency

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the octave band magnitude for the given frequency band.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SUF_FrequenciesToOctaves, SUF_FrequenciesToCentreFreqHz,
SUF_FrequenciesToQFactor, SUF_BandwidthToQFactor and
SUF_QFactorToBandwidth.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SUF_FrequenciesToCentreFreqHz (const SLData_t Fl, Low frequency
const SLData_t Fh) High frequency

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the centre frequency for the given frequency band.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SUF_FrequenciesToOctaves, SUF_FrequenciesToCentreFreqHz,
SUF_FrequenciesToQFactor, SUF_BandwidthToQFactor and
SUF_QFactorToBandwidth.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SUF_FrequenciesToQFactor (const SLData_t Fl, Low frequency
const SLData_t Fh) High frequency

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the Q factor for the given frequency band.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SUF_FrequenciesToOctaves, SUF_FrequenciesToCentreFreqHz,
SUF_FrequenciesToQFactor, SUF_BandwidthToQFactor and
SUF_QFactorToBandwidth.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SUF_BandwidthToQFactor (const SLData_t BW) Bandwidth

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the Q factor for the given frequency bandwidth.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SUF_FrequenciesToOctaves, SUF_FrequenciesToCentreFreqHz,
SUF_FrequenciesToQFactor, SUF_BandwidthToQFactor and
SUF_QFactorToBandwidth.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SUF_QFactorToBandwidth (const SLData_t QFactor) Q factor

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the bandwidth for the given Q factor.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SUF_FrequenciesToOctaves, SUF_FrequenciesToCentreFreqHz,
SUF_FrequenciesToQFactor, SUF_BandwidthToQFactor and
SUF_QFactorToBandwidth.

ACOUSTIC PROCESSING FUNCTIONS (*acoustic.c*)

SDA_LinearMicrophoneArrayBeamPattern

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_LinearMicrophoneArrayBeamPattern (const SLFixData_t,   Number of
microphones
    const SLData_t,           Microphone spacing (meters)
    const SLData_t,           Source signal frequency (Hz)
    SLData_t *,               Ptr to response angles array (Degrees)
    SLData_t *,               Pointer to response gain array (dB)
    const SLData_t,           Calculation start angle (Degrees)
    const SLData_t,           Calculation end angle (Degrees)
    const SLFixData_t)        Number of angles to calculate
```

DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the beam pattern for a linear microphone array, for a given number of microphones; microphone spacing and source signal frequency.

Calculates antenna gains, in dB, between the start angle and the end angle.

NOTES ON USE

The output is in the following format:

Beam angles	Degrees
Beam gains	dB

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_LinearMicrophoneArrayBeamPatternLinear,
SDA_MicrophoneArrayCalculateDelays, SDA_MicrophoneArrayBeamPattern,
SDA_MicrophoneArrayBeamPatternLinear

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_LinearMicrophoneArrayBeamPatternLinear (const SLFixData_t,  
Number of microphones  
    const SLData_t,  
    const SLData_t,  
    SLData_t *,  
    SLData_t *,  
    const SLData_t,  
    const SLData_t,  
    const SLFixData_t)  
    Microphone spacing (meters)  
    Source signal frequency (Hz)  
    Ptr to response angles array (Degrees)  
    Pointer to response gain array (dB)  
    Calculation start angle (Degrees)  
    Calculation end angle (Degrees)  
    Number of angles to calculate
```

DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the beam pattern for a linear microphone array, for a given number of microphones; microphone spacing and source signal frequency.

Calculates antenna gains between the start angle and the end angle.

The gain values are linear, rather than dB

NOTES ON USE

The output is in the following format:

Beam angles	Degrees
Beam gains	dB

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_LinearMicrophoneArrayBeamPattern,
SDA_MicrophoneArrayCalculateDelays, SDA_MicrophoneArrayBeamPattern,
SDA_MicrophoneArrayBeamPatternLinear

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_MicrophoneArrayCalculateDelays (const SLFixData_t, Number of microphones

SLMicrophone_s *,
const SLData_t)

Microphone configuration
Angle to steer beam (Degrees)

DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the delays required to steer the beam of an arbitrary array of microphones into a particular direction.

NOTES ON USE

The microphone details are defined as follows:

```
typedef struct {                // Microphone configuration
    SLData_t xPos;              // X location (Meters)
    SLData_t yPos;              // Y location (Meters)
    SLData_t delay;             // Delay (seconds)
    SLData_t gain;              // Gain (linear)
} SLMicrophone_s;
```

Here is an example of a microphone declaration:

```
        // 4 Mic Circular (Square), 0.043 mic radius
#define NUM_MICROPHONES 4      // Number of microphones
static SLMicrophone_s micDetails [NUM_MICROPHONES] = {
    { 0.0304,  0.0304, 0., 1., },
    { 0.0304, -0.0304, 0., 1., },
    { -0.0304, -0.0304, 0., 1., },
    { -0.0304,  0.0304, 0., 1., }
};
```

Applying the SDA_MicrophoneArrayCalculateDelays() function to the microphone array will update the delay elements to steer the beam.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_LinearMicrophoneArrayBeamPattern,
SDA_LinearMicrophoneArrayBeamPatternLinear,
SDA_MicrophoneArrayBeamPattern, SDA_MicrophoneArrayBeamPatternLinear

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_MicrophoneArrayBeamPattern (const SLFixData_t, Number of
microphones
    const SLMicrophone_s *,           Microphone configuration
    const SLData_t,                   Source signal frequency
    const SLData_t,                   Source signal radius from centre of
microphone array
    SLData_t *,                       Pointer to response angles array
    SLData_t *,                       Pointer to response gain array
    const SLData_t,                   Calculation start angle (Degrees)
    const SLData_t,                   Calculation end angle (Degrees)
    const SLFixData_t,               Number of angles to calculate
    const SLData_t)                  Sample rate
```

DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the beam pattern for an arbitrary microphone array, for a given number of microphones and source signal frequency.

Calculates antenna gains, in dB, between the start angle and the end angle.

NOTES ON USE

The output is in the following format:

Beam angles	Degrees
Beam gains	dB

The delays provided in the microphone configuration are quantized to the supplied sample rate.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_LinearMicrophoneArrayBeamPattern,
SDA_LinearMicrophoneArrayBeamPatternLinear,
SDA_MicrophoneArrayCalculateDelays, SDA_MicrophoneArrayBeamPatternLinear

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_MicrophoneArrayBeamPatternLinear (const SLFixData_t, Number of
microphones
    const SLMicrophone_s *,           Microphone configuration
    const SLData_t,                   Source signal frequency
    const SLData_t,                   Source signal radius from centre of
microphone array
    SLData_t *,                       Pointer to response angles array
    SLData_t *,                       Pointer to response gain array
    const SLData_t,                   Calculation start angle (Degrees)
    const SLData_t,                   Calculation end angle (Degrees)
    const SLFixData_t,               Number of angles to calculate
    const SLData_t)                  Sample rate
```

DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the beam pattern for an arbitrary microphone array, for a given number of microphones and source signal frequency.

Calculates antenna gains between the start angle and the end angle.

The gain values are linear, rather than dB.

NOTES ON USE

The output is in the following format:

Beam angles	Degrees
Beam gains	dB

The delays provided in the microphone configuration are quantized to the supplied sample rate.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_LinearMicrophoneArrayBeamPattern,
SDA_LinearMicrophoneArrayBeamPatternLinear,
SDA_MicrophoneArrayCalculateDelays, SDA_MicrophoneArrayBeamPattern

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDS_TemperatureToSpeedOfSoundInAir (const SLData_t temp)

DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the speed of sound in air for a given air temperature.

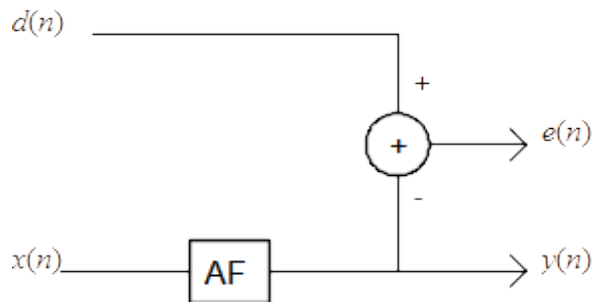
NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_LinearMicrophoneArrayBeamPattern,
SDA_LinearMicrophoneArrayBeamPatternLinear,
SDA_MicrophoneArrayCalculateDelays, SDA_MicrophoneArrayBeamPattern,
SDA_MicrophoneArrayBeamPatternLinear

ADAPTIVE COEFFICIENT FILTER FUNCTIONS (*adaptive.c*)

The adaptive filter (AF) functions updates the adaptive transversal filter with the Least Mean Square (LMS) algorithms. The systems are configured as follows:



Where $x(n)$ is the input signal, $y(n)$ the output, $d(n)$ is the desired signal and $e(n)$ the error between the actual output and the desired.

When implementing adaptive filters, especially in fixed point devices, it is common that quantization leads to the growth of the magnitudes of the coefficients. In order to overcome this problem it is common to multiply the coefficients by a constant that is less than 1.0 (e.g. 0.99) after adaptation.

In many applications it is useful to move the location of the data peak to some other normalized position this can be achieved using the function `SDA_MovePeakTowardsDeadBand()`.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SIF_Lms (SLData_t *,	LMS filter state array pointer
SLData_t *,	LMS filter coefficients array pointer
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to LMS filter index
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to LMS filter updater index
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Adaptive filter length

DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the adaptive filter functionality and clears all state arrays, filter index and filter updater index to zero.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

 SDS_Lms, SDA_LmsUpdate, SDA_LeakyLmsUpdate,
 SDA_NormalizedLmsUpdate, SDA_SignErrorLmsUpdate,
 SDA_SignDataLmsUpdate, SDA_SignSignLmsUpdate.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDS_Lms (const SLData_t,	Input data sample
SLData_t *,	LMS filter state array pointer
const SLData_t *,	LMS filter coefficients array pointer
SLArrayIndex_t *,	LMS filter offset pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t)	LMS filter length

DESCRIPTION

This function applies the adaptive transversal filter to the input data stream a sample at a time. this function is almost identical to the SDS_Fir routine, however for the sake of neatness separate functions are used.

NOTES ON USE

The traditional method of viewing the state array is as a bucket brigade FIFO array, with data flowing in one end and falling out the other. For execution efficiency however it is more efficient to use a circular array, so that for each new sample all the data does not have to be shifted up. For this reason each time the SDS_Lms function is called the current array pointer must be known. In order to make this function reusable it is necessary that each instance has a separate pointer, the address of which is passed to the function at call time.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_Lms, SDA_LmsUpdate, SDA_LeakyLmsUpdate,
SDA_NormalizedLmsUpdate, SDA_SignErrorLmsUpdate,
SDA_SignDataLmsUpdate, SDA_SignSignLmsUpdate..

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_LmsUpdate (const SLData_t *,	Filter state array pointer
SLData_t *,	LMS filter coefficients array pointer
SLArrayIndex_t *,	LMS filter offset pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t,	LMS filter length
const SLData_t,	Adaptation step length
const SLData_t)	Error

DESCRIPTION

This function updates the adaptive transversal filter with the Lease Mean Square (LMS) algorithm. The following coefficient update algorithm is used:

$$y(n) = \sum_{k=0}^{N-1} w(k) * x(n-k)$$
$$e(n) = d(n) - y(n)$$
$$w(k) = w(k) + u * e(n) * x(n-k) \quad k = 0,1,2,\dots,N-1$$

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_Lms, SDS_Lms, SDA_LeakyLmsUpdate, SDA_NormalizedLmsUpdate, SDA_SignErrorLmsUpdate, SDA_SignDataLmsUpdate, SDA_SignSignLmsUpdate.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_LeakyLmsUpdate (const SLData_t *,   Filter state array pointer
                        SLData_t *,          LMS filter coefficients array pointer
                        SLArrayIndex_t *,     LMS filter offset pointer
                        const SLArrayIndex_t, LMS filter length
                        const SLData_t,       Adaptation step length
                        const SLData_t,       Coefficient decay
                        const SLData_t)       Error
```

DESCRIPTION

This function updates the adaptive transversal filter with leaky LMS algorithm. The following coefficient update algorithm is used:

One common problem with the LMS algorithm is that over time the coefficients can "grow" and the filter can become unstable. The leaky LMS algorithm reduces the possibility of this by applying a decay to the coefficients.

$$y(n) = \sum_{k=0}^{N-1} w(k) * x(n-k)$$

$$e(n) = d(n) - y(n)$$

$$w(k) = w(k) * DecayRate + u * e(n) * x(n-k) \quad k = 0,1,2,...,N-1$$

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_Lms, SDS_Lms, SDA_LmsUpdate, SDA_NormalizedLmsUpdate, SDA_SignErrorLmsUpdate, SDA_SignDataLmsUpdate, SDA_SignSignLmsUpdate.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_NormalizedLmsUpdate (const SLData_t *,   Filter state pointer
                             SLData_t *,         LMS filter coefficients array pointer
                             SLArrayIndex_t *,    LMS filter offset pointer
                             SLData_t *,         Signal power
                             const SLArrayIndex_t, LMS filter length
                             const SLData_t,      Adaptation step length
                             const SLData_t)      Error
```

DESCRIPTION

This function updates the adaptive transversal filter with the normalised LMS algorithm. The following coefficient update algorithm is used:

$$y(n) = \sum_{k=0}^{N-1} w(k) * x(n-k)$$

$$e(n) = d(n) - y(n)$$

$$w(k) = w(k) + (u * a / Power) * e(n) * x(n-k) \quad k = 0, 1, 2, \dots, N-1$$

The normalised LMS algorithm reduces the dependency of convergence speed on the input signal power, at a cost of increased computational complexity. The algorithm applies automatic gain control to the input signal. The equation for the AGC is:

$$Power(n) = (1 - b) * Power(n-1) + bx(0)^2$$

NOTES ON USE

Note variables a and b are the same value and this is a common technique in most applications.

The signal power parameter should be initialised to SIGLIB_ZERO.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_Lms, SDS_Lms, SDA_LmsUpdate, SDA_LeakyLmsUpdate,
SDA_SignErrorLmsUpdate, SDA_SignDataLmsUpdate, SDA_SignSignLmsUpdate.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```

void SDA_SignErrorLmsUpdate (const SLData_t *,   LMS filter state pointer
                             SLData_t *,         LMS filter coefficients array pointer
                             SLArrayIndex_t *,    LMS filter offset pointer
                             const SLArrayIndex_t, LMS filter length
                             const SLData_t,      Adaptation step length
                             const SLData_t)      Error

```

DESCRIPTION

This function updates the adaptive transversal filter with sign error LMS algorithm. The following coefficient update algorithm is used:

$$\begin{aligned}
 y(n) &= \sum_{k=0}^{N-1} w(k) * x(n-k) \\
 e(n) &= d(n) - y(n) \\
 w(k) &= w(k) + u * \text{sign}[e(n)] * x(n-k) \quad k = 0, 1, 2, \dots, N-1
 \end{aligned}$$

Where $\text{sign}[x] = 1.0$ for $x \geq 0$ and $\text{sign}[x] = -1.0$ for $x < 0$

The sign error LMS function is one of a group of functions that allows for more efficient execution on a range of processors, typically fixed point. The mathematical simplification is through taking the sign of the error component.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_Lms, SDS_Lms, SDA_LmsUpdate, SDA_LeakyLmsUpdate, SDA_NormalizedLmsUpdate, SDA_SignDataLmsUpdate, SDA_SignSignLmsUpdate.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_SignDataLmsUpdate (const SLData_t *,   Filter state array pointer
                           SLData_t *,         LMS filter coefficients array pointer
                           SLArrayIndex_t *,    LMS filter offset pointer
                           const SLArrayIndex_t, LMS filter length
                           const SLData_t,      Adaptation step length
                           const SLData_t)      Error
```

DESCRIPTION

This function updates the adaptive transversal filter with the sign data LMS algorithm. The following coefficient update algorithm is used:

$$y(n) = \sum_{k=0}^{N-1} w(k) * x(n-k)$$

$$e(n) = d(n) - y(n)$$

$$w(k) = w(k) + u * e(n) * \text{sign}[x(n-k)] \quad k = 0, 1, 2, \dots, N-1$$

Where $\text{sign}[x] = 1.0$ for $x \geq 0$ and $\text{sign}[x] = -1.0$ for $x < 0$

The sign data LMS function is one of a group of functions that allows for more efficient execution on a range of processors, typically fixed point. The mathematical simplification is through taking the sign of the data component.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_Lms, SDS_Lms, SDA_LmsUpdate, SDA_LeakyLmsUpdate,
SDA_NormalizedLmsUpdate, SDA_SignErrorLmsUpdate,
SDA_SignSignLmsUpdate.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_SignSignLmsUpdate (const SLData_t *,   Filter state array pointer
                           SLData_t *,         LMS filter coefficients array pointer
                           SLArrayIndex_t *,    LMS filter offset pointer
                           const SLArrayIndex_t, LMS filter length
                           const SLData_t,      Adaptation step length
                           const SLData_t)      Error
```

DESCRIPTION

This function updates the adaptive transversal filter with the sign-sign LMS algorithm. The following coefficient update algorithm is used:

$$y(n) = \sum_{k=0}^{N-1} w(k) * x(n-k)$$

$$e(n) = d(n) - y(n)$$

$$w(k) = w(k) + u * \text{sign}[e(n)] * \text{sign}[x(n-k)] \quad k = 0, 1, 2, \dots, N-1$$

Where $\text{sign}[x] = 1.0$ for $x \geq 0$ and $\text{sign}[x] = -1.0$ for $x < 0$

The sign-sign LMS function is one of a group of functions that allows for more efficient execution on a range of processors, typically fixed point. The mathematical simplification is through taking the sign of both the error and the data components.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_Lms, SDS_Lms, SDA_LmsUpdate, SDA_LeakyLmsUpdate,
SDA_NormalizedLmsUpdate, SDA_SignErrorLmsUpdate,
SDA_SignDataLmsUpdate.

CONVOLUTION FUNCTIONS (*convolve.c*)

SDA_ConvolveLinear

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_ConvolveLinear (const SLData_t *,	Input array pointer
const SLData_t *,	Impulse response data pointer
SLData_t *,	Destination array pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Input data length
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Impulse response length

DESCRIPTION

This function performs a linear (zero padded) convolution between two arrays. One array containing the input data, and one containing the impulse response function, to which that data is being applied.

The equation for this function is:

$$y[m] = \sum_{n=0}^{W-1} (w[n] * x[m-n]) \quad 0 \leq m < W + X - 1$$

NOTES ON USE

This function is almost identical to the FIR filter function, it is however treated as a separate function for the sake of completeness and because treating the functions separately fits more naturally into many applications.

This function treats all data outside the specified arrays as zero.

The Destination array length must be greater than or equal to $W+X-1$

The input and output arrays can be of different lengths.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_ConvolveCircular, SDA_ConvolvePartial, SDA_CorrelateLinear,
SDA_CorrelateCircular, SDA_ConvolveLinearComplex,
SDA_ConvolvePartialComplex, SDA_ConvolveCircularComplex

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_ConvolvePartial (const SLData_t *,      Input array pointer
                          const SLData_t *,      Impulse response data pointer
                          SLData_t *,            Destination array pointer
                          const SLArrayIndex_t,   Input data length
                          const SLArrayIndex_t)   Impulse response length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function performs a linear (non-zero padded) convolution between two arrays. One array containing the input data, and one containing the impulse response function, to which that data is being applied.

The equation for this function is:

$$y[m] = \sum_{n=0}^{W-1} (w[n] * x[m + W - 1 - n]) \quad 0 \leq m < W - X$$

NOTES ON USE

This function only convolves the data where the arrays completely overlap each other. The Destination array length is equal to $X+W+1$.
The input array 1 must be larger than or equal to input array 2.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_ConvolveLinear, SDA_ConvolveCircular, SDA_CorrelateLinear,
SDA_CorrelateCircular, SDA_ConvolveLinearComplex,
SDA_ConvolvePartialComplex, SDA_ConvolveCircularComplex

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_ConvolveCircular (const SLData_t *,    Input array pointer
                           const SLData_t *,    Impulse response data pointer
                           SLData_t *,          Destination array pointer
                           const SLArrayIndex_t) Input data length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function performs a circular convolution between two arrays. One array containing the input data, and one containing the impulse response function, to which that data is being applied.

The equation for this function is:

$$y[m] = \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} (w[n] \cdot x[m - n + N]_N) \quad 0 \leq m < N - 1$$

NOTES ON USE

The input and output arrays must be the same length.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_ConvolveLinear, SDA_ConvolvePartial, SDA_CorrelateLinear,
SDA_CorrelateCircular, SDA_ConvolveLinearComplex,
SDA_ConvolvePartialComplex, SDA_ConvolveCircularComplex

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_ConvolveLinearComplex (const SLData_t *,    Pointer to real input array
                                const SLData_t *,    Pointer to imaginary input array
                                const SLData_t *,    Pointer to real impulse response
                                const SLData_t *,    Pointer to imaginary impulse response
                                SLData_t *,          Pointer to real destination array
                                SLData_t *,          Pointer to imaginary destination array
                                const SLArrayIndex_t, Input data length
                                const SLArrayIndex_t) Impulse response length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function performs a linear (zero padded) convolution between two complex data sequences. One sequence containing the input data, and one containing the impulse response function, to which that data is being applied.

The equation for this function is:

$$y[m] = \sum_{n=0}^{W-1} (w[n] * x[m-n]) \quad 0 \leq m < W + X - 1$$

NOTES ON USE

This function treats all data outside the specified sequences as zero.
 The Destination sequence length must be greater than or equal to $W+X-1$
 The input and output sequences can be of different lengths.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_ConvolveLinear, SDA_ConvolveCircular, SDA_ConvolvePartial,
 SDA_CorrelateLinear, SDA_CorrelateCircular, SDA_ConvolvePartialComplex,
 SDA_ConvolveCircularComplex

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_ConvolvePartialComplex (const SLData_t *,    Pointer to real input array
                                const SLData_t *,    Pointer to imaginary input array
                                const SLData_t *,    Pointer to real impulse response
                                const SLData_t *,    Pointer to imaginary impulse response
                                SLData_t *,          Pointer to real destination array
                                SLData_t *,          Pointer to imaginary destination array
                                const SLArrayIndex_t, Input data length
                                const SLArrayIndex_t) Impulse response length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function performs a linear (non-zero padded) convolution between two complex data sequences. One sequence containing the input data, and one containing the impulse response function, to which that data is being applied.

The equation for this function is:

$$y[m] = \sum_{n=0}^{W-1} (w[n] * x[m+W-1-n]) \quad 0 \leq m < W-X$$

NOTES ON USE

This function only convolves the data where the sequences completely overlap each other.

The Destination array length is equal to $X-W+1$.

The input sequence 1 must be larger than or equal to input sequence 2.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_ConvolveLinear, SDA_ConvolvePartial, SDA_ConvolveCircular,
 SDA_CorrelateLinear, SDA_CorrelateCircular, SDA_ConvolveLinearComplex,
 SDA_ConvolveCircularComplex

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_ConvolveCircularComplex (const SLData_t *,  Pointer to real input array
    const SLData_t *,                               Pointer to imaginary input array
    const SLData_t *,                               Pointer to real impulse response
    const SLData_t *,                               Pointer to imaginary impulse response
    SLData_t *,                                     Pointer to real destination array
    SLData_t *,                                     Pointer to imaginary destination array
    const SLArrayIndex_t)                          Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function performs a circular convolution between two complex data sequences. One sequence containing the input data, and one containing the impulse response function, to which that data is being applied.

The equation for this function is:

$$y[m] = \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} (w[n] \cdot x[m - n + N|_N]) \quad 0 \leq m < N - 1$$

NOTES ON USE

The input and output sequences must be the same length.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_ConvolveLinear, SDA_ConvolvePartial, SDA_ConvolveCircular,
 SDA_CorrelateLinear, SDA_CorrelateCircular, SDA_ConvolveLinearComplex,
 SDA_ConvolvePartialComplex

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_Deconvolution (SLData_t *,	Pointer to real source array
SLData_t *,	Pointer to imag. source array
SLData_t *,	Pointer to real impulse response array
SLData_t *,	Pointer to imag. impulse response array
const SLData_t,	Minimum value to avoid divide by zero
const SLData_t *,	FFT length
const SLArrayIndex_t *,	FFT bit reversed address look up table
const SLArrayIndex_t,	FFT length
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Log2 FFT length
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Inverse FFT length

DESCRIPTION

This function performs a frequency domain deconvolution between two arrays. One array containing the input data, and one containing the impulse response function that is being deconvolved from the original.

NOTES ON USE

The input and output arrays must be the same length – and zero padded to the length of the FFT.

The results are returned in the source arrays.

The impulse response data is destroyed in the process.

The minimum value must be set to avoid division by zero in the deconvolution process.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_ConvolveLinear, SDA_ConvolvePartial, SDA_CorrelateLinear,
SDA_CorrelateCircular, SIF_FftDeconvolutionPre, SDA_FftDeconvolutionPre

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SIF_FftDeconvolutionPre (const SLData_t *,   Pointer to impulse response array
                             SLData_t *,         Pointer to real FT(1/(impulse response))
                             array
                             SLData_t *,         Pointer to imaginary FT(1/(impulse
                             response)) array
                             const SLData_t,     Minimum value to avoid divide by zero
                             const SLData_t *,   FFT coefficients
                             const SLArrayIndex_t *, FFT Bit reversed address look up table
                             const SLArrayIndex_t, FFT length
                             const SLArrayIndex_t) Log2 FFT length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function initialized the SDA_FftDeconvolutionPre() function, which uses pre-calculated frequency domain coefficients for the system impulse response.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_ConvolveLinear, SDA_ConvolvePartial, SDA_CorrelateLinear,
SDA_CorrelateCircular, SDA_FftDeconvolution, SDA_FftDeconvolutionPre

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_FftDeconvolutionPre (SLData_t *,	Pointer to real source array
SLData_t *,	Pointer to imaginary source array
const SLData_t *,	Pointer to real FT(1/(impulse response))
array	
const SLData_t *,	Pointer to imaginary FT(1/(impulse
response)) array	
const SLData_t *,	FFT coefficients
const SLArrayIndex_t *,	FFT Bit reversed address look up table
const SLArrayIndex_t,	FFT length
const SLArrayIndex_t,	log2 FFT length
const SLData_t)	Inverse FFT Size

DESCRIPTION

This function performs a frequency domain deconvolution between two arrays. One array containing the input data, and one containing the impulse response function that is being deconvolved from the original. This function uses pre-calculated frequency domain coefficients for the system impulse response.

NOTES ON USE

The input and output arrays must be the same length – and zero padded to the length of the FFT.

The results are returned in the source arrays.

The impulse response data is destroyed in the process.

The minimum value must be set to avoid division by zero in the deconvolution process.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_ConvolveLinear, SDA_ConvolvePartial, SDA_CorrelateLinear, SDA_CorrelateCircular, SDA_FftDeconvolution, SIF_FftDeconvolution

CORRELATION FUNCTIONS (*correlate.c*)

SDA_CorrelateLinear

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_CorrelateLinear (const SLData_t *,   Source array 1 pointer
                          const SLData_t *,   Source array 2 pointer
                          SLData_t *,        Destination array pointer
                          const SLArrayIndex_t, Length of source array 1
                          const SLArrayIndex_t, Length of source array 2
                          const SLArrayIndex_t, Number of correlations)
```

DESCRIPTION

This function performs a linear cross correlation between two data vectors, the addresses of which are passed to the function.

The equation for the SDA_CorrelateLinear function is:

$$y[n] = \sum_{m=0}^{L-1-n} (w[m] * x[m+n]) \quad 0 \leq m < L$$

Where:

w is source array 1

x is source array 2

L is the Number of correlations

NOTES ON USE

To perform auto-correlation, the address of the vector array to be correlated should be passed twice.

The number of correlations must be ≥ 1 .

$\text{Corr}(w,x) \neq \text{corr}(x,w)$ in fact $\text{corr}(w,x)$ is time reversed from $\text{corr}(x,w)$.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_CorrelatePartial, SDA_CorrelateCircular, SDA_Covariance,
SDA_CorrelateLinearReturnPeak

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_CorrelatePartial (const SLData_t *,   Source array 1 pointer
                           const SLData_t *,   Source array 2 pointer
                           SLData_t *,         Destination array pointer
                           const SLArrayIndex_t, Length of source array 1
                           const SLArrayIndex_t) Length of source array 2
```

DESCRIPTION

This function performs a non-overlapped linear cross correlation between two data vectors, the addresses of which are passed to the function.

NOTES ON USE

To perform auto-correlation, the address of the vector array to be correlated should be passed twice.

The number of correlations must be ≥ 1 .

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_CorrelateLinear, SDA_CorrelateCircular, SDA_Covariance,
SDA_CorrelateLinearReturnPeak

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_CorrelateCircular (const SLData_t *,   Input array 1 pointer
                           const SLData_t *,   Input array 2 pointer
                           SLData_t *,         Destination array pointer
                           const SLArrayIndex_t) Length of input arrays
```

DESCRIPTION

This function performs a cyclic cross correlation between two data vectors, the addresses of which are passed to the function.

The equation for the SDA_CorrelateCircular function is:

$$y[m] = \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} (x[n] \cdot x[(n+m)_N]) \quad 0 \leq m < N$$

NOTES ON USE

To perform auto-correlation, the address of the vector array to be correlated should be passed twice.

Both input arrays are the same length

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_CorrelateLinear, SDA_CorrelatePartial, SDA_Covariance,
SDA_CorrelateLinearReturnPeak

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_Covariance (SLData_t *,	Source array 1 pointer
const SLData_t *,	Source array 2 pointer
SLData_t *,	Destination array pointer
const SLData_t,	Inverse of length of array #1
const SLData_t,	Inverse of length of array #2
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Length of source array 1
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Length of source array 2
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Number of correlations

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the covariance of two vectors, where the covariance is defined as the correlation of the two vectors, with the means subtracted from the two signals.

NOTES ON USE

WARNING: THIS FUNCTION DESTROYS THE SOURCE ARRAYS.

This function calls the SDA_CorrelateLinear function.

This function destroys the data in the source arrays.

The “inverse of array length” parameters is used to avoid having to perform a divide operation within the function. This improves run-time performance.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_CorrelateLinear, SDA_CorrelatePartial, SDA_CorrelateCircular,
SDA_CovariancePartial, SDA_CorrelateLinearReturnPeak.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_CovariancePartial (SLData_t *,   Source array 1 pointer
                           const SLData_t *, Source array 2 pointer
                           SLData_t *,     Destination array pointer
                           const SLData_t,  Inverse of length of array #1
                           const SLData_t,  Inverse of length of array #2
                           const SLArrayIndex_t, Length of source array 1
                           const SLArrayIndex_t) Length of source array 2
```

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the covariance of two vectors, where the covariance is defined as the correlation of the two vectors, with the means subtracted from the two signals.

NOTES ON USE

WARNING: THIS FUNCTION DESTROYS THE SOURCE ARRAYS.

This function calls the SDA_CorrelatePartial function.

This function destroys the data in the source arrays.

The “inverse of array length” parameters is used to avoid having to perform a divide operation within the function. This improves run-time performance.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_CorrelateLinear, SDA_CorrelatePartial, SDA_CorrelateCircular,
SDA_Covariance, SDA_CorrelateLinearReturnPeak.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_CorrelateLinearReturnPeak (const SLData_t *,   Source array 1 pointer
                                   const SLData_t *,   Source array 2 pointer
                                   SLData_t *,         Peak value result pointer
                                   SLArrayIndex_t *,     Peak index result pointer
                                   const SLArrayIndex_t, Length of source array 1
                                   const SLArrayIndex_t, Length of source array 2
                                   const SLArrayIndex_t) Number of correlations
```

DESCRIPTION

This function performs a linear cross correlation between two data vectors, the addresses of which are passed to the function. It then returns the magnitude of the cross correlation peak and the index of that peak in the cross correlation result.

The equation for the SDA_CorrelateLinear function is:

$$y[n] = \sum_{m=0}^{L-1-n} (w[m] * x[m+n]) \quad 0 \leq m < L$$

Where:

w is source array 1
 x is source array 2
 L is the Number of correlations

NOTES ON USE

To perform auto-correlation, the address of the vector array to be correlated should be passed twice.

The number of correlations must be ≥ 1 .

$\text{Corr}(w,x) \neq \text{corr}(x,w)$ in fact $\text{corr}(w,x)$ is time reversed from $\text{corr}(x,w)$.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_CorrelateLinear, SDA_CorrelatePartial, SDA_CorrelateCircular,
SDA_Covariance, SDA_CovariancePartial

DELAY FUNCTIONS (*delay.c*)

Overview of SigLib delay functions

SigLib includes two different sets of delay functions. The first set of functions (SDS_FixedDelay, SDA_FixedDelay, SDS_FixedDelayComplex, SDA_FixedDelayComplex) implement a fixed length delay while the second set of functions (SDS_VariableDelay, SDA_VariableDelay, SDS_VariableDelayComplex, SDA_VariableDelayComplex) implement a variable length delay where the delay can be increased and decreased as required, for example to track timing offsets in a modem.

One other function (SDA_ShortFixedDelay) is provided that provides a simple delay function where the delay length must be less than the length of the source array.

SIF_FixedDelay

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SIF_FixedDelay (SLData_t *,	State array pointer
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to delay index
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Delay length

DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the delay functions SDS_FixedDelay, SDA_FixedDelay or SDA_ShortFixedDelay. Initialises the state array and the delay index to zero.

NOTES ON USE

If this function is used to initialise SDA_ShortFixedDelay then the delay index pointer can be set to SIGLIB_NULL_FIX_DATA_PTR and it will be ignored.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS_FixedDelay, SDA_FixedDelay, SIF_FixedDelayComplex, SDS_FixedDelayComplex, SDA_FixedDelayComplex, SDA_ShortFixedDelay, SIF_VariableDelay, SDS_VariableDelay, SDA_VariableDelay, SIF_VariableDelayComplex, SDS_VariableDelayComplex, SDA_VariableDelayComplex.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDS_FixedDelay (const SLData_t,	Input sample to delay
SLData_t *,	State array pointer
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Delay index
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Delay length

DESCRIPTION

This function delays the data by N samples. This function works as a FIFO buffer.

NOTES ON USE

You must initialise the delay using the function SIF_FixedDelay.

The state array must be at least as long as the delay length.

The xxx_FIFODelay functions provide generic FIFO functionality with the ability to increase and decrease the delay on-the-fly.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_FixedDelay, SDA_FixedDelay, SIF_FixedDelayComplex,
SDS_FixedDelayComplex, SDA_FixedDelayComplex, SIF_VariableDelay,
SDS_VariableDelay, SDA_VariableDelay, SIF_VariableDelayComplex,
SDS_VariableDelayComplex, SDA_VariableDelayComplex.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_FixedDelay (const SLData_t *,   Source array pointer
                    SLData_t *,         Destination array pointer
                    SLData_t *,         State array pointer
                    SLArrayIndex_t *,   Delay index
                    const SLArrayIndex_t) Delay length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function delays the data by N samples. This function works as a FIFO buffer.

NOTES ON USE

You must initialise the delay using the function SIF_FixedDelay.

The state array must be at least as long as the delay length.

The xxx_FIFODelay functions provide generic FIFO functionality with the ability to increase and decrease the delay on-the-fly.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_FixedDelay, SDS_FixedDelay, SIF_FixedDelayComplex,
SDS_FixedDelayComplex, SDA_FixedDelayComplex, SIF_VariableDelay,
SDS_VariableDelay, SDA_VariableDelay, SIF_VariableDelayComplex,
SDS_VariableDelayComplex, SDA_VariableDelayComplex.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SIF_FixedDelayComplex (SLData_t *, Real state array pointer
    SLData_t *,                      Imaginary state array pointer
    SLArrayIndex_t *,                Pointer to delay index
    const SLArrayIndex_t)            Delay length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the delay functions SDS_FixedDelayComplex and SDA_FixedDelayComplex. Initialises the state array and the delay index to zero.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF_FixedDelay, SDS_FixedDelay, SDA_FixedDelay,
SDS_FixedDelayComplex, SDA_FixedDelayComplex, SIF_VariableDelay,
SDS_VariableDelay, SDA_VariableDelay, SIF_VariableDelayComplex,
SDS_VariableDelayComplex, SDA_VariableDelayComplex.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDS_FixedDelayComplex (const SLData_t,    Real input sample to delay
                           const SLData_t,    Imaginary input sample to delay
                           SLData_t *,        Real destination sample pointer
                           SLData_t *,        Imaginary destination sample pointer
                           SLData_t *,        Real state array pointer
                           SLData_t *,        Imaginary state array pointer
                           SLArrayIndex_t *,  Delay index
                           const SLArrayIndex_t) Delay length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function delays the complex data by N samples. This function works as a FIFO buffer.

NOTES ON USE

You must initialise the delay using the function `SIF_FixedDelayComplex`.

The state arrays must be at least as long as the delay length.

The `xxx_FIFODelay` functions provide generic FIFO functionality with the ability to increase and decrease the delay on-the-fly.

CROSS REFERENCE

`SIF_FixedDelay`, `SDS_FixedDelay`, `SDA_FixedDelay`,
`SIF_FixedDelayComplex`, `SDA_FixedDelayComplex`, `SIF_VariableDelay`,
`SDS_VariableDelay`, `SDA_VariableDelay`, `SIF_VariableDelayComplex`,
`SDS_VariableDelayComplex`, `SDA_VariableDelayComplex`.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_FixedDelayComplex (const SLData_t *, Real source array pointer
    const SLData_t *,           Imaginary source array pointer
    SLData_t *,                 Real destination array pointer
    SLData_t *,                 Imaginary destination array pointer
    SLData_t *,                 Real state array pointer
    SLData_t *,                 Imaginary state array pointer
    SLArrayIndex_t *,           Delay index
    const SLArrayIndex_t)       Delay length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function delays the complex data by N samples. This function works as a FIFO buffer.

NOTES ON USE

You must initialise the delay using the function SIF_FixedDelayComplex.

The state arrays must be at least as long as the delay length.

The xxx_FIFODelay functions provide generic FIFO functionality with the ability to increase and decrease the delay on-the-fly.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_FixedDelay, SDS_FixedDelay, SDA_FixedDelay,
SIF_FixedDelayComplex, SDS_FixedDelayComplex, SIF_VariableDelay,
SDS_VariableDelay, SDA_VariableDelay, SIF_VariableDelayComplex,
SDS_VariableDelayComplex, SDA_VariableDelayComplex.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_ShortFixedDelay (const SLData_t *,      Source array pointer
                          SLData_t *,            Destination array pointer
                          SLData_t *,            Temporary delayed array pointer
                          SLData_t *,            Temporary destination array pointer
                          const SLArrayIndex_t,   Sample delay count
                          const SLArrayIndex_t)   Delay length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function delays the data in the array by N samples, any remaining data will be carried over and will be used in succeeding functions.

NOTES ON USE

This function will work in-place.

The delay length must be less than the length of the source array.

The temporary array must be the same length as the length of the delay and should be initialised using the functions SDA_Clear or SIF_FixedDelay prior to use.

The xxx_FIFODelay functions provide generic FIFO functionality with the ability to increase and decrease the delay on-the-fly.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_FixedDelay, SDS_FixedDelay, SDA_FixedDelay, SIF_VariableDelay,
SDS_VariableDelay, SDA_VariableDelay.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SL_Error_t SIF_VariableDelay (SLData_t *, Pointer to the delay state array
                               SLArrayIndex_t *, Pointer to the FIFO input index
                               SLArrayIndex_t *, Pointer to the FIFO output index
                               SLArrayIndex_t *, Variable FIFO delay length
                               const SLArrayIndex_t, Initial FIFO delay value
                               const SLArrayIndex_t) Maximum delay length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function initialises the FIFO Delay functions.

NOTES ON USE

The index pointers are used to access the FIFO for the input and output streams. These values are initialised by the function.

The length of the delay state array must be at least the size of the maximum FIFO delay length.

The minimum delay length (in number of samples) is equal to zero.
The maximum delay length (in number of samples) is equal to MaxDelayLength - 1.
This function returns SIGLIB_ERROR if the requested initial FIFO delay is less than zero or greater than the maximum allowable delay
The variable FIFO delay parameter is used to track the depth of the delay in the state array to ensure that it does not overflow. This is used by the functions
SUF_IncreaseVariableDelay and SUF_DecreaseVariableDelay.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_FixedDelay, SDS_FixedDelay, SDA_FixedDelay,
SIF_FixedDelayComplex, SDS_FixedDelayComplex, SDA_FixedDelayComplex,
SDS_VariableDelay, SDA_VariableDelay, SIF_VariableDelayComplex,
SDS_VariableDelayComplex, SDA_VariableDelayComplex,
SUF_IncreaseVariableDelay, SUF_DecreaseVariableDelay.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t	SDS_VariableDelay	(const SLData_t,	Input value
		SLData_t *,	Pointer to the delay state array
		SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to the FIFO input index
		SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to the FIFO output index
		const SLArrayIndex_t)	Maximum delay length

DESCRIPTION

This function implements a FIFO Delay on a single input sample and generates a single output sample.

NOTES ON USE

The delay through this function can be modified on-the-fly using the functions `SUF_IncreaseVariableDelay` and `SUF_DecreaseVariableDelay`.

CROSS REFERENCE

`SIF_FixedDelay`, `SDS_FixedDelay`, `SDA_FixedDelay`,
`SIF_FixedDelayComplex`, `SDS_FixedDelayComplex`, `SDA_FixedDelayComplex`,
`SIF_VariableDelay`, `SDA_VariableDelay`, `SIF_VariableDelayComplex`,
`SDS_VariableDelayComplex`, `SDA_VariableDelayComplex`,
`SUF_IncreaseVariableDelay`, `SUF_DecreaseVariableDelay`.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_VariableDelay (const SLData_t *,          Pointer to the input array
                        SLData_t *,                Pointer to the output array
                        SLData_t *,                Pointer to the delay state array
                        SLArrayIndex_t *,          Pointer to the FIFO input index
                        SLArrayIndex_t *,          Pointer to the FIFO output index
                        const SLArrayIndex_t,      Maximum delay length
                        const SLArrayIndex_t)      Input / output array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function implements a FIFO Delay on a stream of samples.

NOTES ON USE

The delay through this function can be modified on-the-fly using the functions `SUF_IncreaseVariableDelay` and `SUF_DecreaseVariableDelay`.

CROSS REFERENCE

`SIF_FixedDelay`, `SDS_FixedDelay`, `SDA_FixedDelay`,
`SIF_FixedDelayComplex`, `SDS_FixedDelayComplex`, `SDA_FixedDelayComplex`,
`SIF_VariableDelay`, `SDS_VariableDelay`, `SIF_VariableDelayComplex`,
`SDS_VariableDelayComplex`, `SDA_VariableDelayComplex`,
`SUF_IncreaseVariableDelay`, `SUF_DecreaseVariableDelay`.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```

SL_Error_t SIF_VariableDelayComplex (SLData_t *, Pointer to real delay state array
    SLData_t *,                               Pointer to imaginary delay state array
    SLArrayIndex_t *,                         Pointer to the FIFO input index
    SLArrayIndex_t *,                         Pointer to the FIFO output index
    SLArrayIndex_t *,                         Variable FIFO delay length
    const SLArrayIndex_t,                     Initial FIFO delay value
    const SLArrayIndex_t)                     Maximum delay length

```

DESCRIPTION

This function initialises the complex FIFO Delay functions.

NOTES ON USE

The index pointers are used to access the FIFO for the input and output streams. These values are initialised by the function.

The length of the delay state arrays must be at least the size of the maximum FIFO delay length.

The minimum delay length (in number of samples) is equal to zero.
 The maximum delay length (in number of samples) is equal to MaxDelayLength - 1.
 This function returns SIGLIB_ERROR if the requested initial FIFO delay is less than zero or greater than the maximum allowable delay.
 The variable FIFO delay parameter is used to track the depth of the delay in the state array to ensure that it does not overflow. This is used by the functions
 SUF_IncreaseVariableDelay and SUF_DecreaseVariableDelay.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_FixedDelay, SDS_FixedDelay, SDA_FixedDelay,
 SIF_FixedDelayComplex, SDS_FixedDelayComplex, SDA_FixedDelayComplex,
 SIF_VariableDelay, SDS_VariableDelay, SDA_VariableDelay,
 SDS_VariableDelayComplex, SDA_VariableDelayComplex,
 SUF_IncreaseVariableDelay, SUF_DecreaseVariableDelay.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDS_VariableDelayComplex (const SLData_t, Real input value
    const SLData_t,           Imaginary input value
    SLData_t *,               Pointer to real output value
    SLData_t *,               Pointer to imaginary output value
    SLData_t *,               Pointer to real delay state array
    SLData_t *,               Pointer to imaginary delay state array
    SLArrayIndex_t *,         Pointer to the FIFO input index
    SLArrayIndex_t *,         Pointer to the FIFO output index
    const SLArrayIndex_t)     Maximum delay length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function implements a FIFO Delay on a single complex input sample and generates a single complex output sample.

NOTES ON USE

The delay through this function can be modified on-the-fly using the functions `SUF_IncreaseVariableDelay` and `SUF_DecreaseVariableDelay`.

CROSS REFERENCE

`SIF_FixedDelay`, `SDS_FixedDelay`, `SDA_FixedDelay`,
`SIF_FixedDelayComplex`, `SDS_FixedDelayComplex`, `SDA_FixedDelayComplex`,
`SIF_VariableDelay`, `SDS_VariableDelay`, `SDA_VariableDelay`,
`SIF_VariableDelayComplex`, `SDA_VariableDelayComplex`,
`SUF_IncreaseVariableDelay`, `SUF_DecreaseVariableDelay`.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_VariableDelayComplex (const SLData_t *, Pointer to the real input array
    const SLData_t *,           Pointer to the imaginary input array
    SLData_t *,                 Pointer to the real output array
    SLData_t *,                 Pointer to the imaginary output array
    SLData_t *,                 Pointer to real delay state array
    SLData_t *,                 Pointer to imaginary delay state array
    SLArrayIndex_t *,           Pointer to the FIFO input index
    SLArrayIndex_t *,           Pointer to the FIFO output index
    const SLArrayIndex_t,       Maximum delay length
    const SLArrayIndex_t)       Input / output array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function implements a FIFO Delay on a stream of samples.

NOTES ON USE

The delay through this function can be modified on-the-fly using the functions `SUF_IncreaseVariableDelay` and `SUF_DecreaseVariableDelay`.

CROSS REFERENCE

`SIF_FixedDelay`, `SDS_FixedDelay`, `SDA_FixedDelay`,
`SIF_FixedDelayComplex`, `SDS_FixedDelayComplex`, `SDA_FixedDelayComplex`,
`SIF_VariableDelay`, `SDS_VariableDelay`, `SDA_VariableDelay`,
`SIF_FifoComplexDelay`, `SDS_FifoComplexDelay`, `SUF_IncreaseVariableDelay`,
`SUF_DecreaseVariableDelay`.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLArrayIndex_t SUF_IncreaseVariableDelay (SLArrayIndex_t *, Pointer to the
FIFO output index

SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to delay length
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Maximum delay length

DESCRIPTION

This function increments the FIFO delay length.

NOTES ON USE

This function returns an error if the incremented delay is greater than the maximum allowable delay and it does not adjust the delay.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_VariableDelay, SDS_VariableDelay, SDA_VariableDelay,
SIF_VariableDelayComplex, SDS_VariableDelayComplex,
SDA_VariableDelayComplex, SUF_DecreaseVariableDelay.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLArrayIndex_t SUF_DecreaseVariableDelay (SLArrayIndex_t *, Pointer to the
FIFO output index

SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to delay length
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Maximum delay length

DESCRIPTION

This function decrements the FIFO delay length.

NOTES ON USE

This function returns SIGLIB_ERROR if the decremented delay is less than zero and it does not adjust the delay.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_VariableDelay, SDS_VariableDelay, SDA_VariableDelay,
SIF_FifoComplexDelay, SDS_FifoComplexDelay, SDA_FifoComplexDelay,
SUF_IncreaseVariableDelay.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLArrayIndex_t SDA_Align (const SLData_t *, Pointer to source array #1
    const SLData_t *,           Pointer to source array #2
    SLData_t *,                 Pointer to destination array #1
    SLData_t *,                 Pointer to destination array #2
    const enum SAlign_t,         Alignment mode
    const SLArrayIndex_t,        Source array #1 length
    const SLArrayIndex_t)        Source array #2 length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function first locates the cross-correlation peak (using SDA_CorrelateLinearReturnPeak()) then aligns the two arrays.

The return value is the length of the destination arrays.

NOTES ON USE

The two available alignment types are:

SIGLIB_ALIGN_EXTEND	Zero pads each array so that no data is lost
SIGLIB_ALIGN_CROP	Crops the output so that only the overlaped data is returned

It is important to ensure that the destination arrays are long enough to hold the worst case output: Source array #1 length + Source array #1 length -1.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_CorrelateLinearReturnPeak

IMAGE PROCESSING FUNCTIONS (*image.c*)



Due to the memory requirements of image processing applications, LARGE memory models may be required for some processors. When using the image processing functions on a 16 bit processor it is often necessary to use the “huge” keyword when declaring pointers. The definition of whether the “huge” keyword is required in the function declaration is located in the processor specific section of the *siglib.h* file. To select the “huge” declaration, set the defined constant `_SL_HUGE_ARRAYS` to “1”. If the “huge” keyword is unnecessary then this should be set to “0”.

The SigLib Windows DLL libraries are compiled for either 32 or 64 bits so `_SL_HUGE_ARRAYS` should be set to “0” at all times.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SIM_Fft2d (const SLImageData_t *,	Source image pointer
const SLImageData_t *,	Destination image pointer
const SLData_t *,	FFT coefficients pointer
SLImageData_t *,	Pointer to FFT calculation array
SLData_t *,	Pointer to real FFT calculation array
SLData_t *,	Pointer to imag. FFT calculation array
const SLData_t,	1.0 / Dimension - used for FFT scaling
const SLArrayIndex_t *,	Bit reverse mode flag / Pointer to bit
reverse address table	
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Dimension of image
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Log2 of dimension of image

DESCRIPTION

This function performs a two dimensional FFT on an image.

NOTES ON USE

The program is currently written for the integer based machines, because of memory limitations etc. all temporary pixel storage is in fixed point format and the data after each FFT is scaled to fit. The function can be easily ported to any environment and it becomes significantly simpler on systems with more memory and on systems with floating point capability. The latter will allow the removal of all of the scaling that has currently been included, to facilitate pixel storage in a single byte of memory. The final results are logarithmic, to maintain the best dynamic range.

There are many different techniques for performing a multi-dimensional FFT, the actual technique chosen often depends on the hardware architecture. On large workstations with a linear address space it is often more computationally efficient to perform the whole 2D FFT as a single process. When using general purpose floating point DSPs, with on-chip memory or when using some of the more modern RISC processors with on-chip cache, it is often more efficient to perform the row and column FFTs separately in this memory. There is an overhead associated with transferring the data in and out of on-chip memory, but this does not usually outweigh the benefit of performing the FFT in on-chip memory. It is for this reason that the SigLib SIM_Fft2d function performs the row and column FFTs separately.

Further parameter details: The pointer to FFT calculation array - this is a pointer to an array of type SLImageData_t that is the same size as the source image. Pointer to real and imaginary FFT calculation arrays - these are pointers to arrays of type SLData_t that are as long as one dimension of the image – either row or column.

Please also refer to the notes about the regular FFT functions.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_Fft2d

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SIF_Fft2d (SLData_t *,	FFT coefficient pointer
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Bit reverse mode flag / Pointer to bit
reverse address table	
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Dimension of image

DESCRIPTION

This function initializes 2D FFT function, including twiddle factor array. Prior to using the 2D FFT function, the function SIF_Fft2d() must be called.

NOTES ON USE

Please also refer to the notes about the regular FFT functions.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIM_Fft2d

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SIM_Conv3x3 (const SLImageData_t *,      Source array pointer
                  SLImageData_t *,           Destination array pointer
                  const SLData_t *,          Coefficients array pointer
                  const SLArrayIndex_t,      Line length
                  const SLArrayIndex_t)      Column length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function convolves an arbitrary n x m image with a 3x3 kernel.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SIM_SobelVertical3x3, SIM_SobelHorizontal3x3, SIM_Median3x3,
SIM_Sobel3x3, SIF_ConvCoefficients3x3

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SIM_Sobel3x3 (const SLImageData_t *,      Source array pointer
                  SLImageData_t *,            Destination array pointer
                  const SLArrayIndex_t,        Line length
                  const SLArrayIndex_t)        Column length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function convolves an arbitrary n x m image with a 3x3 Sobel filter kernel.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SIM_SobelVertical3x3, SIM_SobelHorizontal3x3, SIM_Median3x3,
SIM_Sobel3x3

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SIM_SobelVertical3x3 (const SLImageData_t *,      Source array pointer
                           SLImageData_t *,           Destination array pointer
                           const SLArrayIndex_t,       Line length
                           const SLArrayIndex_t)       Column length
```

DESCRIPTION

The SIM_SobelVertical3x3 function performs a two dimensional Sobel vertical edge detection filter on the image. The coefficients for the filter are:

$$S = \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 0 & 1 \\ -2 & 0 & 2 \\ -1 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

NOTES ON USE

This filter gives better performance if the image has been cleaned up by low pass filtering and thresholding.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIM_Sobel3x3, SIM_SobelHorizontal3x3, SIM_Median3x3

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SIM_SobelHorizontal3x3 (const SLImageData_t *, Source array Pointer
                             SLImageData_t *,           Destination array pointer
                             const SLArrayIndex_t,       Line length
                             const SLArrayIndex_t)       Column length
```

DESCRIPTION

The SIM_SobelHorizontal3x3 function performs a two dimensional horizontal Sobel edge detection filter on the image. The coefficients for the filter are:

$$S = \begin{bmatrix} -1 & -2 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 2 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

NOTES ON USE

This filter gives better performance if the image has been cleaned up by low pass filtering and thresholding.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIM_Median3x3, SIM_Sobel3x3, SIM_SobelVertical3x3

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SIM_Median3x3 (const SLImageData_t *,      Source array pointer
                    SLImageData_t *,           Destination array pointer
                    const SLArrayIndex_t,       Line length
                    const SLArrayIndex_t)      Column length
```

DESCRIPTION

The SIM_Median3x3 function performs a two dimensional median filter on the image.

NOTES ON USE

The 3x3 median filter is good at removing impulse noise unlike the 3x3 convolution it also good for preserving spatial resolution. It performs well on binary noise, but poorly on Gaussian. The median filter also doesn't perform well if there are more than 4 noise pixels per kernel.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIM_Conv3x3, SIM_SobelVertical3x3, SIM_SobelHorizontal3x3

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SL_Error_t SIF_ConvCoefficients3x3 SLData_t *, Pointer to coefficient array
 enum SL3x3Coeffs_t Filter type

DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the coefficients for the following 3x3 convolution kernels:

Edge enhancement (SIGLIB_EDGE_ENHANCEMENT):

$$h = \begin{bmatrix} -1 & -1 & -1 \\ -1 & 8 & -1 \\ -1 & -1 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$$

Horizontal edge detection (SIGLIB_HORIZONTAL_EDGE):

$$h = \begin{bmatrix} -1 & -1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

Vertical edge detection (SIGLIB_VERTICAL_EDGE):

$$h = \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SIM_Conv3x3, SIM_Sobel3x3, SIM_SobelVertical3x3,
 SIM_SobelHorizontal3x3, SIM_Median3x3

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLImageData_t SIM_Max (const SLImageData_t *, Array pointer
 const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the maximum data value in the image array.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SIM_Max.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLImageData_t SIM_Min (const SLImageData_t *, Array pointer
 const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the minimum data value in the image array.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SIM_Max.

void SIF_Dct8x8 (void)	Void
------------------------	------

DESCRIPTION

This function initialises the coefficient table for the 8 x 8 DCT. The coefficients are scaled to give a symmetric DCT / inverse DCT pair. The frequency domain coefficients produced by this technique will have a larger dynamic range than the input time domain data. Typically the dynamic range will be larger by a factor of about 4 to 6.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SIM_Dct8x8, SIM_Idct8x8, SIM_ZigZagScan, SIM_ZigZagDescan

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SIM_Dct8x8 (const SLData_t *,	Source array pointer
SLData_t *)	Destination array pointer

DESCRIPTION

This function performs an 8 x 8 DCT on the data.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF_Dct8x8, SIM_Idct8x8, SIM_ZigZagScan, SIM_ZigZagDescan

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SIM_Idct8x8 (const SLData_t *,	Source array pointer
SLData_t *)	Destination array pointer

DESCRIPTION

This function performs an inverse 8 x 8 DCT on the data.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF_Dct8x8, SIM_Dct8x8, SIM_ZigZagScan, SIM_ZigZagDescan

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SIM_ZigZagScan (const SLData_t *,   Source array pointer
                    SLData_t *,         Destination array pointer
                    const SLArrayIndex_t) Array lengths
```

DESCRIPTION

This function performs a zig-zag scan of the square 2D source array and place the results in a 1D array. In the zig-zag scan, the destination array is linearly addressed and the pointer to the source array must be non-linearly modified at the boundaries of the square matrix.

NOTES ON USE

The source array must be square and the two arrays must have the same number of elements.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_Dct8x8, SIM_Dct8x8, SIM_Idct8x8, SIM_ZigZagDescan

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SIM_ZigZagDescan (const SLData_t *,Source array pointer
                      SLData_t *,           Destination array pointer
                      const SLArrayIndex_t)  Array lengths
```

DESCRIPTION

This function performs a linear scan of the 1D source array and place the results in a zig-zag scanned square 2D array. In the zig-zag de-scan, the source array is linearly addressed and the pointer to the destination array must be non-linearly modified at the boundaries of the square matrix.

NOTES ON USE

The destination array must be square and the two arrays must have the same number of elements.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_Dct8x8, SIM_Dct8x8, SIM_Idct8x8, SIM_ZigZagScan

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLError_t SDA_SignalGenerate (SLData_t *,	Destination array pointer
const enum SLSignal_t,	Signal type
const SLData_t,	Peak value of signal
const enum SLSignalFillMode_t,	Array fill mode, fill up or add to
SLData_t,	Signal frequency
const SLData_t,	Signal offset
const SLData_t,	Control parameter
const SLData_t,	End value
SLData_t *,	Phase offset
SLData_t *,	Current value
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function fills the array with a signal, according to the equation specified, the following is a list of the possible types, for the signal specification parameter:

```
SIGLIB_SINE_WAVE,  
SIGLIB_COSINE_WAVE,  
SIGLIB_WHITE_NOISE - normal distribution,  
SIGLIB_GAUSSIAN_NOISE - Gaussian distribution,  
SIGLIB_CHIRP_NL (non-linear),  
SIGLIB_CHIRP_LIN (linear),  
SIGLIB_SQUARE_WAVE,  
SIGLIB_TRIANGLE_WAVE  
SIGLIB_IMPULSE,  
SIGLIB_IMPULSE_STREAM,  
SIGLIB_STEP,  
SIGLIB_PN_SEQUENCE.
```

In addition to specifying the signal type, the mode with which the signal data is entered into the array can be specified. The two possibilities are: SIGLIB_FILL and SIGLIB_ADD. The former writes the data directly into the array, the latter adds the data to the existing contents of the array.

Some of the function parameters are obvious in their meaning and use, however the following will clarify some points. The signal type, SLSignal_t, should be one of the enumerated signal types, previously mentioned. The peak parameter specifies the largest positive value, that the signal will attain, all other values are scaled to this value accordingly. The array fill mode specifies whether to overwrite, or add to the existing array contents. The signal frequency parameter specifies the frequency, normalised to a sample rate of 1.0. Signal offset adds a specified DC offset to the signal, before storing it.

The frequency parameter is normalised to a sample rate of 1 Hz, therefore to calculate the entry for a particular frequency, at a particular sample rate, use:

$$y[m] = \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} (w[n] \cdot x[\lfloor n + m \rfloor_N]) \quad 0 \leq m < N$$

To fill any array with a single cycle wave, use:

$$\text{frequency parameter} = \frac{1}{\text{array length}}$$

The control parameter has different applications for different signal types. For the SQUARE wave it defines the duty cycle. For the TRIANGLE wave it specifies whether the signal is: a positively increasing, negatively decreasing, or a symmetric waveform. For the chirp signals this parameter specifies the rate of change of the frequency (the chirp) of the SINE wave (see below). In a linear chirp the frequency is incremented by a fixed value each time whereas in a non-linear chirp the frequency is multiplied by a constant factor so in the latter case the frequency variation increases with each sample. The control parameter also specifies the delay for an IMPULSE signal, in bins, from the start of the array. The PN_SEQUENCE signal requires that this parameter specifies the number of discrete levels that are generated, between 0 and the value specified by the peak parameter.

The GAUSSIAN_NOISE option uses the Box-Muller method for generating Gaussian (normally) distributed random noise. The only parameter that mathematically effects the outcome is the ‘control parameter’, which supplies the variance of the noise and can be any positive real number, as required. You should initialise the GaussPhase variable to SIGLIB_ZERO prior to calling this function. When using the GAUSSIAN_NOISE option to generate a signal with a given signal to noise ratio (SNR) then the following equation should be used:

$$\text{SNR} = \frac{\text{average power of the signal}}{\text{variance of the Gaussian noise}}$$

When generating random numbers, SigLib uses the defined constant “SL_RANDOMIZE” to define whether the sequence should use the system default seed for the pseudo random sequence. Setting SL_RANDOMIZE to “1” will use the system clock to initialise the seed. Setting SL_RANDOMIZE to “0” will use the system default seed.

The phase offset address parameter is used to store the current phase of the signal. This parameter ensures that the function does not introduce any discontinuities across array boundaries. The phase for the sine and cosine functions are in radians.

The current value parameter is used by the pseudo-random sequence generation function, to save the current value, so that sequences longer than a single array length may be generated. The reason for passing an address is that in any particular process many different signals may be required and each will require a separate current value register. For the chirp signal this specifies the current value being output and is used to maintain the signal phase across array boundaries.

The end value parameter is used by when generating a chirp signal to specify the end frequency for the chirp.

The TRIANGLE waveform generator can generate three forms of triangular wave, a positively increasing, negatively decreasing, or a symmetric wave. The symmetric generation function actually generates a positively offset waveform, then the offset is removed before the data is stored. The reason for this is that the offset parameter must keep track, not only of the current amplitude, but whether the signal is increasing or decreasing in amplitude. The current value is therefore stored with a sign corresponding to the sign of the differential of the signal.

The IMPULSE and IMPULSE_STREAM signals are respectively a single impulse, in the array and a stream of impulses, with a frequency as defined by the frequency parameter.

The STEP signal generates a "0" level for all vector indices less than the control parameter and a "peak" level for all indices greater than or equal to the control parameter. Note: for users of the SigLib DLLs via the BASIC language, this is declared as STEP_SIGNAL to avoid confusion with the "step" keyword.

The SDA_SignalGenerate function allows for the generation of two types of CHIRP signal, a linear and a non-linear one, each has its own benefits and applications. The two functions are similar in function, they will both allow chirps to be generated, between a lower and an upper limit and when the limits are reached, the frequency will change to the other limit. The functions are used slightly differently, as described here.

Both the signal types require a chirp rate specification, for the non-linear chirp signal, this must be greater than 1.0 for an increasing frequency wave, or less than 1.0 for a decreasing frequency wave. For the linear chirp signal, the chirp rate specified must be greater than zero for an increasing frequency wave, or less than zero for a decreasing frequency wave, in this case:

$$\text{chirp rate} = \frac{f_{\text{max}} - f_{\text{min}}}{\text{chirp period} * \text{sample rate}}$$

NOTES ON USE

When signals are being generated that do not use the phase or current value parameters, it is recommended that the parameter is defined as SIGLIB_NULL_FLOAT_PTR in the function call.

If a PN sequence is required, centred about 0 then the peak value should be twice the required value and an offset of -peak must be used. For example for a PN signal with range +/- 0.9, the peak must be 1.8 and the offset -0.9.

EXAMPLE

If we wish to generate a chirp signal with the following characteristics defined using the #define statements:

SAMPLE_RATE

The system sample rate

CHIRP_START_FREQ

Start frequency of the chirp

CHIRP_END_FREQ
SAMPLE_LENGTH

End frequency of the chirp
Length of the chirp in samples

Then we would use the following code sample:

```
SDA_SignalGenerate (pSrc, SIGLIB_CHIRP_LIN, SIGLIB_ONE, SIGLIB_FILL,  
                    (CHIRP_START_FREQ / SAMPLE_RATE), SIGLIB_ZERO,  
                    ((CHIRP_END_FREQ - CHIRP_START_FREQ) /  
                     (SAMPLE_LENGTH * SAMPLE_RATE)),  
                    (CHIRP_END_FREQ / SAMPLE_RATE),  
                    &ChirpPhase, &ChirpValue, SAMPLE_LENGTH)
```

The following function call generates Gaussian noise with a variance of 4.0:

```
GaussPhase = SIGLIB_ZERO;  
SDA_SignalGenerate (pRealData, Output array pointer  
                    SIGLIB_GAUSSIAN_NOISE, Signal type - Gaussian noise  
                    SIGLIB_ZERO, Signal peak level - Unused  
                    SIGLIB_FILL, Fill (overwrite) or add to existing  
                                array contents  
                    SIGLIB_ZERO, Signal frequency - Unused  
                    GAUS_NOISE_OFFSET, D.C. Offset  
                    GAUS_NOISE_VARIANCE, Gaussian noise variance  
                    SIGLIB_ZERO, Signal end value - Unused  
                    SIGLIB_ZERO, Pointer to Gaussian signal phase -  
                                should be initialised to zero  
                    SIGLIB_FOUR, Gaussian signal second sample - should  
                                be initialised to zero  
                    SAMPLE_LENGTH) Array length
```

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS_SignalGenerate

Macros: SDA_SignalGenerateKronekerDeltaFunction,

SDA_SignalGenerateWhiteNoise, SDS_SignalGenerateWhiteNoise,

SDA_SignalGenerateGaussianNoise, SDS_SignalGenerateGaussianNoise.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SL_Error_t SDS_SignalGenerate (SLData_t *,	Destination sample pointer
const enum SL_Signal_t,	Signal type
const SLData_t,	Peak value of signal
const enum SL_SignalFillMode_t,	Array fill mode, fill up or add to
SLData_t,	Signal frequency
const SLData_t,	Signal offset
const SLData_t,	Control parameter
const SLData_t,	End value
SLData_t *,	Phase offset
SLData_t *)	Current value

DESCRIPTION

This function generates a single sample of a signal, according to the equation specified, the following is a list of the possible types, for the signal specification parameter:

```

SIGLIB_SINE_WAVE,
SIGLIB_COSINE_WAVE,
SIGLIB_WHITE_NOISE - normal distribution,
SIGLIB_GAUSSIAN_NOISE - Gaussian distribution,
SIGLIB_CHIRP_NL (non-linear),
SIGLIB_CHIRP_LIN (linear),
SIGLIB_SQUARE_WAVE,
SIGLIB_TRIANGLE_WAVE
SIGLIB_IMPULSE,
SIGLIB_IMPULSE_STREAM,
SIGLIB_STEP,
SIGLIB_PN_SEQUENCE.

```

For complete details of the parameters to this function, please see SDA_SignalGenerate.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_SignalGenerate

Macros: SDA_SignalGenerateKronekerDeltaFunction,
SDA_SignalGenerateWhiteNoise, SDS_SignalGenerateWhiteNoise,
SDA_SignalGenerateGaussianNoise, SDS_SignalGenerateGaussianNoise.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SIF_Resonator (SLData_t *,	Filter state array pointer
const SLData_t,	Resonant frequency
SLData_t *,	Pointer to cosine coefficient
SLData_t *)	Pointer to sine coefficient

DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the resonator coefficients and clears the state array to zero.

NOTES ON USE

The resonant frequency is normalised to a sample rate of 1.0 Hertz.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Resonator, SDA_Resonator1, SDA_Resonator1Add

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_Resonator (const SLData_t *,	Input array
SLData_t *,	Output array
SLData_t *,	State array pointer
const SLData_t,	Cosine coefficient
const SLData_t,	Sine coefficient
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array length

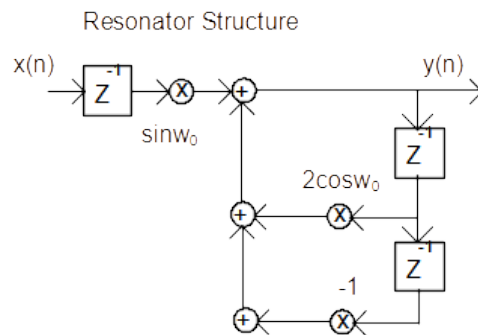
DESCRIPTION

This function applies a resonator with the following z-transform to the input data stream:

$$H(z) = \frac{\sin \omega_0 z^{-1}}{1 - 2 \cos \omega_0 z^{-1} + z^{-2}}$$

Resonators are often used with an impulse input to generate sinusoidal outputs.

The flow diagram for the resonator is as follows:



NOTES ON USE

This function works 'in-place' i.e. the input and output array pointers can point to the same array.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_Resonator, SDA_Resonator1, SDA_Resonator1Add

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SIF_Resonator1 (SLData_t *,   Filter state array pointer
                    const SLData_t, Resonant frequency
                    SLData_t *,     Pointer to cosine coefficient
                    SLData_t *,     Pointer to sine coefficient
                    SLFixData_t *)  Pointer to first iteration flag
```

DESCRIPTION

Initialise resonator coefficients, clears the state array to zero and initializes first iteration flag.

NOTES ON USE

The resonant frequency is normalised to a sample rate of 1.0 Hertz.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Resonator, SDA_Resonator1, SDA_Resonator1Add

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

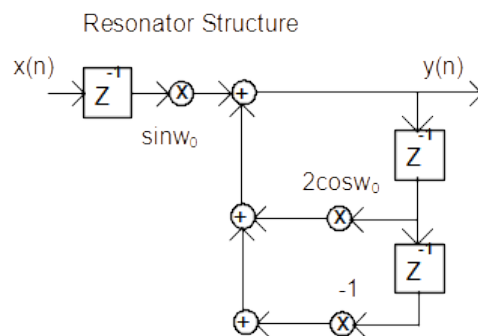
void SDA_Resonator1 (SLData_t *,	Destination array pointer
const SLData_t,	Output signal magnitude
SLData_t *,	State array pointer
SLFixData_t *,	Pointer to first iteration flag
const SLData_t,	Cosine coefficient
const SLData_t,	Sine coefficient
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function generates a sinusoidal output at the specified frequency. This function is equivalent to applying an impulse to a resonator with the following z-transform:

$$H(z) = \frac{\sin \omega_0 z^{-1}}{1 - 2 \cos \omega_0 z^{-1} + z^{-2}}$$

The flow diagram for the resonator is as follows:



NOTES ON USE

The first iteration flag must be initialised to SIGLIB_TRUE

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_Resonator, SDA_Resonator, SDA_Resonator1Add

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_SignalGeneratePolarWhiteNoise (SLComplexRect_s *, Destn. array ptr.  
    const SLData_t,                      Peak level  
    const enum SLSignalFillMode_t,      Array fill mode, fill up or add to  
    const SLArrayIndex_t)              Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function fills an array with a polar white noise signal. I.E. the noise pattern on a constellation diagram will be circular, as opposed to square if the pattern was generated using a rectangular distribution. The magnitude and the angle of the noise points are independently generated by normally distributed random number generators. The angle values are distributed between $-\pi$ and $+\pi$ while the magnitude values are distributed between 0 and the Peak value.

NOTES ON USE

The array fill mode specifies whether to overwrite, or add to the existing array contents.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_SignalGenerate, SDS_SignalGenerate,
SDS_SignalGeneratePolarWhiteNoise, SDA_SignalGeneratePolarGaussianNoise,
SDS_SignalGeneratePolarGaussianNoise

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLComplexRect_s SDS_SignalGeneratePolarWhiteNoise (const SLData_t Peak)
Peak level

DESCRIPTION

This function generates a single sample of a polar white noise signal. I.E. the noise pattern on a constellation diagram will be circular, as opposed to square if the pattern was generated using a rectangular distribution. The magnitude and the angle of the noise points are independently generated by normally distributed random number generators. The angle values are distributed between $-\pi$ and $+\pi$ while the magnitude values are distributed between 0 and the Peak value.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_SignalGenerate, SDS_SignalGenerate,
SDA_SignalGeneratePolarWhiteNoise, SDA_SignalGeneratePolarGaussianNoise,
SDS_SignalGeneratePolarGaussianNoise

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_SignalGeneratePolarGaussianNoise (SLComplexRect_s *,
                                           Destination array pointer
                                           const SLData_t,           Noise variance
                                           SLData_t *,             Phase offset
                                           SLData_t *,             Current value
                                           const enum SLSignalFillMode_t, Array fill mode, fill up or add to
                                           const SLArrayIndex_t)    Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function fills an array with a polar Gaussian noise signal. I.E. the noise pattern on a constellation diagram will be circular, as opposed to square if the pattern was generated using a rectangular distribution. The magnitude of the noise signal is generated by a Gaussian distributed random number generator and the angle of the noise points are generated by a normally distributed random number generator. The angle values are distributed between $-\pi/2$ and $+\pi/2$ while the magnitude values are centred on 0,0 and have a variance specified by the appropriate parameter.

NOTES ON USE

The noise phase offset parameter must be initialized to zero prior to calling this function.

The array fill mode specifies whether to overwrite, or add to the existing array contents.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_SignalGenerate, SDS_SignalGenerate,
 SDA_SignalGeneratePolarWhiteNoise, SDS_SignalGeneratePolarWhiteNoise,
 SDS_SignalGeneratePolarGaussianNoise

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLComplexRect_s SDS_SignalGeneratePolarGaussianNoise (const SLData_t,
Noise variance
SLData_t *,
Phase offset
SLData_t *)
Current value

DESCRIPTION

This function generates a single sample of a polar Gaussian noise signal. I.E. the noise pattern on a constellation diagram will be circular, as opposed to square if the pattern was generated using a rectangular distribution. The magnitude of the noise signal is generated by a Gaussian distributed random number generator and the angle of the noise points are generated by a normally distributed random number generator. The angle values are distributed between $-\pi/2$ and $+\pi/2$ while the magnitude values are centred on 0,0 and have a variance specified by the appropriate parameter.

NOTES ON USE

The noise phase offset parameter must be initialized to zero prior to calling this function.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_SignalGenerate, SDS_SignalGenerate,
SDA_SignalGeneratePolarWhiteNoise, SDS_SignalGeneratePolarWhiteNoise,
SDA_SignalGeneratePolarGaussianNoise

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_SignalAddPolarJitterAndGaussianNoise (const SLComplexRect_s *,
                                                Source array pointer
                                                SLComplexRect_s *,
                                                Destination array pointer
                                                const SLData_t,
                                                Jitter sine wave frequency
                                                const SLData_t,
                                                Jitter sine wave magnitude
                                                SLData_t *,
                                                Jitter sine wave phase offset
                                                const SLData_t,
                                                Noise variance
                                                SLData_t *,
                                                Noise phase offset
                                                SLData_t *,
                                                Noise current value
                                                const SLArrayIndex_t)
                                                Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function adds jitter with a sinusoidal distribution and polar Gaussian noise to the source signal constellation diagram.

The noise pattern on a constellation diagram will be circular, as opposed to square if the pattern was generated using a rectangular distribution. The magnitude of the noise signal is generated by a Gaussian distributed random number generator and the angle of the noise points are generated by a normally distributed random number generator. The angle values are distributed between $-\pi/2$ and $+\pi/2$ while the magnitude values are centred on 0,0 and have a variance specified by the appropriate parameter.

NOTES ON USE

The noise phase offset parameter must be initialized to zero prior to calling this function.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS_SignalAddPolarJitterAndGaussianNoise

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDS_SignalAddPolarJitterAndGaussianNoise (const SLComplexRect_s *,
                                                Source array pointer
                                                SLComplexRect_s *,
                                                Destination array pointer
                                                const SLData_t,
                                                Jitter sine wave frequency
                                                const SLData_t,
                                                Jitter sine wave magnitude
                                                SLData_t *,
                                                Jitter sine wave phase offset
                                                const SLData_t,
                                                Noise variance
                                                SLData_t *,
                                                Noise phase offset
                                                SLData_t *,
                                                Noise current value
                                                const SLArrayIndex_t)
                                                Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function adds jitter with a sinusoidal distribution and polar Gaussian noise to the source signal constellation diagram, on a per-sample basis.

The noise pattern on a constellation diagram will be circular, as opposed to square if the pattern was generated using a rectangular distribution. The magnitude of the noise signal is generated by a Gaussian distributed random number generator and the angle of the noise points are generated by a normally distributed random number generator. The angle values are distributed between $-\pi/2$ and $+\pi/2$ while the magnitude values are centred on 0,0 and have a variance specified by the appropriate parameter.

NOTES ON USE

The noise phase offset parameter must be initialized to zero prior to calling this function.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_SignalAddPolarJitterAndGaussianNoise

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_Ramp (SLData_t *,	Destination array pointer
const SLData_t,	Start value
const SLData_t,	Increment value
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function generates a ramp with incrementing N values starting with the start value and incrementing by the increment value.

If the increment value is negative the data will ramp down.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDS_SignalGenerate, SDA_SignalGenerate.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SIF_RandomNumber (void)

DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the random number generator seed.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS_RandomNumber, SDA_RandomNumber, SDS_SignalGenerate,
SDA_SignalGenerate.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLData_t SDS_RandomNumber (const SLData_t,  Lower bound  
                           const SLData_t)    Upper bound
```

DESCRIPTION

This function generates and returns a random number, between the lower and upper bounds, using the rand() function.

Use the function SIF_RandomNumber() to initialize the random number seed.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_RandomNumber, SDA_RandomNumber, SDS_SignalGenerate,
SDA_SignalGenerate.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_RandomNumber (SLData_t *,	Destination array pointer
const SLData_t,	Lower bound
const SLData_t,	Upper bound
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function fills an array with random numbers, between the lower and upper bounds, using the rand() function.

Use the function SIF_RandomNumber() to initialize the random number seed.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF_RandomNumber, SDS_RandomNumber, SDA_RandomNumber,
SDS_SignalGenerate.

COMMUNICATION FUNCTIONS

General Communications Functions (*comms.c*)

SDA_BitErrorRate

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLData_t SDA_BitErrorRate (const SLChar_t *,    Source 1 pointer
                           const SLChar_t *,    Source 2 pointer
                           const SLArrayIndex_t, Inverse of the number of bits
                           const SLArrayIndex_t) Sample array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the bit error rate between the two data streams.

NOTES ON USE

The “inverse of the number of bits” parameter is used to avoid having to perform a divide operation within the function. This improves run-time performance.

CROSS REFERENCE

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_Interleave (const SLData_t *,	Source pointer
SLData_t *,	Destination pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Stride
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array Length

DESCRIPTION

This function interleaves the samples in the data stream.

NOTES ON USE

During the interleave, the data is effectively written into an array along the horizontal lines and read out along the vertical columns. In de interleaving, the reverse is true. Care should be taken when interleaving multiplexed data streams because the individual channels can be re-ordered in such a way that the samples are again in sequential locations.

This technique can be useful in telecommunications, to avoid burst errors.

It is important that the array length is an integer multiple of the stride.

For a ramp (0 to 11.0) input and a stride of 3, the rearranged order of the data is:

Input Data	0.0, 1.0, 2.0, 3.0, 4.0, 5.0, 6.0, 7.0, 8.0, 9.0, 10.0, 11.0
Output Data	0.0, 3.0, 6.0, 9.0, 1.0, 4.0, 7.0, 10.0, 2.0, 5.0, 8.0, 11.0

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Deinterleave

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_Deinterleave (const SLData_t *, Source pointer
                      SLData_t *,      Destination pointer
                      const SLArrayIndex_t, Stride
                      const SLArrayIndex_t) Array Length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function de-interleaves the samples in the data stream.

NOTES ON USE

During the interleave, the data is effectively written into an array along the horizontal lines and read out along the vertical columns. In de interleaving, the reverse is true. Care should be taken when interleaving multiplexed data streams because the individual channels can be re-ordered in such a way that the samples are again in sequential locations.

This technique can be useful in telecommunications, to avoid burst errors.

It is important that the array length is an integer multiple of the stride.

For an interleaved ramp (0 to 11.0) input and a stride of 3, the rearranged order of the data is:

Interleaved Input Data	0.0, 3.0, 6.0, 9.0, 1.0, 4.0, 7.0, 10.0, 2.0, 5.0, 8.0, 11.0
Output Data	0.0, 1.0, 2.0, 3.0, 4.0, 5.0, 6.0, 7.0, 8.0, 9.0, 10.0, 11.0

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Interleave

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SCV_EuclideanDistance (const SLComplexRect_s, Source vector 1
 const SLComplexRect_s) Source vector 2

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the Euclidean distance between two complex samples.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SCV_EuclideanDistanceSquared, SCA_EuclideanDistance,
SCA_EuclideanDistanceSquared, SDS_EuclideanDistance,
SDS_EuclideanDistanceSquared, SDA_EuclideanDistance,
SDA_EuclideanDistanceSquared

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLData_t SCV_EuclideanDistanceSquared (const SLComplexRect_s,      Source
vector 1
                                     const SLComplexRect_s)          Source vector 2
```

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the square of the Euclidean distance between two complex samples.

NOTES ON USE

If you are comparing Euclidean distances then the square root of the regular function is an unnecessary overhead and the squared version of the function is equally useful but more efficient.

CROSS REFERENCE

SCV_EuclideanDistance, SCA_EuclideanDistance,
SCA_EuclideanDistanceSquared, SDS_EuclideanDistance,
SDS_EuclideanDistanceSquared, SDA_EuclideanDistance,
SDA_EuclideanDistanceSquared

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SCA_EuclideanDistance (const SLComplexRect_s *, Pointer to source vector #1
                           const SLComplexRect_s *,      Pointer to source vector #2
                           SLData_t *,                  Pointer to destination
                           const SLArrayIndex_t);        Number of samples
```

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the Euclidean distance between successive complex samples in the source arrays.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SCV_EuclideanDistance, SCV_EuclideanDistanceSquared,
SCA_EuclideanDistanceSquared, SDS_EuclideanDistance,
SDS_EuclideanDistanceSquared, SDA_EuclideanDistance,
SDA_EuclideanDistanceSquared

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SCA_EuclideanDistanceSquared (const SLComplexRect_s *, Pointer to source vector #1

const SLComplexRect_s *,	Pointer to source vector #2
SLData_t *,	Pointer to destination
const SLArrayIndex_t);	Number of samples

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the Euclidean distance squared between successive complex samples in the source arrays.

NOTES ON USE

If you are comparing Euclidean distances then the square root of the regular function is an unnecessary overhead and the squared version of the function is equally useful but more efficient.

CROSS REFERENCE

SCV_EuclideanDistance, SCV_EuclideanDistanceSquared,
SCA_EuclideanDistance, SDS_EuclideanDistance, SDS_EuclideanDistanceSquared,
SDA_EuclideanDistance, SDA_EuclideanDistanceSquared

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLData_t SDS_EuclideanDistance (const SLData_t, Source #1 x-axis value
                                const SLData_t,           Source #1 y-axis value
                                const SLData_t,           Source #2 x-axis value
                                const SLData_t);          Source #2 y-axis value
```

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the Euclidean distance between two points given the provided x, y coordinates on a 2D plane.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SCV_EuclideanDistance, SCV_EuclideanDistanceSquared,
SCA_EuclideanDistance, SCA_EuclideanDistanceSquared,
SDS_EuclideanDistanceSquared, SDA_EuclideanDistance,
SDA_EuclideanDistanceSquared

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLData_t SDS_EuclideanDistanceSquared (const SLData_t, Source #1 x-axis value
                                     const SLData_t,      Source #1 y-axis value
                                     const SLData_t,      Source #2 x-axis value
                                     const SLData_t);      Source #2 y-axis value
```

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the Euclidean distance squared between two points given the provided x, y coordinates on a 2D plane.

NOTES ON USE

If you are comparing Euclidean distances then the square root of the regular function is an unnecessary overhead and the squared version of the function is equally useful but more efficient.

CROSS REFERENCE

SCV_EuclideanDistance, SCV_EuclideanDistanceSquared,
SCA_EuclideanDistance, SCA_EuclideanDistanceSquared, SDS_EuclideanDistance,
SDA_EuclideanDistance, SDA_EuclideanDistanceSquared

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDS_EuclideanDistance (const SLData_t *, Pointer to source #1 x-axis values

const SLData_t *,	Pointer to source #1 y-axis values
const SLData_t *,	Pointer to source #2 x-axis values
const SLData_t *,	Pointer to source #2 y-axis values
SLData_t *,	Pointer to destination
const SLArrayIndex_t);	Number of samples

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the Euclidean distance between two points given the provided x, y coordinates on a 2D plane, for all samples in arrays of data.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SCV_EuclideanDistance, SCV_EuclideanDistanceSquared,
SCA_EuclideanDistance, SCA_EuclideanDistanceSquared, SDS_EuclideanDistance,
SDS_EuclideanDistanceSquared, SDA_EuclideanDistanceSquared

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDS_EuclideanDistanceSquared (const SLData_t *, Pointer to source #1 x-axis values

const SLData_t *,	Pointer to source #1 y-axis values
const SLData_t *,	Pointer to source #2 x-axis values
const SLData_t *,	Pointer to source #2 y-axis values
SLData_t *,	Pointer to destination
const SLArrayIndex_t);	Number of samples

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the Euclidean distance squared between two points given the provided x, y coordinates on a 2D plane, for all samples in arrays of data.

NOTES ON USE

If you are comparing Euclidean distances then the square root of the regular function is an unnecessary overhead and the squared version of the function is equally useful but more efficient.

CROSS REFERENCE

SCV_EuclideanDistance, SCV_EuclideanDistanceSquared,
SCA_EuclideanDistance, SCA_EuclideanDistanceSquared, SDS_EuclideanDistance,
SDS_EuclideanDistanceSquared, SDA_EuclideanDistance

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLChar_t SDS_ManchesterEncode (const SLChar_t Input) Input bit

DESCRIPTION

This function takes an input bit and applies Manchester encoding to generate an output dibit.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDS_ManchesterDecode, SDS_ManchesterEncodeByte,
SDS_ManchesterDecodeByte

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLChar_t SDS_ManchesterDecode (const SLChar_t Input) Input dibit

DESCRIPTION

This function takes an input dibit and applies Manchester decoding to generate an output bit.

NOTES ON USE

This function returns 0x3 if the input dibit pair is invalid.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS_ManchesterEncode, SDS_ManchesterEncodeByte,
SDS_ManchesterDecodeByte

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLFixData_t SDS_ManchesterEncodeByte (const SLChar_t Input) Input byte

DESCRIPTION

This function takes an input byte and applies Manchester encoding to each bit to generate an outputs 8 dibits.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS_ManchesterEncode, SDS_ManchesterDecode,
SDS_ManchesterDecodeByte

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLFixData_t SDS_ManchesterDecodeByte (const SLFixData_t Input) Input dibits

DESCRIPTION

This function takes an input sequence of 8 dibits and applies Manchester decoding to generate an output byte, which is stored in a data word of type SLFixData_t.

NOTES ON USE

This function returns SIGLIB_ERROR if the input dibit pair is invalid.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS_ManchesterEncode, SDS_ManchesterDecode,
SDS_ManchesterEncodeByte

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SIF_DetectNumericalWordSequence (SLFixData_t *, Ptr. to bit mask register
    SLFixData_t *,                      Detector state array
    SLArrayIndex_t,                    Word length
    SLArrayIndex_t)                   Synchronization sequence length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the numerical word sequence detection function.

NOTES ON USE

The state array must be as long as the sequence that is being detected.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS_DetectNumericalWordSequence, SIF_DetectNumericalBitSequence,
SDS_DetectNumericalBitSequence, SIF_DetectCharacterSequence,
SDS_DetectCharacterSequence.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLFixData_t SDS_DetectNumericalWordSequence (SLFixData_t, Input word
SLFixData_t *, Synchronization sequence
SLFixData_t, Input bit mask
SLFixData_t *, Detector state array
SLArrayIndex_t) Synchronization sequence length

DESCRIPTION

This function detects the presence of a numerical words sequence in a stream of words that are passed to the function. It will return SIGLIB_TRUE if the sequence is detected and SIGLIB_FALSE if it is not detected.

This function will detect only the exact word pattern.

NOTES ON USE

The function SIF_DetectNumericalWordSequence must be called prior to calling this function.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_DetectNumericalWordSequence, SIF_DetectNumericalBitSequence,
SDS_DetectNumericalBitSequence, SIF_DetectCharacterSequence,
SDS_DetectCharacterSequence.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SIF_DetectNumericalBitSequence (SLFixData_t *, Ptr. to bit mask register
 SLFixData_t *, Detector state variable
 SLArrayIndex_t) Synchronization sequence length

DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the numerical bit sequence detection function.

NOTES ON USE

The state variable must be at least as long as the sequence that is being detected. The standard fixed point word length for SigLib is either 16 or 32 bits – please refer to the SigLib User’s Guide for further information. If an application requires the detection of bit sequences that are longer than the SigLib fixed point word length then the synchronization sequence must be split into multiple sequences with a maximum length equal to the chosen SigLib fixed point word length. The results of multiple calls to SDS_DetectNumericalBitSequence can be combined using the AND (&) function.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_DetectNumericalWordSequence, SDS_DetectNumericalWordSequence,
SDS_DetectNumericalBitSequence, SIF_DetectCharacterSequence,
SDS_DetectCharacterSequence.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLArrayIndex_t SDS_DetectNumericalBitSequence (SLFixData_t,	Input word
SLFixData_t,	Synchronization sequence
SLFixData_t,	Synchronization sequence bit mask
SLFixData_t *,	Detector state variable
SLArrayIndex_t)	Input word length

DESCRIPTION

This function detects the presence of a numerical bit sequence in a stream of bits that can be spread across multiple input words. If the required sequence is detected it will return the bit index of the last bit in the sequence otherwise it will return SIGLIB_SEQUENCE_NOT_DETECTED. Please note, all bits are processed MSB first so bit offset 0 is the MSB in the received word (As per ITU-T Recommendation V.8).

This function will detect a given bit pattern and it does not need to be aligned on a specific word boundary.

NOTES ON USE

The function SIF_DetectNumericalBitSequence must be called prior to calling this function please also read the notes for this function.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_DetectNumericalWordSequence, SDS_DetectNumericalWordSequence, SIF_DetectNumericalBitSequence, SIF_DetectCharacterSequence, SDS_DetectCharacterSequence.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SIF_DetectCharacterSequence (SLChar_t *,   Detector state array  
                                SLArrayIndex_t Synchronization sequence length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the character sequence detection function.

NOTES ON USE

The state array must be as long as the sequence that is being detected.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_DetectNumericalWordSequence, SDS_DetectNumericalWordSequence,
SIF_DetectNumericalBitSequence, SDS_DetectNumericalBitSequence,
SDS_DetectCharacterSequence.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLFixData_t SDS_DetectCharacterSequence (SLChar_t, Input character
 SLChar_t *, Synchronization sequence
 SLChar_t *, Detector state array
 SLArrayIndex_t) Synchronization sequence length

DESCRIPTION

This function detects the presence of an arbitrary character sequence it will return SIGLIB_TRUE if the sequence is detected and SIGLIB_FALSE if it is not detected.

NOTES ON USE

The function SIF_DetectCharacterSequence must be called prior to calling this function.

This function is case sensitive.

You can use the character formatted or numerical sequence detection functions depending on which part of the modem it is required to detect the start of the frame.

For binary sequence detection the input characters should be the values '0' or '1' depending on the binary value the represent. For hexadecimal sequence detection the input characters should be the values '0' to '9' or 'A' to 'F' depending on the binary value the represent.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_DetectNumericalWordSequence, SDS_DetectNumericalWordSequence,
SIF_DetectNumericalBitSequence, SDS_DetectNumericalBitSequence,
SIF_DetectCharacterSequence.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDS_ErrorVector (const SLComplexRect_s, Ideal point
 const SLComplexRect_s) Received point

DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the absolute vector difference between two vectors.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDS_ErrorVectorMagnitudePercent, SDS_ErrorVectorMagnitudeDecibels.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDS_ErrorVectorMagnitudePercent (const SLComplexRect_s, Ideal point
const SLComplexRect_s) Received point

DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the percentage vector difference between two vectors.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS_ErrorVector, SDS_ErrorVectorMagnitudeDecibels.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDS_ErrorVectorMagnitudeDecibels (const SLComplexRect_s, Ideal point
const SLComplexRect_s) Received point

DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the absolute vector difference between two vectors and returns the result in dB.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS_ErrorVector, SDS_ErrorVectorMagnitudePercent.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLFixData_t SDS_ReverseDiBits (const SLFixData_t) Input di-bits

DESCRIPTION

This function reverses the order of the di-bit pair in the input value..

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDS_QpskBitErrorCount (const SLFixData_t, Input di-bits
    const SLFixData_t,           Output data bits
    SLFixData_t *,               Pointer to bit count
    SLFixData_t *)               Pointer to bit error count
```

DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the running sum of the number of bits and the number of bit errors in the input QPSK di-bit sequence. The final bit error rate can be calculated using `SDS_BitErrorRate`.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

`SDS_BitErrorRate`.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDS_BitErrorRate (const SLFixData_t, Bit count
 const SLFixData_t) Bit error count

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the bit error rate given the total number of bits and the number of bit errors.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

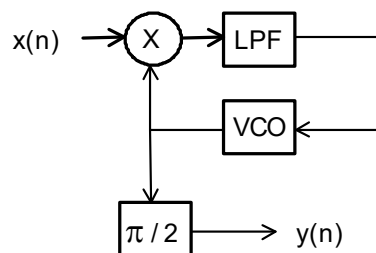
SDS_QpskBitErrorCount, SDA_BitErrorRate.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SIF_PhaseLockedLoop (SLData_t *,	VCO phase
SLData_t *,	VCO Fast sine look up table
const SLArrayIndex_t,	VCO Fast sine look up table size
const SLData_t,	LPF cut-off frequency
SLData_t *,	Pointer to loop filter state
const SLData_t *,	Pointer to loop filter coefficients
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to loop filter index
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Loop filter length
SLData_t *,	Pointer to Hilbert xform filter state
const SLData_t *,	Pointer to Hilbert xform filter coeffs
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to Hilbert xform filter index
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Hilbert xform filter length
SLData_t *)	Pointer to delayed sample

DESCRIPTION

This function initialises the phase locked loop (PLL) functions. The block diagram for the PLL is shown in the following diagram:



NOTES ON USE

The filters are all FIR and must be of odd order.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS_PhaseLockedLoop, SDA_PhaseLockedLoop.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLData_t SDS_PhaseLockedLoop (const SLData_t, Source data
    SLData_t *, VCO phase
    const SLData_t, VCO modulation index
    SLData_t *, VCO Fast sine look up table
    const SLArrayIndex_t, VCO Fast sine look up table size
    const SLData_t, Carrier frequency
    SLData_t *, Pointer to loop filter state
    const SLData_t *, Pointer to loop filter coefficients
    SLArrayIndex_t *, Pointer to loop filter index
    const SLArrayIndex_t, Loop filter length
    SLData_t *, Pointer to Hilbert xform filter state
    const SLData_t *, Pointer to Hilbert xform filter coeffs
    SLArrayIndex_t *, Pointer to Hilbert xform filter index
    const SLArrayIndex_t, Hilbert xform filter length
    SLData_t *) Pointer to delayed sample
```

DESCRIPTION

This function applies a continuous wave input to the phase locked loop and outputs the phase locked signal. This function uses the frequency modulator function to perform the Voltage Controlled Oscillator functionality.

NOTES ON USE

The filters are all FIR and must be of odd order. The output is in-phase with the original input signal.

If this function proves to be unstable then the most likely cause is that the modulation index for the VCO is too large.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_PhaseLockedLoop, SDA_PhaseLockedLoop.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_PhaseLockedLoop (const SLData_t *,   Source pointer
    SLData_t *,                               Destination pointer
    SLData_t *,                               VCO phase
    const SLData_t,                           VCO modulation index
    SLData_t *,                               VCO Fast sine look up table
    const SLArrayIndex_t,                     VCO Fast sine look up table size
    const SLData_t,                           Carrier frequency
    SLData_t *,                               Pointer to loop filter state
    const SLData_t *,                         Pointer to loop filter coefficients
    SLArrayIndex_t *,                         Pointer to loop filter index
    const SLArrayIndex_t,                     Loop filter length
    SLData_t *,                               Pointer to Hilbert xform filter state
    const SLData_t *,                         Pointer to Hilbert xform filter coeffs
    SLArrayIndex_t *,                         Pointer to Hilbert xform filter index
    const SLArrayIndex_t,                     Hilbert xform filter length
    SLData_t *,                               Pointer to delayed sample
    const SLArrayIndex_t)                     Sample size
```

DESCRIPTION

This function applies a continuous wave input to the phase locked loop and outputs the phase locked signal. This function uses the frequency modulator function to perform the Voltage Controlled Oscillator functionality.

NOTES ON USE

The filters are all FIR and must be of odd order. The output is in-phase with the original input signal.

If this function proves to be unstable then the most likely cause is that the modulation index for the VCO is too large.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_PhaseLockedLoop, SDS_PhaseLockedLoop.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SL_Error_t SIF_CostasLoop (SLData_t *,	VCO phase
SLData_t ,	VCO fast sine look up table
const SLArrayIndex_t,	VCO fast sine look up table size
const SLData_t,	LPF cut-off frequency
SLData_t *,	Pointer to loop filter 1 state
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to loop filter 1 index
SLData_t *,	Pointer to loop filter 2 state
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to loop filter 2 index
SLData_t *,	Pointer to loop filter coefficients
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Loop filter length
SLData_t *,	Pointer to loop filter state
SLData_t *)	Pointer to delayed sample

DESCRIPTION

This function initialises the Costas loop phase detector functions.

In the two functions SDA_CostasLoop and SDS_CostasLoop the SL_CostasLoopFeedbackMode_t parameter selects between the following phase detector options:

SIGLIB_COSTAS_LOOP_MULTIPLY_LOOP,
 SIGLIB_COSTAS_LOOP_POLARITY_LOOP,
 SIGLIB_COSTAS_LOOP_HARD_LIMITED_LOOP

NOTES ON USE

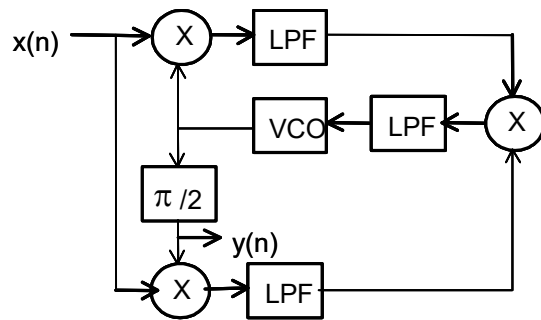
The loop filters 1 and 2 are both FIR and must be of odd order to ensure that the group delays are integer in length. The loop filter is a one pole filter, with a single coefficient and state. The output is in phase with the original signal.

This function uses the frequency modulator function to perform the Voltage Controlled Oscillator functionality. The VCO gain depends on the magnitudes of the input signal and also the filter gain. If the Costas loop becomes unstable then the usual cause is the VCO gain is too high.

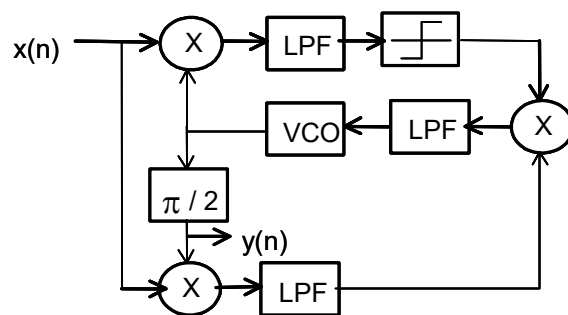
In order to allocate the Costas loop look up table it is necessary to use the SUF_CostasLoopArrayAllocate() to malloc the look-up-table memory, rather than SUF_VectorArrayAllocate().

The flow diagrams for the different phase detector modes are shown in the following diagrams:

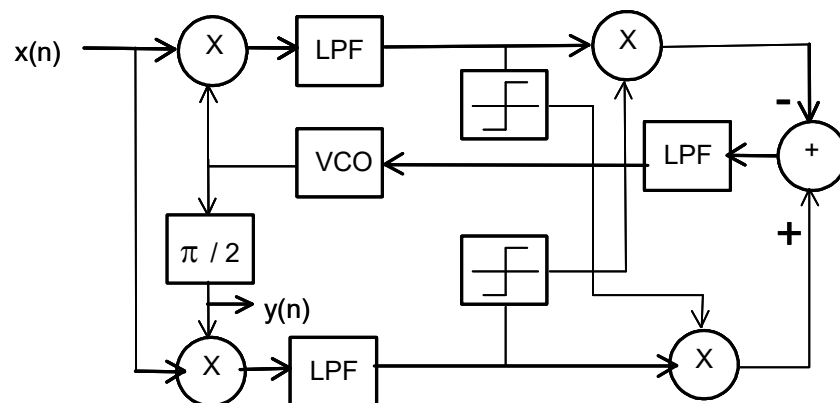
SIGLIB_COSTAS_LOOP_MULTIPLY_LOOP



SIGLIB_COSTAS_LOOP_POLARITY_LOOP



SIGLIB_COSTAS_LOOP_HARD_LIMITED_LOOP



CROSS REFERENCE

SDS_CostasLoop, SDA_CostasLoop, SRF_CostasLoop.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLData_t SDS_CostasLoop (const SLData_t,      Source data
    SLData_t *,                               VCO phase
    const SLData_t,                           VCO modulation index
    SLData_t *,                               VCO fast sine look up table
    const SLArrayIndex_t,                     VCO fast sine look up table size
    const SLData_t,                           Carrier frequency
    SLData_t *,                               Pointer to loop filter 1 state
    SLArrayIndex_t *,                         Pointer to loop filter 1 index
    SLData_t *,                               Pointer to loop filter 2 state
    SLArrayIndex_t *,                         Pointer to loop filter 2 index
    const SLData_t *,                         Pointer to loop filter coefficients
    const SLArrayIndex_t,                     Loop filter length
    SLData_t *,                               Pointer to loop filter state
    const SLData_t,                           Loop filter coefficient
    const enum SLCostasLoopFeedbackMode_t,    Loop feedback mode
    SLData_t *)                               Pointer to delayed sample
```

DESCRIPTION

This function applies a continuous wave input to the Costas loop and outputs the in-phase phase locked signal.

NOTES ON USE

See SIF_CostasLoop

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_CostasLoop, SDA_CostasLoop, SRF_CostasLoop.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_CostasLoop (const SLData_t *,   Source data pointer
                    SLData_t *,         VCO phase
                    const SLData_t,     VCO modulation index
                    SLData_t *,         VCO fast sine look up table
                    const SLArrayIndex_t, VCO fast sine look up table size
                    const SLData_t,     Carrier frequency
                    SLData_t *,         Pointer to loop filter 1 state
                    SLArrayIndex_t *,   Pointer to loop filter 1 index
                    SLData_t *,         Pointer to loop filter 2 state
                    SLArrayIndex_t *,   Pointer to loop filter 2 index
                    const SLData_t *,   Pointer to loop filter coefficients
                    const SLArrayIndex_t, Loop filter length
                    SLData_t *,         Pointer to loop filter state
                    const SLData_t,     Loop filter coefficient
                    const enum SLCostasLoopFeedbackMode_t, Loop feedback mode
                    SLData_t *,         Pointer to delayed sample
                    const SLArrayIndex_t) Sample size
```

DESCRIPTION

This function applies a continuous wave input to the Costas loop and outputs the in-phase phase locked signal.

NOTES ON USE

See SIF_CostasLoop

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_CostasLoop, SDS_CostasLoop, SRF_CostasLoop.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLError_t SRF_CostasLoop (SLData_t *,	VCO phase
SLData_t *,	Pointer to loop filter 1 state
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to loop filter 1 index
SLData_t *,	Pointer to loop filter 2 state
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to loop filter 2 index
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Loop filter length
SLData_t *,	Pointer to loop filter state
SLData_t *)	Pointer to delayed sample

DESCRIPTION

This function resets the Costas loop phase detector functions, including the filter state arrays, without reinitializing the look up tables.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF_CostasLoop, SDS_CostasLoop, SDA_CostasLoop.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SIF_180DegreePhaseDetect (SLData_t *,      Fast sine look up table phase
    SLData_t *,                               Pointer to fast sine look up table
    const SLArrayIndex_t,                     Fast sine look up table size
    const SLData_t,                           LPF cut-off frequency
    SLData_t *,                               Pointer to filter state array
    SLData_t *,                               Pointer to filter coefficients
    SLArrayIndex_t *,                         Pointer to filter index
    const SLArrayIndex_t,                     Filter length
    SLArrayIndex_t *)                         Pointer to sign of previous output
```

DESCRIPTION

This function initialises the 180 degree phase reversal detector function.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

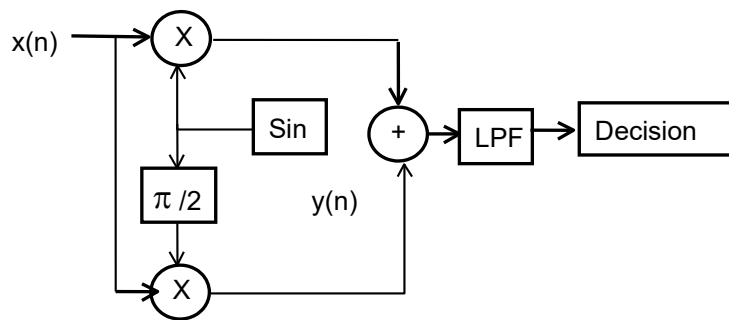
SDA_180DegreePhaseDetect

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLArrayIndex_t SDA_180DegreePhaseDetect (const SLData_t *, Src data pointer	
SLData_t *,	Destination data pointer
SLData_t *,	Fast sine look up table phase
const SLData_t *,	Pointer to fast sine look up table
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Fast sine look up table size
const SLData_t,	Carrier frequency
SLData_t *,	Pointer to filter state array
const SLData_t *,	Pointer to filter coefficients
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to filter index
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Filter length
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to sign of previous output
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Length of input array

DESCRIPTION

This function implements a 180 degree phase reversal detector. The block diagram for the detector is shown in the following diagram:



This function stores the output of the Low Pass Filter and returns the location of the phase change in the array or SIGLIB_NO_PHASE_CHANGE if no phase change was detected.

NOTES ON USE

The exact location of the phase change will be delayed by the group delay of the filter.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_180DegreePhaseDetect

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SIF_TriggerReverberator (SLArrayIndex_t *, Pointer to trigger counter
                             SLFixData_t *,      Pointer to trigger detected flag
                             SLFixData_t *)      Pointer to trigger updated flag
```

DESCRIPTION

This function initialises the trigger reverberator function.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_TriggerReverberator

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_TriggerReverberator (const SLData_t *, Pointer to source trigger sequence
    SLData_t *,                               Pointer to destination trigger sequence
    SLArrayIndex_t *,                         Pointer to trigger counter
    SLFixData_t *,                           Pointer to trigger detected flag
    SLFixData_t *,                           Pointer to trigger updated flag
    const SLArrayIndex_t,                     Nominal period of output clock sequence
    const SLArrayIndex_t)                     Length of trigger sequences
```

DESCRIPTION

This function implements a timing reverberator which ensures a continuously running clock when the original input clock stops.

If the phase of the input clock stream changes then the output clock will re-synchronize to the source clock as follows:

If the source timing clock is late then the period of the output clock is increased by one sample.

If the source timing clock is early then the period of the output clock is decreased by one sample.

The trigger updated flag is used to ensure that the trigger timing is modified by a maximum of one sample per symbol period. This improves the performance in a noisy environment.

NOTES ON USE

The function SIF_TriggerReverberator must be called prior to using this function.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS_TriggerReverberator, SIF_TriggerReverberator

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDS_TriggerReverberator (const SLData_t *,	Source trigger sample
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to trigger counter
SLFixData_t *,	Pointer to trigger detected flag
SLFixData_t *,	Pointer to trigger updated flag
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Nominal period of output clock sequence

DESCRIPTION

This function implements a timing reverberator which ensures a continuously running clock when the original input clock stops.

If the phase of the input clock stream changes then the output clock will re-synchronize to the source clock as follows:

- If the source timing clock is late then the period of the output clock is increased by one sample.

- If the source timing clock is early then the period of the output clock is decreased by one sample.

The trigger updated flag is used to ensure that the trigger timing is modified by a maximum of one sample per symbol period. This improves the performance in a noisy environment.

NOTES ON USE

The function SIF_TriggerReverberator must be called prior to using this function.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_TriggerReverberator, SIF_TriggerReverberator

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLArrayIndex_t SDA_TriggerSelector (const SLData_t *, Source data sequence
    SLData_t *,                               Destination data sequence
    const SLData_t *,                         Trigger sequence
    const SLArrayIndex_t)                     Length of source sequence
```

DESCRIPTION

This function selects an output sample depending on the value of the input clock. If the Nth value in the trigger sequence has the value 1.0 then the corresponding value in the source data sequence is written to the destination array, otherwise no value is written to the output array.

This function returns the number of output samples that are written to the output array.

NOTES ON USE**EXAMPLE**

```
Trigger sequence
    0.0, 1.0, 0.0, 1.0, 0.0, 0.0, 1.0, 0.0, 1.0, 0.0
Input sequence
    0.0, 1.0, 2.0, 3.0, 4.0, 5.0, 6.0, 7.0, 8.0, 9.0
Output sequence
    1.0, 3.0, 6.0, 8.0
```

CROSS REFERENCE

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLError_t SIF_EarlyLateGate (SLData_t *,	Pointer to matched filter signal
SLData_t *,	Pointer to matched filter state array
SLData_t *,	Pointer to matched filter coefficients
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to matched filter index
SLData_t *,	Pointer to early gate state array
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to early gate delay index
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Early gate delay length
SLData_t *,	Pointer to loop filter state array
SLData_t *,	Pointer to loop filter coefficients
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to loop filter index
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Loop filter length
const SLData_t,	Loop filter cut-off / centre frequency
SLFixData_t *,	Pointer to pulse detector threshold flag
SLData_t *,	Pointer to zero crossing previous sample
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to trigger counter
SLFixData_t *,	Pointer to trigger detected flag
SLFixData_t *,	Pointer to trigger updated flag
const enum SLELGTriggerTiming_t,	Trigger timing mode
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to trigger latency
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Samples per symbol

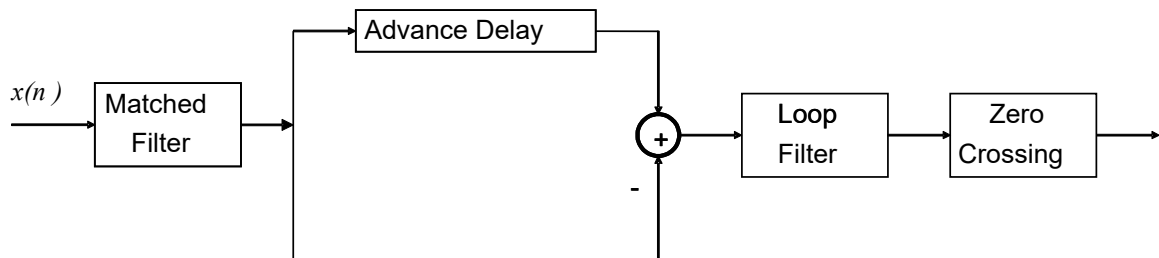
DESCRIPTION

This function initialises the early-late gate timing function, including the matched filter, which is generated from the impulse response of a single symbol. The trigger timing mode parameter specifies the location of the timing pulse with respect to the symbol pulses. The options for the “trigger timing mode” parameter are as follows:

SIGLIB_ELG_TRIGGER_START - Locate the trigger at the start of the symbol

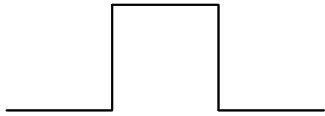
SIGLIB_ELG_TRIGGER_MIDDLE - Locate the trigger in the middle of the symbol

The early late gate timing error detector has the following flow diagram:

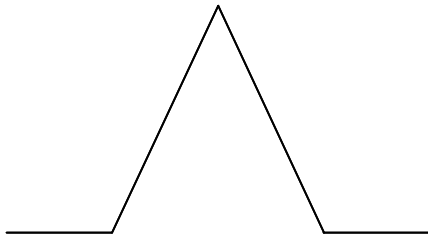


The following description describes how the Early Late Gate Timing Error Detector (ELG-TED) works.

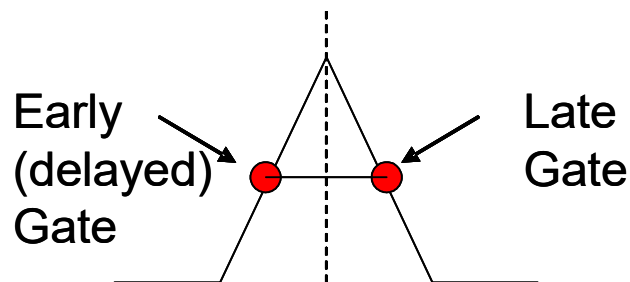
For a given pulse:



The cross correlation function is:



When the magnitude of the early and late gates matches then the centre location is that of the middle of the pulse, as shown:



In some applications it is required to detect the start of the pulse and in others (as shown above) it is necessary to detect the middle. This variation is supported through the use of the “trigger timing mode” parameter.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_EarlyLateGate, SDA_EarlyLateGateDebug, SDS_EarlyLateGate, SIF_EarlyLateGateSquarePulse, SDA_EarlyLateGateSquarePulse, SDA_EarlyLateGateSquarePulseDebug, SDS_EarlyLateGateSquarePulse.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_EarlyLateGate (const SLData_t *,   Pointer to source array
                        SLData_t *,         Pointer to trigger output
                        SLData_t *,         Pointer to matched filter state array
                        SLData_t *,         Pointer to matched filter coefficients
                        SLArrayIndex_t *,    Pointer to matched filter index
                        SLData_t *,         Pointer to early gate state array
                        SLArrayIndex_t *,    Pointer to early gate delay index
                        const SLArrayIndex_t, Early gate delay length
                        SLData_t *,         Pointer to loop filter state array
                        SLData_t *,         Pointer to loop filter coefficients
                        SLArrayIndex_t *,    Pointer to loop filter index
                        const SLArrayIndex_t, Loop filter length
                        const SLData_t,      Noise threshold
                        SLFixData_t *,      Pointer to pulse detector threshold flag
                        SLData_t *,         Pointer to zero crossing previous sample
                        SLArrayIndex_t *,    Pointer to trigger counter
                        SLFixData_t *,      Pointer to trigger detected flag
                        SLFixData_t *,      Pointer to trigger updated flag
                        const SLArrayIndex_t, Samples per symbol
                        const SLArrayIndex_t) Source array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function implements the early-late gate timing function.

The signal is pre-filtered with a matched filter and then the result provided to the early late gate detector. The timing signal is not updated if the signal level is below the noise threshold parameter. The output is a pulse stream synchronized to the period of the input data stream. The trigger output is designed to be free running during a period of symbols where there is no magnitude level change.

NOTES ON USE

The function SIF_EarlyLateGate must be called prior to using this function. Please refer to the documentation for SIF_EarlyLateGate for further implementation details.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_EarlyLateGate, SDA_EarlyLateGateDebug, SDS_EarlyLateGate,
SIF_EarlyLateGateSquarePulse, SDA_EarlyLateGateSquarePulse,
SDA_EarlyLateGateSquarePulseDebug, SDS_EarlyLateGateSquarePulse.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_EarlyLateGateDebug (const SLData_t *, Pointer to source array
    SLData_t *,                      Pointer to trigger output
    SLData_t *,                      Pointer to matched filter state array
    SLData_t *,                      Pointer to matched filter coefficients
    SLArrayIndex_t *,                Pointer to matched filter index
    SLData_t *,                      Pointer to early gate state array
    SLArrayIndex_t *,                Pointer to early gate delay index
    const SLArrayIndex_t,            Early gate delay length
    SLData_t *,                      Pointer to loop filter state array
    SLData_t *,                      Pointer to loop filter coefficients
    SLArrayIndex_t *,                Pointer to loop filter index
    const SLArrayIndex_t,            Loop filter length
    const SLData_t,                  Noise threshold
    SLFixData_t *,                   Pointer to pulse detector threshold flag
    SLData_t *,                      Pointer to zero crossing previous sample
    SLArrayIndex_t *,                Pointer to trigger counter
    SLFixData_t *,                   Pointer to trigger detected flag
    SLFixData_t *,                   Pointer to trigger updated flag
    SLData_t *,                      Pointer to matched filter output
    SLData_t *,                      Pointer to loop filter output
    const SLArrayIndex_t,            Samples per symbol
    const SLArrayIndex_t)            Source array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function implements the early-late gate timing function. The matched filter and loop filter outputs are stored for debugging.

The signal is pre-filtered with a matched filter and then the result provided to the early late gate detector. The timing signal is not updated if the signal level is below the noise threshold parameter. The output is a pulse stream synchronized to the period of the input data stream. The trigger output is designed to be free running during a period of symbols where there is no magnitude level change.

NOTES ON USE

The function SIF_EarlyLateGate must be called prior to using this function. Please refer to the documentation for SIF_EarlyLateGate for further implementation details.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_EarlyLateGate, SDA_EarlyLateGate, SDS_EarlyLateGate,
SIF_EarlyLateGateSquarePulse, SDA_EarlyLateGateSquarePulse,
SDA_EarlyLateGateSquarePulseDebug, SDS_EarlyLateGateSquarePulse.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDS_EarlyLateGate (const SLData_t,	Source data value
SLData_t *,	Pointer to matched filter state array
SLData_t *,	Pointer to matched filter coefficients
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to matched filter index
SLData_t *,	Pointer to early gate state array
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to early gate delay index
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Early gate delay length
SLData_t *,	Pointer to loop filter state array
SLData_t *,	Pointer to loop filter coefficients
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to loop filter index
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Loop filter length
const SLData_t,	Noise threshold
SLFixData_t *,	Pointer to pulse detector threshold flag
SLData_t *,	Pointer to zero crossing previous sample
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to trigger counter
SLFixData_t *,	Pointer to trigger detected flag
SLFixData_t *,	Pointer to trigger updated flag
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Samples per symbol

DESCRIPTION

This function implements the early-late gate timing function on a per-sample basis.

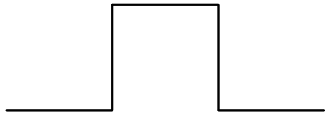
The signal is pre-filtered with a matched filter and then the result provided to the early late gate detector. The timing signal is not updated if the signal level is below the noise threshold parameter. The output is a pulse stream synchronized to the period of the input data stream. The trigger output is designed to be free running during a period of symbols where there is no magnitude level change.

NOTES ON USE

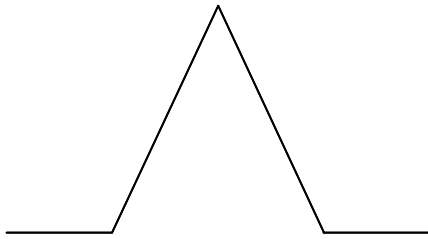
The function SIF_EarlyLateGate must be called prior to using this function. Please refer to the documentation for SIF_EarlyLateGate for further implementation details.

CROSS REFERENCE

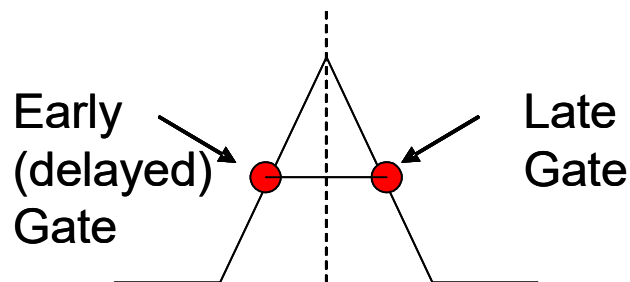
SIF_EarlyLateGate, SDA_EarlyLateGate, SDA_EarlyLateGateDebug,
SIF_EarlyLateGateSquarePulse, SDA_EarlyLateGateSquarePulse,
SDA_EarlyLateGateSquarePulseDebug, SDS_EarlyLateGateSquarePulse.



The cross correlation function is:



When the magnitude of the early and late gates matches then the centre location is that of the middle of the pulse, as shown:



In some applications it is required to detect the start of the pulse and in others (as shown above) it is necessary to detect the middle. This variation is supported through the use of the “trigger timing mode” parameter.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_EarlyLateGate, SDA_EarlyLateGate, SDA_EarlyLateGateDebug,
 SDS_EarlyLateGate, SDA_EarlyLateGateSquarePulse,
 SDA_EarlyLateGateSquarePulseDebug, SDS_EarlyLateGateSquarePulse.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_EarlyLateGateSquarePulse (const SLData_t *,	Pointer to source data
SLData_t *,	Pointer to trigger output
SLData_t *,	Pointer to matched filter state array
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to matched filter index
SLData_t *,	Pointer to matched filter sum
SLData_t *,	Pointer to early gate state array
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to early gate delay index
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Early gate delay length
SLData_t *,	Pointer to loop filter state array
SLData_t *,	Pointer to loop filter coefficients
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to loop filter index
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Loop filter length
const SLData_t,	Noise threshold
SLFixData_t *,	Pointer to pulse detector threshold flag
SLData_t *,	Pointer to zero crossing previous sample
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to trigger counter
SLFixData_t *,	Pointer to trigger detected flag
SLFixData_t *,	Pointer to trigger updated flag
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Samples per symbol
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Source array length

DESCRIPTION

This function implements the early-late gate timing function.

The signal is pre-filtered with a matched filter and then the result provided to the early late gate detector. The timing signal is not updated if the signal level is below the noise threshold parameter. The output is a pulse stream synchronized to the period of the input data stream. The trigger output is designed to be free running during a period of symbols where there is no magnitude level change.

NOTES ON USE

The function SIF_EarlyLateGateSquarePulse must be called prior to using this function. Please refer to the documentation for SIF_EarlyLateGateSquarePulse for further implementation details.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_EarlyLateGate, SDA_EarlyLateGate, SDA_EarlyLateGateDebug,
SDS_EarlyLateGate, SIF_EarlyLateGateSquarePulse,
SDA_EarlyLateGateSquarePulseDebug, SDS_EarlyLateGateSquarePulse.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_EarlyLateGateSquarePulseDebug (const SLData_t *,   Pointer to src. data
    SLData_t *,           Pointer to trigger output
    SLData_t *,           Pointer to matched filter state array
    SLArrayIndex_t *,     Pointer to matched filter index
    SLData_t *,           Pointer to matched filter sum
    SLData_t *,           Pointer to early gate state array
    SLArrayIndex_t *,     Pointer to early gate delay index
    const SLArrayIndex_t, Early gate delay length
    SLData_t *,           Pointer to loop filter state array
    SLData_t *,           Pointer to loop filter coefficients
    SLArrayIndex_t *,     Pointer to loop filter index
    const SLArrayIndex_t, Loop filter length
    const SLData_t,       Noise threshold
    SLFixData_t *,        Pointer to pulse detector threshold flag
    SLData_t *,           Pointer to zero crossing previous sample
    SLArrayIndex_t *,     Pointer to trigger counter
    SLFixData_t *,        Pointer to trigger detected flag
    SLFixData_t *,        Pointer to trigger updated flag
    SLData_t *,           Pointer to matched filter output
    SLData_t *,           Pointer to loop filter output
    const SLArrayIndex_t, Samples per symbol
    const SLArrayIndex_t) Source array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function implements the early-late gate timing function. The matched filter and loop filter outputs are stored for debugging.

The signal is pre-filtered with a matched filter and then the result provided to the early late gate detector. The timing signal is not updated if the signal level is below the noise threshold parameter. The output is a pulse stream synchronized to the period of the input data stream. The trigger output is designed to be free running during a period of symbols where there is no magnitude level change.

NOTES ON USE

The function SIF_EarlyLateGateSquarePulse must be called prior to using this function. Please refer to the documentation for SIF_EarlyLateGateSquarePulse for further implementation details.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_EarlyLateGate, SDA_EarlyLateGate, SDA_EarlyLateGateDebug,
SDS_EarlyLateGate, SIF_EarlyLateGateSquarePulse,
SDA_EarlyLateGateSquarePulse, SDS_EarlyLateGateSquarePulse.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDS_EarlyLateGateSquarePulse (const SLData_t,	Source data value
SLData_t *,	Pointer to matched filter state array
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to matched filter index
SLData_t *,	Pointer to matched filter sum
SLData_t *,	Pointer to early gate state array
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to early gate delay index
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Early gate delay length
SLData_t *,	Pointer to loop filter state array
SLData_t *,	Pointer to loop filter coefficients
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to loop filter index
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Loop filter length
const SLData_t,	Noise threshold
SLFixData_t *,	Pointer to pulse detector threshold flag
SLData_t *,	Pointer to zero crossing previous sample
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to trigger counter
SLFixData_t *,	Pointer to trigger detected flag
SLFixData_t *,	Pointer to trigger updated flag
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Samples per symbol

DESCRIPTION

This function implements the early-late gate timing function on a per-sample basis.

The signal is pre-filtered with a matched filter and then the result provided to the early late gate detector. The timing signal is not updated if the signal level is below the noise threshold parameter. The output is a pulse stream synchronized to the period of the input data stream. The trigger output is designed to be free running during a period of symbols where there is no magnitude level change.

NOTES ON USE

The function SIF_EarlyLateGateSquarePulse must be called prior to using this function. Please refer to the documentation for SIF_EarlyLateGateSquarePulse for further implementation details.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_EarlyLateGate, SDA_EarlyLateGate, SDA_EarlyLateGateDebug,
SDS_EarlyLateGate, SIF_EarlyLateGateSquarePulse,
SDA_EarlyLateGateSquarePulse, SDA_EarlyLateGateSquarePulseDebug.

Convolutional Encode and Viterbi Decode Functions (*viterbi.c*)

The convolutional encoder and Viterbi decoder functions include several sections of code that is conditionally compiled, depending on the value of certain defined constants that are located at the top of the source file (*viterbi.c*). In all cases, the `#define` statements should be set to '1' to enable the appropriate code and '0' to disable it.

For the Viterbi decoders, it may be necessary to normalise the error accumulation to avoid numerical overflow. This can be controlled using the following definitions:

```
K3_NORMALISE_ERROR
V32_NORMALISE_ERROR
```

The following conditional compilation switches also control the debug feedback, using `printf` statements:

<code>DEBUG</code>	Global debug enable / disable switch
<code>K3_DEBUG_ERROR_ACC</code>	K=3 Viterbi decoder error accumulation
<code>K3_DEBUG_TRACE_BACK</code>	K=3 Viterbi decoder trace back path
<code>V32_DEBUG_CONV_ENC</code>	V.32 convolutional encoder
<code>V32_DEBUG_CHANNEL_DATA</code>	V.32 channel data
<code>V32_DEBUG_ERROR_ACC</code>	Debug V.32 error accumulation
<code>V32_DEBUG_TRACE_BACK</code>	V.32 trace back path

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

unsigned int SDS_ConvEncoderK3 (unsigned SLChar_t, Input character
 SLArrayIndex_t *) Pointer to convolutional encoder state

DESCRIPTION

This function implements a K=3, rate 1/2 convolutional encoder on a source character (8 bits). The output is a short integer (16 bits), with two output bits for every input bit.

NOTES ON USE

The convolutional encoder state is a single word of type SLArrayIndex_t.

Please also refer to the notes at the top of the convolutional encoder / Viterbi decoder section.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_ViterbiDecoderK3, SDS_ViterbiDecoderK3.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SIF_ViterbiDecoderK3 (SLFixData_t *,	Bit counter
SLChar_t *,	Storage to build decoded bits into a byte
SLData_t *,	Accumulated error array
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Survivor state history table
SLArrayIndex_t *,	State history array offset
SLFixData_t *,	Trace back mode flag
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Trace back depth

DESCRIPTION

This function initialises the K=3, rate 1/2 Viterbi decoder function.

NOTES ON USE

Bit counter parameter counts the bits into the output word so they are correctly aligned, this accounts for the delay through the decoder.

The survivor state history table is a two dimensional array of dimension: [TRACE_BACK_TABLE_LENGTH][SIGLIB_VITK3_NUMBER_OF_STATES]. Where SIGLIB_VITK3_NUMBER_OF_STATES is defined by the SigLib library. The accumulated error array is of dimension SIGLIB_VITK3_NUMBER_OF_STATES.

The trace back mode flag parameter is set to SIGLIB_TRUE when in trace back mode. The state history array offset parameter tracks the offset into the circular state history array.

Please also refer to the notes at the top of the convolutional encoder / Viterbi decoder section.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS_ConvEncoderK3, SDS_ViterbiDecoderK3.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```

SLChar_t SDS_ViterbiDecoderK3 (SLData_t *,    Source data pointer
                               SLFixData_t *,    Bit counter
                               SLChar_t *,    Storage to build decoded bits into a byte
                               SLData_t *,    Accumulated error array
                               SLArrayIndex_t *, Survivor state history table
                               SLArrayIndex_t *, Offset into state history array
                               SLFixData_t *, Trace back mode flag
                               const SLArrayIndex_t) Trace back depth

```

DESCRIPTION

This function implements a K=3, rate 1/2 Viterbi decoder on a short integer (16 bits) input. The output is a character (8 bits). Two input bits are used to generate every output bit.

NOTES ON USE

Bit counter parameter counts the bits into the output word so they are correctly aligned, this accounts for the delay through the decoder.

The survivor state history table is a two dimensional array of dimension: [TRACE_BACK_TABLE_LENGTH][SIGLIB_VITK3_NUMBER_OF_STATES]. Where SIGLIB_VITK3_NUMBER_OF_STATES is defined by the SigLib library. The accumulated error array is of dimension SIGLIB_VITK3_NUMBER_OF_STATES.

The trace back mode flag parameter is set to SIGLIB_TRUE when in trace back mode. The state history array offset parameter tracks the offset into the circular state history array.

Please also refer to the notes at the top of the convolutional encoder / Viterbi decoder section.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS_ConvEncoderK3, SIF_ViterbiDecoderK3.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLComplexRect_s SDS_ConvEncoderV32 (unsigned SLChar_t, Input nibble
SLArrayIndex_t *, Differential encoder state
SLArrayIndex_t *) Convolutional encoder state

DESCRIPTION

This function implements a V.32 convolutional encoder on an source nibble (4 bits). The output is a complex number, which represents that positioning of the points in the V.32 constellation diagram. This function also implements the differential encoder functionality, which is part of the V.32 specification.

NOTES ON USE

The convolutional encoder state and differential encoder state are both single words of type SLArrayIndex_t.

Please also refer to the notes at the top of the convolutional encoder / Viterbi decoder section.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_ViterbiDecoderV32, SDS_ViterbiDecoderV32.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SIF_ViterbiDecoderV32 (SLData_t *, Accumulated error array
    SLArrayIndex_t *, Survivor state history table
    SLArrayIndex_t *, Offset into state history array
    SLFixData_t *, Trace back mode flag
    const SLArrayIndex_t) Trace back depth
```

DESCRIPTION

This function initialises the V.32 Viterbi decoder function.

NOTES ON USE

The survivor state history table is a two dimensional array of dimension:
[TRACE_BACK_TABLE_LENGTH][SIGLIB_VITV32_NUMBER_OF_STATES].
Where SIGLIB_VITV32_NUMBER_OF_STATES is defined by the SigLib library.
The accumulated error array is of dimension:
SIGLIB_VITV32_NUMBER_OF_STATES.

The trace back mode flag parameter is set to SIGLIB_TRUE when in trace back mode. The state history array offset parameter tracks the offset into the circular state history array.

Please also refer to the notes at the top of the convolutional encoder / Viterbi decoder section.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS_ConvEncoderV32, SDS_ViterbiDecoderV32.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLChar_t SDS_ViterbiDecoderV32 (SLComplexRect_s,   Channel data
    SLData_t *,                                     Accumulated error array
    SLArrayIndex_t *,                               Survivor state history table
    SLArrayIndex_t *,                               Offset into state history array
    SLArrayIndex_t *,                               Q4Q3 History table
    SLArrayIndex_t *,                               Differential decoder state
    SLFixData_t *,                                  Trace back mode flag
    const SLArrayIndex_t)                           Trace back depth
```

DESCRIPTION

This function implements a V.32 Viterbi decoder on a complex source number, which represents that position of the received sample on the V.32 constellation diagram. The output is a nibble (4 bits). This function also implements the differential decoder functionality, which is part of the V.32 specification.

NOTES ON USE

The survivor state history table and nearest Q4Q3 history array are both two dimensional arrays of dimension:
[TRACE_BACK_TABLE_LENGTH][SIGLIB_VITV32_NUMBER_OF_STATES].
Where SIGLIB_VITV32_NUMBER_OF_STATES is defined by the SigLib library.
The accumulated error array is of dimension:
SIGLIB_VITV32_NUMBER_OF_STATES.

The differential decoder state is a single words of type SLArrayIndex_t.

The trace back mode flag parameter is set to SIGLIB_TRUE when in trace back mode. The state history array offset parameter tracks the offset into the circular state history array.

Please also refer to the notes at the top of the convolutional encoder / Viterbi decoder section.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS_ConvEncoderV32, SIF_ViterbiDecoderV32.

Analog Modulation Functions (*mod_a.c*)

SIF_AmplitudeModulate

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SIF_AmplitudeModulate (SLData_t *, Carrier table pointer
                           SLArrayIndex_t *,           Carrier table index
                           const SLArrayIndex_t)        Modulator array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function initialized the amplitude modulation functions SDA_AmplitudeModulate and SDS_AmplitudeModulate. These functions utilize a look up table for the carrier that represents an integer number of samples per cycle. For example, a carrier frequency of 200 KHz, with a sample rate of 1 MHz gives a look up table length of $1e^6 / 2e^5 = 5$ samples.

If your application requires a carrier frequency that is not an integer number of samples in length then you are advised to use the XXX_AmplitudeModulate2 functions.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_AmplitudeModulate, SDS_AmplitudeModulate,
SIF_AmplitudeModulate2, SDA_AmplitudeModulate2, SDS_AmplitudeModulate2.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_AmplitudeModulate (const SLData_t *, Modulating signal source pointer
                           const SLData_t *,           Carrier table pointer
                           SLData_t *,                 Modulated signal destination pointer
                           SLArrayIndex_t *,           Carrier table index
                           const SLArrayIndex_t,       Modulator array length
                           const SLArrayIndex_t)       Sample array size
```

DESCRIPTION

This function amplitude modulates one signal with another, it can be identically used for modulation and demodulation.

NOTES ON USE

This function operates on an array oriented basis.

The function SIF_AmplitudeModulate should be called prior to using this function. Please read the notes for SIF_AmplitudeModulate.

This function can work in-place.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_AmplitudeModulate, SDS_AmplitudeModulate,
SIF_AmplitudeModulate2, SDA_AmplitudeModulate2, SDS_AmplitudeModulate2.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDS_AmplitudeModulate (const SLData_t, Modulating signal source data
const SLData_t *, Carrier table pointer
SLArrayIndex_t *, Carrier table index
const SLArrayIndex_t) Modulator array length

DESCRIPTION

This function amplitude modulates one signal with another, it can be identically used for modulation and demodulation.

NOTES ON USE

This function operates on a per sample basis.

The function SIF_AmplitudeModulate should be called prior to using this function. Please read the notes for SIF_AmplitudeModulate.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_AmplitudeModulate, SDA_AmplitudeModulate,
SIF_AmplitudeModulate2, SDA_AmplitudeModulate2, SDS_AmplitudeModulate2.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SIF_AmplitudeModulate2 (SLData_t *,          Carrier table pointer
                             SLData_t *,          Carrier table phase
                             const SLArrayIndex_t) Modulator array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function initialized the amplitude modulation functions SDA_AmplitudeModulate2 and SDS_AmplitudeModulate2. These functions utilize a look up table for the carrier that represents a single over-sampled cosine wave form. The modulators step through the look up table with a phase integrator that is proportional to the carrier frequency normalized to a sampling rate of 1.0 Hz. The carrier phase uses a floating point variable so it can support a very large range of carrier frequencies with high accuracy.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF_AmplitudeModulate, SDA_AmplitudeModulate,
SDS_AmplitudeModulate, SDA_AmplitudeModulate2, SDS_AmplitudeModulate2.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_AmplitudeModulate2 (const SLData_t *, Modulating signal source pointer
    const SLData_t *,           Carrier table pointer
    SLData_t *,                 Modulated signal destination pointer
    SLData_t *,                 Carrier table phase
    const SLData_t,             Carrier frequency
    const SLArrayIndex_t,       Modulator array length
    const SLArrayIndex_t)       Sample array size
```

DESCRIPTION

This function amplitude modulates one signal with another, it can be identically used for modulation and demodulation.

NOTES ON USE

The carrier frequency is normalized to 1.0 Hz.

This function operates on an array oriented basis.

The function SIF_AmplitudeModulate2 should be called prior to using this function. Please read the notes for SIF_AmplitudeModulate2.

This function can work in-place.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_AmplitudeModulate, SDA_AmplitudeModulate,
SDS_AmplitudeModulate, SIF_AmplitudeModulate2, SDS_AmplitudeModulate2.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDS_AmplitudeModulate2 (const SLData_t, Modulating signal source data
const SLData_t *, Carrier table pointer
SLData_t *, Carrier table phase
const SLData_t, Carrier frequency
const SLArrayIndex_t) Modulator array length

DESCRIPTION

This function amplitude modulates one signal with another, it can be identically used for modulation and demodulation.

NOTES ON USE

The carrier frequency is normalized to 1.0 Hz.

This function operates on a per sample basis.

The function SIF_AmplitudeModulate2 should be called prior to using this function. Please read the notes for SIF_AmplitudeModulate2.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_AmplitudeModulate, SDA_AmplitudeModulate,
SDS_AmplitudeModulate, SIF_AmplitudeModulate2, SDA_AmplitudeModulate2.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLError_t SIF_ComplexShift (SLData_t *,	Comb filter 1 pointer
SLData_t *,	Comb filter 1 running sum
SLData_t *,	Comb filter 2 pointer
SLData_t *,	Comb filter 2 running sum
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Comb filter phase
SLData_t *,	Sine table pointer
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Sine table phase for mixer
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Length of comb filter
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Length of demodulation sine table

DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the complex frequency shifting function.

NOTES ON USE

This function initialises a table containing a sinusoidal waveform. This table consists of floating-point data values. For fixed point implementations it will be necessary to generate the tables with the appropriate data, which will depend on the length of the table and the CPU word length.

This function returns the error code from the SDA_SignalGenerate() function that it calls.

CROSS REFERENCE

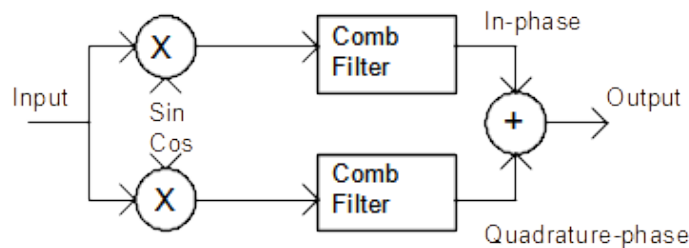
SDA_ComplexShift.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_ComplexShift (const SLData_t *,Modulating signal pointer
    SLData_t *,                      Modulated signal destination pointer
    SLData_t *,                      Comb filter 1 pointer
    SLData_t *,                      Comb filter 1 running sum
    SLData_t *,                      Comb filter 2 pointer
    SLData_t *,                      Comb filter 2 running sum
    SLArrayIndex_t *,               Comb filter phase
    const SLData_t *,               Sine table pointer
    SLArrayIndex_t *,               Sine table phase for mixer
    const SLData_t,                 Mix frequency
    const SLArrayIndex_t,           Length of comb filter
    const SLArrayIndex_t,           Sine table length for mixer
    const SLArrayIndex_t)           Sample array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function performs a complex frequency shift with the following structure:



Sum can be Square magnitude sum, or Quadrature - In-phase, this routine uses square magnitude sum.

NOTES ON USE

This function uses a single length N sine table. The cosine pointer index starts at (length >> 2) to account for the phase.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_ComplexShift.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SIF_FrequencyModulate (SLData_t *, Pointer to carrier phase
 SLData_t *, Pointer to LUT array
 const SLArrayIndex_t) Table length

DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the fast cosine look up table for the frequency modulation functions.

NOTES ON USE

The array contains one complete cycle of a cosine wave (0 to 2π), with N samples.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS_FrequencyModulate, SDA_FrequencyModulate,
SIF_FrequencyModulateComplex, SDS_FrequencyModulateComplex,
SDA_FrequencyModulateComplex.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLData_t SDS_FrequencyModulate (const SLData_t,  Modulating signal
                                const SLData_t,    Carrier frequency
                                const SLData_t,    Modulation index
                                SLData_t *,         Phase offset
                                const SLData_t *,   Fast sine look up table
                                const SLArrayIndex_t) Look up table size
```

DESCRIPTION

This function frequency modulates a carrier signal with another. The modulation index specifies the frequency change per unit input amplitude change on the modulating signal.

The output phase is modified by the carrier frequency (normalized to 1.0 Hz) plus the product of the modulation index and the magnitude of the input signal.

This function can also be used as a voltage controlled oscillator (VCO / NCO).

NOTES ON USE

This function can operate on individual samples and uses the fast sine wave look up table technique.

If this function proves to be unstable then the most likely cause is that the modulation index is too large.

The function SIF_FrequencyModulate must be called prior to calling this function.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_FrequencyModulate, SDA_FrequencyModulate,
 SDA_FrequencyDemodulate, SIF_FrequencyModulateComplex,
 SDS_FrequencyModulateComplex, SDA_FrequencyModulateComplex.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_FrequencyModulate (const SLData_t *,   Modulating signal
                           SLData_t *,         Modulated signal destination pointer
                           const SLData_t ,     Carrier frequency
                           const SLData_t ,     Modulation index
                           SLData_t *,         Phase offset
                           const SLData_t *,    Fast sine look up table
                           const SLArrayIndex_t, Look up table size
                           const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function frequency modulates a carrier signal with another. The modulation index specifies the frequency change per unit input amplitude change on the modulating signal.

The output phase is modified by the carrier frequency (normalized to 1.0 Hz) plus the product of the modulation index and the magnitude of the input signal.

This function can also be used as a voltage controlled oscillator (VCO / NCO).

NOTES ON USE

This function can operate on separate source and destination arrays or the source and destination pointers can reference the same array, for in-place operation. It uses the fast sine wave look up table technique

If this function proves to be unstable then the most likely cause is that the modulation index is too large.

The function SIF_FrequencyModulate must be called prior to calling this function.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_FrequencyModulate, SDS_FrequencyModulate,
SDA_FrequencyDemodulate, SIF_FrequencyModulateComplex,
SDS_FrequencyModulateComplex, SDA_FrequencyModulateComplex.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_FrequencyDemodulate (const SLData_t *,	Modulated signal
SLData_t *,	Demodulated signal destination pointer
SLData_t *,	Previous value of differential
SLData_t *,	Previous value of envelope
const SLData_t,	Envelope decay factor
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function demodulates an FM signal using the direct method i.e. differentiate and envelope detect.

The function is required to maintain the signal magnitude and envelope magnitude to ensure continuous operation across array boundaries. This is achieved using the previous value of differential and previous value of envelope variables. It is also necessary to specify the envelope decay factor to define how aggressively the envelope tracks the signal.

NOTES ON USE

This function can operate on separate source and destination arrays or the source and destination pointers can reference the same array, for in-place operation.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_FrequencyModulate, SDS_FrequencyModulate,
SDA_FrequencyModulate, SIF_FrequencyModulateComplex,
SDS_FrequencyModulateComplex, SDA_FrequencyModulateComplex.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SIF_FrequencyModulateComplex (SLData_t *,      Pointer to carrier phase  
    SLData_t *,      Pointer to LUT array  
    const SLArrayIndex_t)      Table length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the fast cosine look up table for the complex frequency modulation functions.

NOTES ON USE

The array contains one and one quarter of a cosine wave (0 to $5\pi/2$), with $5*N/4$ samples.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_FrequencyModulate, SDS_FrequencyModulate,
SDA_FrequencyModulate, SDA_FrequencyDemodulate,
SDS_FrequencyModulateComplex, SDA_FrequencyModulateComplex.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDS_FrequencyModulateComplex (const SLData_t,  Modulating signal source
                                   SLData_t *,      Real modulated signal destination
                                   pointer
                                   SLData_t *,      Imaginary modulated signal destination
                                   pointer
                                   const SLData_t,   Carrier frequency
                                   const SLData_t,   Modulation index
                                   SLData_t *,       Pointer to carrier phase
                                   const SLData_t *, Fast sine / cosine look up table
                                   const SLArrayIndex_t) Look up table size
```

DESCRIPTION

This function frequency modulates a complex carrier signal (In-phase and quadrature) with another. The modulation index specifies the frequency change per unit input amplitude change on the modulating signal.

The output phase is modified by the carrier frequency (normalized to 1.0 Hz) plus the product of the modulation index and the magnitude of the input signal.

This function can also be used as a voltage controlled oscillator (VCO / NCO) to generate a complex I-Q signal.

NOTES ON USE

This function operates on individual samples and uses the fast sine/cosine wave look up table technique.

If this function proves to be unstable then the most likely cause is that the modulation index is too large.

The function SIF_FrequencyModulateComplex must be called prior to calling this function.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_FrequencyModulate, SDS_FrequencyModulate,
SDA_FrequencyModulate, SDA_FrequencyDemodulate,
SIF_FrequencyModulateComplex, SDA_FrequencyModulateComplex.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_FrequencyModulateComplex (const SLData_t *, source pointer SLData_t *, pointer SLData_t *, pointer const SLData_t, const SLData_t, SLData_t *, const SLData_t *, const SLArrayIndex_t, const SLArrayIndex_t)	Modulating signal Real modulated signal destination Imaginary modulated signal destination Carrier frequency Modulation index Pointer to carrier phase Fast cosine look up table Look up table size Array length
--	--

DESCRIPTION

This function frequency modulates a complex carrier signal (In-phase and quadrature) with another. The modulation index specifies the frequency change per unit input amplitude change on the modulating signal.

The output phase is modified by the carrier frequency (normalized to 1.0 Hz) plus the product of the modulation index and the magnitude of the input signal.

This function can also be used as a voltage controlled oscillator (VCO / NCO) to generate a complex I-Q signal.

NOTES ON USE

This function operates on separate source and destination arrays or the source and destination pointers can reference the same array, for in-place operation. It uses the fast sine wave look up table technique

If this function proves to be unstable then the most likely cause is that the modulation index is too large.

The function SIF_FrequencyModulateComplex must be called prior to calling this function.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_FrequencyModulate, SDS_FrequencyModulate,
 SDA_FrequencyModulate, SDA_FrequencyDemodulate,
 SIF_FrequencyModulateComplex, SDS_FrequencyModulateComplex.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_DeltaModulate (const SLData_t *,      Input data pointer
                        SLData_t *,            Destination data pointer
                        SLData_t *,            Current integrator sum
                        const SLData_t,         Delta
                        const SLArrayIndex_t)   Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function delta modulates an input signal. The delta modulation index “delta” specifies the fixed increment or decrement on the current integrator sum. The "current integrator sum" parameter is used to maintain continuity over consecutive arrays.

NOTES ON USE

This function can operate on separate source and destination arrays or the source and destination pointers can reference the same array, for in-place operation.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_DeltaDemodulate, SDA_DeltaModulate2

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_DeltaDemodulate (const SLData_t *,    Input data pointer
                          SLData_t *,          Destination data pointer
                          SLData_t *,          Current integrator sum
                          const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function demodulates an input delta modulated signal generated by either SDA_DeltaModulate or SDA_DeltaModulate2. The “current integrator sum” is used to maintain continuity over consecutive arrays.

NOTES ON USE

This function can operate on separate source and destination arrays or the source and destination pointers can reference the same array, for in-place operation.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_DeltaModulate, SDA_DeltaModulate2

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_DeltaModulate2 (const SLData_t *,      Input data pointer
                        SLData_t *,            Destination data pointer
                        SLData_t *,            Current integrator sum
                        const SLData_t,        Integration maximum value
                        const SLArrayIndex_t)  Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function delta modulates an input signal. The integration maximum value parameter specifies the largest increment that can be applied to the current integrator sum. The “current integrator sum” parameter is used to maintain continuity over consecutive arrays.

NOTES ON USE

This function can operate on separate source and destination arrays or the source and destination pointers can reference the same array, for in-place operation.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_DeltaDemodulate, SDA_DeltaModulate

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLError_t SIF_CostasQamDemodulate (SLData_t *,	VCO phase
SLData_t *,	VCO look up table
const SLArrayIndex_t,	VCO look up table size
const SLData_t,	Low-pass filter cut-off frequency
SLData_t *,	Pointer to loop filter 1 state
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to loop filter 1 index
SLData_t *,	Pointer to loop filter 2 state
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to loop filter 2 index
SLData_t *,	Pointer to loop filter coefficients
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Loop filter length
SLData_t *,	Pointer to loop filter state
SLData_t *,	Pointer to delayed sample
SLData_t *,	Pointer to matched filter state array
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to matched filter index
SLData_t *,	Pointer to matched filter sum
SLData_t *,	Pointer to early gate state array
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to early gate delay index
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Early gate delay length
SLData_t *,	Pointer to loop filter state array
SLData_t *,	Pointer to loop filter coefficients
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to loop filter index
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Loop filter length
const SLData_t,	Loop filter cut-off / centre frequency
SLFixData_t *,	Pointer to pulse detector threshold flag
SLData_t *,	Pointer to zero crossing previous sample
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to trigger counter
SLFixData_t *,	Pointer to trigger detected flag
SLFixData_t *,	Pointer to trigger updated flag
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to Early-late gate trigger latency
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Samples per symbol
SLData_t *,	Pointer to ELG real output
synchronization delay state array	
SLData_t *,	Pointer to ELG imaginary output
synchronization delay state array	
SLArrayIndex_t *)	Pointer to ELG synch. delay index

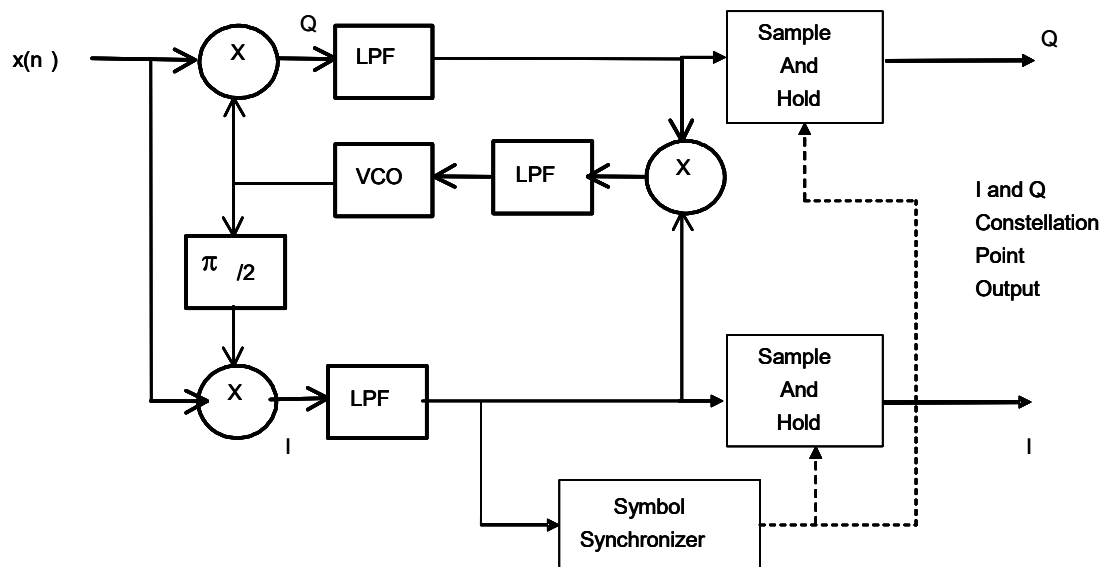
DESCRIPTION

This function initialises the SDS_CostasQamDemodulate, SDS_CostasQamDemodulateDebug, SDA_CostasQamDemodulate and SDA_CostasQamDemodulateDebug functions.

The Costas Loop based QAM demodulation functions are the preferred functions for demodulating any type of QAM based modulation, including BPSK, QPSK (4-QAM),

DQPSK, $\pi/4$ DQPSK, 8-PSK and any other QAM variation. The demodulation functions actually return the demodulated IQ sample for each symbol and these can be decoded to give the desired output bit sequence.

The following diagram shows the structure of the Costas loop QAM demodulator:



The Costas loop supports all of the phase error detector modes of the standard Costas loop functions but this diagram has been simplified for clarity.

The Costas loop is used to extract the remote carrier synchronization and the symbol synchronizer (an Early-late-gate Timing Error Detector) locks to the remote symbol timing. The symbol synchronizer also uses the SDS_TriggerReverberator function to ensure that the early-late gate trigger continues even when the symbol magnitude does not vary.

NOTES ON USE

When decoding an arbitrary sequence of data there are a few considerations to be made with respect to the timing and synchronization. The first is that it may be necessary to have separate Costas loop gains for the acquisition and tracking modes. The second consideration is that it is common to have to search for a synchronization sequence of received symbols. Although SigLib supports both array and sample oriented versions of the Costas loop QAM demodulation functions, both of these requirements are typically more easily handled when the per-sample function is used (SDS_CostasQamDemodulate).

The Costas loop is responsible for the acquisition of the carrier frequency. It is a feedback loop that uses the error between the received carrier phase and the internal carrier signal phase (generated by the Voltage Controlled Oscillator -VCO). When using the Costas Loop it is typical to acquire a rough estimate very quickly and then track the actual frequency more accurately and more slowly. The way to do this is to use two different values for the VCO feedback parameter - one for acquisition and one for tracking. The feedback value is just a gain that is applied to the VCO input to change the rate at which the Costas loop tracks the phase of the incoming signal. If this value is too small then it won't acquire the phase and if it is too big then it will become unstable. Swapping between acquisition and tracking mode requires knowledge of how close to synchronization the Costas loop is and this is typically done by looking at the error magnitude in the demodulated symbol.

The SDS_CostasQamDemodulate, SDS_CostasQamDemodulateDebug, SDA_CostasQamDemodulate and SDA_CostasQamDemodulateDebug functions use the Costas loop and Early-late gate square pulse synchronization functions. For further details, please read the SIF_CostasLoop, SDS_CostasLoop, SDA_CostasLoop, SIF_EarlyLateGateSquarePulse, SDS_EarlyLateGateSquarePulse and SDS_TriggerReverberator function documentation.

In order to allocate the Costas loop look up table it is necessary to use the SUF_CostasLoopArrayAllocate() to malloc the look-up-table memory, rather than SUF_VectorArrayAllocate().

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS_CostasQamDemodulate, SDS_CostasQamDemodulateDebug,
SDA_CostasQamDemodulate, SDA_CostasQamDemodulateDebug.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLArrayIndex_t SDS_CostasQamDemodulate (const SLData_t,	Source data sample
SLData_t *,	Pointer to real destination symbol point
SLData_t *,	Pointer to imag. destination symbol point
SLData_t *,	VCO phase
const SLData_t,	VCO modulation index
SLData_t *,	VCO look up table
const SLArrayIndex_t,	VCO look up table size
const SLData_t,	Carrier frequency
SLData_t *,	Pointer to loop filter 1 state
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to loop filter 1 index
SLData_t *,	Pointer to loop filter 2 state
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to loop filter 2 index
const SLData_t *,	Pointer to loop filter coefficients
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Loop filter length
SLData_t *,	Pointer to loop filter state
const SLData_t,	Loop filter coefficient
const enum SLCostasLoopFeedbackMode_t,	Loop feedback mode
SLData_t *,	Pointer to delayed sample
SLData_t *,	Pointer to matched filter state array
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to matched filter index
SLData_t *,	Pointer to matched filter sum
SLData_t *,	Pointer to early gate state array
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to early gate delay index
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Early gate delay length
SLData_t *,	Pointer to loop filter state array
SLData_t *,	Pointer to loop filter coefficients
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to loop filter index
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Loop filter length
const SLData_t,	Loop filter cut-off / centre frequency
SLFixData_t *,	Pointer to pulse detector threshold flag
SLData_t *,	Pointer to zero crossing previous sample
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to trigger counter
SLFixData_t *,	Pointer to trigger detected flag
SLFixData_t *,	Pointer to trigger updated flag
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Samples per symbol
SLData_t *,	Pointer to ELG real output
synchronization delay state array	
SLData_t *,	Pointer to ELG imaginary output
synchronization delay state array	
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to ELG synch. delay index
const SLArrayIndex_t)	ELG output synchronization delay length

DESCRIPTION

This function implements the Costas loop QAM demodulator on an individual sample. It will output a single IQ sample if one has been decoded.

NOTES ON USE

For further information on the Costas loop QAM demodulator functions please refer to the SIF_CostasQamDemodulate documentation.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_CostasQamDemodulate, SDS_CostasQamDemodulateDebug,
SDA_CostasQamDemodulate, SDA_CostasQamDemodulateDebug.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLArrayIndex_t SDS_CostasQamDemodulateDebug (const SLData_t, Src. sample
    SLData_t *,                               Pointer to real destination symbol point
    SLData_t *,                               Pointer to imag. destination symbol point
    SLData_t *,                               VCO phase
    const SLData_t,                           VCO modulation index
    SLData_t *,                               VCO look up table
    const SLArrayIndex_t,                     VCO look up table size
    const SLData_t,                           Carrier frequency
    SLData_t *,                               Pointer to loop filter 1 state
    SLArrayIndex_t *,                         Pointer to loop filter 1 index
    SLData_t *,                               Pointer to loop filter 2 state
    SLArrayIndex_t *,                         Pointer to loop filter 2 index
    const SLData_t *,                         Pointer to loop filter coefficients
    const SLArrayIndex_t,                     Loop filter length
    SLData_t *,                               Pointer to loop filter state
    const SLData_t,                           Loop filter coefficient
    const enum SLCostasLoopFeedbackMode_t,    Loop feedback mode
    SLData_t *,                               Pointer to delayed sample
    SLData_t *,                               Pointer to matched filter state array
    SLArrayIndex_t *,                         Pointer to matched filter index
    SLData_t *,                               Pointer to matched filter sum
    SLData_t *,                               Pointer to early gate state array
    SLArrayIndex_t *,                         Pointer to early gate delay index
    const SLArrayIndex_t,                     Early gate delay length
    SLData_t *,                               Pointer to loop filter state array
    SLData_t *,                               Pointer to loop filter coefficients
    SLArrayIndex_t *,                         Pointer to loop filter index
    const SLArrayIndex_t,                     Loop filter length
    const SLData_t,                           Loop filter cut-off / centre frequency
    SLFixData_t *,                           Pointer to pulse detector threshold flag
    SLData_t *,                               Pointer to zero crossing previous sample
    SLArrayIndex_t *,                         Pointer to trigger counter
    SLFixData_t *,                           Pointer to trigger detected flag
    SLFixData_t *,                           Pointer to trigger updated flag
    const SLArrayIndex_t,                     Samples per symbol
    SLData_t *,                               Pointer to ELG real output
    synchronization delay state array
    SLData_t *,                               Pointer to ELG imaginary output
    synchronization delay state array
    SLArrayIndex_t *,                         Pointer to ELG synch. delay index
    const SLArrayIndex_t,                     ELG output synchronization delay length
    SLData_t *,                               Pointer to debug real filter output
    SLData_t *,                               Pointer to debug imaginary filter output
    SLData_t *,                               Pointer to debug ELG trigger output
    SLArrayIndex_t *)                         Pointer to debug ELG trigger count
```

DESCRIPTION

This function implements the Costas loop QAM demodulator on an individual sample. It will output a single IQ sample if one has been decoded.

NOTES ON USE

For further information on the Costas loop QAM demodulator functions please refer to the `SIF_CostasQamDemodulate` documentation.

This function also saves the real and imaginary (I and Q) output samples from the Costas loop low-pass filters along with the early-late gate trigger so that this information can be used to analyze the performance of the demodulator.

CROSS REFERENCE

`SIF_CostasQamDemodulate`, `SDS_CostasQamDemodulate`,
`SDA_CostasQamDemodulate`, `SDA_CostasQamDemodulateDebug`.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLArrayIndex_t SDA_CostasQamDemodulate (const SLData_t *, Source data ptr.
 SLData_t *, Real destination data pointer
 SLData_t *, Imaginary destination data pointer
 SLData_t *, VCO phase
 const SLData_t, VCO modulation index
 SLData_t *, VCO look up table
 const SLArrayIndex_t, VCO look up table size
 const SLData_t, Carrier frequency
 SLData_t *, Pointer to loop filter 1 state
 SLArrayIndex_t *, Pointer to loop filter 1 index
 SLData_t *, Pointer to loop filter 2 state
 SLArrayIndex_t *, Pointer to loop filter 2 index
 const SLData_t *, Pointer to loop filter coefficients
 const SLArrayIndex_t, Loop filter length
 SLData_t *, Pointer to loop filter state
 const SLData_t, Loop filter coefficient
 const enum SLCostasLoopFeedbackMode_t, Loop feedback mode
 SLData_t *, Pointer to delayed sample
 SLData_t *, Pointer to matched filter state array
 SLArrayIndex_t *, Pointer to matched filter index
 SLData_t *, Pointer to matched filter sum
 SLData_t *, Pointer to early gate state array
 SLArrayIndex_t *, Pointer to early gate delay index
 const SLArrayIndex_t, Early gate delay length
 SLData_t *, Pointer to loop filter state array
 SLData_t *, Pointer to loop filter coefficients
 SLArrayIndex_t *, Pointer to loop filter index
 const SLArrayIndex_t, Loop filter length
 const SLData_t, Loop filter cut-off / centre frequency
 SLFixData_t *, Pointer to pulse detector threshold flag
 SLData_t *, Pointer to zero crossing previous sample
 SLArrayIndex_t *, Pointer to trigger counter
 SLFixData_t *, Pointer to trigger detected flag
 SLFixData_t *, Pointer to trigger updated flag
 const SLArrayIndex_t, Samples per symbol
 SLData_t *, Pointer to ELG real output
 synchronization delay state array
 SLData_t *, Pointer to ELG imaginary output
 synchronization delay state array
 SLArrayIndex_t *, Pointer to ELG synch. delay index
 const SLArrayIndex_t, ELG output synchronization delay length
 const SLArrayIndex_t) Source array length

DESCRIPTION

This function implements the Costas loop QAM demodulator on an array of input samples. It will output an arbitrary number of IQ samples depending on how many are decoded in the data stream. The return value is the number of decoded IQ constellation points in the output array.

NOTES ON USE

For further information on the Costas loop QAM demodulator functions please refer to the `SIF_CostasQamDemodulate` documentation.

CROSS REFERENCE

`SIF_CostasQamDemodulate`, `SDS_CostasQamDemodulate`,
`SDS_CostasQamDemodulateDebug`, `SDA_CostasQamDemodulateDebug`.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```

SLArrayIndex_t SDA_CostasQamDemodulateDebug (const SLData_t *, Src. ptr.
    SLData_t *,           Real destination data pointer
    SLData_t *,           Imaginary destination data pointer
    SLData_t *,           VCO phase
    const SLData_t,       VCO modulation index
    SLData_t *,           VCO look up table
    const SLArrayIndex_t, VCO look up table size
    const SLData_t,       Carrier frequency
    SLData_t *,           Pointer to loop filter 1 state
    SLArrayIndex_t *,     Pointer to loop filter 1 index
    SLData_t *,           Pointer to loop filter 2 state
    SLArrayIndex_t *,     Pointer to loop filter 2 index
    const SLData_t *,     Pointer to loop filter coefficients
    const SLArrayIndex_t, Loop filter length
    SLData_t *,           Pointer to loop filter state
    const SLData_t,       Loop filter coefficient
    const enum SLCostasLoopFeedbackMode_t, Loop feedback mode
    SLData_t *,           Pointer to delayed sample
    SLData_t *,           Pointer to matched filter state array
    SLArrayIndex_t *,     Pointer to matched filter index
    SLData_t *,           Pointer to matched filter sum
    SLData_t *,           Pointer to early gate state array
    SLArrayIndex_t *,     Pointer to early gate delay index
    const SLArrayIndex_t, Early gate delay length
    SLData_t *,           Pointer to loop filter state array
    SLData_t *,           Pointer to loop filter coefficients
    SLArrayIndex_t *,     Pointer to loop filter index
    const SLArrayIndex_t, Loop filter length
    const SLData_t,       Loop filter cut-off / centre frequency
    SLFixData_t *,        Pointer to pulse detector threshold flag
    SLData_t *,           Pointer to zero crossing previous sample
    SLArrayIndex_t *,     Pointer to trigger counter
    SLFixData_t *,        Pointer to trigger detected flag
    SLFixData_t *,        Pointer to trigger updated flag
    const SLArrayIndex_t, Samples per symbol
    SLData_t *,           Pointer to ELG real output
synchronization delay state array
    SLData_t *,           Pointer to ELG imaginary output
synchronization delay state array
    SLArrayIndex_t *,     Pointer to ELG synch. delay index
    const SLArrayIndex_t, ELG output synchronization delay length
    const SLArrayIndex_t, Source array length
    SLData_t *,           Pointer to debug real filter output
    SLData_t *,           Pointer to debug imaginary filter output
    SLData_t *)           Pointer to debug ELG trigger output

```

DESCRIPTION

This function implements the Costas loop QAM demodulator on an array of input samples. It will output an arbitrary number of IQ samples depending on how many are

decoded in the data stream. The return value is the number of decoded IQ constellation points in the output array.

NOTES ON USE

For further information on the Costas loop QAM demodulator functions please refer to the `SIF_CostasQamDemodulate` documentation.

This function also saves the real and imaginary (I and Q) output samples from the Costas loop low-pass filters along with the early-late gate trigger so that this information can be used to analyze the performance of the demodulator.

CROSS REFERENCE

`SIF_CostasQamDemodulate`, `SDS_CostasQamDemodulate`,
`SDS_CostasQamDemodulateDebug`, `SDA_CostasQamDemodulate`.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

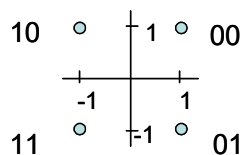
void SIF_QpskModulate (SLData_t *,	Carrier table pointer
const SLData_t,	Carrier phase increment per sample (radians / 2π)
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Carrier sine table length
SLData_t *,	Carrier phase pointer
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Sample clock pointer
SLComplexRect_s *,	Magnitude pointer
SLData_t *,	RRCF Tx I delay pointer
SLArrayIndex_t *,	RRCF Tx I Filter Index pointer
SLData_t *,	RRCF Tx Q delay pointer
SLArrayIndex_t *,	RRCF Tx Q Filter Index pointer
SLData_t *,	RRCF coefficients pointer
const SLData_t,	RRCF Period
const SLData_t,	RRCF Roll off
const SLArrayIndex_t,	RRCF length
const SLArrayIndex_t)	RRCF enable / disable switch

DESCRIPTION

This function initialises the QPSK modulation function SDA_QpskModulate and also for the optional square root raised cosine filter.

NOTES ON USE

The carrier sinusoid table length must be large enough to provide the required frequency resolution for the application. The sine and cosine carriers are generated from an overlapped 5/4 sine table and generate the 4 points on the constellation diagram with equal real and imaginary magnitudes i.e. they are on the 45° points, as shown in the following diagram:



Note : Uses bit ordering as per ITU-T V.8

It is possible to arbitrarily rotate the constellation diagram by re-generating the 5/4 sine table with a different phase offset, after this function has returned.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_QpskModulate

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_QpskModulate (const SLFixData_t,	Source data di-bit
SLData_t *,	Destination array
const SLData_t *,	Carrier table pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Carrier sine table length
SLData_t *,	Carrier phase pointer
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Sample clock pointer
SLComplexRect_s *,	Magnitude pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Carrier table increment
const SLFixData_t,	Samples per symbol
SLData_t *,	RRCF Tx I delay pointer
SLArrayIndex_t *,	RRCF Tx I Filter Index pointer
SLData_t *,	RRCF Tx Q delay pointer
SLArrayIndex_t *,	RRCF Tx Q Filter Index pointer
SLData_t *,	RRCF coefficients pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t,	RRCF length
const SLArrayIndex_t)	RRCF enable / disable switch

DESCRIPTION

This function QPSK modulates one symbol of the carrier with a di-bit of source data.

NOTES ON USE

The Destination array length must be a modulo of the number of samples per symbol.

SIF_QpskModulate must be called prior to using this function.

The SigLib QPSK functions use a simple mapping of the input nibble to the transmitted constellation point. This mapping allows a flexible re-mapping of the points for the required application. For details on differentially encoding the data, see the SDA_QpskDifferentialEncode function.

This function processes the data word, least significant bit first.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_QpskModulate, SDA_QpskDemodulate, SDA_QpskDemodulateDebug

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION


void SIF_QpskDemodulate (SLData_t *,	Carrier table pointer
const SLData_t,	Carrier phase increment per sample (radians / 2π)
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Carrier sine table length
SLData_t *,	Carrier phase pointer
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Sample clock pointer
SLComplexRect_s *,	Magnitude pointer
SLData_t *,	RRCF Rx I delay pointer
SLArrayIndex_t *,	RRCF Rx I Filter Index pointer
SLData_t *,	RRCF Rx Q delay pointer
SLArrayIndex_t *,	RRCF Rx Q Filter Index pointer
SLData_t *,	RRCF coefficients pointer
const SLData_t,	RRCF Period
const SLData_t,	RRCF Roll off
const SLArrayIndex_t,	RRCF length
const SLArrayIndex_t)	RRCF enable / disable switch

DESCRIPTION

This function initialises the QPSK demodulation function SDA_QpskDemodulate.

The function provides for the initialisation of an optional square root raised cosine filter.

NOTES ON USE

 This function is provided for compatibility reasons. The preferred method for demodulating BPSK/QPSK/QAM signals is to use the CostasQamDemodulate functions.

The carrier sinusoid table length must be large enough to provide the required frequency resolution for the application. The sine and cosine carriers are generated from an overlapped 5/4 sine table and generate the 4 points on the constellation diagram with equal real and imaginary magnitudes i.e. they are on the 45° points. It is possible to arbitrarily rotate the constellation diagram by re-generating the 5/4 sine table with a different phase offset, after this function has returned.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_QpskModulate, SDA_QpskDemodulate, SDA_QpskDemodulateDebug

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```


SLFixData_t SDA_QpskDemodulate (const SLData_t *,    Source array
                                const SLData_t *,      Carrier table pointer
                                const SLArrayIndex_t,  Carrier sine table length
                                SLData_t *,            Carrier phase pointer
                                SLArrayIndex_t *,       Sample clock pointer
                                SLComplexRect_s *,      Magnitude pointer
                                const SLArrayIndex_t,   Carrier table increment
                                const SLFixData_t,      Samples per symbol
                                SLData_t *,            RRCF Rx I delay pointer
                                SLArrayIndex_t *,       RRCF Rx I Filter Index pointer
                                SLData_t *,            RRCF Rx Q delay pointer
                                SLArrayIndex_t *,       RRCF Rx Q Filter Index pointer
                                SLData_t *,            RRCF coefficients pointer
                                const SLArrayIndex_t,   RRCF length
                                const SLArrayIndex_t)   RRCF enable / disable switch

```

DESCRIPTION

This function QPSK demodulates the data stream and returns the demodulated di-bit.

NOTES ON USE

 This function is provided for compatibility reasons. The preferred method for demodulating BPSK/QPSK/QAM signals is to use the CostasQamDemodulate functions.

SIF_QpskDemodulate must be called prior to using this function.

The Source array length must be a modulo of the number of samples per symbol.

The SigLib QPSK functions use a simple mapping of the input nibble to the transmitted constellation point. This mapping allows a flexible re-mapping of the points for the required application. For details on differentially decoding the data, see the SDA_QpskDifferentialDecode function.

This function processes the data word, least significant bit first.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_QpskDemodulate, SDA_QpskModulate, SDA_QpskDemodulateDebug


PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLFixData_t SDA_QpskDemodulateDebug (const SLData_t *,	Source pointer
const SLData_t *,	Carrier table pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Carrier sine table length
SLData_t *,	Carrier phase pointer
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Sample clock pointer
SLComplexRect_s *,	Magnitude pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Carrier table increment
const SLFixData_t,	Samples per symbol
SLData_t *,	RRCF Rx I delay pointer
SLArrayIndex_t *,	RRCF Rx I Filter Index pointer
SLData_t *,	RRCF Rx Q delay pointer
SLArrayIndex_t *,	RRCF Rx Q Filter Index pointer
SLData_t *,	RRCF Coeffs pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t,	RRCF length
const SLArrayIndex_t,	RRCF enable / disable switch
SLData_t *,	Eye samples pointer
SLComplexRect_s *)	Constellation points pointer

DESCRIPTION

This function QPSK demodulates the data stream and returns the demodulated di-bit, whilst also providing additional debug information - an eye diagram and a constellation diagram.

NOTES ON USE

 This function is provided for compatibility reasons. The preferred method for demodulating BPSK/QPSK/QAM signals is to use the CostasQamDemodulate functions.

SIF_QpskDemodulate must be called prior to using this function.

The Source array length and the eye samples Destination array length must be a modulo of the number of samples per symbol. The constellation point returns a single point per symbol.

The SigLib QPSK functions use a simple mapping of the input nibble to the transmitted constellation point. This mapping allows a flexible re-mapping of the points for the required application. For details on differentially decoding the data, see the SDA_QpskDifferentialDecode function.

This function processes the data word, least significant bit first.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_QpskDemodulate, SDA_QpskModulate, SDA_QpskDemodulateDebug

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLFixData_t SDA_QpskDifferentialEncode (const SLPixData_t, Transmit di-bit
SLFixData_t *) Previous transmit quadrant pointer

DESCRIPTION

This function differentially encodes the input di-bit for the QPSK modulation function and returns the encoded di-bit.

NOTES ON USE

Differential encoding is used to overcome phase errors in the receiver i.e. "false lock".

The SigLib QPSK functions use a simple mapping of the input di-bit to the transmitted constellation point. This mapping allows a flexible re-mapping of the points for the required application.

This function processes the data word, least significant bit first.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_QpskModulate, SDA_QpskDemodulate, SDA_QpskDemodulateDebug,
SDA_QpskDifferentialDecode

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLFixData_t SDA_QpskDifferentialDecode (const SLPixData_t, Mapped receive
di-bit
SLFixData_t *) Previous receive di-bit pointer

DESCRIPTION

This function differentially decodes the input di-bit (returned from the QPSK demodulation function) and returns the decoded di-bit.

NOTES ON USE

Differential encoding is used to overcome phase errors in the receiver i.e. "false lock".

The SigLib QPSK functions use a simple mapping of the input di-bit to the transmitted constellation point. This mapping allows a flexible re-mapping of the points for the required application.

This function processes the data word, least significant bit first.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_QpskModulate, SDA_QpskDemodulate, SDA_QpskDemodulateDebug,
SDA_QpskDifferentialEncode

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SIF_FskModulate (SLData_t *,	Carrier sinusoid table
const SLData_t,	Carrier phase increment per sample
	(radians / 2π)
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Sine table length

DESCRIPTION

This function initialises the FSK modulation and demodulation functions SDA_FskModulate and SDA_FskDemodulate. This function also initialises the continuous phase FSK modulation and function SDA_CpfskModulate.

NOTES ON USE

The carrier sinusoid table length must be large enough to provide the required frequency resolution for the application.

This function processes the data word, LSB first.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_FskModulateByte, SDA_FskDemodulateByte,
SDA_CpfskModulateByte, SDA_FskModulate, SDA_FskDemodulate,
SDA_CpfskModulate

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_FskModulateByte (SLFixData_t, Source data byte
    SLData_t *,           Destination data pointer
    const SLData_t *,     Carrier sinusoid table
    SLData_t *,           Level '1' carrier phase
    SLData_t *,           Level '0' carrier phase
    const SLData_t,       Level '1' carrier phase increment
    const SLData_t,       Level '0' carrier phase increment
    const SLFixData_t,    Samples per symbol
    const SLArrayIndex_t) Sine table length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function FSK modulates one signal with a data stream, specified in the source byte. The function modulates a '1' bit or a '0' bit to the specified frequency.

NOTES ON USE

The Destination array length must be equal to or greater than the number of samples per symbol x the number of bits in the binary input word. This function modulates a single cosine wave.

SIF_FskModulate must be called prior to using this function.

The phase parameters must be initialised to SIGLIB_ZERO in the calling function.

This function processes the data word, LSB first.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_FskModulate, SDA_FskDemodulateByte, SDA_CpfskModulateByte,
SDA_FskModulate, SDA_FskDemodulate, SDA_CpfskModulate


PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLFixData_t SDA_FskDemodulateByte (const SLData_t *, Source data pointer
    const SLData_t *,           Level '1' filter pointer
    const SLData_t *,           Level '0' filter pointer
    const SLArrayIndex_t,       Filter length
    const SLFixData_t)          Samples per symbol
```

DESCRIPTION

This function demodulates an FSK or a continuous phase FSK data stream and returns the demodulated byte.

NOTES ON USE

 This function is provided for compatibility reasons. The preferred method for demodulating BPSK/QPSK/QAM signals is to use the CostasQamDemodulate functions.

The filters are band pass filters centred on the frequencies of the two carrier signals. These can be generated by using the function SIF_FirBandPassFilter. SIF_FirBandPassFilter generates a linear phase filter so the delay through the filter is equal to the middle sample in the coefficient array. So if the filter is 27 coefficients long then the middle sample is number 14 – C index 13. This should be used to align the input data with the output demodulated symbol – a phase offset to the input data may have to be used to correctly align the output symbols.

This function processes the data word, LSB first.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_FskModulate, SDA_FskModulateByte, SDA_CpfskModulateByte,
SDA_FskModulate, SDA_FskDemodulate, SDA_CpfskModulate

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_CpfskModulateByte (SLFixData_t,	Source data byte
SLData_t *,	Destination data pointer
const SLData_t *,	Carrier sinusoid table
SLData_t *,	Carrier phase
const SLData_t,	Level '1' carrier phase increment
const SLData_t,	Level '0' carrier phase increment
const SLFixData_t,	Samples per symbol
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Sine table length

DESCRIPTION

This function FSK modulates one signal with a data stream, specified in the source byte and maintains the phase across the symbol boundaries. The function modulates a '1' bit or a '0' bit to the specified frequency.

NOTES ON USE

The Destination array length must be equal to or greater than the number of samples per symbol x the number of bits in the binary input word. This function modulates a single cosine wave.

SIF_FskModulate must be called prior to using this function.

The phase parameter must be initialised to SIGLIB_ZERO in the calling function.

This function processes the data word, LSB first.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_FskModulate, SDA_FskModulateByte, SDA_FskDemodulateByte,
SDA_FskModulate, SDA_FskDemodulate, SDA_CpfskModulate

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_FskModulate (SLFixData_t,	Source data bit
SLData_t *,	Destination data pointer
const SLData_t *,	Carrier sinusoid table
SLData_t *,	Level '1' carrier phase
SLData_t *,	Level '0' carrier phase
const SLData_t,	Level '1' carrier phase increment
const SLData_t,	Level '0' carrier phase increment
const SLFixData_t,	Samples per symbol
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Sine table length

DESCRIPTION

This function FSK modulates one signal with a data bit, specified in the source bit. The function modulates a '1' bit or a '0' bit to the specified frequency.

NOTES ON USE

The Destination array length must be equal to or greater than the number of samples per symbol. This function modulates a single cosine wave.

SIF_FskModulate must be called prior to using this function.

The phase parameters must be initialised to SIGLIB_ZERO in the calling function.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_FskModulate, SDA_FskModulateByte, SDA_FskDemodulateByte,
SDA_CpfskModulateByte, SDA_FskDemodulate, SDA_CpfskModulate

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLFixData_t SDA_FskDemodulate (const SLData_t *,      Source data pointer
                               const SLData_t *,      Level '1' filter pointer
                               const SLData_t *,      Level '0' filter pointer
                               const SLArrayIndex_t,   Filter length
                               const SLFixData_t)      Samples per symbol
```

DESCRIPTION

This function demodulates an FSK or a continuous phase FSK data stream and returns the demodulated bit.

NOTES ON USE



This function is provided for compatibility reasons. The preferred method for demodulating BPSK/QPSK/QAM signals is to use the CostasQamDemodulate functions.

The filters are band pass filters centred on the frequencies of the two carrier signals. These can be generated by using the function SIF_FirBandPassFilter. SIF_FirBandPassFilter generates a linear phase filter so the delay through the filter is equal to the middle sample in the coefficient array. So if the filter is 27 coefficients long then the middle sample is number 14 – C index 13. This should be used to align the input data with the output demodulated symbol – a phase offset to the input data may have to be used to correctly align the output symbols.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_FskModulate, SDA_FskModulateByte, SDA_FskDemodulateByte,
SDA_CpfskModulateByte, SDA_FskModulate, SDA_CpfskModulate

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_CpfskModulate (SLFixData_t,	Source data bit
SLData_t *,	Destination data pointer
const SLData_t *,	Carrier sinusoid table
SLData_t *,	Carrier phase
const SLData_t,	Level '1' carrier phase increment
const SLData_t,	Level '0' carrier phase increment
const SLFixData_t,	Samples per symbol
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Sine table length

DESCRIPTION

This function FSK modulates one signal with a data bit, specified in the source bit and maintains the phase across the symbol boundaries. The function modulates a '1' bit or a '0' bit to the specified frequency.

NOTES ON USE

The Destination array length must be equal to or greater than the number of samples per symbol. This function modulates a single cosine wave.

SIF_FskModulate must be called prior to using this function.

The phase parameter must be initialised to SIGLIB_ZERO in the calling function.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_FskModulate, SDA_FskModulateByte, SDA_FskDemodulateByte,
SDA_CpfskModulateByte, SDA_FskModulate, SDA_FskDemodulate

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SIF_Qam16Modulate (SLData_t *,	Carrier table pointer
const SLData_t,	Carrier phase increment per sample (radians / 2π)
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Carrier sine table length
SLData_t *,	Carrier phase pointer
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Sample clock pointer
SLComplexRect_s *,	Magnitude pointer
SLData_t *,	RRCF Tx. I delay pointer
SLArrayIndex_t *,	RRCF Tx. I Filter Index pointer
SLData_t *,	RRCF Tx. Q delay pointer
SLArrayIndex_t *,	RRCF Tx. Q Filter Index pointer
SLData_t *,	RRCF coefficients pointer
const SLData_t,	RRCF Period
const SLData_t,	RRCF Roll off
const SLArrayIndex_t,	RRCF length
const SLArrayIndex_t)	RRCF enable / disable switch

DESCRIPTION

This function initialises the QAM-16 modulation function SDA_Qam16Modulate. The function provides for the initialisation of an optional square root raised cosine filter.

The QAM-16 modulation and demodulation functions use the following bit mapping for the constellation diagram.

0x0	0x1		0x2	0x3
0x4	0x5		0x6	0x7

0x8	0x9		0xa	0xb
0xc	0xd		0xe	0xf

Different QAM-16 variations can be supported by remapping the bit appropriately.

NOTES ON USE

The carrier sinusoid table length must be large enough to provide the required frequency resolution for the application.

The carrier frequency parameter should be normalised to 1.0 Hz, as with most SigLib functions.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Qam16Modulate

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_Qam16Modulate (const SLFixData_t,   Source data nibble
    SLData_t *,                               Destination array
    const SLData_t *,                         Carrier table pointer
    const SLArrayIndex_t,                   Carrier sine table length
    SLData_t *,                               Carrier phase pointer
    SLArrayIndex_t *,                       Sample clock pointer
    SLComplexRect_s *,                      Magnitude pointer
    const SLArrayIndex_t,                   Carrier table increment
    const SLFixData_t,                      Samples per symbol
    SLData_t *,                              RRCF Tx I delay pointer
    SLArrayIndex_t *,                       RRCF Tx I Filter Index pointer
    SLData_t *,                              RRCF Tx Q delay pointer
    SLArrayIndex_t *,                       RRCF Tx Q Filter Index pointer
    SLData_t *,                              RRCF coefficients pointer
    const SLArrayIndex_t,                   RRCF length
    const SLArrayIndex_t)                   RRCF enable / disable switch
```

DESCRIPTION

This function QAM-16 modulates one symbol of the carrier with a nibble of source data.

NOTES ON USE

The Destination array length must be a modulo of the number of samples per symbol.

SIF_Qam16Modulate must be called prior to using this function.

The SigLib QAM-16 functions use a simple mapping of the input nibble to the transmitted constellation point. This mapping allows a flexible re-mapping of the points for the required application. For details on differentially encoding the data, see the SDA_Qam16DifferentialEncode function.

This function processes the data word, least significant bit first.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_Qam16Modulate, SDA_Qam16Demodulate,
SDA_Qam16DemodulateDebug

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```

void SIF_Qam16Demodulate (SLData_t *, Carrier table pointer
    const SLData_t, Carrier phase increment per sample
                        (radians /  $2\pi$ )
    const SLArrayIndex_t, Carrier sine table length
    SLData_t *, Carrier phase pointer
    SLArrayIndex_t *, Sample clock pointer
    SLComplexRect_s *, Magnitude pointer
    SLData_t *, RRCF Rx I delay pointer
    SLArrayIndex_t *, RRCF Rx I Filter Index pointer
    SLData_t *, RRCF Rx Q delay pointer
    SLArrayIndex_t *, RRCF Rx Q Filter Index pointer
    SLData_t *, RRCF coefficients pointer
    const SLData_t, RRCF Period
    const SLData_t, RRCF Roll off
    const SLArrayIndex_t, RRCF length
    const SLArrayIndex_t) RRCF enable / disable switch

```

DESCRIPTION

This function initialises the QAM-16 demodulation function SDA_Qam16Demodulate. The function provides for the initialisation of an optional square root raised cosine filter.


The QAM-16 modulation and demodulation functions use the following bit mapping for the constellation diagram.

0x0	0x1		0x2	0x3
0x4	0x5		0x6	0x7

0x8	0x9		0xa	0xb
0xc	0xd		0xe	0xf

Different QAM-16 variations can be supported by remapping the bit appropriately.

NOTES ON USE

 This function is provided for compatibility reasons. The preferred method for demodulating BPSK/QPSK/QAM signals is to use the CostasQamDemodulate functions.

The carrier sinusoid table length must be large enough to provide the required frequency resolution for the application.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Qam16Modulate, SDA_Qam16Demodulate,
SDA_Qam16DemodulateDebug


PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLFixData_t SDA_Qam16Demodulate (const SLData_t *, Source array
    const SLData_t *,           Carrier table pointer
    const SLArrayIndex_t,       Carrier sine table length
    SLData_t *,                 Carrier phase pointer
    SLArrayIndex_t *,           Sample clock pointer
    SLComplexRect_s *,          Magnitude pointer
    const SLArrayIndex_t,       Carrier table increment
    const SLPixData_t,          Samples per symbol
    SLData_t *,                 RRCF Rx I delay pointer
    SLArrayIndex_t *,           RRCF Rx I Filter Index pointer
    SLData_t *,                 RRCF Rx Q delay pointer
    SLArrayIndex_t *,           RRCF Rx Q Filter Index pointer
    SLData_t *,                 RRCF coefficients pointer
    const SLArrayIndex_t,       RRCF length
    const SLArrayIndex_t)       RRCF enable / disable switch
```

DESCRIPTION

This function QAM-16 demodulates the data stream and returns the demodulated nibble.

NOTES ON USE

 This function is provided for compatibility reasons. The preferred method for demodulating BPSK/QPSK/QAM signals is to use the CostasQamDemodulate functions.

SIF_Qam16Demodulate must be called prior to using this function.

The Source array length must be a modulo of the number of samples per symbol.

The SigLib QAM-16 functions use a simple mapping of the input nibble to the transmitted constellation point. This mapping allows a flexible re-mapping of the points for the required application. For details on differentially decoding the data, see the SDA_Qam16DifferentialDecode function.

This function processes the data word, least significant bit first.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_Qam16Demodulate, SDA_Qam16Modulate,
SDA_Qam16DemodulateDebug


PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLFixData_t SDA_Qam16DemodulateDebug (const SLData_t *,	Source pointer
const SLData_t *,	Carrier table pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Carrier sine table length
SLData_t *,	Carrier phase pointer
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Sample clock pointer
SLComplexRect_s *,	Magnitude pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Carrier table increment
const SLFixData_t,	Samples per symbol
SLData_t *,	RRCF Rx I delay pointer
SLArrayIndex_t *,	RRCF Rx I Filter Index pointer
SLData_t *,	RRCF Rx Q delay pointer
SLArrayIndex_t *,	RRCF Rx Q Filter Index pointer
SLData_t *,	RRCF Coeffs pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t,	RRCF length
const SLArrayIndex_t,	RRCF enable / disable switch
SLData_t *,	Eye samples pointer
SLComplexRect_s *)	Constellation points pointer

DESCRIPTION

This function QAM-16 demodulates the data stream and returns the demodulated nibble, whilst also providing additional debug information - an eye diagram and a constellation diagram.

NOTES ON USE

 This function is provided for compatibility reasons. The preferred method for demodulating BPSK/QPSK/QAM signals is to use the CostasQamDemodulate functions.

SIF_Qam16Demodulate must be called prior to using this function.

The Source array length and the eye samples array length must be a modulo of the number of samples per symbol. The constellation point returns a single point per symbol.

The SigLib QAM-16 functions use a simple mapping of the input nibble to the transmitted constellation point. This mapping allows a flexible re-mapping of the points for the required application. For details on differentially decoding the data, see the SDA_Qam16DifferentialDecode function.

This function processes the data word, least significant bit first.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_Qam16Demodulate, SDA_Qam16Modulate, SDA_Qam16DemodulateDebug

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLFixData_t SDA_Qam16DifferentialEncode (const SLPixData_t, Tx nibble
SLFixData_t *) Previous Tx nibble pointer

DESCRIPTION

This function differentially encodes the input nibble for the QAM-16 modulation function and returns the encoded nibble.

NOTES ON USE

Differential encoding is used to overcome phase errors in the receiver i.e. "false lock".

The SigLib QAM-16 functions use a simple mapping of the input nibble to the transmitted constellation point. This mapping allows a flexible re-mapping of the points for the required application.

This function processes the data word, least significant bit first.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Qam16Modulate, SDA_Qam16Demodulate,
SDA_Qam16DemodulateDebug, SDA_Qam16DifferentialDecode

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLFixData_t SDA_Qam16DifferentialDecode (const SLPixData_t, Rx nibble	Mapped
SLFixData_t *)	Previous Rx nibble pointer

DESCRIPTION

This function differentially decodes the input nibble (returned from the QAM-16 demodulation function) and returns the decoded nibble.

NOTES ON USE

Differential encoding is used to overcome phase errors in the receiver i.e. "false lock".

The SigLib QAM-16 functions use a simple mapping of the input nibble to the transmitted constellation point. This mapping allows a flexible re-mapping of the points for the required application.

This function processes the data word, least significant bit first.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Qam16Modulate, SDA_Qam16Demodulate,
SDA_Qam16DemodulateDebug, SDA_Qam16DifferentialEncode

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SIF_BpskModulate (SLData_t *,	Pointer to carrier table
const SLData_t,	Carrier phase increment per sample (radians / 2π)
SLData_t *,	Pointer to the sample count
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Carrier table length

DESCRIPTION

This function initialises the BPSK modulation functions SDA_BpskModulate and SDA_BpskModulateByte.

NOTES ON USE

The carrier sinusoid table length must be large enough to provide the required frequency resolution for the application.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_BpskModulate, SDA_BpskModulateByte, SIF_BpskDemodulate, SDA_BpskDemodulate, SDA_BpskDemodulateDebug.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_BpskModulate (SLFixData_t,	Modulating bit
SLData_t *,	Modulated signal
const SLData_t *,	Carrier table pointer
SLData_t *,	Carrier phase pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Samples per symbol
const SLData_t,	Carrier phase increment pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Sine table size

DESCRIPTION

This function BPSK modulates one signal with a data stream, specified in the source bit. The function modulates a '1' bit or a '0' bit to the required phase.

NOTES ON USE

The Destination array length must be equal to or greater than the number of samples per bit. This function modulates a single cosine wave.

SIF_BpskModulate must be called prior to using this function.

The phase parameters must be initialised to SIGLIB_ZERO in the calling function.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_BpskModulate, SDA_BpskModulateByte, SIF_BpskDemodulate, SDA_BpskDemodulate, SDA_BpskDemodulateDebug.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_BpskModulateByte (SLArrayIndex_t,	Modulating byte
SLData_t *,	Modulated signal
const SLData_t *,	Carrier table pointer
SLData_t *,	Carrier phase pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Samples per symbol
const SLData_t,	Carrier phase increment pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Sine table size

DESCRIPTION

This function BPSK modulates one signal with a data stream, specified in the source byte. The function modulates a '1' bit or a '0' bit to the required phase.

NOTES ON USE

The Destination array length must be equal to or greater than the number of samples per symbol x the number of bits in the binary input word. This function modulates a single cosine wave.

SIF_BpskModulate must be called prior to using this function.

The phase parameters must be initialised to SIGLIB_ZERO in the calling function.

This function processes the data word, LSB first.

CROSS REFERENCE

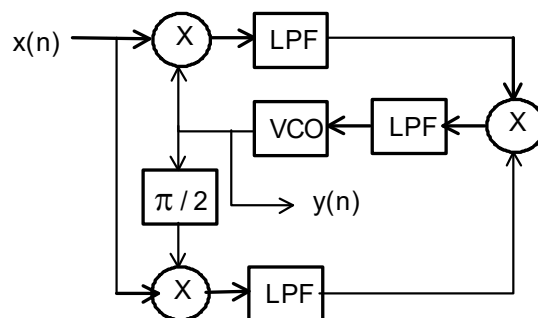
SIF_BpskModulate, SDA_BpskModulate, SIF_BpskDemodulate,
SDA_BpskDemodulate, SDA_BpskDemodulateDebug.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION


void SIF_BpskDemodulate (SLData_t *,	VCO phase
SLData_t ,	VCO Fast sine look up table
const SLArrayIndex_t,	VCO Fast sine look up table size
const SLData_t,	Carrier phase increment per sample
	(radians / 2π)
SLData_t *,	Pointer to loop filter 1 state
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to loop filter 1 index
SLData_t *,	Pointer to loop filter 2 state
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to loop filter 2 index
SLData_t *,	Pointer to loop filter coefficients
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Loop filter length
SLData_t *,	Pointer to loop filter state
SLData_t *,	Pointer to delayed sample
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to Rx sample clock
SLData_t *)	Pointer to sample sum

DESCRIPTION

This function initialises the BPSK demodulation functions SDA_BpskDemodulate and SDA_BpskDemodulateDebug. The BPSK demodulation functions use a Costas loop, the block diagram for the Costas loop is shown in the following diagram:



NOTES ON USE

 This function is provided for compatibility reasons. The preferred method for demodulating BPSK/QPSK/QAM signals is to use the `CostasQamDemodulate` functions.

The loop filters 1 and 2 are both FIR and must be of odd order. The loop filter is a one pole filter, with a single coefficient and state.

One issue that is critical to demodulating a data stream is knowing when an individual symbol starts and stops. The filters within the Costas loop of the demodulator have delays that must be accounted for. This is handled in the receive sample clock parameter. In order to find out what the exact timing of the symbols is it is handy to use the `SDA_BpskDemodulateDebug` function, which saves the output of the real path Costas loop filter.

In order to allocate the Costas loop look up table it is necessary to use the `SUF_CostasLoopArrayAllocate()` to malloc the look-up-table memory, rather than `SUF_VectorArrayAllocate()`.

CROSS REFERENCE

`SIF_BpskModulate`, `SDA_BpskModulate`, `SDA_BpskModulateByte`,
`SDA_BpskDemodulate`, `SDA_BpskDemodulateDebug`.


PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLFixData_t SDA_BpskDemodulate (const SLData_t *,	Source data pointer
SLData_t *,	VCO phase
const SLData_t,	VCO modulation index
SLData_t *,	VCO Fast sine look up table
const SLArrayIndex_t,	VCO Fast sine look up table size
const SLData_t,	Carrier frequency
SLData_t *,	Pointer to loop filter 1 state
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to loop filter 1 index
SLData_t *,	Pointer to loop filter 2 state
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to loop filter 2 index
const SLData_t *,	Pointer to loop filter coefficients
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Loop filter length
SLData_t *,	Pointer to loop filter state
const SLData_t,	Loop filter coefficient
SLData_t *,	Pointer to delayed sample
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Sample size
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to Rx sample clock
SLData_t *)	Pointer to sample sum

DESCRIPTION

This function BPSK demodulates one symbol of the source signal and returns the demodulated bit.

NOTES ON USE

 This function is provided for compatibility reasons. The preferred method for demodulating BPSK/QPSK/QAM signals is to use the CostasQamDemodulate functions.

SIF_BpskDemodulate must be called prior to using this function.

This function uses the Costas loop function. For further details, please read the SIF_CostasLoop, SDS_CostasLoop and SDA_CostasLoop function documentation.

In order to allocate the Costas loop look up table it is necessary to use the SUF_CostasLoopArrayAllocate() to malloc the look-up-table memory, rather than SUF_VectorArrayAllocate().

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_BpskModulate, SDA_BpskModulateByte, SIF_BpskDemodulate, SDA_BpskDemodulateDebug.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLFixData_t SDA_BpskDemodulateDebug (const SLData_t *,	Source data pointer
SLData_t *,	VCO phase
const SLData_t,	VCO modulation index
SLData_t *,	VCO Fast sine look up table
const SLArrayIndex_t,	VCO Fast sine look up table size
const SLData_t,	Carrier frequency
SLData_t *,	Pointer to loop filter 1 state
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to loop filter 1 index
SLData_t *,	Pointer to loop filter 2 state
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to loop filter 2 index
const SLData_t *,	Pointer to loop filter coefficients
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Loop filter length
SLData_t *,	Pointer to loop filter state
const SLData_t,	Loop filter coefficient
SLData_t *,	Pointer to delayed sample
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Sample size
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to Rx sample clock
SLData_t *,	Pointer to sample sum
SLData_t *)	Pointer to Costas loop filter output

DESCRIPTION

This function BPSK demodulates one symbol of the source signal and returns the demodulated bit. It also provides the output of the real path loop filter output, which can be used to extract the symbol timing, which is used in the sample counter to decide when the individual symbols start and stop.

NOTES ON USE



This function is provided for compatibility reasons. The preferred method for demodulating BPSK/QPSK/QAM signals is to use the CostasQamDemodulate functions.

SIF_BpskDemodulate must be called prior to using this function.

This function uses the Costas loop. For further details, please read the SIF_CostasLoop, SDS_CostasLoop and SDA_CostasLoop function documentation.

In order to allocate the Costas loop look up table it is necessary to use the SUF_CostasLoopArrayAllocate() to malloc the look-up-table memory, rather than SUF_VectorArrayAllocate().

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_BpskModulate, SDA_BpskModulateByte, SIF_BpskDemodulate, SDA_BpskDemodulate.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SIF_DpskModulate (SLData_t *,	Pointer to carrier table
const SLData_t,	Carrier phase increment per sample (radians / 2π)
SLData_t *,	Pointer to the sample count
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Sine carrier table length
SLData_t *)	Pointer to modulation phase value

DESCRIPTION

This function initialises the DPSK modulation functions SDA_DpskModulate and SDA_DpskModulateByte.

DPSK uses the following phase changes for '0' or '1' bits:

- 0 - Phase change 180 degrees
- 1 - Phase change 0 degrees

NOTES ON USE

The carrier sinusoid table length must be large enough to provide the required frequency resolution for the application.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_DpskModulate, SDA_DpskModulateByte, SIF_DpskDemodulate, SDA_DpskDemodulate, SDA_DpskDemodulateDebug.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_DpskModulate (SLFixData_t,	Modulating bit
SLData_t *,	Modulated signal
const SLData_t *,	Carrier table pointer
SLData_t *,	Carrier phase pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Samples per symbol
const SLData_t,	Carrier phase increment pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Sine carrier table length
SLData_t *)	Pointer to modulation phase value

DESCRIPTION

This function DPSK modulates one signal with a data stream, specified in the source bit. The function modulates a '1' bit or a '0' bit to the required phase.

NOTES ON USE

The Destination array length must be equal to or greater than the number of samples per bit. This function modulates a single cosine wave.

SIF_DpskModulate must be called prior to using this function.

The phase parameters must be initialised to SIGLIB_ZERO in the calling function.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_DpskModulate, SDA_DpskModulateByte, SIF_DpskDemodulate,
SDA_DpskDemodulate, SDA_DpskDemodulateDebug.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_DpskModulateByte (SLFixData_t,	Modulating byte
SLData_t *,	Modulated signal
const SLData_t *,	Carrier table pointer
SLData_t *,	Carrier phase pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Samples per symbol
const SLData_t,	Carrier phase increment pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Sine carrier table length
SLData_t *)	Pointer to modulation phase value

DESCRIPTION

This function DPSK modulates one signal with a data stream, specified in the source byte. The function modulates a '1' bit or a '0' bit to the required phase.

NOTES ON USE

The Destination array length must be equal to or greater than the number of samples per symbol x the number of bits in the binary input word. This function modulates a single cosine wave.

SIF_DpskModulate must be called prior to using this function.

The phase parameters must be initialised to SIGLIB_ZERO in the calling function.

This function processes the data word, LSB first.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_DpskModulate, SDA_DpskModulate, SIF_DpskDemodulate,
SDA_DpskDemodulate, SDA_DpskDemodulateDebug.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SIF_DpskDemodulate (SLData_t *,	VCO phase
SLData_t ,	VCO Fast sine look up table
const SLArrayIndex_t,	VCO Fast sine look up table size
const SLData_t,	Carrier phase increment per sample
	(radians / 2π)
SLData_t *,	Pointer to loop filter 1 state
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to loop filter 1 index
SLData_t *,	Pointer to loop filter 2 state
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to loop filter 2 index
SLData_t *,	Pointer to loop filter coefficients
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Loop filter length
SLData_t *,	Pointer to loop filter state
SLData_t *,	Pointer to delayed sample
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to Rx sample clock
SLData_t *)	Pointer to sample sum

DESCRIPTION

This function initialises the function SDA_DpskDemodulate. DPSK modulates the phase by 180 degrees for a binary '0' or 0 degrees for a binary '1'.

NOTES ON USE



This function is provided for compatibility reasons. The preferred method for demodulating BPSK/QPSK/QAM signals is to use the CostasQamDemodulate functions.

The loop filters 1 and 2 are both FIR and must be of odd order. The loop filter is a one pole filter, with a single coefficient and state.

One issue that is critical to demodulating a data stream is knowing when an individual symbol starts and stops. The filters within the Costas loop of the demodulator have delays that must be accounted for. This is handled in the receive sample clock parameter. In order to find out what the exact timing of the symbols is it is handy to use the SDA_DpskDemodulateDebug function, which saves the output of the real path Costas loop filter.

In order to allocate the Costas loop look up table it is necessary to use the SUF_CostasLoopArrayAllocate() to malloc the look-up-table memory, rather than SUF_VectorArrayAllocate().

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_DpskModulate, SDA_DpskModulate, SDA_DpskModulateByte, SDA_DpskDemodulate, SDA_DpskDemodulateDebug.


PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLFixData_t SDA_DpskDemodulate (const SLData_t *,	Source data pointer
SLData_t *,	VCO phase
const SLData_t,	VCO modulation index
SLData_t *,	VCO Fast sine look up table
const SLArrayIndex_t,	VCO Fast sine look up table size
const SLData_t,	Carrier frequency
SLData_t *,	Pointer to loop filter 1 state
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to loop filter 1 index
SLData_t *,	Pointer to loop filter 2 state
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to loop filter 2 index
const SLData_t *,	Pointer to loop filter coefficients
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Loop filter length
SLData_t *,	Pointer to loop filter state
const SLData_t,	Loop filter coefficient
SLData_t *,	Pointer to delayed sample
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Sample size
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to receive sample clock
SLData_t *)	Pointer to sample sum

DESCRIPTION

This function DPSK demodulates one symbol of the source signal and returns the demodulated bit.

NOTES ON USE

 This function is provided for compatibility reasons. The preferred method for demodulating BPSK/QPSK/QAM signals is to use the CostasQamDemodulate functions.

SIF_DpskDemodulate must be called prior to using this function.

This function uses the Costas loop function. For further details, please read the SIF_CostasLoop, SDS_CostasLoop and SDA_CostasLoop function documentation.

In order to allocate the Costas loop look up table it is necessary to use the SUF_CostasLoopArrayAllocate() to malloc the look-up-table memory, rather than SUF_VectorArrayAllocate().

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_DpskModulate, SDA_DpskModulateByte, SIF_DpskDemodulate, SDA_DpskDemodulate, SDA_DpskDemodulateDebug.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLFixData_t SDA_DpskDemodulateDebug (const SLData_t *,	Source data pointer
SLData_t *,	VCO phase
const SLData_t,	VCO modulation index
SLData_t *,	VCO Fast sine look up table
const SLArrayIndex_t,	VCO Fast sine look up table size
const SLData_t,	Carrier frequency
SLData_t *,	Pointer to loop filter 1 state
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to loop filter 1 index
SLData_t *,	Pointer to loop filter 2 state
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to loop filter 2 index
const SLData_t *,	Pointer to loop filter coefficients
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Loop filter length
SLData_t *,	Pointer to loop filter state
const SLData_t,	Loop filter coefficient
SLData_t *,	Pointer to delayed sample
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Sample size
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to Rx sample clock
SLData_t *,	Previous received sample sum
SLData_t *)	Pointer to filter output data

DESCRIPTION

This function DPSK demodulates one symbol of the source signal and returns the demodulated bit. This function also returns the output of the internal filter for debugging information.

NOTES ON USE



This function is provided for compatibility reasons. The preferred method for demodulating BPSK/QPSK/QAM signals is to use the CostasQamDemodulate functions.

SIF_DpskDemodulate must be called prior to using this function.

This function uses the Costas loop function. For further details, please read the SIF_CostasLoop, SDS_CostasLoop and SDA_CostasLoop function documentation.

In order to allocate the Costas loop look up table it is necessary to use the SUF_CostasLoopArrayAllocate() to malloc the look-up-table memory, rather than SUF_VectorArrayAllocate().

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_DpskModulate, SDA_DpskModulateByte, SIF_DpskDemodulate, SDA_DpskDemodulate, SDA_DpskDemodulateDebug.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SIF_PiByFourDQpskModulate (SLData_t *,   Carrier table pointer
                                const SLData_t,   Carrier phase increment per sample
                                                (radians /  $2\pi$ )
                                const SLArrayIndex_t,   Carrier sine table length
                                SLData_t *,   Carrier phase pointer
                                SLArrayIndex_t *,   Sample clock pointer
                                SLComplexRect_s *,   Magnitude pointer
                                SLData_t *,   RRCF Tx. I delay pointer
                                SLArrayIndex_t *,   RRCF Tx. I Filter Index pointer
                                SLData_t *,   RRCF Tx. Q delay pointer
                                SLArrayIndex_t *,   RRCF Tx. Q Filter Index pointer
                                SLData_t *,   RRCF coefficients pointer
                                const SLData_t,   RRCF Period
                                const SLData_t,   RRCF Roll off
                                const SLArrayIndex_t,   RRCF length
                                const SLArrayIndex_t,   RRCF enable / disable switch
                                SLArrayIndex_t *)   Pointer to previous output symbol for
differential coding
```

DESCRIPTION

This function initialises the $\pi/4$ Differential QPSK modulation function SDA_PiByFourDQpskModulate.

The function provides for the initialisation of an optional square root raised cosine filter.

NOTES ON USE

The carrier sinusoid table length must be large enough to provide the required frequency resolution for the application.

The carrier frequency parameter should be normalised to 1.0 Hz, as with most SigLib functions.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_PiByFourDQpskModulate

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_PiByFourDQpskModulate (const SLFixData_t,	Source data di-bit
SLData_t *,	Destination array
const SLData_t *,	Carrier table pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Carrier sine table length
SLData_t *,	Carrier phase pointer
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Sample clock pointer
SLComplexRect_s *,	Magnitude pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Carrier table increment
const SLFixData_t,	Samples per symbol
SLData_t *,	RRCF Tx I delay pointer
SLArrayIndex_t *,	RRCF Tx I Filter Index pointer
SLData_t *,	RRCF Tx Q delay pointer
SLArrayIndex_t *,	RRCF Tx Q Filter Index pointer
SLData_t *,	RRCF coefficients pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t,	RRCF length
const SLArrayIndex_t,	RRCF enable / disable switch
SLArrayIndex_t *)	Pointer to previous output symbol for
differential coding	

DESCRIPTION

This function $\pi/4$ Differential QPSK modulates one symbol of the carrier with a di-bit of source data.

NOTES ON USE

The Destination array length must be a modulo of the number of samples per symbol.

SIF_PiByFourDQpskModulate must be called prior to using this function.

This function processes the data word, least significant bit first.

CROSS REFERENCE

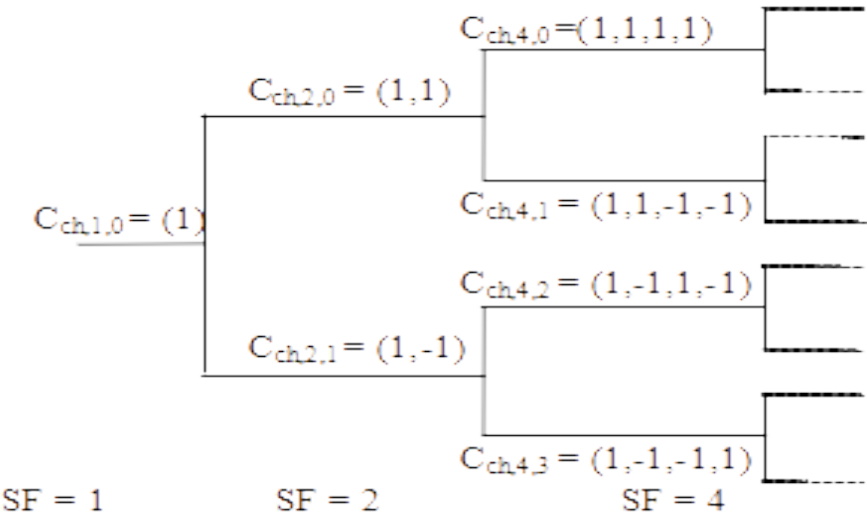
SIF_PiByFourDQpskModulate

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDS_ChannelizationCode (SLData_t *,Channelization code array
                             const SLArrayIndex_t,           Spreading factor
                             const SLArrayIndex_t)           Channelization code index
```

DESCRIPTION

This function generate the 3GPP 25.141 UMTS compliant channelization code for the given spreading factor and code index, as shown in the following diagram:



NOTES ON USE

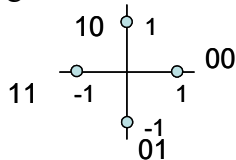
CROSS REFERENCE

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_ComplexQPSKSpread (const SLFixData_t,      Source sample
                             SLComplexRect_s *,      Pointer to destination array
                             const SLData_t *,        In-phase channelization code
                             const SLData_t *,        Quadrature-phase channelization code
                             const SLData_t,          In-phase weighting value
                             const SLData_t,          Quadrature-phase weighting value
                             const SLComplexRect_s *, Complex scrambling code
                             const SLArrayIndex_t)     Spreading factor
```

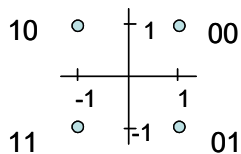
DESCRIPTION

This function performs QPSK channelization, weighting, spreading and scrambling according to 3GPP 25.141 on a single di-bit pair. The input di-bits are mapped to the four complex points: (1, 0), (0, 1), (-1, 0) and (0, -1), as shown in the following diagram:



Note : Uses bit ordering as per ITU-T V.8

With the output dibits arranged on the points: (1, 1), (-1, 1), (-1, -1) and (1, -1), as follows:



Note : Uses bit ordering as per ITU-T V.8

NOTES ON USE

The output from this function are the magnitudes of the I, Q carriers, which must be modulated using a function such as SDA_QpskModulate.

CROSS REFERENCE

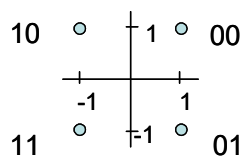
SDA_ComplexQPSKDeSpread, SDA_QpskModulate, SDA_QpskDemodulate.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLFixData_t SDA_ComplexQPSKDeSpread (const SLComplexRect_s *,
                                     Pointer to source array
                                     const SLData_t *,
                                     In-phase channelization code
                                     const SLData_t *,
                                     Quadrature-phase channelization code
                                     const SLData_t,
                                     In-phase weighting value
                                     const SLData_t,
                                     Quadrature-phase weighting value
                                     const SLComplexRect_s *,
                                     Complex scrambling code
                                     SLData_t *,
                                     Demodulator error array
                                     const SLArrayIndex_t)
                                     Spreading factor
```

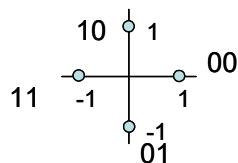
DESCRIPTION

This function performs QPSK de-scrambling, de-spreading de-weighting and de-channelization according to 3GPP 25.141 and generates a single di-bit output pair. The input di-bits are arranged on the four complex points: (1, 1), (-1, 1), (-1, -1) and (1, -1), as shown in the following diagram:



Note : Uses bit ordering as per ITU-T V.8

With the output dibits arranged on the points: (1, 0), (0, 1), (-1, 0) and (0, -1) as per:



Note : Uses bit ordering as per ITU-T V.8

NOTES ON USE

The input to this function are the magnitudes of the I, Q carriers, which must be demodulated at the front end using a function such as SDA_QpskDemodulate.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_ComplexQPSKSpread, SDA_QpskModulate, SDA_QpskDemodulate.

Modem Utility Functions (modem.c)

SUF_AsyncCharacterLength

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLArrayIndex_t SUF_AsyncCharacterLength (  
    const SLArrayIndex_t,      Number of bits in the data word  
    const enum SLParity_t,     Parity type  
    const SLArrayIndex_t)      Number of stop bits
```

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the length of an asynchronous character that is made up of the start, data, parity and stop bits.

NOTES ON USE

The parity types supported are as follows:

```
SIGLIB_NO_PARITY,  
SIGLIB_EVEN_PARITY,  
SIGLIB_ODD_PARITY
```

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_SyncToAsyncConverter, SDA_AsyncToSyncConverter.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLArrayIndex_t SDA_SyncToAsyncConverter (const SLUInt8_t *, Ptr. to src. data
SLUInt8_t *, Pointer to destination data
const SLArrayIndex_t, Number of bits in the data word
const enum SLParity_t, Parity type
const SLArrayIndex_t, Number of stop bits
const SLArrayIndex_t) Source array length

DESCRIPTION

This function converts a synchronous data stream to an asynchronous one via the addition of start, parity and stop bits.

The output is packed into 8 bit bytes, regardless of the number of data bits in the input byte.

NOTES ON USE

The parity types supported are as follows:

SIGLIB_NO_PARITY,
SIGLIB_EVEN_PARITY,
SIGLIB_ODD_PARITY

This function has been tested with:

Parity = Even, Odd and None

Stop bits = 0, 1 and 2

Data bits per asynchronous word = 7, 8, 9, 10 and 11

If the output data sequence does not fill an integer number of output bytes then the unused bits in the final byte are filled with stop bits.

CROSS REFERENCE

SUF_AsyncCharacterLength, SDA_AsyncToSyncConverter.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLArrayIndex_t SDA_AsyncToSyncConverter (const SLUInt8_t *, Ptr. to src. data
SLUInt8_t *, Pointer to destination data
const SLArrayIndex_t, Number of bits in the data word
const enum SLParity_t, Parity type
SLArrayIndex_t *, Pointer to parity error flag
const SLArrayIndex_t) Source array length

DESCRIPTION

This function converts an asynchronous data stream to a asynchronous one via the removal of start, parity and stop bits.

NOTES ON USE

The parity types supported are as follows:

SIGLIB_NO_PARITY,
SIGLIB_EVEN_PARITY,
SIGLIB_ODD_PARITY

This function has been tested with:

Parity = Even, Odd and None

Stop bits = 0, 1 and 2

Data bits per asynchronous word = 7, 8, 9, 10 and 11

This function does not look for a specific number of stop bits because it supports stop bit deletion in the transmitter. This is used for rate matching. The parity error flag will return -1 if no parity errors were detected or the location of the byte, in the frame, if a parity error was detected.

CROSS REFERENCE

SUF_AsyncCharacterLength , SDA_SyncToAsyncConverter.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SIF_AsyncAddRemoveStopBits (SLArrayIndex_t *) Pointer to counter for adding and removing stop bits

DESCRIPTION

This function initialises the functions that are used for adding and removing stop bits from an asynchronous bit stream.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_SyncToAsyncConverter, SDA_AsyncToSyncConverter,
SDA_AsyncRemoveStopBits, SDA_AsyncAddStopBits.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLArrayIndex_t SDA_AsyncRemoveStopBits (const SLUInt8_t *,	Pointer to src. data
SLUInt8_t *,	Pointer to destination data
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Number of bits in the data word
const enum SLParity_t,	Parity type
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Ratio of stop bits removed
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to stop bits removed counter
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Source array length

DESCRIPTION

This function removes a given ratio of stop bits. If the RemoveRatio parameter is set to N then 1:N stop bits are removed. If N = 1 then all stop bits are removed.

A common requirement for asynchronous to synchronous converters in a modem is to add or remove a given ratio of the stop bits to allow for clock rate variations.

Please note: if you remove 1:N stop bits and then add 1:(N-1) you will not return to exactly the same sequence that you started with. This is because the stop bit add and remove functions work on ratios so there is no guarantee that stop bits will be replaced in their original locations only that the final number is the same.

NOTES ON USE

The parity types supported are as follows:

```
SIGLIB_NO_PARITY,  
SIGLIB_EVEN_PARITY,  
SIGLIB_ODD_PARITY
```

This function requires an integer number of characters to be stored in the source array.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_SyncToAsyncConverter, SDA_AsyncToSyncConverter,
SIF_AsyncAddRemoveStopBits, SDA_AsyncAddStopBits.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLArrayIndex_t SDA_AsyncAddStopBits (const SLUInt8_t *,	Pointer to src. data
SLUInt8_t *,	Pointer to destination data
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Number of bits in the data word
const enum SLParity_t,	Parity type
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Ratio of stop bits added
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to stop bits added counter
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Source array length

DESCRIPTION

This function adds a given ratio of stop bits. If the AddRatio parameter is set to N then 1 new stop bit will be added after N stop bits have been received.

If N = 1 then every other output stop bit will be a new one.

A common requirement for asynchronous to synchronous converters in a modem is to add or remove a given ratio of the stop bits to allow for clock rate variations.

Please note: if you remove 1:N stop bits and then add 1:(N-1) you will not return to exactly the same sequence that you started with. This is because the stop bit add and remove functions work on ratios so there is no guarantee that stop bits will be replaced in their original locations only that the final number is the same.

NOTES ON USE

The parity types supported are as follows:

```
SIGLIB_NO_PARITY,  
SIGLIB_EVEN_PARITY,  
SIGLIB_ODD_PARITY
```

This function requires an integer number of characters to be stored in the source array.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_SyncToAsyncConverter, SDA_AsyncToSyncConverter,
SIF_AsyncAddRemoveStopBits, SDA_AsyncRemoveStopBits.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLArrayIndex_t SDA_DecreaseWordLength (const SLUInt8_t *, Pointer to src. data
SLUInt8_t *, Pointer to destination data
const SLArrayIndex_t, Input word length
const SLArrayIndex_t, Output word length
const SLArrayIndex_t) Source array length

DESCRIPTION

This function decreases the length of the binary words in the input stream.

Only the desired N bits in the output word length are significant the remainder are set to 0.

In modem applications it is commonly necessary to transmit symbols with different numbers of bits. For example 16QAM uses 4 bits per symbol. The function SDA_DecreaseWordLength will take an input sequence with a given word length and reduce it to a sequence with a shorter word length while still retaining the same total number of bits in the overall sequence.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_IncreaseWordLength.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLArrayIndex_t SDA_IncreaseWordLength (const SLUInt8_t *, Pointer to src. data
 SLUInt8_t *, Pointer to destination data
 const SLArrayIndex_t, Input word length
 const SLArrayIndex_t, Output word length
 const SLArrayIndex_t) Source array length

DESCRIPTION

This function increases the length of the binary words in the input stream.

Only the desired N bits in the output word length are significant the remainder are set to 0.

In modem applications it is commonly necessary to transmit symbols with different numbers of bits. For example 16QAM uses 4 bits per symbol. The function SDA_DecreaseWordLength will take an input sequence with a given word length and reduce it to a sequence with a shorter word length while still retaining the same total number of bits in the overall sequence.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_DecreaseWordLength.

PRBS (prbs.c)

SDS_Scrambler1417

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLFixData_t SDS_Scrambler1417 (const SLFixData_t,	Source byte
SLUInt32_t *)	Shift register

DESCRIPTION

This function executes a self synchronising Pseudo Random Binary Sequence (PRBS) Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC) scrambler having the generating polynomial: $1 + x^{14} + x^{17}$.

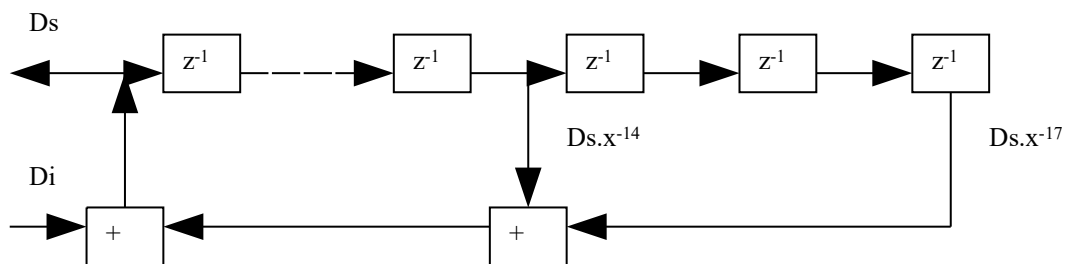
$$D_s = D_i + D_{s.x^{-14}} + D_{s.x^{-17}}$$

D_s is the data sequence at the output of the scrambler

D_i is the data sequence applied to the scrambler

+ denotes modulo 2 addition

. denotes binary multiplication.



NOTES ON USE

The input data is handled least significant bit first. The scrambled byte is returned from the function.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS Descrambler1417.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLFixData_t SDS_Descrambler1417 (const SLFixData_t, Source byte
SLUInt32_t *) Shift register

DESCRIPTION

This function executes a self synchronising Pseudo Random Binary Sequence (PRBS) Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC) de-scrambler having the generating polynomial: $1 + x^{-14} + x^{-17}$.

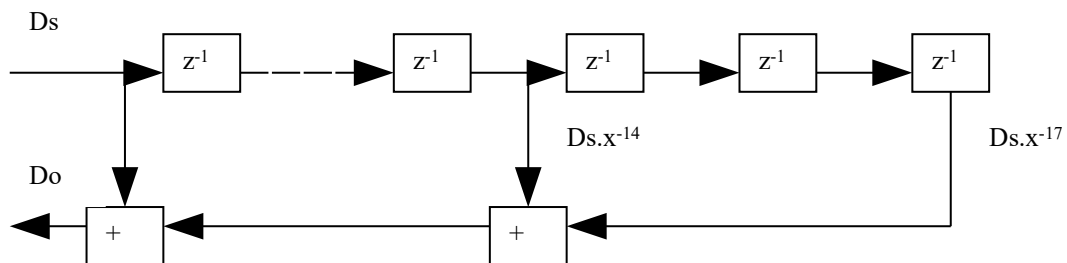
$$Do = Ds (1 + x^{-14} + x^{-17})$$

Ds is the data sequence at the output of the scrambler

Do is the data sequence applied to the scrambler

+ denotes modulo 2 addition

. denotes binary multiplication.



NOTES ON USE

The input data is handled least significant bit first. The de-scrambled byte is returned from the function

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS_Scrambler1417.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLFixData_t SDS_Scrambler1417WithInversion (const SLFixData_t,	Source byte
SLUInt32_t *,	Shift register
SLFixData_t *,	Ones bit count pointer
SLFixData_t *)	Bit inversion flag pointer

DESCRIPTION

This function executes a self synchronising Pseudo Random Binary Sequence (PRBS) Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC) scrambler having the generating polynomial: $1 + x^{14} + x^{17}$.

$$D_s = D_i + D_s \cdot x^{-14} + D_s \cdot x^{-17}$$

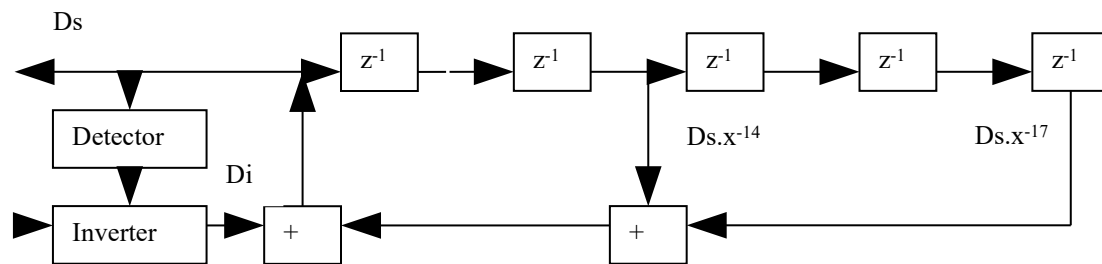
D_s is the data sequence at the output of the scrambler

D_i is the data sequence applied to the scrambler

$+$ denotes modulo 2 addition

\cdot denotes binary multiplication.

This function detects a sequence of 64 consecutive ones at the output of the scrambler (D_s) and, if detected, inverts the next input to the scrambler (D_i). The counter is reset to zero.



NOTES ON USE

The input data is handled least significant bit first. The scrambled byte is returned from the function.

The ones bit count and bit inversion flag parameters should be initialised to zero.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS_Descrambler1417WithInversion.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLFixData_t SDS_Descrambler1417WithInversion (const SLFixData_t, Source
byte

SLUInt32_t *,	Shift register
SLFixData_t *,	Ones bit count pointer
SLFixData_t *)	Bit inversion flag pointer

DESCRIPTION

This function executes a self synchronising Pseudo Random Binary Sequence (PRBS) Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC) de-scrambler having the generating polynomial: $1 + x^{-14} + x^{-17}$.

$$Do = Ds (1 + x^{-14} + x^{-17})$$

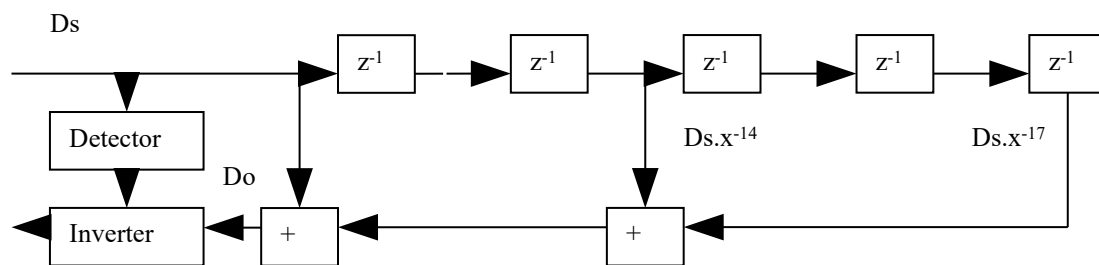
Ds is the data sequence at the output of the scrambler

Do is the data sequence applied to the scrambler

+ denotes modulo 2 addition

. denotes binary multiplication.

This function detects a sequence of 64 consecutive ones at the input to the de-scrambler (Ds) and, if detected, inverts the next output from the de-scrambler (Do). The counter is reset to zero.



NOTES ON USE

The input data is handled least significant bit first. The de-scrambled byte is returned from the function

The ones bit count and bit inversion flag parameters should be initialised to zero.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS_Scrambler1417WithInversion.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLFixData_t SDS_Descrambler1823 (const SLFixData_t, Source byte
 SLUInt32_t *) Shift register

DESCRIPTION

This function executes a self synchronising Pseudo Random Binary Sequence (PRBS) Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC) de-scrambler having the generating polynomial: $1 + x^{-18} + x^{-23}$.

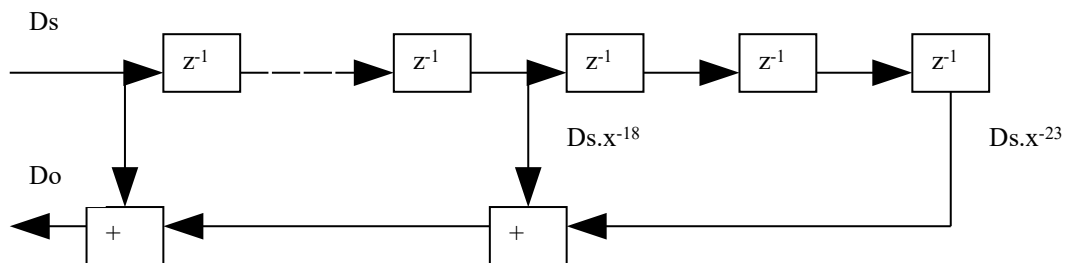
$$Do = Ds (1 + x^{-18} + x^{-23})$$

Ds is the data sequence at the output of the scrambler

Do is the data sequence applied to the scrambler

+ denotes modulo 2 addition

. denotes binary multiplication.



NOTES ON USE

The input data is handled least significant bit first. The de-scrambled byte is returned from the function

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS_Scrambler1823.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLFixData_t SDS_Scrambler523 (const SLFixData_t, Source byte
 SLUInt32_t *) Shift register

DESCRIPTION

This function executes a self synchronising Pseudo Random Binary Sequence (PRBS) Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC) scrambler having the generating polynomial: $1 + x^{-5} + x^{-23}$.

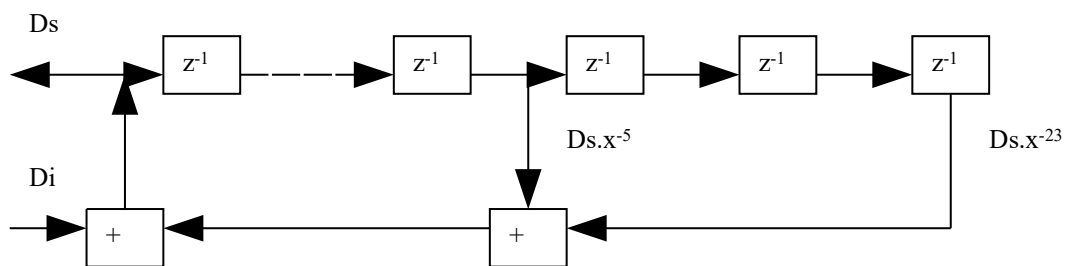
$$D_s = D_i + D_s.x^{-5} + D_s.x^{-23}$$

D_s is the data sequence at the output of the scrambler

D_i is the data sequence applied to the scrambler

$+$ denotes modulo 2 addition

$.$ denotes binary multiplication.



NOTES ON USE

The input data is handled least significant bit first. The scrambled byte is returned from the function

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS_Descrambler523.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLFixData_t SDS_Descrambler523 (const SLFixData_t, Source byte
SLUInt32_t *) Shift register

DESCRIPTION

This function executes a self synchronising Pseudo Random Binary Sequence (PRBS) Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC) de-scrambler having the generating polynomial: $1 + x^{-5} + x^{-23}$.

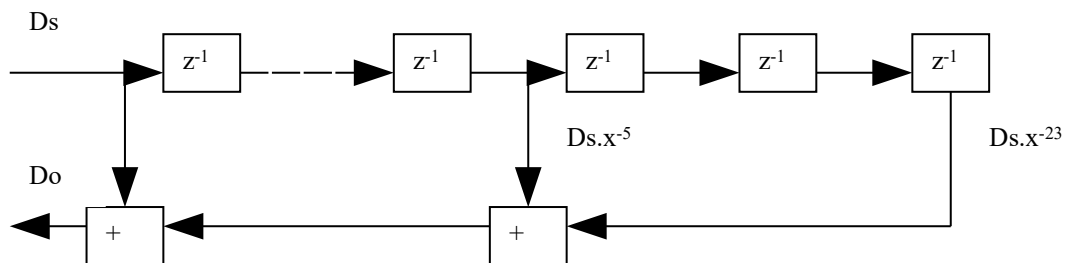
$$Do = Ds (1 + x^{-5} + x^{-23})$$

Ds is the data sequence at the output of the scrambler

Do is the data sequence applied to the scrambler

+ denotes modulo 2 addition

. denotes binary multiplication.



NOTES ON USE

The input data is handled least significant bit first. The de-scrambled byte is returned from the function

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS_Scrambler1823.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLFixData_t SDS_ScramblerDescramblerPN9 (const SLFixData_t, Source byte
SLUInt32_t *) Shift register

DESCRIPTION

This function executes a Pseudo Random Binary Sequence (PRBS) scrambler / descrambler having the generating polynomial: $x^9 + x^4 + 1$.

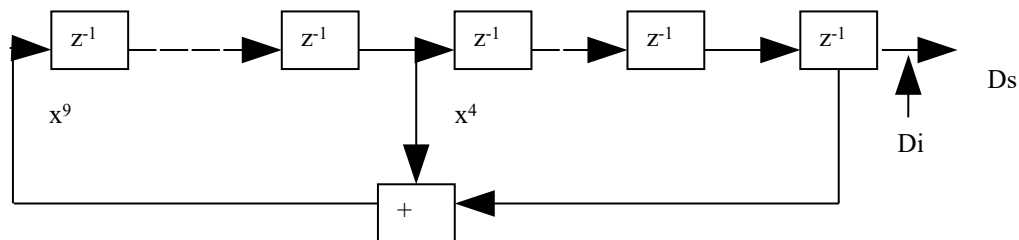
$$D_s = D_i (x^9 + x^4 + 1)$$

D_s is the data sequence at the output of the scrambler

D_i is the data sequence applied to the scrambler

$+$ denotes modulo 2 addition

$.$ denotes binary multiplication.



NOTES ON USE

The input data is handled least significant bit first. The scrambled / de-scrambled byte is returned from the function

CROSS REFERENCE

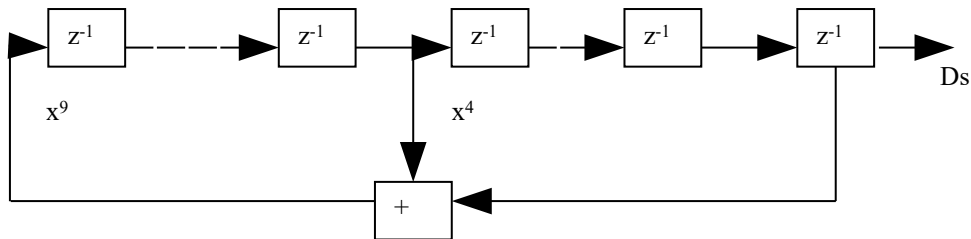
SDS_SequenceGeneratorPN9, SDS_ScramblerDescramblerPN15,
SDS_SequenceGeneratorPN15.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLFixData_t SDS_SequenceGeneratorPN9 (SLUInt32_t *) Shift register

DESCRIPTION

This function generates a Pseudo Random Binary Sequence (PRBS) with a generating polynomial: $x^9 + x^4 + 1$.



NOTES ON USE

The shift register contents should be initialized with the seed value prior to calling this function.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS_ScramblerDescramblerPN9, SDS_ScramblerDescramblerPN15,
SDS_SequenceGeneratorPN15.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLFixData_t SDS_ScramblerDescramblerPN15 (const SLFixData_t, Source byte
SLUInt32_t *) Shift register

DESCRIPTION

This function executes a Pseudo Random Binary Sequence (PRBS) scrambler / descrambler having the generating polynomial: $x^{15} + x^{14} + 1$.

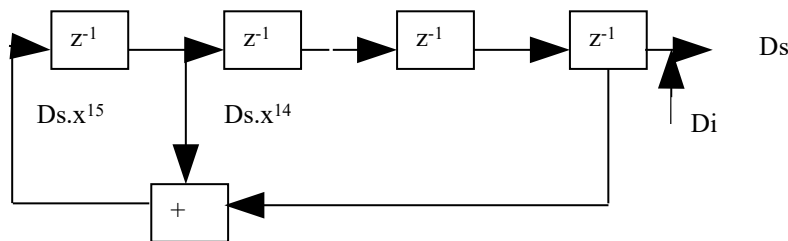
$$D_s = D_i (x^{15} + x^{14} + 1)$$

D_s is the data sequence at the output of the scrambler

D_i is the data sequence applied to the scrambler

$+$ denotes modulo 2 addition

$.$ denotes binary multiplication.



NOTES ON USE

The input data is handled least significant bit first. The scrambled / de-scrambled byte is returned from the function

CROSS REFERENCE

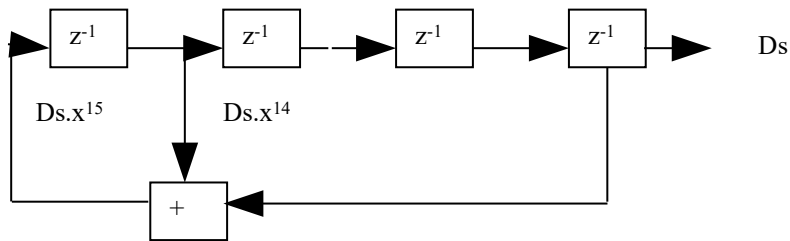
SDS_SequenceGeneratorPN9, SDS_ScramblerDescramblerPN9,
SDS_SequenceGeneratorPN15.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLFixData_t SDS_SequenceGeneratorPN15 (SLUInt32_t *) Shift register

DESCRIPTION

This function generates a Pseudo Random Binary Sequence (PRBS) with a generating polynomial: $x^{15} + x^{14} + 1$.



NOTES ON USE

The shift register contents should be initialized with the seed value prior to calling this function.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS_ScramblerDescramblerPN9, SDS_SequenceGeneratorPN9,
SDS_ScramblerDescramblerPN15.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLFixData_t SDS_ScramblerDescramblergCRC24 (const SLFixData_t, Source byte
 SLUInt32_t *) Shift register

DESCRIPTION

This function executes a Pseudo Random Binary Sequence (PRBS) scrambler / descrambler having the 3GPP UMTS compliant generating polynomial:

$$gCRC24(D) = D^{24} + D^{23} + D^6 + D^5 + D + 1.$$

Where :

$$D_s = D_i (D^{24} + D^{23} + D^6 + D^5 + D + 1)$$

D_s is the data sequence at the output of the scrambler

D_i is the data sequence applied to the scrambler

$+$ denotes modulo 2 addition

$.$ denotes binary multiplication.

NOTES ON USE

The input data is handled least significant bit first. The scrambled / de-scrambled byte is returned from the function

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS_SequenceGeneratorgCRC24, SDS_ScramblerDescramblergCRC16,
 SDS_SequenceGeneratorgCRC16, SDS_ScramblerDescramblergCRC12,
 SDS_SequenceGeneratorgCRC12, SDS_ScramblerDescramblergCRC8 ,
 SDS_SequenceGeneratorgCRC8.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLFixData_t SDS_SequenceGeneratorgCRC24 (SLUInt32_t *) Shift register

DESCRIPTION

This function generates a Pseudo Random Binary Sequence (PRBS) with a 3GPP UMTS compliant generating polynomial:

$$gCRC24(D) = D^{24} + D^{23} + D^6 + D^5 + D + 1.$$

NOTES ON USE

The shift register contents should be initialized with the seed value prior to calling this function.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS_ScramblerDescramblergCRC24, SDS_ScramblerDescramblergCRC16,
SDS_SequenceGeneratorgCRC16, SDS_ScramblerDescramblergCRC12,
SDS_SequenceGeneratorgCRC12, SDS_ScramblerDescramblergCRC8 ,
SDS_SequenceGeneratorgCRC8.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLFixData_t SDS_ScramblerDescramblergCRC16 (const SLFixData_t, Source byte
SLUInt32_t *) Shift register

DESCRIPTION

This function executes a Pseudo Random Binary Sequence (PRBS) scrambler / descrambler having the 3GPP UMTS compliant generating polynomial:

$$gCRC16(D) = D^{16} + D^{12} + D^5 + 1.$$

Where :

$$D_s = D_i (D^{16} + D^{12} + D^5 + 1)$$

D_s is the data sequence at the output of the scrambler

D_i is the data sequence applied to the scrambler

$+$ denotes modulo 2 addition

$.$ denotes binary multiplication.

NOTES ON USE

The input data is handled least significant bit first. The scrambled / de-scrambled byte is returned from the function

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS_ScramblerDescramblergCRC24, SDS_SequenceGeneratorgCRC24,
SDS_SequenceGeneratorgCRC16, SDS_ScramblerDescramblergCRC12,
SDS_SequenceGeneratorgCRC12, SDS_ScramblerDescramblergCRC8 ,
SDS_SequenceGeneratorgCRC8.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLFixData_t SDS_SequenceGeneratorgCRC16 (SLUInt32_t *) Shift register

DESCRIPTION

This function generates a Pseudo Random Binary Sequence (PRBS) with a 3GPP UMTS compliant generating polynomial:

$$gCRC16(D) = D^{16} + D^{12} + D^5 + 1.$$

NOTES ON USE

The shift register contents should be initialized with the seed value prior to calling this function.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS_ScramblerDescramblergCRC24, SDS_SequenceGeneratorgCRC24,
SDS_ScramblerDescramblergCRC16, SDS_ScramblerDescramblergCRC12,
SDS_SequenceGeneratorgCRC12, SDS_ScramblerDescramblergCRC8 ,
SDS_SequenceGeneratorgCRC8.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLFixData_t SDS_ScramblerDescramblergCRC12 (const SLFixData_t, Source byte
SLUInt32_t *) Shift register

DESCRIPTION

This function executes a Pseudo Random Binary Sequence (PRBS) scrambler / descrambler having the 3GPP UMTS compliant generating polynomial:

$$g_{CRC24}(D) = D^{12} + D^{11} + D^3 + D^2 + D + 1.$$

Where :

$$D_s = D_i (D^{12} + D^{11} + D^3 + D^2 + D + 1)$$

D_s is the data sequence at the output of the scrambler

D_i is the data sequence applied to the scrambler

$+$ denotes modulo 2 addition

$.$ denotes binary multiplication.

NOTES ON USE

The input data is handled least significant bit first. The scrambled / de-scrambled byte is returned from the function

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS_ScramblerDescramblergCRC24, SDS_SequenceGeneratorgCRC24,
SDS_ScramblerDescramblergCRC16, SDS_SequenceGeneratorgCRC16,
SDS_SequenceGeneratorgCRC12, SDS_ScramblerDescramblergCRC8 ,
SDS_SequenceGeneratorgCRC8.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLFixData_t SDS_SequenceGeneratorgCRC12 (SLUInt32_t *) Shift register

DESCRIPTION

This function generates a Pseudo Random Binary Sequence (PRBS) with a 3GPP UMTS compliant generating polynomial:

$$gCRC12(D) = D^{12} + D^{11} + D^3 + D^2 + D + 1.$$

NOTES ON USE

The shift register contents should be initialized with the seed value prior to calling this function.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS_ScramblerDescramblergCRC24, SDS_SequenceGeneratorgCRC24,
SDS_ScramblerDescramblergCRC16, SDS_SequenceGeneratorgCRC16,
SDS_ScramblerDescramblergCRC12, SDS_ScramblerDescramblergCRC8 ,
SDS_SequenceGeneratorgCRC8.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLFixData_t SDS_ScramblerDescramblergCRC8 (const SLFixData_t, Source byte
SLUInt32_t *) Shift register

DESCRIPTION

This function executes a Pseudo Random Binary Sequence (PRBS) scrambler / descrambler having the 3GPP UMTS compliant generating polynomial:

$$gCRC8(D) = D^8 + D^7 + D^4 + D^3 + D + 1.$$

Where :

$$D_s = D_i (D^8 + D^7 + D^4 + D^3 + D + 1)$$

D_s is the data sequence at the output of the scrambler

D_i is the data sequence applied to the scrambler

$+$ denotes modulo 2 addition

$.$ denotes binary multiplication.

NOTES ON USE

The input data is handled least significant bit first. The scrambled / de-scrambled byte is returned from the function

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS_ScramblerDescramblergCRC24, SDS_SequenceGeneratorgCRC24,
SDS_ScramblerDescramblergCRC16, SDS_SequenceGeneratorgCRC16,
SDS_ScramblerDescramblergCRC12, SDS_SequenceGeneratorgCRC12,
SDS_SequenceGeneratorgCRC8.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLFixData_t SDS_SequenceGeneratorCRC8 (SLUInt32_t *) Shift register

DESCRIPTION

This function generates a Pseudo Random Binary Sequence (PRBS) with a 3GPP UMTS compliant generating polynomial:

$$gCRC8(D) = D^8 + D^7 + D^4 + D^3 + D + 1.$$

NOTES ON USE

The shift register contents should be initialized with the seed value prior to calling this function.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS_ScramblerDescramblerCRC24, SDS_SequenceGeneratorCRC24,
SDS_ScramblerDescramblerCRC16, SDS_SequenceGeneratorCRC16,
SDS_ScramblerDescramblerCRC12, SDS_SequenceGeneratorCRC12,
SDS_ScramblerDescramblerCRC8.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDS_LongCodeGenerator3GPPDL (SLComplexRect_s *,    Pointer to
destination array
    SLUInt32_t *,                                X shift register
    SLUInt32_t *,                                Y shift register
    const SLArrayIndex_t)                        Output array length
```

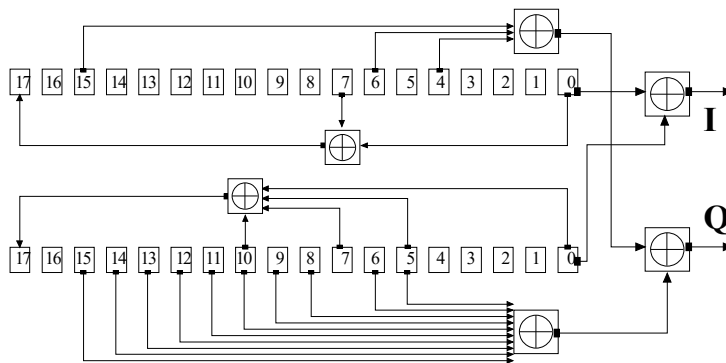
DESCRIPTION

This function generates a 3GPP downlink long code PN sequence using the generating polynomials:

X sequence: $X^{18} + X^7 + 1$

Y sequence: $X^{18} + X^{10} + X^7 + X^5 + 1$

The diagram for the 3GPP downlink long code generator is:



The binary values are mapped to balanced output signals as follows:

Binary value = 0 - Output = +1

Binary value = 1 - Output = -1

NOTES ON USE

The shift register contents should be initialized with the seed value prior to calling this function.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS_LongCodeGenerator3GPPUL.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDS_LongCodeGenerator3GPPUL (SLComplexRect_s *,   Pointer to
destination array
    SLUInt32_t *,           X shift register
    SLUInt32_t *,           Y shift register
    const SLArrayIndex_t)   Output array length
```

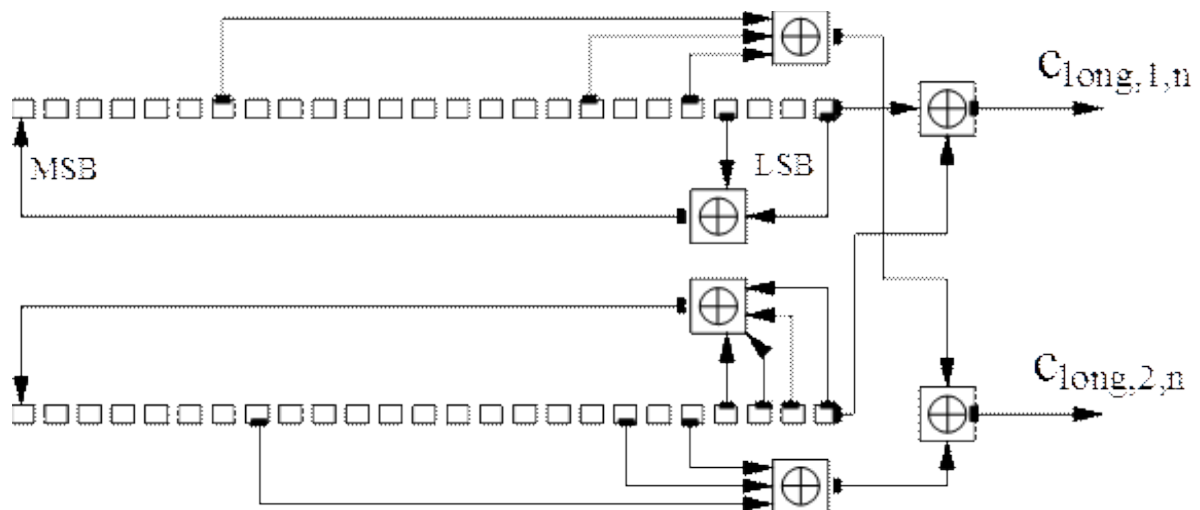
DESCRIPTION

This function generates a 3GPP uplink long code PN sequence using the generating polynomials:

X sequence: $X^{25} + X^3 + 1$

Y sequence: $X^{25} + X^3 + X^2 + X + 1$

The diagram for the 3GPP uplink long code generator is:



The binary values are mapped to balanced output signals as follows:

Binary value = 0 - Output = +1

Binary value = 1 - Output = -1

NOTES ON USE

The shift register contents should be initialized with the seed value prior to calling this function.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS_LongCodeGenerator3GPPDL.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_Multiplex (const SLData_t *,	Pointer to source multiplexed array
const SLData_t *,	Input data for frame sample index
SLData_t *,	Pointer to destination multiplexed array
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Frame sample index to insert data
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Number of frames in array
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Number of samples in frame

DESCRIPTION

This function inserts the new data into the selected frame index.

NOTES ON USE

This function overwrites the data in the selected frame index in the multiplexed stream.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Demultiplex, SDA_MuxN, SDA_DemuxN.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_Demultiplex (const SLData_t *,	Pointer to source multiplexed array
SLData_t *,	Pointer to destination array
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Frame sample index to extract
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Number of frames in array
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Number of samples in frame

DESCRIPTION

This function extracts the data from the selected frame index.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_Multiplex, SDA_Mux*N*, SDA_Demux*N*.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLData_t SDA_MuxN (const SLData_t *,   Source array pointer 1
                    .
                    .
                    const SLData_t *,   Source array pointer N
                    SLData_t *,         Destination array pointer
                    const SLArrayIndex_t) Source array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function multiplexes *N* channels of data into one single channel.

NOTES ON USE

The destination array will be *N* times the length of the source arrays.

$2 \leq N \leq 8$.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Multiplex, SDA_Demultiplex, SDA_DemuxN.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLData_t SDA_DemuxN (const SLData_t *,      Source array pointer
                     SLData_t *,          Destination array pointer 1
                     .
                     .
                     SLData_t *,          Destination array pointer N
                     const SLArrayIndex_t) Destination array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function de-multiplex N channels of data from the one single channel.

NOTES ON USE

The source array will be N times the length of the destination arrays.

$2 \leq N \leq 8$.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Multiplex, SDA_Demultiplex, SDA_MuxN.

Decimation And Interpolation Functions (*decint.c*)

SIF_Decimate

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SIF_Decimate (SLArrayIndex_t *) Pointer to decimation index register

DESCRIPTION

This function initialises the decimation function SDA_Decimate and initialises the index register to zero.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Interpolate, SDA_FilterAndDecimate, SDA_InterpolateAndFilter,
SDA_ResampleLinear

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_Decimate (const SLData_t *,	Pointer to source array
SLData_t *,	Pointer to destination array
const SLFixData_t,	Decimation ratio
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to source array index
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Source array length

DESCRIPTION

This function decimates the sample rate of the data by the given ratio.

NOTES ON USE

This function supports decimation across contiguous arrays through the use of the source array index parameter, which must be initialised to zero before calling this function.

This function will work in-place.

This function does not low pass pre-filter the source data. This should be performed using the FIR filter functions.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_Decimate, SDA_Interpolate, SDA_FilterAndDecimate,
SDA_InterpolateAndFilter, SDA_ResampleLinear

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SIF_Interpolate (SLArrayIndex_t *) Pointer to interpolation index register

DESCRIPTION

This function initialises the interpolation function SDA_Interpolate and initialises the index register to zero.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Interpolate, SDA_FilterAndDecimate, SDA_InterpolateAndFilter,
SDA_ResampleLinear

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_Interpolate (const SLData_t *,	Pointer to source array
SLData_t *,	Pointer to destination array
const SLFixData_t,	Interpolation ratio
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to destination array index
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Destination array length

DESCRIPTION

This function interpolates the sample rate of the data by the given ratio.

NOTES ON USE

This function supports interpolation across contiguous arrays through the use of the destination array index parameter.

This function does NOT work in-place.

This function does not low pass post-filter the interpolated data. This should be performed using the FIR filter functions.

This function does not verify that there is sufficient data in the source array to avoid overrun.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_Interpolate, SDA_Decimate, SDA_FilterAndDecimate,
SDA_InterpolateAndFilter, SDA_ResampleLinear

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SIF_FilterAndDecimate (SLData_t *,   Pointer to filter state array  
                           const SLArrayIndex_t)   Filter length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function initialises the SDA_FilterAndDecimate function.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Interpolate, SDA_Decimate, SDA_FilterAndDecimate,
SDA_InterpolateAndFilter, SDA_ResampleLinear

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_FilterAndDecimate (const SLData_t *,   Pointer to source array
                           SLData_t *,         Pointer to destination array
                           const SLFixData_t,   Decimation ratio
                           SLArrayIndex_t *,    Pointer to source array index
                           SLData_t *,          Pointer to filter state array
                           const SLData_t *,    Pointer to filter coefficients
                           SLArrayIndex_t *,    Pointer to filter offset register
                           const SLArrayIndex_t, Filter length
                           const SLArrayIndex_t) Source array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function pre-filters the source data using the supplied filter coefficients and decimates the sample rate of the data by the given ratio.

NOTES ON USE

This function supports decimation across contiguous arrays through the use of the source array index parameter.

This function will work in-place.

The FIR filter should be linear phase filter to maintain the phase relationships of all the frequencies in the signal being decimated.

The decimation ratio must be an integer value.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Interpolate, SDA_Decimate, SIF_FilterAndDecimate,
SDA_InterpolateAndFilter, SDA_ResampleLinear

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SIF_InterpolateAndFilter (SLData_t *, Pointer to filter state array  
    const SLArrayIndex_t)          Filter length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function initialises the SDA_InterpolateAndFilter function.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Decimate, SDA_Interpolate, SDA_FilterAndDecimate,
SDA_InterpolateAndFilter, SDA_ResampleLinear, SDS_InterpolateQuadratic1D,
SDS_InterpolateQuadraticBSpline1D, SDS_InterpolateQuadraticLagrange1D

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_InterpolateAndFilter (const SLData_t *,	Pointer to source array
SLData_t *,	Pointer to destination array
const SLFixData_t,	Interpolation ratio
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to destination array index
SLData_t *,	Pointer to filter state array
const SLData_t *,	Pointer to filter coefficients
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to filter offset register
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Filter length
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Destination array length

DESCRIPTION

This function interpolates the sample rate of the data by the given ratio and low pass post-filters the destination data using the supplied filter coefficients.

NOTES ON USE

This function supports interpolation across contiguous arrays through the use of the destination array index parameter.

This function does NOT work in-place.

This function does not verify that there is sufficient data in the source array to avoid overrun of that array.

The FIR filter should be linear phase filter to maintain the phase relationships of all the frequencies in the signal being interpolated.

The interpolation ratio must be an integer value.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Decimate, SDA_Interpolate, SDA_FilterAndDecimate,
SIF_InterpolateAndFilter, SDA_ResampleLinear, SDS_InterpolateQuadratic1D,
SDS_InterpolateQuadraticBSpline1D, SDS_InterpolateQuadraticLagrange1D

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

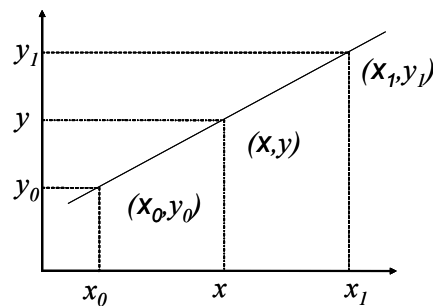
```
SLArrayIndex_t SDA_ResampleLinear (const SLData_t *, Source array pointer
    SLData_t *,                               Destination array pointer
    const SLData_t,                           New sample period
    const SLArrayIndex_t)                     Source array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function uses linear interpolation to resample the data in the source array. The input sample rate is normalized to 1.0 Hz and the new sample period is relative to the normalized input sample rate. The following table shows the range of numbers that are used for the new sample period for both interpolation and decimation:

Decimation (sample rate decrease)	> 1.0
Interpolation (sample rate increase)	< 1.0

The interpolation operation is summarized in the following diagram:



The interpolated y value is calculate using the following equation:

$$y = y_0 + \frac{x - x_0}{x_1 - x_0} (y_1 - y_0)$$

This function returns the number of re-sampled output data points.

NOTES ON USE

This function is not designed for use in streaming applications, where the SDA_FilterAndDecimate and SDA_InterpolateAndFilter functions are much more appropriate.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Decimate, SDA_Interpolate, SDA_FilterAndDecimate,
SIF_InterpolateAndFilter, SDA_InterpolateAndFilter,
SDA_ResampleLinearNSamples, SDA_ResampleSinc,
SIF_ResampleLinearContiguous and SDA_ResampleLinearContiguous,
SDS_InterpolateQuadratic1D, SDS_InterpolateQuadraticBSpline1D,
SDS_InterpolateQuadraticLagrange1D

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

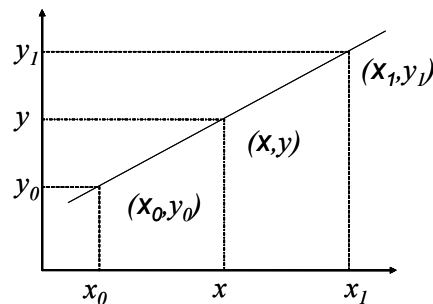
SLArrayIndex_t SDA_ResampleLinearNSamples (const SLData_t *, Source pointer
 SLData_t *, Destination array pointer
 const SLData_t, New sample period
 const SLArrayIndex_t, Source array length
 const SLArrayIndex_t) Destination array length

DESCRIPTION

This function uses linear interpolation to resample the data in the source array. The input sample rate is normalized to 1.0 Hz and the new sample period is relative to the normalized input sample rate. The following table shows the range of numbers that are used for the new sample period for both interpolation and decimation:

Decimation (sample rate decrease)	> 1.0
Interpolation (sample rate increase)	< 1.0

The interpolation operation is summarized in the following diagram:



The interpolated y value is calculate using the following equation:

$$y = y_0 + \frac{x - x_0}{x_1 - x_0} (y_1 - y_0)$$

The function only outputs N samples. If the re-sampling shortens the array then it is zero padded. If the re-sampling lengthens the array then it is truncated. This function returns the number of re-sampled output valid data points – i.e. if the output array contains 100 data samples and 50 zero padded samples then this function will return 100.

NOTES ON USE

This function is not designed for use in streaming applications, where the SDA_FilterAndDecimate and SDA_InterpolateAndFilter functions are much more appropriate.

CROSS REFERENCE

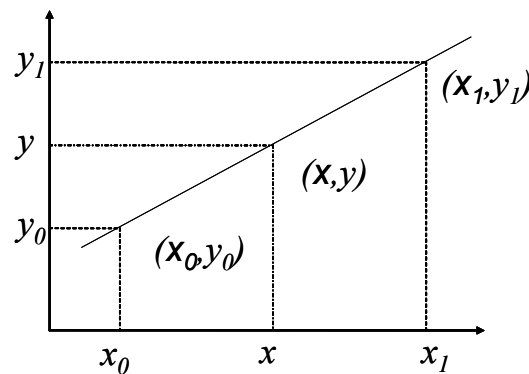
SDA_Decimate, SDA_Interpolate, SDA_FilterAndDecimate,
 SIF_InterpolateAndFilter, SDA_InterpolateAndFilter,
 SDA_ResampleLinearNSamples, SDA_ResampleSinc,
 SIF_ResampleLinearContiguous and SDA_ResampleLinearContiguous,
 SDS_InterpolateQuadratic1D, SDS_InterpolateQuadraticBSpline1D,
 SDS_InterpolateQuadraticLagrange1D

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLData_t SDA_InterpolateLinear1D (const SLData_t *,    Y Source array pointer
                                const SLData_t,        Input x value
                                const SLArrayIndex_t)    Source array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function uses linear interpolation to calculate the interpolated value of y , for a given x . The source y samples are stored in the source array, with the array index being the x value and the interpolated value is the return value from the function. The interpolation operation is summarized in the following diagram:



The interpolated y value is calculate using the following equation:

$$y = y_0 + \frac{x - x_0}{x_1 - x_0} (y_1 - y_0)$$

NOTES ON USE

If the input x value is beyond the length of the y input array then this function will return SIGLIB_ZERO.

CROSS REFERENCE

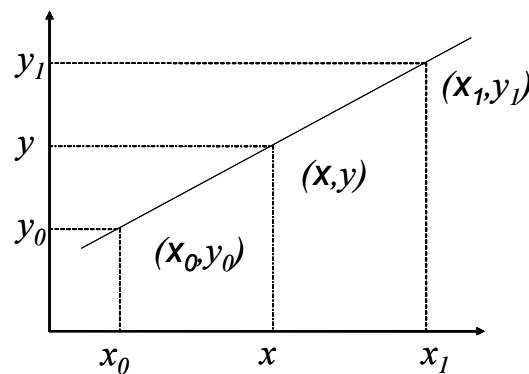
SDA_Decimate, SDA_Interpolate, SDA_FilterAndDecimate,
SIF_InterpolateAndFilter, SDA_InterpolateAndFilter, SDA_ResampleLinear,
SDA_InterpolateLinear2D, SDS_InterpolateQuadratic1D,
SDS_InterpolateQuadraticBSpline1D, SDS_InterpolateQuadraticLagrange1D

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDA_InterpolateLinear2D (const SLData_t *, X Source array pointer
const SLData_t *, Pointer to Y source array
const SLData_t, Input x value
const SLArrayIndex_t) Source array length

DESCRIPTION

This function uses linear interpolation to calculate the interpolated value of y , for a given x . The x and y samples are stored in separate arrays and the interpolated value is the return value from the function. The interpolation operation is summarized in the following diagram:



The interpolated y value is calculate using the following equation:

$$y = y_0 + \frac{x - x_0}{x_1 - x_0} (y_1 - y_0)$$

NOTES ON USE

If the input x value lies outside the magnitude range of the x input array then this function will return SIGLIB_ZERO.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Decimate, SDA_Interpolate, SDA_FilterAndDecimate,
SIF_InterpolateAndFilter, SDA_InterpolateAndFilter, SDA_ResampleLinear,
SDA_InterpolateLinear1D, SDS_InterpolateQuadratic1D,
SDS_InterpolateQuadraticBSpline1D, SDS_InterpolateQuadraticLagrange1D

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SIF_ResampleSinc (SLData_t *,	Pointer to sinc look up table
SLData_t *,	Pointer to phase gain
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Number of adjacent samples
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Look up table length

DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the SDA_ResampleSinc function with a sinc ($\sin(x)/x$) look up table. Please refer to the documentation for SIF_QuickSinc for further details.

NOTES ON USE

Sinc interpolation allows a linear time or frequency axis to be rescaled into another linear or even a logarithmic axis. The error in these functions is $< 1\%$ as long as the signal frequency is $< 0.3 F_s$. The function assumes all values outside the source array are 0.0

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Decimate, SDA_Interpolate, SDA_FilterAndDecimate,
SIF_InterpolateAndFilter, SDA_InterpolateAndFilter, SIF_ResampleSincContiguous,
SIF_ResampleWindowedSincContiguous and SDA_ResampleSincContiguous,
SDS_InterpolateQuadratic1D, SDS_InterpolateQuadraticBSpline1D,
SDS_InterpolateQuadraticLagrange1D

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SIF_ResampleWindowedSinc (SLData_t *,    Pointer to sinc look up table
    SLData_t *,                               Pointer to phase gain
    const SLArrayIndex_t,                     Number of adjacent samples
    SLData_t *,                               Pointer to window LUT array
    const enum SLWindow_t,                     Window type
    const SLData_t,                           Window coefficient
    const SLArrayIndex_t)                     Look up table length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the SDA_ResampleSinc function with a windowed sinc ($\sin(x)/x$) look up table. Please refer to the documentation for SIF_QuickSinc and SIF_Window for further details.

NOTES ON USE

Sinc interpolation allows a linear time or frequency axis to be rescaled into another linear or even a logarithmic axis. The error in these functions is $< 1\%$ as long as the signal frequency is $< 0.3 F_s$. The function assumes all values outside the source array are 0.0

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Decimate, SDA_Interpolate, SDA_FilterAndDecimate,
 SIF_InterpolateAndFilter, SDA_InterpolateAndFilter, SIF_ResampleSincContiguous,
 SIF_ResampleWindowedSincContiguous and SDA_ResampleSincContiguous,
 SDS_InterpolateQuadratic1D, SDS_InterpolateQuadraticBSpline1D,
 SDS_InterpolateQuadraticLagrange1D

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

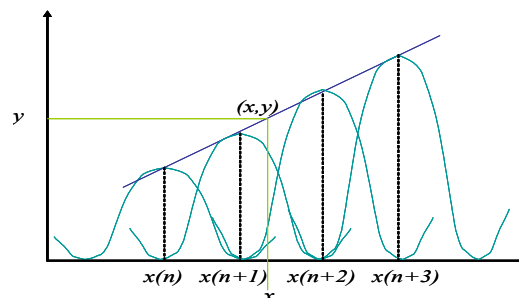
SLArrayIndex_t SDA_ResampleSinc (const SLData_t *,	Pointer to src. array
SLData_t *,	Pointer to destination array
const SLData_t *,	Pointer to sinc look up table
const SLData_t,	Look up table phase gain
const SLData_t,	New sample period
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Number of adjacent samples
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Source array length

DESCRIPTION

This function uses sinc ($\sin(x)/x$) interpolation to resample the data in the source array. The input sample rate is normalized to 1.0 Hz and the new sample period is relative to the normalized input sample rate. The following table shows the range of numbers that are used for the new sample period for both interpolation and decimation:

Decimation (sample rate decrease)	> 1.0
Interpolation (sample rate increase)	< 1.0

The interpolation operation is summarized in the following diagram where the interpolated point is generated from the summations of the number of adjacent samples specified in the parameter list:



This function returns the number of re-sampled output data points.

NOTES ON USE

This function uses the quick sinc look up table for calculating the sinc function. You must call either SIF_ResampleSinc or SIF_ResampleWindowedSinc before calling this function.

This function is not designed for use in streaming applications, where the SDA_FilterAndDecimate and SDA_InterpolateAndFilter functions are much more appropriate.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Decimate, SDA_Interpolate, SDA_FilterAndDecimate, SIF_InterpolateAndFilter, SDA_InterpolateAndFilter, SDA_ResampleLinear, SDA_ResampleSincNSamples, SIF_ResampleSincContiguous, SIF_ResampleWindowedSincContiguous and SDA_ResampleSincContiguous, SDS_InterpolateQuadratic1D, SDS_InterpolateQuadraticBSpline1D, SDS_InterpolateQuadraticLagrange1D

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

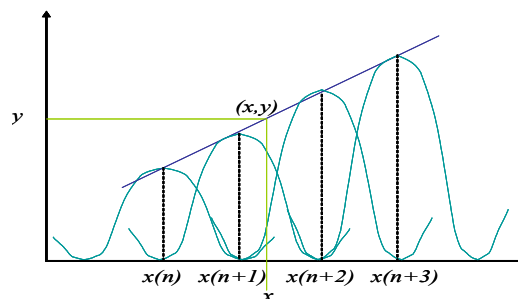
SLArrayIndex_t SDA_ResampleSincNSamples (const SLData_t *,	Ptr. to src. array
SLData_t *,	Pointer to destination array
const SLData_t *,	Pointer to sinc look up table
const SLData_t,	Look up table phase gain
const SLData_t,	New sample period
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Number of adjacent samples
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Source array length
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Destination array length

DESCRIPTION

This function uses sinc ($\sin(x)/x$) interpolation to resample the data in the source array. The input sample rate is normalized to 1.0 Hz and the new sample period is relative to the normalized input sample rate. The following table shows the range of numbers that are used for the new sample period for both interpolation and decimation:

Decimation (sample rate decrease)	> 1.0
Interpolation (sample rate increase)	< 1.0

The interpolation operation is summarized in the following diagram where the interpolated point is generated from the summations of the number of adjacent samples specified in the parameter list:



The function only outputs N samples. If the re-sampling shortens the array then it is zero padded. If the re-sampling lengthens the array then it is truncated. This function returns the number of re-sampled output valid data points – i.e. if the output array contains 100 data samples and 50 zero padded samples then this function will return 100.

NOTES ON USE

This function uses the quick sinc look up table for calculating the sinc function. You must call either `SIF_ResampleSinc` or `SIF_ResampleWindowedSinc` before calling this function.

This function is not designed for use in streaming applications, where the `SDA_FilterAndDecimate` and `SDA_InterpolateAndFilter` functions are much more appropriate.

CROSS REFERENCE

`SDA_Decimate`, `SDA_Interpolate`, `SDA_FilterAndDecimate`,
`SIF_InterpolateAndFilter`, `SDA_InterpolateAndFilter`, `SDA_ResampleLinear`,
`SDA_ResampleSinc`, `SIF_ResampleSincContiguous`,
`SIF_ResampleWindowedSincContiguous` and `SDA_ResampleSincContiguous`,
`SDS_InterpolateQuadratic1D`, `SDS_InterpolateQuadraticBSpline1D`,
`SDS_InterpolateQuadraticLagrange1D`

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SIF_InterpolateSinc1 (SLData_t *,	Pointer to sinc look up table
SLData_t *,	Pointer to phase gain
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Number of adjacent samples
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Look up table length

DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the SDA_InterpolateSinc1 function with a sinc ($\sin(x)/x$) look up table. Please refer to the documentation for SIF_QuickSinc for further details.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_InterpolateLinear1D, SDA_InterpolateLinear2D and
SDA_InterpolateSinc1D, SDS_InterpolateQuadratic1D,
SDS_InterpolateQuadraticBSpline1D, SDS_InterpolateQuadraticLagrange1D

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SIF_InterpolateWindowedSinc1D (SLData_t *,   Pointer to sinc look up table
    SLData_t *,                               Pointer to phase gain
    const SLArrayIndex_t,                     Number of adjacent samples
    SLData_t *,                               Pointer to window LUT array
    const enum SLWindow_t,                     Window type
    const SLData_t,                           Window coefficient
    const SLArrayIndex_t)                     Look up table length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the SDA_InterpolateSinc1D function with a windowed sinc ($\sin(x)/x$) look up table. Please refer to the documentation for SIF_QuickSinc and SIF_Window for further details.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

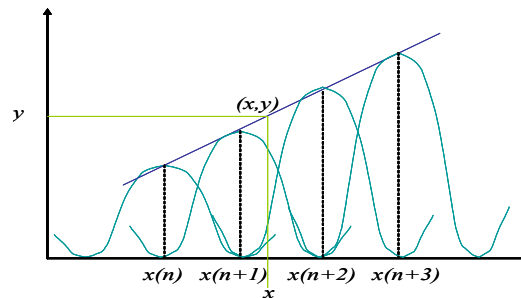
SDA_InterpolateLinear1D, SDA_InterpolateLinear2D and
SDA_InterpolateSinc1D, SDS_InterpolateQuadratic1D,
SDS_InterpolateQuadraticBSpline1D, SDS_InterpolateQuadraticLagrange1D

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDA_InterpolateSinc1D (const SLData_t *,	Pointer to 'y' source array
const SLData_t,	Input 'x' value
SLData_t *,	Pointer to sinc look up table
const SLData_t,	Look up table phase gain
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Number of adjacent samples
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Source array length

DESCRIPTION

This function uses sinc ($\sin(x)/x$) interpolation to calculate the interpolated value of y , for a given x . The source y samples are located in the source array, with the array index being the x value and the interpolated value is the return value from the function. The interpolation operation is summarized in the following diagram where the interpolated point is generated from the summations of the number of adjacent samples specified in the parameter list:



NOTES ON USE

This function uses the quick sinc look up table for calculating the sinc function.

You must call either SIF_InterpolateSinc1 or SIF_InterpolateWindowedSinc1 before calling this function.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_InterpolateLinear1D, SDA_InterpolateLinear2D and
SIF_InterpolateSinc1D, SDS_InterpolateQuadratic1D,
SDS_InterpolateQuadraticBSpline1D, SDS_InterpolateQuadraticLagrange1D

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SIF_ResampleLinearContiguous (SLData_t *, Pointer to previous X value  
                                   SLData_t *)           Pointer to previous Y value
```

DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the SDA_ResampleLinearContiguous function.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Decimate, SDA_Interpolate, SDA_FilterAndDecimate,
SIF_InterpolateAndFilter, SDA_InterpolateAndFilter, SIF_ResampleSinc,
SIF_ResampleWindowedSinc, SDA_ResampleSinc and SDA_ResampleLinear,
SDS_InterpolateQuadratic1D, SDS_InterpolateQuadraticBSpline1D,
SDS_InterpolateQuadraticLagrange1D

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

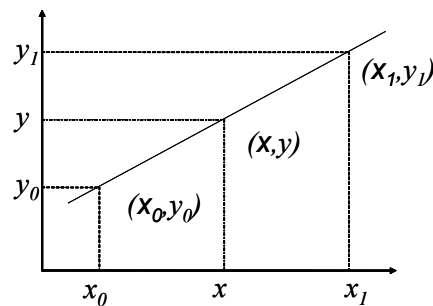
SLArrayIndex_t SDA_ResampleLinearContiguous (const SLData_t *, Pointer to
Y source array
SLData_t *, Pointer to destination array
SLData_t *, Pointer to previous X value
SLData_t *, Pointer to previous Y value
const SLData_t, New sampling period
const SLArrayIndex_t) Source array length

DESCRIPTION

This function uses linear interpolation to resample the data in the source array. The input sample rate is normalized to 1.0 Hz and the new sample period is relative to the normalized input sample rate. The following table shows the range of numbers that are used for the new sample period for both interpolation and decimation:

Decimation (sample rate decrease)	> 1.0
Interpolation (sample rate increase)	< 1.0

The interpolation operation is summarized in the following diagram:



The interpolated y value is calculate using the following equation:

$$y = y_0 + \frac{x - x_0}{x_1 - x_0} (y_1 - y_0)$$

This function returns the number of re-sampled output data points.

NOTES ON USE

This function is not designed for use in streaming applications, where the SDA_FilterAndDecimate and SDA_InterpolateAndFilter functions are much more appropriate.

This function operates contiguously across array boundaries.

The function SIF_ResampleLinearContiguous must be called before calling this function.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Decimate, SDA_Interpolate, SDA_FilterAndDecimate,
SIF_InterpolateAndFilter, SDA_InterpolateAndFilter and
SIF_ResampleLinearContiguous, SDS_InterpolateQuadratic1D,
SDS_InterpolateQuadraticBSpline1D, SDS_InterpolateQuadraticLagrange1D

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SIF_ResampleSincContiguous (SLData_t *,    Pointer to previous X value
                                SLData_t *,    Pointer to LUT array
                                SLData_t *,    Pointer to data history array
                                SLData_t *,    Pointer to sinc LUT phase gain
                                const SLArrayIndex_t, Number of adjacent samples
                                const SLArrayIndex_t) Sinc look up table length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the SDA_ResampleSincContiguous function with a sinc ($\sin(x)/x$) look up table. Please refer to the documentation for SIF_QuickSinc for further details.

NOTES ON USE

Sinc interpolation allows a linear time or frequency axis to be rescaled into another linear or even a logarithmic axis. The error in these functions is $< 1\%$ as long as the signal frequency is $< 0.3 F_s$. The function assumes all values outside the source array are 0.0

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Decimate, SDA_Interpolate, SDA_FilterAndDecimate,
 SIF_InterpolateAndFilter, SDA_InterpolateAndFilter, SIF_ResampleSinc,
 SIF_ResampleWindowedSinc and SDA_ResampleSinc,
 SDS_InterpolateQuadratic1D, SDS_InterpolateQuadraticBSpline1D,
 SDS_InterpolateQuadraticLagrange1D

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SIF_ResampleWindowedSincContiguous (SLData_t *,          Pointer to previous
X value
    SLData_t *,          Pointer to LUT array
    SLData_t *,          Pointer to data history array
    SLData_t *,          Pointer to sinc LUT phase gain
    const SLArrayIndex_t, Number of adjacent samples
    SLData_t *,          Pointer to window LUT array
    const enum SLWindow_t, Window type
    const SLData_t,      Window coefficient
    const SLArrayIndex_t) Sinc look up table length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the SDA_ResampleSincContiguous function with a windowed sinc ($\sin(x)/x$) look up table. Please refer to the documentation for SIF_QuickSinc and SIF_Window for further details.

NOTES ON USE

Sinc interpolation allows a linear time or frequency axis to be rescaled into another linear or even a logarithmic axis. The error in these functions is $< 1\%$ as long as the signal frequency is $< 0.3 F_s$. The function assumes all values outside the source array are 0.0

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Decimate, SDA_Interpolate, SDA_FilterAndDecimate,
 SIF_InterpolateAndFilter, SDA_InterpolateAndFilter, SIF_ResampleSinc,
 SIF_ResampleWindowedSinc and SDA_ResampleSinc,
 SDS_InterpolateQuadratic1D, SDS_InterpolateQuadraticBSpline1D,
 SDS_InterpolateQuadraticLagrange1D

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

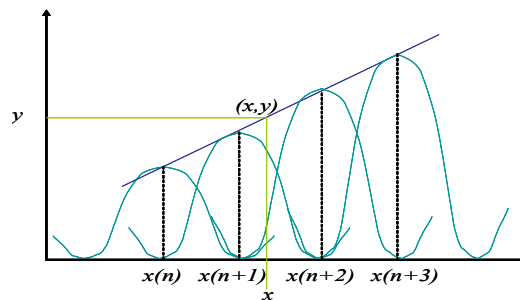
SLArrayIndex_t SDA_ResampleSincContiguous (const SLData_t *,	Pointer to
Y source array	
SLData_t *,	Pointer to destination array
SLData_t *,	Pointer to previous X value
SLData_t *,	Pointer to LUT array
SLData_t *,	Pointer to data history array
SLData_t *,	Pointer to sinc LUT phase gain
const SLData_t,	New sampling period
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Number of adjacent samples
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Source array length

DESCRIPTION

This function uses sinc ($\sin(x)/x$) interpolation to resample the data in the source array. The input sample rate is normalized to 1.0 Hz and the new sample period is relative to the normalized input sample rate. The following table shows the range of numbers that are used for the new sample period for both interpolation and decimation:

Decimation (sample rate decrease)	> 1.0
Interpolation (sample rate increase)	< 1.0

The interpolation operation is summarized in the following diagram where the interpolated point is generated from the summations of the number of adjacent samples specified in the parameter list:



This function returns the number of re-sampled output data points.

NOTES ON USE

This function uses the quick sinc look up table for calculating the sinc function. You must call either `SIF_ResampleSincContiguous` or `SIF_ResampleWindowedSincContiguous` before calling this function.

This function is not designed for use in streaming applications, where the `SDA_FilterAndDecimate` and `SDA_InterpolateAndFilter` functions are much more appropriate.

This function operates contiguously across array boundaries.

CROSS REFERENCE

`SDA_Decimate`, `SDA_Interpolate`, `SDA_FilterAndDecimate`,
`SIF_InterpolateAndFilter`, `SDA_InterpolateAndFilter`, `SIF_ResampleSinc`,
`SIF_ResampleWindowedSinc` and `SDA_ResampleSinc`,
`SDS_InterpolateQuadratic1D`, `SDS_InterpolateQuadraticBSpline1D`,
`SDS_InterpolateQuadraticLagrange1D`

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDS_InterpolateQuadratic1D (const SLData_t, x(0) input sample magnitude

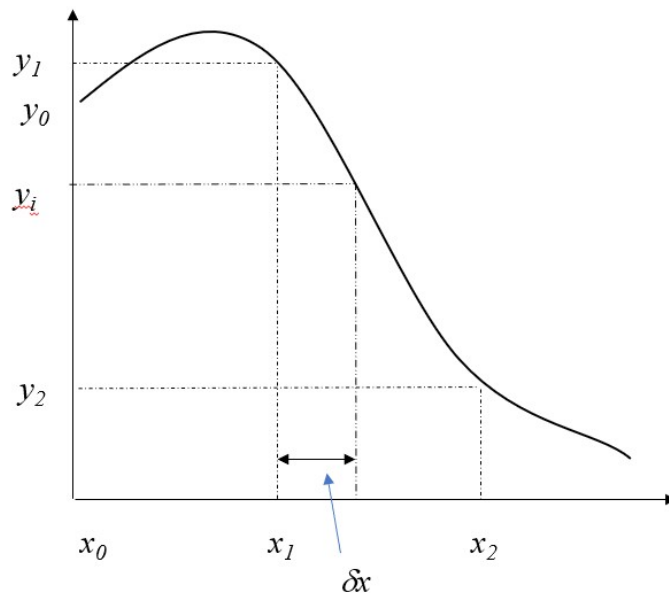
const SLData_t,	x(1) input sample magnitude
const SLData_t,	x(2) input sample magnitude
const SLData_t)	Delta x

DESCRIPTION

This function uses 2nd order quadratic spline interpolation to interpolate the y value for a given x input.

The x value is a delta of the distance between the previous known x sample and the subsequent x sample and has a range $0 \leq \delta x \leq 1$.

The following diagram shows the δx used to calculate the output interpolated y value.



NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Decimate, SDA_Interpolate, SDA_FilterAndDecimate,
SIF_InterpolateAndFilter, SDA_InterpolateAndFilter, SIF_ResampleSinc,
SIF_ResampleWindowedSinc, SDA_ResampleSinc,
SDS_InterpolateQuadraticLagrange1D and SDS_InterpolateQuadraticBSpline1D

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDS_InterpolateQuadraticBSpline1D (const SLData_t, x(0) input sample magnitude

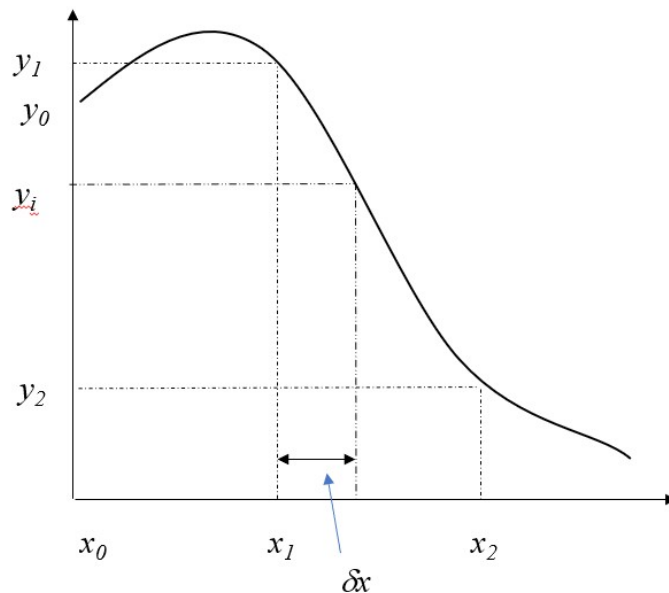
const SLData_t,	x(1) input sample magnitude
const SLData_t,	x(2) input sample magnitude
const SLData_t)	Delta x

DESCRIPTION

This function uses 2nd order quadratic B-Spline interpolation to interpolate the y value for a given x input.

The x value is a delta of the distance between the previous known x sample and the subsequent x sample and has a range $0 \leq \delta x \leq 1$.

The following diagram shows the δx used to calculate the output interpolated y value.



NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Decimate, SDA_Interpolate, SDA_FilterAndDecimate, SIF_InterpolateAndFilter, SDA_InterpolateAndFilter, SIF_ResampleSinc, SIF_ResampleWindowedSinc, SDS_InterpolateQuadratic1D, SDS_InterpolateQuadraticLagrange1D and SDA_ResampleSinc

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDS_InterpolateQuadraticLagrange1D (const SLData_t, x(0) input sample magnitude

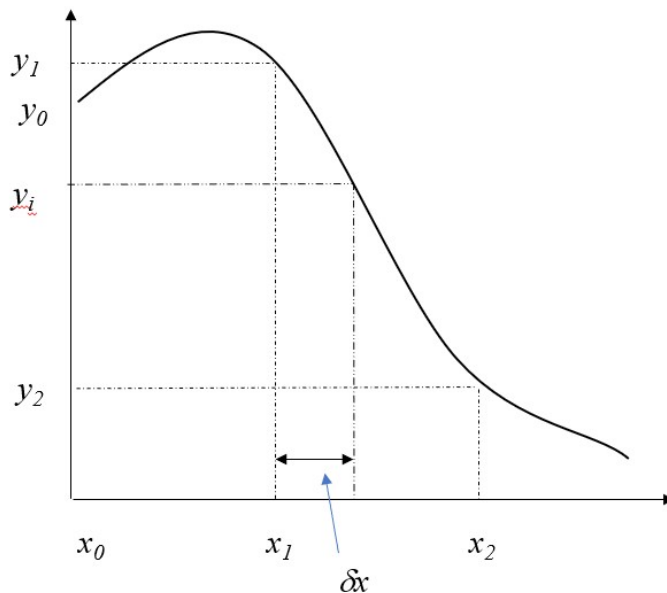
const SLData_t,	x(1) input sample magnitude
const SLData_t,	x(2) input sample magnitude
const SLData_t)	Delta x

DESCRIPTION

This function uses 2nd order quadratic Lagrange interpolation to interpolate the y value for a given x input.

The x value is a delta of the distance between the previous known x sample and the subsequent x sample and has a range $0 \leq \delta x \leq 1$.

The following diagram shows the δx used to calculate the output interpolated y value.



NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Decimate, SDA_Interpolate, SDA_FilterAndDecimate, SIF_InterpolateAndFilter, SDA_InterpolateAndFilter, SIF_ResampleSinc, SIF_ResampleWindowedSinc, SDS_InterpolateQuadratic1D, SDS_InterpolateQuadraticBSpline1D and SDA_ResampleSinc

DTMF Functions (*dtmf.c*)

These function generate and detect standard DTMF tones, according to the following table:

Freq. (Hz)	1209	1336	1477	1633
697	1	2	3	A
770	4	5	6	B
852	7	8	9	C
941	*	0	#	D

This functions accept or return the SigLib key codes. These key codes are a mapping of the standard keys, according to the following table:

Standard keys	SigLib mapping
1 2 3 A	0 1 2 3
4 5 6 B	4 5 6 7
7 8 9 C	8 9 10 11
* 0 # D	12 13 14 15

SigLib includes functions for encoding and decoding the mapping. In addition to the key codes, SigLib functions also return status information from the detector functions. Further details are included with the appropriate functions.

The SigLib DTMF detection functionality is based on the Goertzel algorithm (the most popular technique for this application). The output of the Goertzel filters pass into a decision logic section which selects the most appropriate DTMF tone from the received signal. The 'detect and validate' function also includes a threshold level so that the detector will not give spurious results when low level noise is received. The standard example analyses the primary 8 DTMF frequencies and does not look at harmonics (a simple modification). The decision is dependent on the magnitudes of these primary frequencies.

The Goertzel filters process discrete arrays of data and while the standard length for 8 kHz sampling is 102 samples. Faster sampling rates will require proportionately longer arrays and possible modification of the scaling in the decision logic section. If a different sample rate or array length is required then it is necessary to ensure that the filter centre frequencies and array length provide an integer number of cycles to minimise edge effects.

The DTMF detector frequencies in the file *siglib_constants.h* do not align exactly with the ITU standard frequencies. These frequencies have deliberately been chosen to avoid the edge effects usually associated with DFTs processing non integer numbers of cycles in a sinusoid. They are the nearest whole frequencies to those defined by the ITU when using a 102 sample input array.

When developing a DTMF detection algorithm the best place to start is to use the \\SigLib\\Examples\\DTMF\\Wav.c or \\SigLib\\Examples\\gen_dtmf.c examples, which are designed to be processor independent and processes real DTMF tones stored in a .wav file with an 8 kHz sample rate. gen_dtmf.c takes an input specification from the file 'dtmf.txt' and generates DTMF sequences from this specification prior to

trying to detect the tones. Long sequences of DTMF tones can be generated by modification of 'dtmf.txt' without any modification of the source code.

There are several primary issues to consider when detecting DTMF tones:

- The period of the tone being detected - the standard example uses 100 ms.
- The scaling of the input signal - the standard examples use 16 bit signed numbers.
- The sample rate - the standard example uses 8 kHz sampling.

While the standard SigLib DTMF algorithms are very robust and have been used, unmodified in many applications, our libraries have not been tested against any standards and we make no claims that they conform to any specification. It may be necessary to modify the decision logic section to meet specific application requirements.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SIF_DtmfGenerate (SLData_t *,	Pointer to DTMF generator coefficients
const SLData_t)	Sample rate

DESCRIPTION

This function initialises the DTMF signal generation function.

The DTMF generator coefficient table is an array of length SIGLIB_DTMF_FTABLE_LENGTH. The values in this array are initialised in this function.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_DtmfGenerate

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLError_t SDA_DtmfGenerate (SLData_t *,	Destination array pointer
const SLFixData_t,	Key code
const SLData_t,	Half peak output signal magnitude
SLData_t *,	Pointer to DTMF generator coefficients
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function generates standard DTMF tones and takes as its input the SigLib key codes. The output magnitude can be modified to suite the application.

NOTES ON USE

The function SIF_DtmfGenerate must be called prior to using this function.

The DTMF generator coefficient table is an array of length
SIGLIB_DTMF_FTABLE_LENGTH.

The parameter described as “Half peak output signal magnitude” defines the magnitude of each of the composite signals that make up the DTMF tone. I.E. The total output signal magnitude can be twice this magnitude.

This function returns: SIGLIB_ERROR if the user supplies an incorrect key code, otherwise it returns SIGLIB_NO_ERROR.

The SigLib key code can be generated from the ASCII code using the function
SUF_AsciiToKeyCode.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_DtmfGenerate, SIF_DtmfDetect, SDA_DtmfDetect,
SUF_AsciiToKeyCode, SUF_KeyCodeToAscii

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SIF_DtmfDetect (SLData_t *,	Filter state array pointer
const SLData_t,	Sample rate
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function initialises the DTMF signal generation function.

The state array is used by the Goertzel filter during the detection process, it should be of length SIGLIB_DTMF_STATE_LENGTH. The array contents are initialised to zero by this function.

The array length parameter specifies the length of the array containing the data that will be detected.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_DtmfDetect, SUF_EstimateBPFILTERLength, SUF_EstimateBPFILTERError

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLStatus_t SDA_DtmfDetect (SLData_t *, Source array pointer
SLData_t *, Detection filter state array pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function detects standard DTMF tones and returns the following information:

- The key code, which can be converted to the ASCII code using the function `SUF_KeyCodeToAscii`.
- `SIGLIB_NO_DTMF_SIGNAL` – Indicates that the signal is above the threshold but no DTMF signal has been detected.

NOTES ON USE

The function `SIF_DtmfDetect` must be called prior to using this function.

The filter state array parameter is a pointer to the state array for the Goertzel filter used in the detector.

CROSS REFERENCE

`SIF_DtmfGenerate`, `SDA_DtmfGenerate`, `SIF_DtmfDetect`,
`SDA_DtmfDetectAndValidate`, `SUF_AsciiToKeyCode`, `SUF_KeyCodeToAscii`,
`SUF_EstimateBPFILTERLength`, `SUF_EstimateBPFILTERError`

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLStatus_t SDA_DtmfDetectAndValidate (SLData_t *,    Source array pointer
    SLData_t *,    Filter state array pointer
    const SLData_t, Threshold for signal energy
    SLStatus_t *,    Previous key code pointer
    SLFixData_t *,    Key code run length pointer
    SLFixData_t *,    Key code registration flag pointer
    const SLArrayIndex_t)    Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function detects standard DTMF tones and returns the key code. This function validates the detected signal and returns the following information:

- The key code, which can be converted to the ASCII code using the function `SUF_KeyCodeToAscii`.
- `SIGLIB_NO_SIGNAL_PRESENT` – Indicates that the signal level is below the threshold.
- `SIGLIB_NO_DTMF_SIGNAL` – Indicates that the signal is above the threshold but no DTMF signal has been detected.
- `SIGLIB_DTMF_CONTINUATION` - Indicates that the signal is the same code as the previous one. This can be used along with the key code run length when trying to detect the length of a tone.

NOTES ON USE

The function `SIF_DtmfDetect` must be called prior to using this function. The filter state array parameter is a pointer to the state array for the Goertzel filter used in the detector. The threshold parameter is used to detect whether there is any signal present or not. This value should be set to a signal energy level that is slightly higher than the channel noise floor.

The previous key code parameter is used by the function to indicate what was the previously detected key. This should be initialised to `SIGLIB_NO_DTMF_SIGNAL`. The key code run length parameter is used in the function to count and return the length of the DTMF tone in number of sample arrays. The key code registration flag parameter is used by the function to register when a detected key is a continuation of a previous one. This should be initialised to `SIGLIB_FALSE`.

CROSS REFERENCE

`SIF_DtmfGenerate`, `SDA_DtmfGenerate`, `SIF_DtmfDetect`, `SDA_DtmfDetect`, `SUF_AsciiToKeyCode`, `SUF_KeyCodeToAscii`, `SUF_EstimateBPFILTERLength`, `SUF_EstimateBPFILTERError`

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLFixData_t SUF_AsciiToKeyCode (SLFixData_t) ASCII key code

DESCRIPTION

This function translates ASCII key codes to SigLib key codes.

NOTES ON USE

An invalid key code is returned as error code SIGLIB_NO_DTMF_KEY.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_DtmfGenerate, SDA_DtmfGenerate, SIF_DtmfDetect, SDA_DtmfDetect,
SUF_KeyCodeToAscii

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLFixData_t SUF_KeyCodeToAscii (SLFixData_t) ASCII key code

DESCRIPTION

This function translates SigLib key codes to ASCII key codes.

NOTES ON USE

An invalid key code is returned as error code SIGLIB_NO_DTMF_KEY.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_DtmfGenerate, SDA_DtmfGenerate, SIF_DtmfDetect, SDA_DtmfDetect,
SUF_AsciiToKeyCode

SPEECH PROCESSING FUNCTIONS (*speech.c*)

SIF_PreEmphasisFilter

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SIF_PreEmphasisFilter (SLData_t *) Pointer to filter state

DESCRIPTION

This function initialises the speech processing pre-emphasis filter function SDA_PreEmphasisFilter ().

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_PreEmphasisFilter, SIF_DeEmphasisFilter, SDA_DeEmphasisFilter.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_PreEmphasisFilter (SLData_t *, Pointer to source array
    SLData_t *, Pointer to destination array
    const SLData_t, Filter coefficient
    SLData_t *, Pointer to filter state
    const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function implements a speech processing pre-emphasis filter.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_PreEmphasisFilter, SIF_DeEmphasisFilter, SDA_DeEmphasisFilter.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SIF_DeEmphasisFilter (SLData_t *) Pointer to filter state

DESCRIPTION

This function initialises the speech processing de-emphasis filter function SDA_DeEmphasisFilter ().

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_PreEmphasisFilter, SDA_PreEmphasisFilter, SDA_DeEmphasisFilter.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_DeEmphasisFilter (SLData_t *,	Pointer to source array
SLData_t *,	Pointer to destination array
const SLData_t,	Filter coefficient
SLData_t *,	Pointer to filter state
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function implements a speech processing pre-emphasis filter.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_PreEmphasisFilter, SDA_PreEmphasisFilter, SIF_DeEmphasisFilter.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_AdpcmEncoder (const SLData_t *,      Pointer to source array
                      SLData_t *,            Pointer to destination array
                      const SLArrayIndex_t)   Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function applies a one bit per sample ADPCM encoder to an individual frame of data. The previous sample is used as the estimate for the next sample.

NOTES ON USE

This function uses the following adaptive step size algorithm:

- If the estimate is lower than the input then double the step size and transmit +1
- If the estimate is higher than the input then restart with the default step size and transmit 0

The first sample in the destination frame is the first sample of the input frame so that transmission errors do not propagate beyond a single frame.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_AdpcmEncoderDebug, SDA_AdpcmDecoder.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_AdpcmEncoderDebug (const SLData_t *,      Pointer to source array
                           SLData_t *,            Pointer to destination array
                           SLData_t *,            Pointer to estimate array
                           const SLArrayIndex_t)   Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function applies a one bit per sample ADPCM encoder to an individual frame of data. The previous sample is used as the estimate for the next sample.

NOTES ON USE

This function uses the following adaptive step size algorithm:

- If the estimate is lower than the input then double the step size and transmit +1
- If the estimate is higher than the input then restart with the default step size and transmit 0

The first sample in the destination frame is the first sample of the input frame so that transmission errors do not propagate beyond a single frame.

This function saves the estimate array so that it can be compared to the output of the decoder - they should be identical.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_AdpcmEncoder, SDA_AdpcmDecoder.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_AdpcmDecoder (const SLData_t *,      Pointer to source array
                      SLData_t *,           Pointer to destination array
                      const SLArrayIndex_t)   Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function applies a one bit per sample ADPCM decoder to an individual frame of data. The previous sample is used as the estimate for the next sample.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_AdpcmEncoder, SDA_AdpcmEncoderDebug.

MINIMUM AND MAXIMUM FUNCTIONS (*minmax.c*)

SDA_Max

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDA_Max (const SLData_t *, Array pointer
 const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the maximum data value in the array.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Multiply, SDA_Divide, SDA_Min, SDA_Scale, SDA_AbsMax,
SDA_AbsMin, SDA_Middle, SDA_MaxIndex, SDA_AbsMaxIndex,
SDA_MinIndex, SDA_AbsMinIndex, SDA_LocalMax, SDA_LocalAbsMax,
SDA_LocalMin, SDA_LocalAbsMin, SDA_NLargest, SDA_NSmallest.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDA_AbsMax (const SLData_t *, Array pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the maximum absolute data value in the array.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_Multiply, SDA_Divide, SDA_Max, SDA_Min, SDA_Scale,
SDA_AbsMin, SDA_Middle, SDA_MaxIndex, SDA_AbsMaxIndex,
SDA_MinIndex, SDA_AbsMinIndex, SDA_LocalMax, SDA_LocalAbsMax,
SDA_LocalMin, SDA_LocalAbsMin, SDA_NLargest, SDA_NSmallest.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDA_Min (const SLData_t *, Array pointer
 const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the minimum data value in the array.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_Multiply, SDA_Divide, SDA_Max, SDA_Scale, SDA_AbsMax,
SDA_AbsMin, SDA_Middle, SDA_MaxIndex, SDA_AbsMaxIndex,
SDA_MinIndex, SDA_AbsMinIndex, SDA_LocalMax, SDA_LocalAbsMax,
SDA_LocalMin, SDA_LocalAbsMin, SDA_NLargest, SDA_NSmallest.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDA_AbsMin (const SLData_t *, Array pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the minimum absolute data value in the array.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_Multiply, SDA_Divide, SDA_Max, SDA_Min, SDA_Scale,
SDA_AbsMax, SDA_Middle, SDA_MaxIndex, SDA_AbsMaxIndex,
SDA_MinIndex, SDA_AbsMinIndex, SDA_LocalMax, SDA_LocalAbsMax,
SDA_LocalMin, SDA_LocalAbsMin, SDA_NLargest, SDA_NSmallest.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDA_Middle (const SLData_t *, Array pointer
 const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the middle data value in the array.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_Multiply, SDA_Divide, SDA_Max, SDA_Min, SDA_Scale,
SDA_AbsMax, SDA_AbsMin, SDA_MaxIndex, SDA_AbsMaxIndex,
SDA_MinIndex, SDA_AbsMinIndex, SDA_LocalMax, SDA_LocalAbsMax,
SDA_LocalMin, SDA_LocalAbsMin, SDA_NLargest, SDA_NSmallest.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDA_Range (const SLData_t *, Array pointer
 const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the range of the values in the array. I.E. the difference between the maximum and the minimum values.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_Multiply, SDA_Divide, SDA_Max, SDA_Min, SDA_Middle,
SDA_Scale, SDA_AbsMax, SDA_AbsMin, SDA_MaxIndex, SDA_AbsMaxIndex,
SDA_MinIndex, SDA_AbsMinIndex, SDA_LocalMax, SDA_LocalAbsMax,
SDA_LocalMin, SDA_LocalAbsMin, SDA_NLargest, SDA_NSmallest.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLArrayIndex_t SDA_MaxIndex (const SLData_t *, Array pointer
 const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the location of the maximum data value in the array.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_Multiply, SDA_Divide, SDA_Max, SDA_Min, SDA_Scale,
SDA_AbsMax, SDA_AbsMin, SDA_Middle, SDA_AbsMaxIndex, SDA_MinIndex,
SDA_AbsMinIndex, SDA_NLargest, SDA_NSmallest.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLArrayIndex_t SDA_AbsMaxIndex (const SLData_t *, Array pointer
 const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the location of the maximum absolute data value in the array.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_Multiply, SDA_Divide, SDA_Max, SDA_Min, SDA_AbsMax,
SDA_Scale, SDA_AbsMin, SDA_Middle, SDA_MaxIndex, SDA_MinIndex,
SDA_AbsMinIndex, SDA_NLargest, SDA_NSmallest.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLArrayIndex_t SDA_MinIndex (const SLData_t *, Array pointer
 const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the location of the minimum data value in the array.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_Multiply, SDA_Divide, SDA_Max, SDA_Scale, SDA_AbsMax,
SDA_Min, SDA_AbsMin, SDA_Middle, SDA_MaxIndex, SDA_AbsMaxIndex,
SDA_AbsMinIndex, SDA_NLargest, SDA_NSmallest.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLArrayIndex_t SDA_AbsMinIndex (const SLData_t *, Array pointer
 const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the location of the minimum absolute data value in the array.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_Multiply, SDA_Divide, SDA_Max, SDA_Min, SDA_AbsMin,
SDA_Scale, SDA_AbsMax, SDA_Middle, SDA_MaxIndex, SDA_AbsMaxIndex,
SDA_MinIndex, SDA_NLargest, SDA_NSmallest.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDS_Max (const SLData_t, Sample 1
 const SLData_t) Sample 2

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the maximum value of the two samples.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_Max, SDA_Min, SDA_Scale, SDA_AbsMax, SDA_AbsMin,
SDA_MaxIndex, SDA_AbsMaxIndex, SDA_MinIndex, SDA_AbsMinIndex,
SDA_NLargest, SDA_NSmallest.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDS_AbsMax (const SLData_t, Sample 1
 const SLData_t) Sample 2

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the maximum absolute value of the two samples.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_Max, SDA_Min, SDA_Scale, SDA_AbsMax, SDA_AbsMin,
SDA_MaxIndex, SDA_AbsMaxIndex, SDA_MinIndex, SDA_AbsMinIndex,
SDA_NLargest, SDA_NSmallest.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDS_Min (const SLData_t,	Sample 1
const SLData_t)	Sample 2

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the minimum value of the two samples.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_Max, SDA_Min, SDA_Scale, SDA_AbsMax, SDA_AbsMin,
SDA_MaxIndex, SDA_AbsMaxIndex, SDA_MinIndex, SDA_AbsMinIndex,
SDA_NLargest, SDA_NSmallest.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDS_AbsMin (const SLData_t, Sample 1
 const SLData_t) Sample 2

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the minimum absolute value of the two samples.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_Max, SDA_Min, SDA_Scale, SDA_AbsMax, SDA_AbsMin,
SDA_MaxIndex, SDA_AbsMaxIndex, SDA_MinIndex, SDA_AbsMinIndex,
SDA_NLargest, SDA_NSmallest.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLData_t SDA_LocalMax (const SLData_t *pSrc,  Pointer to source array
                      const SLArrayIndex_t,    Location
                      const SLArrayIndex_t,    Number (N) of samples to search either
side of centre
                      const SLArrayIndex_t)    Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the maximum data value in a small section of an array. The section is defined as the region around (*N* samples either side of) a centre location. E.g. If the location is 15 and *N* is 10 then the function will search the 21 samples centred on the 15th sample in the array.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Max, SDA_AbsMax, SDA_AbsMin, SDA_Middle, SDA_MaxIndex, SDA_AbsMaxIndex, SDA_MinIndex, SDA_AbsMinIndex, SDA_LocalMax, SDA_LocalAbsMax, SDA_LocalMin, SDA_LocalAbsMin, SDA_NLargest, SDA_NSmallest.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLData_t SDA_LocalAbsMax (const SLData_t *pSrc,    Pointer to source array
                        const SLArrayIndex_t,      Location
                        const SLArrayIndex_t,      Number (N) of samples to search either
side of centre
                        const SLArrayIndex_t)      Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the maximum of the absolute data values within in a small section of an array. The section is defined as the region around (*N* samples either side of) a centre location. E.g. If the location is 15 and *N* is 10 then the function will search the 21 samples centred on the 15th sample in the array.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Max, SDA_AbsMax, SDA_AbsMin, SDA_Middle, SDA_MaxIndex, SDA_AbsMaxIndex, SDA_MinIndex, SDA_AbsMinIndex, SDA_LocalMax, SDA_LocalMin, SDA_LocalAbsMin, SDA_NLargest, SDA_NSmallest.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDA_LocalMin (const SLData_t *pSrc, Pointer to source array
 const SLArrayIndex_t, Location
 const SLArrayIndex_t, Number (N) of samples to search either
side of centre
 const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the maximum data value in a small section of an array. The section is defined as the region around (N samples either side of) a centre location. E.g. If the location is 15 and N is 10 then the function will search the 21 samples centred on the 15th sample in the array.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Max, SDA_AbsMax, SDA_AbsMin, SDA_Middle, SDA_MaxIndex,
SDA_AbsMaxIndex, SDA_MinIndex, SDA_AbsMinIndex, SDA_LocalMax,
SDA_LocalAbsMax, SDA_LocalAbsMin, SDA_NLargest, SDA_NSmallest.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDA_LocalAbsMin (const SLData_t *pSrc, Pointer to source array
 const SLArrayIndex_t, Location
 const SLArrayIndex_t, Number (N) of samples to search either
side of centre
 const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the minimum of the absolute data values within a small section of an array. The section is defined as the region around (N samples either side of) a centre location. E.g. If the location is 15 and N is 10 then the function will search the 21 samples centred on the 15th sample in the array.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Max, SDA_AbsMax, SDA_AbsMin, SDA_Middle, SDA_MaxIndex,
SDA_AbsMaxIndex, SDA_MinIndex, SDA_AbsMinIndex, SDA_LocalMax,
SDA_LocalAbsMax, SDA_LocalMin, SDA_LocalAbsMin, SDA_NLargest,
SDA_NSmallest.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_Max2 (const SLData_t *,	Source array pointer #1
const SLData_t *,	Source array pointer #2
SLData_t *,	Destination array pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array lengths

DESCRIPTION

For each sample in the source arrays, this function selects the maximum value and store it in the destination array.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_Max, SDA_AbsMax, SDA_Min, SDA_AbsMin, SDA_AbsMax2, SDA_Min2, SDA_AbsMin2, SDA_NLargest, SDA_NSmallest.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_AbsMax2 (const SLData_t *,	Source array pointer #1
const SLData_t *,	Source array pointer #2
SLData_t *,	Destination array pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array lengths

DESCRIPTION

For each sample in the source arrays, this function selects the maximum of the absolute values and store it in the destination array.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_Max, SDA_AbsMax, SDA_Min, SDA_AbsMin, SDA_Max2, SDA_SignedAbsMax2, SDA_Min2, SDA_AbsMin2, SDA_NLargest, SDA_NSmallest.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_SignedAbsMax2 (const SLData_t *,      Source array pointer #1
                        const SLData_t *,      Source array pointer #2
                        SLData_t *,            Destination array pointer
                        const SLArrayIndex_t)   Array lengths
```

DESCRIPTION

For each sample in the source arrays, select the maximum of the absolute value and store the corresponding original value (including sign) in the destination array.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_Max, SDA_AbsMax, SDA_Min, SDA_AbsMin, SDA_Max2,
SDA_Min2, SDA_AbsMin2, SDA_NLargest, SDA_NSmallest.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_Min2 (const SLData_t *,	Source array pointer #1
const SLData_t *,	Source array pointer #2
SLData_t *,	Destination array pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array lengths

DESCRIPTION

For each sample in the source arrays, this function selects the minimum value and store it in the destination array.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_Max, SDA_AbsMax, SDA_Min, SDA_AbsMin, SDA_Max2, SDA_AbsMax2, SDA_AbsMin2, SDA_NLargest, SDA_NSmallest.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_AbsMin2 (const SLData_t *,	Source array pointer #1
const SLData_t *,	Source array pointer #2
SLData_t *,	Destination array pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array lengths

DESCRIPTION

For each sample in the source arrays, this function selects the minimum of the absolute values and store it in the destination array.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_Max, SDA_AbsMax, SDA_Min, SDA_AbsMin, SDA_SignedAbsMin2, SDA_Max2, SDA_AbsMax2, SDA_Min2, SDA_NLargest, SDA_NSmallest.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_SignedAbsMin2 (const SLData_t *,      Source array pointer #1
                        const SLData_t *,      Source array pointer #2
                        SLData_t *,            Destination array pointer
                        const SLArrayIndex_t)    Array lengths
```

DESCRIPTION

For each sample in the source arrays, select the minimum of the absolute value and store the corresponding original value (including sign) in the destination array.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Max, SDA_AbsMax, SDA_Min, SDA_AbsMin, SDA_Max2,
SDA_Min2, SDA_AbsMin2, SDA_NLargest, SDA_NSmallest.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_PeakHold (const SLData_t *,	Source array pointer
SLData_t *,	Peak array pointer
const SLData_t,	Peak decay rate
SLData_t *,	Previous peak value pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array lengths

DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the envelope of the signal using a decaying peak hold. The decay can be set on the peak signal, to enable it to follow decreasing signals. The pseudo code for the algorithm used is:

```
If (input > peak)  
    peak = input;  
peak *= decay rate;
```

NOTES ON USE

The “pointer to previous peak value” parameter is used so that the function is re-entrant and so that multiple streams can be processed simultaneously. It should be initialised to zero or other suitable value before calling this function. When the peak array is initialized to zero this algorithm only works on positive numbers.

CROSS REFERENCE

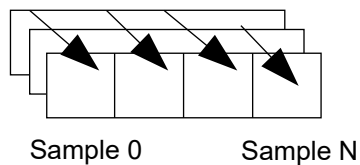
SDA_PeakHoldPerSample

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_PeakHoldPerSample (const SLData_t *, Source array pointer
                           SLData_t *,           Output peak array pointer
                           const SLData_t,       Peak decay rate
                           const SLArrayIndex_t) Array lengths
```

DESCRIPTION

This function calculates a "per sample" peak hold across successive arrays, the decay can be set on the peak signal, to enable it to follow the envelope of the signal. The following diagram shows how the system is configured:

**NOTES ON USE**

The array holding the peak values should be maintained in the calling function so that the data can be passed to SDA_PeakHoldPerSample () on the next iteration.

You are advised to clear the peak array to zero, for example using SDA_Clear () function, before calling SDA_PeakHoldPerSample () for the first time.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_PeakHold

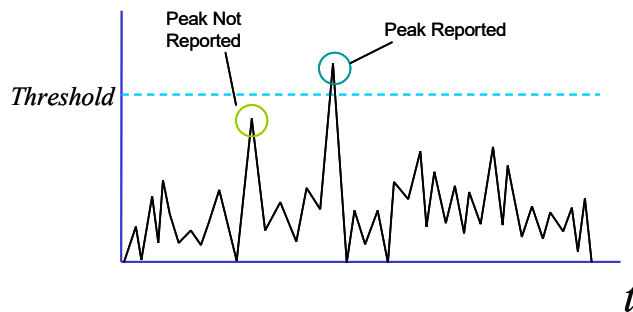
PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLArrayIndex_t SDA_DetectFirstPeakOverThreshold (const SLData_t *, Pointer to
 source array
 const SLData_t, Threshold over which peak will be detected
 const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the index of the first peak in an array that is over the given threshold. This function is commonly used with the FFT function for tracking the fundamental frequency in a signal.

The operation of this function is showed in the following diagram.



NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDS_Round (const SLData_t,      Data sample
                 const enum SLRoundingMode_t)  Rounding mode
```

DESCRIPTION

This function rounds the sample to an integer, according to the rounding mode parameter which may take one of the following parameters:

```
SIGLIB_ROUND_UP,
SIGLIB_ROUND_TO_NEAREST,
SIGLIB_ROUND_DOWN,
SIGLIB_ROUND_TO_ZERO,
SIGLIB_ROUND_AWAY_FROM_ZERO.
```

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_Round

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

<code>void SDA_Round (const SLData_t *,</code>	Source array pointer
<code>SLData_t *,</code>	Destination array pointer
<code>const enum SLRoundingMode_t,</code>	Rounding mode
<code>const SLArrayIndex_t)</code>	Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function rounds the samples in the array to integers, according to the rounding mode parameter which may take one of the following parameters:

```
SIGLIB_ROUND_UP,  
SIGLIB_ROUND_TO_NEAREST,  
SIGLIB_ROUND_DOWN,  
SIGLIB_ROUND_TO_ZERO,  
SIGLIB_ROUND_AWAY_FROM_ZERO.
```

NOTES ON USE

The source and destination pointers can point to the same array.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS_Round

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDS_Clip (const SLData_t, Input sample
 const SLData_t, Value to clip to
 const enum SLClipMode_t) Direction to clip signal

DESCRIPTION

This function clips (I.E. clamps) the data sample to a given value, depending on the clip mode:

Clip Mode	Description
SIGLIB_CLIP_ABOVE	Clip any values above the clip level
SIGLIB_CLIP_BELOW	Clip any values below the clip level
SIGLIB_CLIP_BOTH	Clip any values above the clip level and any below the negative of the clip level
SIGLIB_CLIP_BOTH_BELOW	Clip any positive values below the clip level and any negative values above the negative of the given clip level

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Clip, SDS_Threshold, SDA_Threshold, SDS_SoftThreshold, SDA_SoftThreshold, SDS_ThresholdAndClamp, SDA_ThresholdAndClamp, SDS_Clamp, SDA_Clamp, SDA_TestOverThreshold, SDA_TestAbsOverThreshold, SDS_SetMinValue, SDA_SetMinValue.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_Clip (const SLData_t *,           Source array pointer
               SLData_t *,               Destination array pointer
               const SLData_t,           Clip level
               const enum SLClipMode_t,   Direction to clip signal
               const SLArrayIndex_t)      Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function clips (I.E. clamps) the data in the array to a given value, depending on the clip mode:

Clip Mode	Description
SIGLIB_CLIP_ABOVE	Clip any values above the clip level
SIGLIB_CLIP_BELOW	Clip any values below the clip level
SIGLIB_CLIP_BOTH	Clip any values above the clip level and any below the negative of the clip level
SIGLIB_CLIP_BOTH_BELOW	Clip any positive values below the clip level and any negative values above the negative of the given clip level

NOTES ON USE

This function can operate on separate source and destination arrays or the source and destination pointers can reference the same array, for in-place operation.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS_Clip, SDS_Threshold, SDA_Threshold, SDS_SoftThreshold, SDA_SoftThreshold, SDS_ThresholdAndClamp, SDA_ThresholdAndClamp, SDS_Clamp, SDA_Clamp, SDA_TestOverThreshold, SDA_TestAbsOverThreshold, SDS_SetMinValue, SDA_SetMinValue.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDS_Threshold (const SLData_t,      Input sample
                   const SLData_t,      Threshold
                   const enum SLThresholdMode_t)  Threshold type
```

DESCRIPTION

This function applies a threshold to the sample. If the input is \geq the threshold then it is passed to the output array, otherwise the output is set to zero.

The two types of threshold function are: `SIGLIB_SINGLE_SIDED_THOLD` and `SIGLIB_DOUBLE_SIDED_THOLD` where single sided sets values less than the threshold value to zero. The double sided threshold sets values between the threshold value and minus the threshold value to zero. All other values are left unchanged.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDS_Clip, SDA_Clip, SDA_Threshold, SDS_SoftThreshold, SDA_SoftThreshold, SDS_ThresholdAndClamp, SDA_ThresholdAndClamp, SDS_Clamp, SDA_Clamp, SDA_TestOverThreshold, SDA_TestAbsOverThreshold, SDS_SetMinValue, SDA_SetMinValue.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_Threshold (const SLData_t *,	Source array pointer
SLData_t *,	Destination array pointer
const SLData_t,	Threshold
const enum SLThresholdMode_t,	Threshold type
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function applies a threshold to the samples in the array. If the input is \geq the threshold then it is passed to the output array, otherwise the output is set to zero.

The two types of threshold function are: `SIGLIB_SINGLE_SIDED_THOLD` and `SIGLIB_DOUBLE_SIDED_THOLD` where single sided sets values less than the threshold value to zero. The double sided threshold sets values between the threshold value and minus the threshold value to zero. All other values are left unchanged.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDS_Clip, SDA_Clip, SDS_Threshold, SDS_SoftThreshold,
SDA_SoftThreshold, SDS_ThresholdAndClamp, SDA_ThresholdAndClamp,
SDS_Clamp, SDA_Clamp, SDA_TestOverThreshold, SDA_TestAbsOverThreshold,
SDS_SetMinValue, SDA_SetMinValue.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDS_SoftThreshold (const SLData_t,   Input sample  
                        const SLData_t)   Threshold
```

DESCRIPTION

This function applies a “soft threshold” to the sample. The soft threshold sets values between the threshold value and minus the threshold value to zero. All other values have the threshold value subtracted from them. This operation removes the amplitude discontinuity that is present in the double-sided threshold function.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDS_Clip, SDA_Clip, SDS_Threshold, SDA_Threshold,
SDA_SoftThreshold, SDS_ThresholdAndClamp, SDA_ThresholdAndClamp,
SDS_Clamp, SDA_Clamp, SDA_TestOverThreshold, SDA_TestAbsOverThreshold,
SDS_SetMinValue, SDA_SetMinValue.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_SoftThreshold (const SLData_t *,	Source array pointer
SLData_t *,	Destination array pointer
const SLData_t,	Threshold
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function applies a “soft threshold” to the samples in the array. The soft threshold sets values between the threshold value and minus the threshold value to zero. All other values have the threshold value subtracted from them. This operation removes the amplitude discontinuity that is present in the double-sided threshold function.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDS_Clip, SDA_Clip, SDS_Threshold, SDA_Threshold, SDS_SoftThreshold, SDS_ThresholdAndClamp, SDA_ThresholdAndClamp, SDS_Clamp, SDA_Clamp, SDA_TestOverThreshold, SDA_TestAbsOverThreshold, SDS_SetMinValue, SDA_SetMinValue.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDS_ThresholdAndClamp (const SLData_t *, Input value
                           const SLData_t,           Threshold
                           const SLData_t,           Clamp level
                           const enum SLThresholdMode_t) Threshold type
```

DESCRIPTION

This function applies a threshold to the sample. If the input is \geq than the threshold then it is set to the clamp value, otherwise the output is set to zero.

The two types of threshold function are: `SIGLIB_SINGLE_SIDED_THOLD` and `SIGLIB_DOUBLE_SIDED_THOLD` where single sided sets values less than the threshold value to zero. The double sided threshold sets values between the threshold value and minus the threshold value to zero. All other values are set to the clamp value.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDS_Clip, SDA_Clip, SDS_Threshold, SDA_Threshold, SDS_SoftThreshold, SDA_SoftThreshold, SDA_ThresholdAndClamp, SDS_Clamp, SDA_Clamp, SDA_TestOverThreshold, SDA_TestAbsOverThreshold, SDS_SetMinValue, SDA_SetMinValue.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_ThresholdAndClamp (const SLData_t *, Source array pointer
    SLData_t *,                Destination array pointer
    const SLData_t,            Threshold
    const SLData_t,            Clamp level
    const enum SLThresholdMode_t, Threshold type
    const SLArrayIndex_t)      Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function applies a threshold to the samples in the array. If the input is \geq than the threshold then it is set to the clamp value, otherwise the output is set to zero.

The two types of threshold function are: `SIGLIB_SINGLE_SIDED_THOLD` and `SIGLIB_DOUBLE_SIDED_THOLD` where single sided sets values less than the threshold value to zero. The double sided threshold sets values between the threshold value and minus the threshold value to zero. All other values are set to the clamp value.

NOTES ON USE

This function is very useful for creating a data mask that can be applied to other arrays. For example, setting the clamp level to 1 creates a mask where values above the threshold are 1 and all other values are 0. Then multiplying the second array by the mask will only provide samples in the mask frame through.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS_Clip, SDA_Clip, SDS_Threshold, SDA_Threshold, SDS_SoftThreshold, SDA_SoftThreshold, SDS_ThresholdAndClamp, SDS_Clamp, SDA_Clamp, SDA_TestOverThreshold, SDA_TestAbsOverThreshold, SDS_SetMinValue, SDA_SetMinValue.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDS_Clamp (const SLData_t *,	Input sample
const SLData_t,	Threshold
const SLData_t,	Clamp value
const enum SLThresholdMode_t)	Threshold type

DESCRIPTION

This function thresholds the sample. If the level is above the threshold then set the value to the clamping value. The two types of clamping function are: SIGLIB_SINGLE_SIDED_THOLD and SIGLIB_DOUBLE_SIDED_THOLD where single sided sets values above the threshold value to the clamping value. The double sided threshold sets values above the threshold value and below the negative of the threshold value to the clamping value or minus the clamping value respectively. All other values are left unchanged.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDS_Clip, SDA_Clip, SDS_Threshold, SDA_Threshold, SDS_SoftThreshold, SDA_SoftThreshold, SDS_ThresholdAndClamp, SDA_ThresholdAndClamp, SDA_Clamp, SDA_TestOverThreshold, SDA_TestAbsOverThreshold, SDS_SetMinValue, SDA_SetMinValue.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_Clamp (const SLData_t *,	Source array pointer
SLData_t *,	Destination array pointer
const SLData_t,	Threshold
const SLData_t,	Clamp value
const enum SLThresholdMode_t,	Threshold type
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function thresholds the samples in the array. If the level is above the threshold then set the value to the clamping value. The two types of clamping function are: SIGLIB_SINGLE_SIDED_THOLD and SIGLIB_DOUBLE_SIDED_THOLD where single sided sets values above the threshold value to the clamping value. The double sided threshold sets values above the threshold value and below the negative of the threshold value to the clamping value or minus the clamping value respectively. All other values are left unchanged.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS_Clip, SDA_Clip, SDS_Threshold, SDA_Threshold, SDS_SoftThreshold, SDA_SoftThreshold, SDS_ThresholdAndClamp, SDA_ThresholdAndClamp, SDS_Clamp, SDA_TestOverThreshold, SDA_TestAbsOverThreshold, SDS_SetMinValue, SDA_SetMinValue.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLArrayIndex_t SDA_TestOverThreshold (const SLData_t *, Source array pointer
const SLData_t, Threshold
const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function tests the thresholds of the samples in the array. If any sample in the array is over the threshold level then this function will return the location of the first sample that is greater than the threshold. If there are no samples greater than the threshold then this function will return: SIGLIB_SIGNAL_NOT_PRESENT.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDS_Clip, SDA_Clip, SDS_Threshold, SDA_Threshold, SDS_SoftThreshold, SDA_SoftThreshold, SDS_ThresholdAndClamp, SDA_ThresholdAndClamp, SDS_Clamp, SDA_Clamp, SDA_TestAbsOverThreshold, SDS_SetMinValue, SDA_SetMinValue.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLArrayIndex_t SDA_TestAbsOverThreshold (const SLData_t *, Source pointer
const SLData_t, Threshold
const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function tests the absolute thresholds of the samples in the array. If the absolute value of any sample in the array is over the threshold level then this function will return the location of the first sample that has an absolute value greater than the threshold. If there are no samples greater than the threshold then this function will return: SIGLIB_SIGNAL_NOT_PRESENT.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDS_Clip, SDA_Clip, SDS_Threshold, SDA_Threshold, SDS_SoftThreshold, SDA_SoftThreshold, SDS_ThresholdAndClamp, SDA_ThresholdAndClamp, SDS_Clamp, SDA_Clamp, SDA_TestOverThreshold, SDS_SetMinValue, SDA_SetMinValue.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_SelectMax (const SLData_t *,	Source array pointer 1
const SLData_t *,	Source array pointer 2
SLData_t *,	Destination array pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Sample array length

DESCRIPTION

This function selects the maximum level from either array 1 or array 2 and place it in the destination array.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_SelectMin, SDA_SelectMagnitudeSquaredMax,
SDA_SelectMagnitudeSquaredMin

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_SelectMin (const SLData_t *,	Source array pointer 1
const SLData_t *,	Source array pointer 2
SLData_t *,	Destination array pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Sample array length

DESCRIPTION

This function selects the minimum level from either array 1 or array 2 and place it in the destination array.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_SelectMax, SDA_SelectMagnitudeSquaredMax,
SDA_SelectMagnitudeSquaredMin

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_SelectMagnitudeSquaredMax (const SLData_t *,      Real Source 1  
    const SLData_t *,      Imaginary source array 1 pointer  
    const SLData_t *,      Real source array 2 pointer  
    const SLData_t *,      Imaginary source array 2 pointer  
    SLData_t *,            Real destination array pointer  
    SLData_t *,            Imaginary destination array pointer  
    const SLArrayIndex_t)   Sample array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function selects the maximum magnitude squared level from either arrays 1 (real + complex) or arrays 2 (real + complex) and place it in the destination arrays (real + complex).

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_SelectMax, SDA_SelectMin, SDA_SelectMagnitudeSquaredMin

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_SelectMagnitudeSquaredMin (const SLData_t *, Real src. array 1
pointer
 const SLData_t *, Imaginary source array 1 pointer
 const SLData_t *, Real source array 2 pointer
 const SLData_t *, Imaginary source array 2 pointer
 SLData_t *, Real destination array pointer
 SLData_t *, Imaginary destination array pointer
 const SLArrayIndex_t) Sample array length

DESCRIPTION

This function selects the minimum magnitude squared level from either arrays 1 (real + complex) or arrays 2 (real + complex) and place it in the destination arrays (real + complex).

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_SelectMax, SDA_SelectMin, SDA_SelectMagnitudeSquaredMax

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDS_SetMinValue (const SLData_t, Input Sample
 const SLData_t) Minimum value

DESCRIPTION

This function sets the minimum sample value i.e.:

 if the value is positive (or zero) and below the minimum value then it is set to the minimum value

 if the value is negative and above the minimum value then it is set to the negative of the minimum value

 otherwise the value is unchanged

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

 SDS_Clip, SDA_Clip, SDS_Threshold, SDA_Threshold, SDS_SoftThreshold, SDA_SoftThreshold, SDS_ThresholdAndClamp, SDA_ThresholdAndClamp, SDS_Clamp, SDA_Clamp, SDA_TestOverThreshold, SDA_TestAbsOverThreshold, SDA_SetMinValue.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_SetMinValue (const SLData_t *, Pointer to source array
                      SLData_t *,      Pointer to destination array
                      const SLData_t,   Minimum value
                      const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function sets the minimum value in the source array i.e.:

if the value is positive (or zero) and below the minimum value then it is set to the minimum value

if the value is negative and above the minimum value then it is set to the negative of the minimum value

otherwise the value is unchanged

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDS_Clip, SDA_Clip, SDS_Threshold, SDA_Threshold, SDS_SoftThreshold, SDA_SoftThreshold, SDS_ThresholdAndClamp, SDA_ThresholdAndClamp, SDS_Clamp, SDA_Clamp, SDA_TestOverThreshold, SDA_TestAbsOverThreshold, SDS_SetMinValue.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDA_PeakToAverageRatio (const SLData_t *, Pointer to source data
 const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the ratio of the peak value to the average value of the input scalar data.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Max, SDA_Mean, SDA_PeakToAveragePowerRatio,
SDA_PeakToAveragePowerRatioDB, SDA_PeakToAverageRatioComplex,
SDA_PeakToAveragePowerRatioComplex,
SDA_PeakToAveragePowerRatioComplexDB

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDA_PeakToAveragePowerRatio (const SLData_t *, Pointer to source
const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the ratio of the peak power to the average power of the input scalar data.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Max, SDA_Mean, SDA_PeakToAverageRatio,
SDA_PeakToAveragePowerRatioDB, SDA_PeakToAverageRatioComplex,
SDA_PeakToAveragePowerRatioComplex,
SDA_PeakToAveragePowerRatioComplexDB

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDA_PeakToAveragePowerRatioDB (const SLData_t *, Pointer to source
const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the ratio of the peak power to the average power, in dB, of the input scalar data.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Max, SDA_Mean, SDA_PeakToAverageRatio,
SDA_PeakToAveragePowerRatio, SDA_PeakToAverageRatioComplex,
SDA_PeakToAveragePowerRatioComplex,
SDA_PeakToAveragePowerRatioComplexDB

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDA_PeakToAverageRatioComplex (const SLData_t *, Pointer to real source array

const SLData_t *,

const SLArrayIndex_t)

Pointer to imaginary source array

Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the ratio of the peak value to the average value of the input complex data.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Max, SDA_Mean, SDA_PeakToAverageRatio,
SDA_PeakToAveragePowerRatio, SDA_PeakToAveragePowerRatioDB,
SDA_PeakToAveragePowerRatioComplex,
SDA_PeakToAveragePowerRatioComplexDB

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDA_PeakToAveragePowerRatioComplex (const SLData_t *, Pointer to real source array

const SLData_t *,

Pointer to imaginary source array

const SLArrayIndex_t)

Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the ratio of the peak power to the average power of the input complex data.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Max, SDA_Mean, SDA_PeakToAverageRatio,
SDA_PeakToAveragePowerRatio, SDA_PeakToAveragePowerRatioDB,
SDA_PeakToAverageRatioComplex, SDA_PeakToAveragePowerRatioComplexDB

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDA_PeakToAveragePowerRatioComplexDB (const SLData_t *,
 Pointer to real source array
 const SLData_t *, Pointer to imaginary source array
 const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the ratio of the peak power to the average power, in dB, of the input complex data.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_Max, SDA_Mean, SDA_PeakToAverageRatio,
SDA_PeakToAveragePowerRatio, SDA_PeakToAveragePowerRatioDB,
SDA_PeakToAverageRatioComplex, SDA_PeakToAveragePowerRatioComplex

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_MovePeakTowardsDeadBand (const SLData_t *,   Pointer to source array
                                   SLData_t *,         Pointer to destination array
                                   const SLArrayIndex_t, Dead-band low-point
                                   const SLArrayIndex_t, Dead-band high-point
                                   const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function locates the peak value and then shifts all of the data so that the peak moves towards the dead-band. The function accepts a dead-band, within which the data is not shifted.

This function shifts the peak by one location on each iteration.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SIF_Envelope (SLData_t *) Pointer to filter state variable

DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the envelope detection function.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDS_Envelope, SDA_Envelope, SIF_EnvelopeRMS, SDS_EnvelopeRMS,
SDA_EnvelopeRMS, SIF_EnvelopeHilbert, SDS_EnvelopeHilbert,
SDA_EnvelopeHilbert

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t	SDS_Envelope (const SLData_t,	Source sample
const SLData_t,		Attack coefficient
const SLData_t,		Decay coefficient
SLData_t *)		Pointer to filter state variable

DESCRIPTION

This function generates an envelope of the input sequence using a single one-pole filter.

NOTES ON USE

A larger one pole filter coefficient leads to a smoother response but may miss high frequency artefacts.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_Envelope, SDA_Envelope, SIF_EnvelopeRMS, SDS_EnvelopeRMS,
SDA_EnvelopeRMS, SIF_EnvelopeHilbert, SDS_EnvelopeHilbert,
SDA_EnvelopeHilbert

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_Envelope (const SLData_t *,	Pointer to source array
SLData_t *,	Pointer to destination array
const SLData_t,	Attack coefficient
const SLData_t,	Decay coefficient
SLData_t *,	Pointer to filter state variable
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Input array length

DESCRIPTION

This function generates an envelope of the input sequence using a single one-pole filter.

NOTES ON USE

A larger one pole filter coefficient leads to a smoother response but may miss high frequency artefacts.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_Envelope, SDS_Envelope, SIF_EnvelopeRMS, SDS_EnvelopeRMS, SDA_EnvelopeRMS, SIF_EnvelopeHilbert, SDS_EnvelopeHilbert, SDA_EnvelopeHilbert

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SIF_EnvelopeRMS (SLData_t *) Pointer to filter state variable

DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the envelope detection function, with RMS.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_Envelope, SDS_Envelope, SDA_Envelope, SDS_EnvelopeRMS,
SDA_EnvelopeRMS, SIF_EnvelopeHilbert, SDS_EnvelopeHilbert,
SDA_EnvelopeHilbert

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDS_EnvelopeRMS (const SLData_t, Source sample
 const SLData_t, Attack coefficient
 const SLData_t, Decay coefficient
 SLData_t *) Pointer to filter state variable

DESCRIPTION

This function generates an envelope of the input sequence using a single one-pole filter, with RMS.

NOTES ON USE

A larger one pole filter coefficient leads to a smoother response but may miss high frequency artefacts.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_Envelope, SDS_Envelope, SDA_Envelope, SIF_EnvelopeRMS,
SDA_EnvelopeRMS, SIF_EnvelopeHilbert, SDS_EnvelopeHilbert,
SDA_EnvelopeHilbert

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_EnvelopeRMS (const SLData_t *,      Pointer to source array
                     SLData_t *,           Pointer to destination array
                     const SLData_t,       Attack coefficient
                     const SLData_t,       Decay coefficient
                     SLData_t *,           Pointer to filter state variable
                     const SLArrayIndex_t) Input array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function generates an envelope of the input sequence using a single one-pole filter, with RMS.

NOTES ON USE

A larger one pole filter coefficient leads to a smoother response but may miss high frequency artefacts.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_Envelope, SDS_Envelope, SDA_Envelope, SIF_EnvelopeRMS,
SDS_EnvelopeRMS, SIF_EnvelopeHilbert, SDS_EnvelopeHilbert,
SDA_EnvelopeHilbert

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SIF_EnvelopeHilbert (SLData_t *,	Pointer to Hilbert transform filter
coefficient array	
SLData_t *,	Pointer to filter state array
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to filter index
SLData_t *,	Pointer to filter delay compensator array
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Filter length
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Filter group delay
SLData_t *)	Pointer to one-pole state variable

DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the envelope detection function using the Hilbert transform.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF_Envelope, SDS_Envelope, SDA_Envelope, SIF_EnvelopeRMS,
SDS_EnvelopeRMS, SDA_EnvelopeRMS SDS_EnvelopeHilbert,
SDA_EnvelopeHilbert

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDS_EnvelopeHilbert (const SLData_t, Source sample
const SLData_t *, Pointer to Hilbert transform filter
coefficient array
SLData_t *, Pointer to filter state array
SLArrayIndex_t *, Pointer to filter index
SLData_t *, Pointer to filter delay compensator array
SLArrayIndex_t *, Pointer to delay index
const SLArrayIndex_t, Filter length
const SLArrayIndex_t, Filter group delay
const SLData_t, One pole filter coefficient
SLData_t *) Pointer to one-pole state variable

DESCRIPTION

This function generates an envelope of the input sequence, where the envelope is the absolute maximum of the signal and the Hilbert transformed signal. The absolute maximum is then one-pole filtered to smooth the response.

NOTES ON USE

Critical parameters for this function are the filter length and the one-pole filter coefficient.

Longer filter lengths are required for lower frequency signals but this leads to a longer group delay.

A larger one pole filter coefficient leads to a smoother response but may miss high frequency artefacts.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_Envelope, SDS_Envelope, SDA_Envelope, SIF_EnvelopeRMS,
SDS_EnvelopeRMS, SDA_EnvelopeRMS, SIF_EnvelopeHilbert,
SDA_EnvelopeHilbert

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_EnvelopeHilbert (const SLData_t *,      Pointer to source array
                        SLData_t *,              Pointer to destination array
                        const SLData_t *,         Pointer to Hilbert transform filter
                        coefficient array
                        SLData_t *,              Pointer to filter state array
                        SLArrayIndex_t *,         Pointer to filter index
                        SLData_t *,              Pointer to temp. analytical signal array
                        SLData_t *,              Pointer to filter delay compensator array
                        SLData_t *,              Pointer to temporary delay array
                        const SLArrayIndex_t,     Filter length
                        const SLArrayIndex_t,     Filter group delay
                        const SLData_t,           One pole filter coefficient
                        SLData_t *,              Pointer to one-pole state variable
                        const SLArrayIndex_t)     Input array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function generates an envelope of the input sequence, where the envelope is the absolute maximum of the signal and the Hilbert transformed signal. The absolute maximum is then one-pole filtered to smooth the response.

NOTES ON USE

Critical parameters for this function are the filter length and the one-pole filter coefficient.

Longer filter lengths are required for lower frequency signals but this leads to a longer group delay.

A larger one pole filter coefficient leads to a smoother response but may miss high frequency artefacts.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_Envelope, SDS_Envelope, SDA_Envelope, SIF_EnvelopeRMS,
SDS_EnvelopeRMS, SDA_EnvelopeRMS, SIF_EnvelopeHilbert,
SDS_EnvelopeHilbert

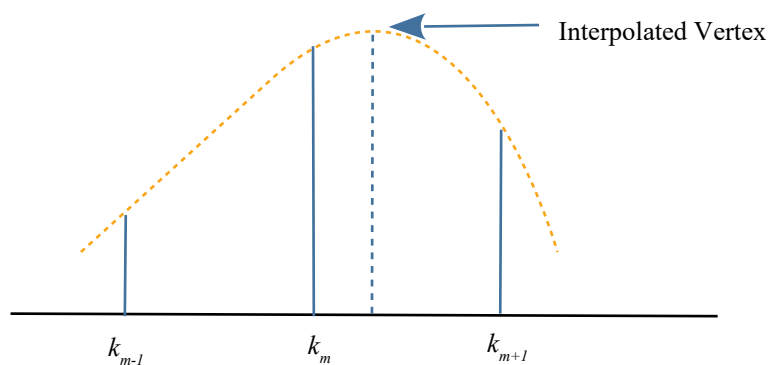
PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLData_t SDS_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexMagnitude (const SLData_t, y0
    const SLData_t, y1
    const SLData_t) y2
```

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the y-axis magnitude of the vertex (positive or negative) generated from the three points, y_0 , y_1 and y_2 , assuming the x-axis values are $x_0=0$, $x_1=1$, $x_2=2$.

The function uses quadratic interpolation, as shown in the following diagram.



NOTES ON USE

It is important that k_m is the largest positive or smallest negative value in the sequence.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation,
 SDS_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexMagnitude,
 SDS_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation,
 SDA_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexMagnitude,
 SDA_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation,
 SDA_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexMagnitude,
 SDA_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation,
 SDA_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticPeakVertexMagnitude,
 SDA_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticPeakVertexLocation

SDS_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation

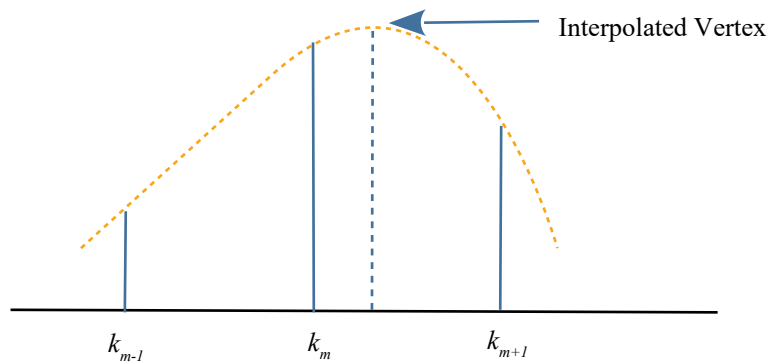
PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLData_t SDS_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation (const SLData_t, y0
const SLData_t, y1
const SLData_t) y2
```

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the x-axis location of the vertex (positive or negative) generated from the three points, y_0 , y_1 and y_2 , assuming the x-axis values are $x_0=0$, $x_1=1$, $x_2=2$.

The function uses quadratic interpolation, as shown in the following diagram.



NOTES ON USE

It is important that k_m is the largest positive or smallest negative value in the sequence.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexMagnitude,
SDS_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexMagnitude,
SDS_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation,
SDA_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexMagnitude,
SDA_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation,
SDA_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexMagnitude,
SDA_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation,
SDA_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticPeakVertexMagnitude,
SDA_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticPeakVertexLocation

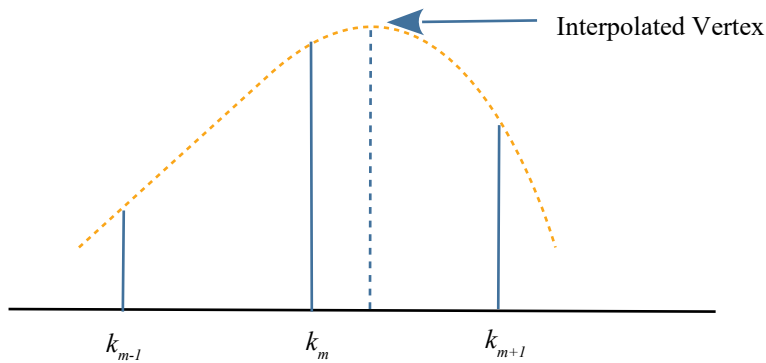
PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLData_t SDS_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexMagnitude (const
SLData_t,      x0
    const SLData_t,      y0
    const SLData_t,      x1
    const SLData_t,      y1
    const SLData_t,      x2
    const SLData_t,      y2)
```

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the y-axis magnitude of the vertex (positive or negative) generated from the three arbitrary points, x_0/y_0 , x_1/y_1 and x_2/y_2 .

The function uses quadratic interpolation, as shown in the following diagram.



NOTES ON USE

It is important that k_m is the largest positive or smallest negative value in the sequence.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexMagnitude,
SDS_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation,
SDS_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation,
SDA_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexMagnitude,
SDA_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation,
SDA_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexMagnitude,
SDA_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation,
SDA_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticPeakVertexMagnitude,
SDA_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticPeakVertexLocation

SDS_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation

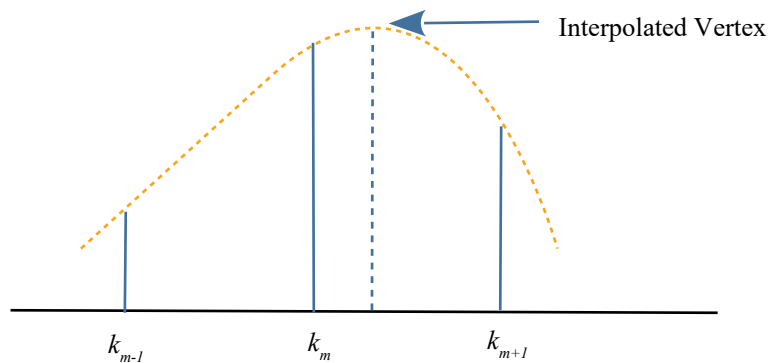
PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLData_t SDS_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation (const
SLData_t,      x0
    const SLData_t,      y0
    const SLData_t,      x1
    const SLData_t,      y1
    const SLData_t,      x2
    const SLData_t,      y2)
```

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the x-axis location of the vertex (positive or negative) generated from the three arbitrary points, x_0/y_0 , x_1/y_1 and x_2/y_2 .

The function uses quadratic interpolation, as shown in the following diagram.



NOTES ON USE

It is important that k_m is the largest positive or smallest negative value in the sequence.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexMagnitude,
 SDS_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation,
 SDS_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexMagnitude,
 SDA_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexMagnitude,
 SDA_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation,
 SDA_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexMagnitude,
 SDA_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation,
 SDA_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticPeakVertexMagnitude,
 SDA_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticPeakVertexLocation

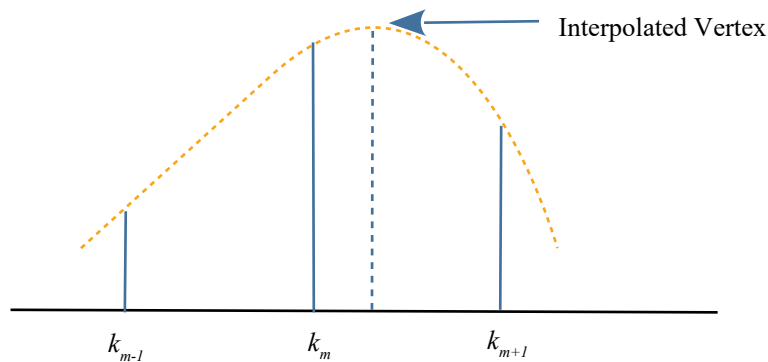
PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDA_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexMagnitude (const SLData_t *)
Pointer to source array

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the y-axis magnitude of the vertex (positive or negative) generated from the three points, y_0 , y_1 and y_2 , located in the source array indices 0, 1 and 2.

The function uses quadratic interpolation, as shown in the following diagram.

**NOTES ON USE**

It is important that k_m is the largest positive or smallest negative value in the sequence.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexMagnitude,
SDS_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation,
SDS_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexMagnitude,
SDS_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation,
SDA_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation,
SDA_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexMagnitude,
SDA_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation,
SDA_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticPeakVertexMagnitude,
SDA_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticPeakVertexLocation

SDA_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation

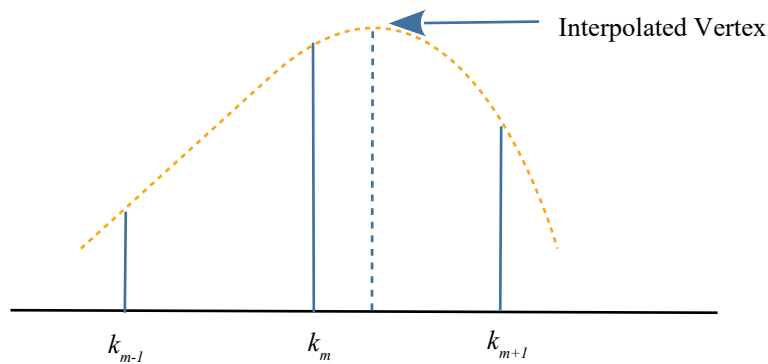
PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDA_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation (const SLData_t *)
Pointer to source array

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the x-axis location of the vertex (positive or negative) generated from the three points, y_0 , y_1 and y_2 , located in the source array indices 0, 1 and 2.

The function uses quadratic interpolation, as shown in the following diagram.



NOTES ON USE

It is important that k_m is the largest positive or smallest negative value in the sequence.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexMagnitude,
SDS_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation,
SDS_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexMagnitude,
SDS_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation,
SDA_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexMagnitude,
SDA_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexMagnitude,
SDA_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation,
SDA_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticPeakVertexMagnitude,
SDA_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticPeakVertexLocation

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

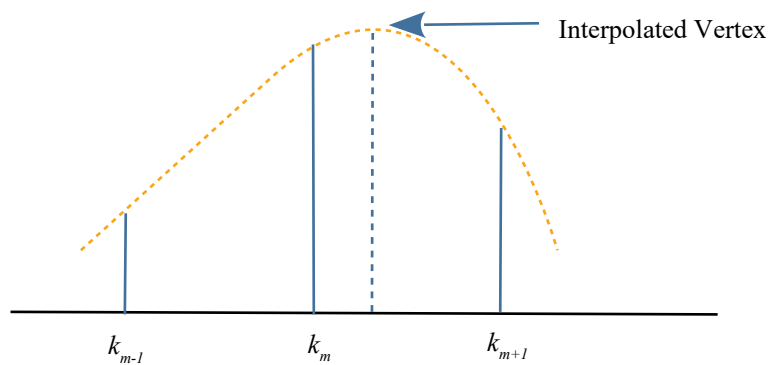
```
SLData_t SDA_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexMagnitude (
    const SLData_t *,           Pointer to source array
    const SLArrayIndex_t)       Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the y-axis magnitude of the vertex (positive or negative) generated from the three arbitrary points, x_0/y_0 , x_1/y_1 and x_2/y_2 .

The function first searches the array for the index of the absolute peak value which is selected to be the x_1 value. X_0 is the previous value and x_2 is the subsequent value in the source array. The associated y_0 , y_1 and y_2 values are calculated from the array index of the peak location.

The function uses quadratic interpolation, as shown in the following diagram.



NOTES ON USE

It is important that k_m is the largest positive or smallest negative value in the sequence.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexMagnitude,
 SDS_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation,
 SDS_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexMagnitude,
 SDS_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation,
 SDA_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexMagnitude,
 SDA_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation,
 SDA_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation,
 SDA_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticPeakVertexMagnitude,
 SDA_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticPeakVertexLocation

SDA_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation

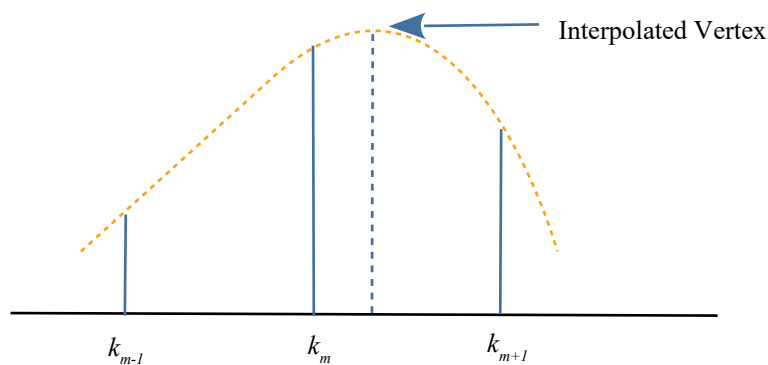
const SLData_t *,	Pointer to source array
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the x-axis location of the vertex (positive or negative) generated from the three arbitrary points, x_0/y_0 , x_1/y_1 and x_2/y_2 .

The function first searches the array for the index of the absolute peak value which is selected to be the x1 value. X0 is the previous value and x2 is the subsequent value in the source array. The associated y0, y1 and y2 values are calculated from the array index of the peak location.

The function uses quadratic interpolation, as shown in the following diagram.



NOTES ON USE

It is important that k_m is the largest positive or smallest negative value in the sequence.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexMagnitude,
SDS_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation,
SDS_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexMagnitude,
SDS_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation,
SDA_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexMagnitude,
SDA_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation,
SDA_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexMagnitude,
SDA_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticPeakVertexMagnitude,
SDA_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticPeakVertexLocation

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

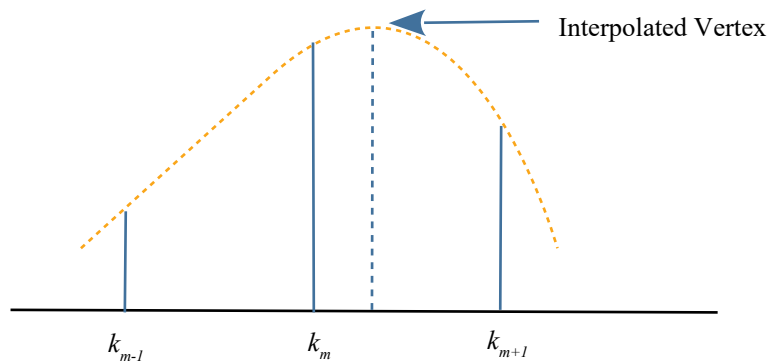
```
SLData_t SDA_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticPeakVertexMagnitude (
    const SLData_t *,           Pointer to source array
    const SLArrayIndex_t)       Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the y-axis magnitude of the vertex (positive only) generated from the three arbitrary points, x_0/y_0 , x_1/y_1 and x_2/y_2 .

The function first searches the array for the index of the peak value which is selected to be the x_1 value. X_0 is the previous value and x_2 is the subsequent value in the source array. The associated y_0 , y_1 and y_2 values are calculated from the array index of the peak location.

The function uses quadratic interpolation, as shown in the following diagram.



NOTES ON USE

It is important that k_m is the largest positive or smallest negative value in the sequence.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexMagnitude,
 SDS_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation,
 SDS_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexMagnitude,
 SDS_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation,
 SDA_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexMagnitude,
 SDA_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation,
 SDA_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexMagnitude,
 SDA_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation,
 SDA_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticPeakVertexLocation

SDA_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticPeakVertexLocation

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

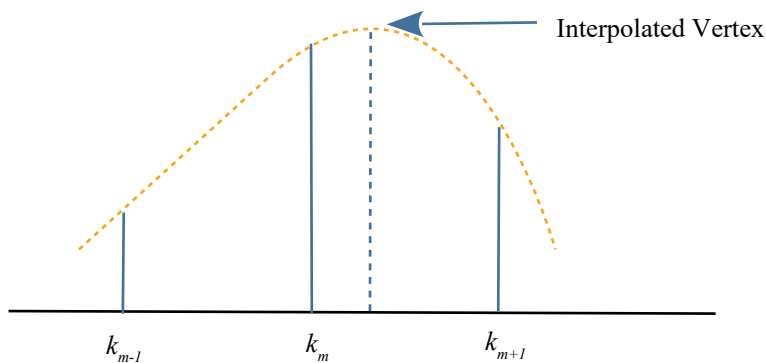
```
SLData_t SDA_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticPeakVertexLocation (
    const SLData_t *,           Pointer to source array
    const SLArrayIndex_t)       Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the x-axis location of the vertex (positive only) generated from the three arbitrary points, x_0/y_0 , x_1/y_1 and x_2/y_2 .

The function first searches the array for the index of the peak value which is selected to be the x_1 value. X_0 is the previous value and x_2 is the subsequent value in the source array. The associated y_0 , y_1 and y_2 values are calculated from the array index of the peak location.

The function uses quadratic interpolation, as shown in the following diagram.



NOTES ON USE

It is important that k_m is the largest positive or smallest negative value in the sequence.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexMagnitude,
 SDS_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation,
 SDS_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexMagnitude,
 SDS_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation,
 SDA_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexMagnitude,
 SDA_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation,
 SDA_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexMagnitude,
 SDA_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation,
 SDA_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticPeakVertexMagnitude

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDA_FirstMinVertex (const SLData_t *, Array pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the first minimum vertex value in an array.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_Multiply, SDA_Divide, SDA_Max, SDA_Min, SDA_Scale,
SDA_AbsMax, SDA_AbsMin, SDA_Middle, SDA_MaxIndex, SDA_AbsMaxIndex,
SDA_MinIndex, SDA_AbsMinIndex, SDA_LocalMax, SDA_LocalAbsMax,
SDA_LocalMin, SDA_LocalAbsMin, SDA_FirstMinVertex,
SDA_FirstMinVertexPos, SDA_FirstMaxVertex, SDA_FirstMaxVertexPos,
SDA_NLargest, SDA_NSmallest.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDA_FirstMinVertexPos (const SLData_t *, Array pointer
 const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the index of the first minimum vertex in an array.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_Multiply, SDA_Divide, SDA_Max, SDA_Min, SDA_Scale,
SDA_AbsMax, SDA_AbsMin, SDA_Middle, SDA_MaxIndex, SDA_AbsMaxIndex,
SDA_MinIndex, SDA_AbsMinIndex, SDA_LocalMax, SDA_LocalAbsMax,
SDA_LocalMin, SDA_LocalAbsMin, SDA_FirstMinVertex, SDA_FirstMaxVertex,
SDA_FirstMaxVertexPos, SDA_NLargest, SDA_NSmallest.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDA_FirstMaxVertex (const SLData_t *, Array pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the first maximum vertex value in an array.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_Multiply, SDA_Divide, SDA_Max, SDA_Min, SDA_Scale,
SDA_AbsMax, SDA_AbsMin, SDA_Middle, SDA_MaxIndex, SDA_AbsMaxIndex,
SDA_MinIndex, SDA_AbsMinIndex, SDA_LocalMax, SDA_LocalAbsMax,
SDA_LocalMin, SDA_LocalAbsMin, SDA_FirstMinVertex,
SDA_FirstMinVertexPos, SDA_FirstMaxVertexPos, SDA_NLargest,
SDA_NSmallest.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDA_FirstMaxVertexPos (const SLData_t *, Array pointer
 const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the index of the first maximum vertex in an array.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_Multiply, SDA_Divide, SDA_Max, SDA_Min, SDA_Scale,
SDA_AbsMax, SDA_AbsMin, SDA_Middle, SDA_MaxIndex, SDA_AbsMaxIndex,
SDA_MinIndex, SDA_AbsMinIndex, SDA_LocalMax, SDA_LocalAbsMax,
SDA_LocalMin, SDA_LocalAbsMin, SDA_FirstMinVertexPos,
SDA_FirstMaxVertex, SDA_NLargest, SDA_NSmallest.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_NLargest (const SLData_t *,	Pointer to source array
SLData_t *,	Pointer to destination array
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Source array length
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Number of values to find

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the first N largest values in the source array, the order is largest to smallest.

This algorithm supports duplicate numbers.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_Multiply, SDA_Divide, SDA_Max, SDA_Min, SDA_Scale,
SDA_AbsMax, SDA_AbsMin, SDA_Middle, SDA_MaxIndex, SDA_AbsMaxIndex,
SDA_MinIndex, SDA_AbsMinIndex, SDA_LocalMax, SDA_LocalAbsMax,
SDA_LocalMin, SDA_LocalAbsMin, SDA_FirstMinVertexPos,
SDA_FirstMaxVertex, SDA_FirstMaxVertexPos, SDA_NLargest, SDA_NSmallest.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_NSmallest (const SLData_t *,	Pointer to source array
SLData_t *,	Pointer to destination array
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Source array length
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Number of values to find

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the first N smallest values in the source array, the order is smallest to largest.

This algorithm supports duplicate numbers.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Multiply, SDA_Divide, SDA_Max, SDA_Min, SDA_Scale,
SDA_AbsMax, SDA_AbsMin, SDA_Middle, SDA_MaxIndex, SDA_AbsMaxIndex,
SDA_MinIndex, SDA_AbsMinIndex, SDA_LocalMax, SDA_LocalAbsMax,
SDA_LocalMin, SDA_LocalAbsMin, SDA_FirstMinVertexPos,
SDA_FirstMaxVertex, SDA_FirstMaxVertexPos, SDA_NLargest, SDA_NSmallest.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_Divide (const SLData_t *,	Source array pointer
const SLData_t,	Divisor
SLData_t *,	Destination array pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function divides all entries in the array of data by a scalar value.

NOTES ON USE

This function can operate on separate source and destination arrays or the source and destination pointers can reference the same array, for in-place operation.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Divide2, SDA_Multiply, SDA_Max, SDA_Min, SDA_Scale,
SDA_AbsMax, SDA_AbsMin.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_Divide2 (const SLData_t *,	Source array pointer 1
const SLData_t *,	Source array pointer 2
SLData_t *,	Destination array pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array lengths

DESCRIPTION

This function divides one vector array by another, entry by entry, place the results in a third array, the destination array may be one of the source arrays.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_Divide, SDA_Multiply, SDA_Multiply2, SDA_Max, SDA_Min, SDA_Scale.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_Multiply (const SLData_t *,	Source array pointer
const SLData_t,	Scalar multiplier
SLData_t *,	Destination array pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function multiplies all entries in the array of data by a scalar value.

NOTES ON USE

This function can operate on separate source and destination arrays or the source and destination pointers can reference the same array, for in-place operation.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Divide, SDA_Max, SDA_Min, SDA_Scale, SDA_ComplexMultiply2,
SDA_Multiply2, SDA_RealDotProduct, SDA_ComplexDotProduct.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_Multiply2 (const SLData_t *,	Source array pointer 1
const SLData_t *,	Source array pointer 2
SLData_t *,	Destination array pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array lengths

DESCRIPTION

This function multiplies two arrays together, entry by entry, place the results in a third array, the destination array may be one of the source arrays.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_Divide, SDA_Divide2, SDA_Multiply, SDA_Max, SDA_Min, SDA_Scale, SDA_Multiply, SDA_ComplexMultiply2, SDA_RealDotProduct, SDA_ComplexDotProduct.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDS_ComplexMultiply (const SLData_t,      Real source 1
                          const SLData_t,      Imaginary source 1
                          const SLData_t,      Real source 2
                          const SLData_t,      Imaginary source 2
                          SLData_t *,          Real result
                          SLData_t *)          Imaginary result
```

DESCRIPTION

This function multiplies the contents of one complex variable by another - the real and imaginary components are stored in separate memory locations.

$$(a + jb) * (c + jd) = (ac - bd) + j(ad + bc)$$

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDS_ComplexInverse, SDS_ComplexDivide, SDA_ComplexRectMultiply,
SDA_ComplexRectDivide, SCV_Multiply, SCV_Inverse, SCV_Divide.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDS_ComplexInverse (const SLData_t,      Real source
                        const SLData_t,      Imaginary source
                        SLData_t *,          Real result
                        SLData_t *)          Imaginary result
```

DESCRIPTION

This function inverts the complex variable - the real and imaginary components are stored in separate memory locations.

$$1/(a + jb) = (a - jb) / (a^2 + b^2)$$

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_ComplexInverse, SDS_ComplexMultiply, SDS_ComplexDivide,
SDA_ComplexRectMultiply, SDA_ComplexRectDivide, SCV_Multiply,
SCV_Inverse, SCV_Divide.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_ComplexInverse (const SLData_t *,      Pointer to real source array 1
                        const SLData_t *,      Pointer to imaginary source array 1
                        SLData_t *,            Pointer to real destination array
                        SLData_t *,            Pointer to imaginary destination array
                        const SLArrayIndex_t)   Array lengths
```

DESCRIPTION

This function inverts the complex values in the source array - the real and imaginary components are stored in separate arrays.

$$1/(a + jb) = (a - jb) / (a^2 + b^2)$$

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS_ComplexInverse, SDS_ComplexMultiply, SDS_ComplexDivide,
 SDA_ComplexRectMultiply, SDA_ComplexRectDivide, SCV_Multiply,
 SCV_Inverse, SCV_Divide.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDS_ComplexDivide (const SLData_t, Numerator source 1
    const SLData_t,           Numerator source 1
    const SLData_t,           Denominator source 2
    const SLData_t,           Denominator source 2
    SLData_t *,               Real result
    SLData_t *)              Imaginary result
```

DESCRIPTION

This function divides the contents of one complex variable by another - the real and imaginary components are stored in separate memory locations.

$$1/(a + jb) = (a - jb) / (a^2 + b^2)$$

$$(a + jb) * (c + jd) = (ac - bd) + j(ad + bc)$$

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS_ComplexMultiply, SDS_ComplexInverse, SDA_ComplexRectMultiply, SDA_ComplexRectDivide, SCV_Multiply, SCV_Inverse, SCV_Divide.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_ComplexScalarMultiply (const SLData_t *,      Real source array 1
                                const SLData_t *,      Imaginary source array 1 pointer
                                const SLData_t,         Scalar multiplier
                                SLData_t *,             Real destination array pointer
                                SLData_t *,             Imaginary destination array pointer
                                const SLArrayIndex_t)    Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function multiplies the contents of the complex arrays by the scalar value.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_Divide, SDA_Divide2, SDA_Multiply, SDA_Max, SDA_Min, SDA_Scale, SDA_Multiply2, SDA_ComplexMultiply2, SDA_RealDotProduct, SDA_ComplexDotProduct.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_ComplexMultiply2 (const SLData_t *,   Real source array 1
                          const SLData_t *,   Imaginary source array 1 pointer
                          const SLData_t *,   Real source array 2 pointer
                          const SLData_t *,   Imaginary source array 2 pointer
                          SLData_t *,         Real destination array pointer
                          SLData_t *,         Imaginary destination array pointer
                          const SLArrayIndex_t) Array lengths
```

DESCRIPTION

This function complex multiplies two vectors together, entry by entry, place the results in a third array, using the following equation:

$$(a + jb).(c + jd) = (ac - bd) + j(ad + bc)$$

NOTES ON USE

The destination array may be any of the source arrays.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Divide, SDA_Divide2, SDA_Multiply, SDA_Max, SDA_Min, SDA_Scale, SDA_Multiply2, SDA_ComplexScalarMultiply, SDA_RealDotProduct, SDA_ComplexDotProduct.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_ComplexScalarDivide (const SLData_t *, Pointer to real numerator source array

const SLData_t *,	Pointer to imag. numerator source array
const SLData_t,	Scalar divisor
SLData_t *,	Pointer to real destination array
SLData_t *,	Pointer to imaginary destination array
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array lengths

DESCRIPTION

This function divides the complex vector arrays by the divisor.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_Divide, SDA_Divide2, SDA_Multiply, SDA_Max, SDA_Min, SDA_Scale, SDA_Multiply2, SDA_ComplexDivide2, SDA_RealDotProduct, SDA_ComplexDotProduct.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_ComplexDivide2 (const SLData_t *, Pointer to real numerator source array
    const SLData_t *,           Pointer to imag. numerator source array
    const SLData_t *,           Pointer to real denominator source array
    const SLData_t *,           Pointer to imag denominator source array
    SLData_t *,                 Pointer to real destination array
    SLData_t *,                 Pointer to imaginary destination array
    const SLArrayIndex_t)       Array lengths
```

DESCRIPTION

This function complex divides the numerator vector by the denominator.

NOTES ON USE

The destination array may be either of the source arrays.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Divide, SDA_Divide2, SDA_Multiply, SDA_Max, SDA_Min,
 SDA_Scale, SDA_Multiply2, SDA_ComplexScalarDivide, SDA_RealDotProduct,
 SDA_ComplexDotProduct.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDA_RealDotProduct (const SLData_t *, Source vector 1 pointer
const SLData_t *, Source vector 2 pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t) Vector lengths

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the vector dot product of the two real vectors, using the following equation:

$$(x, y) = \sum_{i=1}^N x_i \cdot y_i$$

This operation is also sometimes referred to as the *inner product*.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Divide, SDA_Divide2, SDA_Multiply, SDA_Max, SDA_Min,
SDA_Scale, SDA_Multiply, SDA_Multiply2, SDA_ComplexMultiply2
SDA_ComplexDotProduct.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLComplexRect_s SDA_ComplexDotProduct (const SLData_t *, Real src. vector 1 ptr.

const SLData_t *,	Imaginary source vector 1 pointer
const SLData_t *,	Real source vector 2 pointer
const SLData_t *,	Imaginary source vector 2 pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Vector lengths

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the vector dot product of the two complex vectors, using the following equation:

$$(x, y) = \sum_{i=1}^N x_i \cdot \overline{y_i}$$

This operation is also sometimes referred to as the *inner product*.

\overline{y} is the complex conjugate of the y vector

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Divide, SDA_Divide2, SDA_Multiply, SDA_Max, SDA_Min, SDA_Scale, SDA_Multiply, SDA_Multiply2, SDA_ComplexMultiply2, SDA_RealDotProduct.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_SumAndDifference (const SLData_t *,	Source array pointer 1
const SLData_t *,	Source array pointer 2
SLData_t *,	Sum destination array pointer
SLData_t *,	Difference destination array pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the sum and difference between the samples in the two arrays.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_AddN, SDA_Subtract2

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_WeightedSum (const SLData_t *,	Source array pointer 1
const SLData_t *,	Source array pointer 2
SLData_t *,	Destination array pointer
SLData_t,	Weighting factor for vector 1
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function adds the contents of one array to the other and place the results in a third. The values in array 1 are pre-multiplied by a constant weighting value. i.e.:
$$\text{Destination}[i] = (\text{Weight} * \text{Source1}[i]) + \text{Source2}[i].$$

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_Subtract2 (const SLData_t *,	Source array pointer 1
const SLData_t *,	Source array pointer 2
SLData_t *,	Destination array pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function subtracts the contents of one array from the other and place the results in a third.

i.e. Destination = Source1 - Source2.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_AddN

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

<code>void SDA_Add (const SLData_t *,</code>	Source array pointer
<code>const SLData_t,</code>	Offset value
<code>SLData_t *,</code>	Destination array pointer
<code>const SLArrayIndex_t)</code>	Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function adds the scalar offset to each value in an array.

NOTES ON USE

This function can operate on separate source and destination arrays or the source and destination pointers can reference the same array, for in-place operation.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_PositiveOffset, SDA_NegativeOffset

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDA_PositiveOffset (const SLData_t *, Pointer to source array
 SLData_t *, Pointer to destination array
 const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function adds an offset to the data to ensure that all the values are positive and the smallest value is zero.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_Add, SDA_NegativeOffset

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDA_NegativeOffset (const SLData_t *, Pointer to source array
SLData_t *, Pointer to destination array
const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function adds an offset to the data to ensure that all the values are negative and the largest value is zero.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_Add, SDA_PositiveOffset

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_Negate (const SLData_t *,	Source array pointer
SLData_t *,	Destination array pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function negates all entries in the array of data.

NOTES ON USE

The source and destination pointers can point to the same array.

CROSS REFERENCE

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_Inverse (const SLData_t *,	Source data pointer
SLData_t *,	Destination array pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the reciprocal of the data in the array.

NOTES ON USE

The source and destination pointers can point to the same location.

CROSS REFERENCE

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_Square (const SLData_t *,	Source data pointer
SLData_t *,	Destination array pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the square of the data in the array.

NOTES ON USE

The source and destination pointers can point to the same location.

CROSS REFERENCE

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_Sqrt (const SLData_t *,	Source data pointer
SLData_t *,	Destination array pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the square root of the data in the array.

NOTES ON USE

The source and destination pointers can point to the same location.

CROSS REFERENCE

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_Difference (const SLData_t *,	Pointer to source array 1
const SLData_t *,	Pointer to source array 2
SLData_t *,	Pointer to destination array
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the differences of the data in the two arrays. The difference value is always positive.

NOTES ON USE

The source and destination pointers can point to the same location.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_SumOfDifferences

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDA_SumOfDifferences (const SLData_t *, Pointer to source array 1
 const SLData_t *, Pointer to source array 2
 const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the sum of the differences of the data in the two arrays. The difference value is always positive.

NOTES ON USE

The source and destination pointers can point to the same location.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Difference

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDS_Roots (const SLData_t a,	a value
const SLData_t b,	b value
const SLData_t c,	c value
SLData_t *Root1,	Pointer to root # 1
SLData_t *Root2)	Pointer to root # 2

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the real roots of the bi-quadratic equation:

$$ax^2 + bx + c = 0$$

The polynomial factors are given by the equation:

$$Roots = \frac{-b \pm \sqrt{b^2 - 4ac}}{2a}$$

NOTES ON USE

The values a, b and c must be real numbers, as must the roots. If the values of a, b and c will lead to complex roots then the function will return SIGLIB_DOMAIN_ERROR, otherwise the function returns SIGLIB_NO_ERROR.

CROSS REFERENCE

SCV_Roots

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDS_Factorial (const SLData_t Input) Input value

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the factorial of the input value.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDS_Permutations , SDS_Combinations

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDS_Permutations (const SLData_t n, Set size
 const SLData_t k) Selection size

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the number of permutations (arrangements) of n items taking k at a time, which is represented as ${}^n\text{P}_k$.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS_Factorial, SDS_Combinations

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDS_Combinations (const SLData_t n, Set size
 const SLData_t k) Selection size

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the number of combinations of n items taking k at a time, which is represented as nC_k .

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS_Factorial, SDS_Permutations

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SIF_OverlapAndAddLinear (SLData_t *,	Pointer to the value used to
in(de)crement between the two arrays	
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the linear overlap and add function.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_OverlapAndAddLinear, SDA_OverlapAndAddLinearWithClip,
SDA_OverlapAndAddArbitrary, SDA_OverlapAndAddArbitraryWithClip

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_OverlapAndAddLinear (const SLData_t *,      Ptr. to source array 1
                             const SLData_t *,      Pointer to source array 2
                             SLData_t *,           Pointer to destination array
                             const SLData_t,        Increment / decrement value
                             const SLArrayIndex_t)   Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function performs a linear overlap and add of the data in the two arrays. The data linearly ramps between the values in one array to the values in the second.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF_OverlapAndAddLinear, SDA_OverlapAndAddLinearWithClip,
SDA_OverlapAndAddArbitrary, SDA_OverlapAndAddArbitraryWithClip

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_OverlapAndAddLinearWithClip (const SLData_t *, Pointer to source array 1
const SLData_t *, Pointer to source array 2
SLData_t *, Pointer to destination array
const SLData_t, Threshold limiting value
const SLData_t, Increment / decrement value
const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function performs a linear overlap and add of the data in the two arrays. The data linearly ramps between the values in one array to the values in the second.

This function also applies a threshold and ensures that the addition operation does not overflow.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_OverlapAndAddLinear, SDA_OverlapAndAddLinear,
SDA_OverlapAndAddArbitrary, SDA_OverlapAndAddArbitraryWithClip

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_OverlapAndAddArbitrary (const SLData_t *,   Ptr. to source array 1
                                const SLData_t *,   Pointer to source array 2
                                const SLData_t *,   Pointer to window function array
                                SLData_t *,         Pointer to destination array
                                const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function performs an overlap and add of the data in the two arrays. The inter-array scaling function is performed by the data supplied in the windowing array.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_OverlapAndAddLinear, SDA_OverlapAndAddLinear,
SDA_OverlapAndAddLinearWithClip, SDA_OverlapAndAddArbitraryWithClip.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_OverlapAndAddArbitraryWithClip (const SLData_t *, Pointer to source array 1

const SLData_t *,	Pointer to source array 2
const SLData_t *,	Pointer to window function array
SLData_t *,	Pointer to destination array
const SLData_t,	Threshold limiting value
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function performs an overlap and add of the data in the two arrays. The inter-array scaling function is performed by the data supplied in the windowing array.

This function also applies a threshold and ensures that the addition operation does not overflow.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_OverlapAndAddLinear, SDA_OverlapAndAddLinear,
SDA_OverlapAndAddLinearWithClip, SDA_OverlapAndAddArbitrary.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDS_DegreesToRadians (const SLData_t) Angle in degrees

DESCRIPTION

This function converts and angle in degrees to radians.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_DegreesToRadians, SDS_RadiansToDegrees, SDA_RadiansToDegrees.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_DegreesToRadians (const SLData_t *,   Pointer to source array
                          SLData_t *,         Pointer to destination array
                          const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function converts an array of angles in degrees to radians.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS_DegreesToRadians, SDS_RadiansToDegrees, SDA_RadiansToDegrees.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDS_RadiansToDegrees (const SLData_t) Angle in radians

DESCRIPTION

This function converts and angle in radians to degrees.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS_DegreesToRadians, SDA_DegreesToRadians, SDA_RadiansToDegrees.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_RadiansToDegrees (const SLData_t *,   Pointer to source array
                           SLData_t *,         Pointer to destination array
                           const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function converts an array of angles in radians to degrees.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS_DegreesToRadians, SDA_DegreesToRadians, SDS_RadiansToDegrees.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDS_DetectNaN (const SLData_t) Source sample

DESCRIPTION

This function checks if the sample is NaN or +/- infinity.

It returns either:

 0 if the value is either: NaN or +/- infinity

 -1 if the value is NOT NaN or +/- infinity

NOTES ON USE

This function does not work with the same logic as isinfinite ().

It uses the same logic as SDA_DetectNaN(), which returns the location of the first NaN in the array.

CROSS REFERENCE

 SDA_DetectNaN

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLArrayIndex_t SDA_DetectNaN (const SLData_t *, Source array pointer
 const SLArrayIndex_t) Source array length

DESCRIPTION

This function checks if any of the samples in the array are NaN or +/- infinity.

It returns either:

- The location of the first element that is either: NaN or +/- infinity
- 1 if the value is NOT NaN or +/- infinity

NOTES ON USE

This function does not work with the same logic as isinfinite ().

CROSS REFERENCE

 SDS_DetectNaN

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_Rotate (const SLData_t *,	Source array pointer
SLData_t *,	Destination array pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Number of bins to rotate data
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function rotates the data in the array by n samples from left to right. For right to left rotation, the number of rotation steps must be set to $(\text{Length} - N)$, where N is the required number of steps.

NOTES ON USE

This function does not support in-place operation.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Reverse

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_Reverse (const SLData_t *,	Source array pointer
SLData_t *,	Destination array pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function reverses the order of the data in the array i.e. it reflects the values around the centre value(s).

NOTES ON USE

This function can operate on separate source and destination arrays or the source and destination pointers can reference the same array.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Rotate

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDA_Scale (const SLData_t *,	Source array pointer
SLData_t *,	Destination array pointer
const SLData_t,	Maximum scaled value
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function scales, or normalize, the largest absolute data value in the array equal to the maximum scaled value, all other entries in the array will be scaled accordingly.

NOTES ON USE

If the largest absolute value in the array is negative, then this (absolute value) will be used to scale the array. The function returns the scalar value, used to scale the data.

This function can operate on separate source and destination arrays or the source and destination pointers can reference the same array, for in-place operation.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Multiply, SDA_Divide, SDA_Max, SDA_Min, SDA_AbsMax, SDA_AbsMin.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDA_MeanSquare (const SLData_t *, Source array pointer
 const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the mean square value of the samples in the array i.e.:

$$\frac{\sum_{n=0}^{N-1} x(n)^2}{N}$$

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_RootMeanSquare

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDA_MeanSquareError (const SLData_t *, Source pointer 1
 const SLData_t *, Source pointer 2
 const SLArrayIndex_t, Inverse of the array length
 const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the mean square error of the samples in the arrays, using the following equation:

$$MSE = \frac{1}{L} \sum_{n=0}^{L-1} (X(n) - Y(n))^2$$

NOTES ON USE

The “inverse of array length” parameter is used to avoid having to perform a divide operation within the function. This improves run-time performance.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_MeanSquare

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDA_RootMeanSquare (const SLData_t *, Source pointer
 const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the root mean square value of the samples in the array i.e.:

$$V_{RMS} = \sqrt{\frac{\sum_{n=0}^{N-1} x(n)^2}{N}}$$

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_MeanSquare

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_Magnitude (const SLData_t *,   Real data source pointer
                    const SLData_t *,   Imaginary data source pointer
                    SLData_t *,         Destination array pointer
                    const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function performs the following operation:

$$|X[k]| = \sqrt{X[k] \cdot X^*[k]}$$

Which is mathematically the same as:

$$\text{Magnitude} = \sqrt{\text{Real}^2 + \text{Imaginary}^2}$$

for all values in the real and complex arrays.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_LogMagnitude, SDA_MagnitudeSquared, SDA_PhaseWrapped,
SDA_PhaseUnWrapped, SDS_Magnitude, SDS_MagnitudeSquared and SDS_Phase.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_MagnitudeSquared (const SLData_t *,   Real data source pointer
                           const SLData_t *,   Imaginary data source pointer
                           SLData_t *,         Destination array pointer
                           const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function performs the following operation:

$$|X[k]|^2 = X[k] \cdot X^*[k]$$

Which is mathematically the same as:

$$\text{Magnitude}^2 = \text{Real}^2 + \text{Imaginary}^2$$

for all values in the real and complex arrays.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_LogMagnitude, SDA_Magnitude, SDA_PhaseWrapped,
SDA_PhaseUnWrapped, SDS_Magnitude, SDS_MagnitudeSquared and SDS_Phase.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDS_Magnitude (const SLData_t, Real data value
const SLData_t *) Imaginary data value

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the magnitude of the input using the following equation:

$$|X[k]| = \sqrt{X[k] \cdot X^*[k]}$$

Which is mathematically the same as:

$$\text{Magnitude} = \sqrt{\text{Real}^2 + \text{Imaginary}^2}$$

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Magnitude, SDA_MagnitudeSquared, SDA_PhaseWrapped,
SDA_PhaseUnWrapped, SDS_MagnitudeSquared and SDS_Phase.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDS_MagnitudeSquared (const SLData_t, Real data value
 const SLData_t *) Imaginary data value

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the magnitude squared value of the input using the following equation:

$$|X[k]|^2 = X[k] \cdot X^*[k]$$

Which is mathematically the same as:

$$\text{Magnitude}^2 = \text{Real}^2 + \text{Imaginary}^2$$

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Magnitude, SDA_MagnitudeSquared, SDA_PhaseWrapped,
 SDA_PhaseUnWrapped, SDS_Magnitude and SDS_Phase.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDS_Phase (const SLData_t, Real data sample
const SLData_t *) Imaginary data sample

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the phase of the complex vector, according to the following equation:

$$Angle = a \tan 2(imag, real) = \tan^{-1} \left(\frac{imag}{real} \right)$$

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_PhaseWrapped, SDA_PhaseUnWrapped, SDA_Magnitude,
SDA_PhaseUnWrap, SDS_Magnitude, SDS_MagnitudeSquared.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_PhaseWrapped (const SLData_t *,      Real source pointer
                      const SLData_t *,      Imaginary source pointer
                      SLData_t *,            Destination phase array pointer
                      const SLArrayIndex_t)   Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the phase of a signal from a complex vector, according to the following equation:

$$Angle = a \tan 2(imag, real) = \tan^{-1} \left(\frac{imag}{real} \right)$$

The phase output of this function is wrapped between $-\pi$ and $+\pi$.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_PhaseUnWrapped, SDA_Magnitude, SDA_MagnitudeSquared,
SDA_PhaseUnWrap, SDS_Magnitude, SDS_MagnitudeSquared and SDS_Phase.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_PhaseUnWrapped (const SLData_t *,    Real source pointer
                        const SLData_t *,      Imaginary source pointer
                        SLData_t *,            Destination phase array pointer
                        const SLArrayIndex_t)   Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the phase of a signal from a complex vector, according to the following equation:

$$Angle = a \tan 2(imag, real) = \tan^{-1} \left(\frac{imag}{real} \right)$$

The phase output of this function is NOT wrapped between $-\pi$ and $+\pi$.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_PhaseWrapped, SDA_Magnitude, SDA_MagnitudeSquared,
SDA_PhaseUnWrap, SDS_Magnitude, SDS_MagnitudeSquared and SDS_Phase.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_MagnitudeAndPhaseWrapped (const SLData_t *,   Real source pointer
                                   const SLData_t *,   Imaginary source pointer
                                   SLData_t *,          Magnitude destination pointer
                                   SLData_t *,          Phase destination pointer
                                   const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the magnitude and phase of a signal from a complex vector, according to the following equations:

$$\text{Magnitude} = \sqrt{\text{Real}^2 + \text{Imaginary}^2}$$

$$\text{Angle} = \arctan 2(\text{imag}, \text{real}) = \tan^{-1} \left(\frac{\text{imag}}{\text{real}} \right)$$

The phase output of this function is wrapped between $-\pi$ and $+\pi$.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_PhaseUnWrapped, SDA_Magnitude, SDA_MagnitudeSquared, SDA_PhaseUnWrap, SDS_Magnitude, SDS_MagnitudeSquared and SDS_Phase.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_MagnitudeAndPhaseUnWrapped (const SLData_t *,   Real source pointer
                                     const SLData_t *,   Imaginary source pointer
                                     SLData_t *,          Magnitude destination pointer
                                     SLData_t *,          Phase destination pointer
                                     const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the magnitude and phase of a signal from a complex vector, according to the following equations:

$$\text{Magnitude} = \sqrt{\text{Real}^2 + \text{Imaginary}^2}$$

$$\text{Angle} = \arctan 2(\text{imag}, \text{real}) = \tan^{-1} \left(\frac{\text{imag}}{\text{real}} \right)$$

The phase output of this function is NOT wrapped between $-\pi$ and $+\pi$.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_PhaseWrapped, SDA_Magnitude, SDA_MagnitudeSquared, SDA_PhaseUnWrap, SDS_Magnitude, SDS_MagnitudeSquared and SDS_Phase.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_MagnitudeSquaredAndPhaseWrapped (const SLData_t *, Real src. ptr.  
    const SLData_t *,           Imaginary source pointer  
    SLData_t *,                 Magnitude squared destination pointer  
    SLData_t *,                 Phase destination pointer  
    const SLArrayIndex_t)       Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the magnitude squared and phase of a signal from a complex vector, according to the following equations:

$$\text{Magnitude}^2 = \text{Real}^2 + \text{Imaginary}^2$$

$$\text{Angle} = \text{atan2}(\text{imag}, \text{real}) = \tan^{-1} \left(\frac{\text{imag}}{\text{real}} \right)$$

The phase output of this function is wrapped between $-\pi$ and $+\pi$.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_PhaseUnWrapped, SDA_Magnitude, SDA_MagnitudeSquared,
SDA_PhaseUnWrap, SDS_Magnitude, SDS_MagnitudeSquared and SDS_Phase.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_MagnitudeSquaredAndPhaseUnWrapped (const SLData_t *, Real src. ptr.  
      const SLData_t *,           Imaginary source pointer  
      SLData_t *,                 Magnitude squared destination pointer  
      SLData_t *,                 Phase destination pointer  
      const SLArrayIndex_t)       Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the magnitude squared and phase of a signal from a complex vector, according to the following equations:

$$\text{Magnitude}^2 = \text{Real}^2 + \text{Imaginary}^2$$

$$\text{Angle} = \text{atan2}(\text{imag}, \text{real}) = \tan^{-1} \left(\frac{\text{imag}}{\text{real}} \right)$$

The phase output of this function is NOT wrapped between $-\pi$ and $+\pi$.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_PhaseWrapped, SDA_Magnitude, SDA_MagnitudeSquared,
SDA_PhaseUnWrap, SDS_Magnitude, SDS_MagnitudeSquared and SDS_Phase.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_PhaseWrap (const SLData_t *,    Source phase pointer  
                   SLData_t *,          Destination phase array pointer  
                   const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the phase of the signal wrapped between $-\pi \leq \phi \leq +\pi$.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_PhaseUnWrap, SDA_PhaseWrapped and SDA_PhaseUnWrapped

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_PhaseUnWrap (const SLData_t *,      Source phase pointer  
                     SLData_t *,          Destination phase array pointer  
                     const SLArrayIndex_t)  Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the unwrapped phase of the signal.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_PhaseWrap, SDA_PhaseWrapped and SDA_PhaseUnWrapped

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDS_Log2 (const SLData_t) Source number

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the Logarithm of a number, to base 2.

NOTES ON USE

This function includes error detection to avoid SDS_Log2(0). SDS_Log2Macro() implements the same functionality but without the error detection overhead.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS_Log2Macro, SDA_Log2, SDS_LogN, SDA_LogN,
SDA_LogDistribution

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_Log2 (const SLData_t *,	Pointer to source array
SLData_t *,	Pointer to destination array
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the Logarithm of the numbers in the source array, to base 2.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDS_Log2, SDS_LogN, SDA_LogN, SDA_LogDistribution

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDS_LogN (const SLData_t,	Source number
const SLData_t)	Base number

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the Logarithm of a number, to base N.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS_Log2, SDA_Log2, SDA_LogN, SDA_LogDistribution

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_LogN (const SLData_t *,	Pointer to source array
SLData_t *,	Pointer to destination array
const SLData_t,	Base number
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the Logarithm of the numbers in the source array, to base N.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDS_Log2, SDA_Log2, SDS_LogN, SDA_LogDistribution

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_LogDistribution (SLData_t *,	Pointer to destination array
const SLData_t,	Start value
const SLData_t,	End value
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Number of steps

DESCRIPTION

This function generates a sequence with a logarithmic distribution.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS_Log2, SDA_Log2, SDS_LogN, SDA_LogN

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_Copy (const SLData_t *,	Source array pointer
SLData_t *,	Destination array pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function copies the contents of one array of data into another array, with a fixed increment of one memory location between samples.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_CopyWithStride, SIF_CopyWithOverlap, SDA_CopyWithOverlap,
SIF_CopyWithIndex, SDA_CopyWithIndex

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_CopyWithStride (const SLData_t *,      Source array pointer
                        const SLArrayIndex_t,    Source array stride
                        SLData_t *,              Destination array pointer
                        const SLArrayIndex_t,    Destination array stride
                        const SLArrayIndex_t)    Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function copies the contents of one array of data into another array, with a different stride (pointer address increment) for each vector pointer.

NOTES ON USE

This function is very useful when performing image processing or multi-dimensional operations that require the processing to be performed on separate dimensions. For example performing an operation on a column in an image.

It is often more efficient (especially in C) to extract that information from an array, process it and put it back than process the data in-place.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Copy, SIF_CopyWithOverlap, SDA_CopyWithOverlap, SIF_CopyWithIndex, SDA_CopyWithIndex

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SIF_CopyWithOverlap (SLArrayIndex_t *) Pointer to source array index

DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the copy with overlap function.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Copy, SDA_CopyWithStride, SDA_CopyWithOverlap, SIF_CopyWithIndex,
SDA_CopyWithIndex

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLArrayIndex_t SDA_CopyWithOverlap (const SLData_t *, Pointer to source data
 SLData_t *, Pointer to destination array
 SLData_t *, Pointer to overlap array
 SLArrayIndex_t *, Pointer to source array index
 const SLArrayIndex_t, Source array length
 const SLArrayIndex_t, Overlap length
 const SLArrayIndex_t) Destination array length

DESCRIPTION

This function copies successive arrays of length "destination array length" of data from the source array to the destination array. For each successive copy, this function ensures that there are "overlap length" of samples overlapped between the successive destination arrays.

The return value from this function is the source array index so that it can be tested to see if the value is greater than or equal to the source array length, in which case, the output array is incomplete and further data must be placed in the array to fill it.

NOTES ON USE

The value returned in the "source array index" parameter indicates the completion state of the function. It will return the following values:

"Returned value" >= "Source array length"	The full "Destination array length" of data has NOT been copied. You will need to call this function again with a new source array of data.
0 <= "Returned value" < "Source array length"	The full "Destination array length" of data has been copied correctly.
"Returned value" < 0	There is overlapping data from the previous source array that is required in the output array – this data will have been stored in the "overlap array".

The function SIF_CopyWithOverlap () should be called prior to calling this function.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Copy, SDA_CopyWithStride, SIF_CopyWithOverlap, SIF_CopyWithIndex, SDA_CopyWithIndex

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SIF_CopyWithIndex (SLArrayIndex_t *) Pointer to source array index

DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the copy with index function.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Copy, SDA_CopyWithStride, SIF_CopyWithOverlap,
SDA_CopyWithOverlap, SDA_CopyWithIndex

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLArrayIndex_t SDA_CopyWithIndex (const SLData_t *, Pointer to source data
    SLData_t *,                               Pointer to destination array
    SLArrayIndex_t *,                           Pointer to source array index
    const SLArrayIndex_t,                       Source array length
    const SLArrayIndex_t,                       Stride length
    const SLArrayIndex_t)                       Destination array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function copies successive arrays of length "destination array length" of data from the source array to the destination array. For each successive copy, this function ensures that there are "stride length" of samples indexed into the source array and copied to the successive destination arrays.

The return value from this function is the number of samples copied from the source array to the destination array.

If copyLength < dstLength then the destination array is zero padded.

NOTES ON USE

It is important that the source array length is greater than or equal to the destination array length.

The function SIF_CopyWithIndex () should be called prior to calling this function.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Copy, SDA_CopyWithStride, SIF_CopyWithOverlap,
SDA_CopyWithOverlap, SIF_CopyWithIndex

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_20Log10 (const SLData_t *,	Source array pointer
SLData_t *,	Destination array pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function scales all array entries by $20 * \log_{10}$, to give a dB output.

NOTES ON USE

This function can operate on separate source and destination arrays or the source and destination pointers can reference the same array, for in-place operation.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_LogMagnitude and SDA_10Log10

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_10Log10 (const SLData_t *,	Source array pointer
SLData_t *,	Destination array pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function scales all array entries by $10 * \log_{10}$, to give a dB output.

NOTES ON USE

This function can operate on separate source and destination arrays or the source and destination pointers can reference the same array, for in-place operation.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_LogMagnitude and SDA_20Log10

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_LogMagnitude (const SLData_t *,   Real source array pointer
                      const SLData_t *,   Imaginary source array pointer
                      SLData_t *,         Destination array pointer
                      const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the log magnitude of the complex data, using the following equation:

$$y(n) = 10 * \log_{10}(real^2 + imag^2) = 20 * \log_{10}\left(\sqrt{real^2 + imag^2}\right)$$

NOTES ON USE

This function can operate on separate source and destination arrays or the source and destination pointers can reference the same array, for in-place operation.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Magnitude, SDA_MagnitudeSquared, SDA_10Log10 and SDA_20Log10

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_LogMagnitudeAndPhaseWrapped (const SLData_t *,   Real src. ptr.  
    const SLData_t *,                               Imaginary source pointer  
    SLData_t *,                                     Magnitude destination pointer  
    SLData_t *,                                     Phase destination pointer  
    const SLArrayIndex_t)                          Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the log magnitude and phase of a signal from a complex vector, according to the following equations:

$$y(n) = 10 * \log_{10}(real^2 + imag^2) = 20 * \log_{10}\left(\sqrt{real^2 + imag^2}\right)$$
$$Angle = a \tan 2(imag, real) = \tan^{-1} \left(\frac{imag}{real} \right)$$

The phase output of this function is wrapped between $-\pi$ and $+\pi$.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_PhaseUnWrapped, SDA_Magnitude, SDA_MagnitudeSquared,
SDA_PhaseUnWrap, SDS_Magnitude, SDS_MagnitudeSquared and SDS_Phase.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_LogMagnitudeAndPhaseUnWrapped (const SLData_t *,   Real src. ptr.
    const SLData_t *,           Imaginary source pointer
    SLData_t *,                 Magnitude destination pointer
    SLData_t *,                 Phase destination pointer
    const SLArrayIndex_t)       Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the log magnitude and phase of a signal from a complex vector, according to the following equations:

$$y(n) = 10 * \log_{10}(real^2 + imag^2) = 20 * \log_{10}\left(\sqrt{real^2 + imag^2}\right)$$

$$Angle = a \tan 2(imag, real) = \tan^{-1} \left(\frac{imag}{real} \right)$$

The phase output of this function is NOT wrapped between $-\pi$ and $+\pi$.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_PhaseWrapped, SDA_Magnitude, SDA_MagnitudeSquared,
SDA_PhaseUnWrap, SDS_Magnitude, SDS_MagnitudeSquared and SDS_Phase.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_Lengthen (const SLData_t *,	Source array pointer
SLData_t *,	Destination array pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Source array length
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Destination array length

DESCRIPTION

This function copies the contents of one array into another longer array, extend the data with zero. This operation is also known as zero padding.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF_ReSize and SDA_ReSize

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_Shorten (const SLData_t *,	Source array pointer
SLData_t *,	Destination array pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Destination array length

DESCRIPTION

This function copies the contents of one array into another shorter array, discard the excess data.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF_ReSize and SDA_ReSize

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SIF_ReSize (SLArrayIndex_t *) Pointer to state array length

DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the SDA_ReSize function.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_Lengthen, SDA_Shorten, SDA_ReSize, SDA_ReSizeInput and
SDA_ReSizeOutput

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLArrayIndex_t SDA_ReSize (const SLData_t *,	Pointer to source array
SLData_t *,	Pointer to destination array
SLData_t *,	Pointer to state array
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to state array length
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Source array length
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Destination array length

DESCRIPTION

This function appends the input data to the end of the data in the state array, that was carried over from the last iteration. If the resulting data set is long enough to fill the output array then this amount of data is copied to the output array and the state array updated. If there is not enough data in the state array then all the data is maintained in the state array and the Destination array length is 0 samples long.

This function maintains contiguous data streams across input and output array boundaries.

NOTES ON USE

The function SIF_ReSize must be called prior to calling this function.

It is important to ensure that the state array is long enough to hold all overlap data required by the application. For performance reasons, this function does not check the size of the state array against the amount of data that needs to be stored inside.

This function does not work in-place.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Lengthen, SDA_Shorten, SIF_ReSize, SDA_ReSizeInput and SDA_ReSizeOutput

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLArrayIndex_t SDA_ReSizeInput (const SLData_t *, Pointer to source array
 SLData_t *, Pointer to state array
 SLArrayIndex_t *, Pointer to state array length
 const SLArrayIndex_t) Source array length

DESCRIPTION

This function appends the input data to the end of the data in the state array, that was carried over from the last iteration.

This function maintains contiguous data streams across input and output array boundaries.

NOTES ON USE

The function SIF_ReSize must be called prior to calling this function.

It is important to ensure that the state array is long enough to hold all overlap data required by the application. For performance reasons, this function does not check the size of the state array against the amount of data that needs to be stored inside.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Lengthen, SDA_Shorten, SIF_ReSize, SDA_ReSize and
SDA_ReSizeOutput

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLArrayIndex_t SDA_ReSizeOutput (SLData_t *, Pointer to destination array
    SLData_t *,                      Pointer to state array
    SLArrayIndex_t *,                Pointer to state array length
    const SLArrayIndex_t)            Destination array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function resizes the output array. If the data set in the state array long enough to fill the output array then the “destination array length” data is copied to the output array and any remaining data is maintained in the state array. If there is not enough data in the state array then the destination array length is 0 samples long.

This function maintains contiguous data streams across input and output array boundaries.

NOTES ON USE

The function SIF_ReSize must be called prior to calling this function.

It is important to ensure that the state array is long enough to hold all overlap data required by the application. For performance reasons, this function does not check the size of the state array against the amount of data that needs to be stored inside.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Lengthen, SDA_Shorten, SIF_ReSize, SDA_ReSize and
SDA_ReSizeInput

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_Fill (SLData_t *,	Array pointer
const SLData_t,	Fill value
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function fills all the entries in an array with a scalar value.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_Clear (SLData_t *,	Array pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function clears the contents of the array to zero.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

These functions generate a histogram of the source data where the destination array length defines the number of bins in the histogram.

The bin width (h) for the number of output bins (k) is given by the following equation:

$$h = \lceil \max_x - \min_x \rceil / k$$

The histogram is calculated in one of two ways:

1/ If either or both the source minimum and maximum values are non-zero then the histogram is calculated for all values between the minimum and maximum levels. All values outside this range are discarded.

2/ If both the source minimum and maximum values are equal to zero then the function first calculates the minimum and maximum values in the source array and then calculates the histogram over this range. You can also set both of these parameters to SIGLIB_HISTOGRAM_AUTOSCALE to achieve the same effect.

The histogram summation array is continuously incremented so that the results of successive histograms are cumulative. Therefore prior to commencing the first histogram in a series, it is necessary to use the SIF_Histogram function.

The histogram array uses floating point numbers. IEEE 754 can represent integer values without error up to 2^{24} for single precision format and 2^{53} for double precision format. This prevents rounding errors for all results within these ranges. If you wish to convert the results to fixed point format, when using these functions on devices that do not use IEEE 754 format you should use the function SDA_SigLibDataToFix to ensure that the results are rounded correctly.

For multiple dimension arrays, the source array length must be the product of all the dimension lengths.

EXAMPLES

There are two primary ways of rounding floating-point numbers when calculating histograms. The first is to round down to the integer number and the second is to round to the nearest. The SigLib histogram functions support both of these modes as described in these examples.

For these examples we will assume a range of histogram values from -2.0 to +2.0.

Example 1

In this example we will use 4 bins for the histogram result and all the floating point numbers will be rounded down, as follows:

Bin Number	Bin Median Value	Bin Numerical Range
0	-1.5	$-2.0 \leq n < -1.0$
1	-0.5	$-1.0 \leq n < 0.0$
2	0.5	$0.0 \leq n < 1.0$
3	1.5	$1.0 \leq n \leq 2.0$

For this scenario you would use the following SigLib function call:

```
SDA_Histogram (pSourceData, /* Input array pointer */
               pHistogram, /* Histogram array pointer */
               -2.0F, /* Lower range limit */
               2.0F, /* Upper range limit */
               SOURCE_LENGTH, /* Input array length */
               4) /* Histogram array length */
```

The benefit of this approach is that all the bins are the same width but the numbers are all rounded towards zero, which may lead to a bias in the results.

Example 2

In this example we will use 5 bins for the histogram result and all the floating point numbers will be rounded to the nearest integer, as follows:

Bin Number	Bin Median Value	Bin Numerical Range
0	-1.75	$-2.0 \leq n < -1.5$
1	-1.0	$-1.5 \leq n < -0.5$
2	0.0	$-0.5 \leq n < 0.5$
3	1.0	$0.5 \leq n < 1.5$
4	1.75	$1.5 \leq n \leq 2.0$

For this scenario you would use the following SigLib function call:

```
SDA_Histogram (pSourceData, /* Input array pointer */
               pHistogram, /* Histogram array pointer */
               -2.0F, /* Lower range limit */
               2.0F, /* Upper range limit */
               SOURCE_LENGTH, /* Input array length */
               5) /* Histogram array length */
```

The benefit of this approach is that all numbers are rounded to the median value, which removes bias from the results but the two bins at the extremities (bins 0 and N-1) are smaller than the other bins.

Example 3

In this example we will use 5 bins for the histogram result and all the floating point numbers will be rounded to the nearest integer, as follows:

Bin Number	Bin Median Value	Bin Numerical Range
0	-2.0	$-2.5 \leq n < -1.5$
1	-1.0	$-1.5 \leq n < -0.5$
2	0.0	$-0.5 \leq n < 0.5$
3	1.0	$0.5 \leq n < 1.5$
4	2.0	$1.5 \leq n \leq 2.5$

For this scenario you would use the following SigLib function call:

```
SDA_Histogram (pSourceData,    /* Input array pointer */
               pHistogram,     /* Histogram array pointer */
               -2.5F,          /* Lower range limit */
               2.5F,           /* Upper range limit */
               SOURCE_LENGTH,  /* Input array length */
               5)              /* Histogram array length */
```

The benefit of this approach is that all numbers are rounded to the median value, which removes bias from the results plus the bins are all the same width. The disadvantage is that the input range is extended beyond the integer numbers of the histogram.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SIF_Histogram (SLData_t *,	Histogram array pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Histogram array length

DESCRIPTION

This function clears the histogram array prior to calling the functions SDA_Histogram, SDA_HistogramCumulative, SDA_HistogramExtended and SDA_HistogramExtendedCumulative.

NOTES ON USE

See section titled “Histogram Functions”, above, which includes examples.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Histogram, SDA_HistogramCumulative, SDA_HistogramExtended, SDA_HistogramExtendedCumulative

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_Histogram (const SLData_t *,	Source array pointer
SLData_t *,	Destination array pointer
const SLData_t,	Source minimum level
const SLData_t,	Source maximum level
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Source array length
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Destination array length

DESCRIPTION

This function generates a histogram of the source data where the destination array length defines the number of bins in the histogram.

NOTES ON USE

See section titled “Histogram Functions”, above, which includes examples.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_Histogram, SDA_HistogramCumulative, SDA_HistogramExtended,
SDA_HistogramExtendedCumulative

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_HistogramCumulative (const SLData_t *,	Source array pointer
SLData_t *,	Destination array pointer
const SLData_t,	Source minimum level
const SLData_t,	Source maximum level
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Source array length
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Destination array length

DESCRIPTION

This function generates a histogram of the source data where the destination array length defines the number of bins in the histogram.

NOTES ON USE

See section titled “Histogram Functions”, above, which includes examples.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_Histogram, SDA_Histogram, SDA_HistogramExtended,
SDA_HistogramExtendedCumulative

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_HistogramExtended (const SLData_t *, Source array pointer
    SLData_t *,                Destination array pointer
    const SLData_t,            Source minimum level
    const SLData_t,            Source maximum level
    const SLArrayIndex_t,      Source array length
    const SLArrayIndex_t)      Destination array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function generates a histogram of the source data where the destination array length defines the number of bins in the histogram.

NOTES ON USE

See section titled “Histogram Functions”, above, which includes examples.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_Histogram, SDA_Histogram, SDA_HistogramCumulative,
SDA_HistogramExtendedCumulative

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_HistogramExtendedCumulative (const SLData_t *,      Src array pointer
    SLData_t *,          Destination array pointer
    const SLData_t,      Source minimum level
    const SLData_t,      Source maximum level
    const SLArrayIndex_t, Source array length
    const SLArrayIndex_t) Destination array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function generates a histogram of the source data where the destination array length defines the number of bins in the histogram.

NOTES ON USE

See section titled “Histogram Functions”, above, which includes examples.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_Histogram, SDA_Histogram, SDA_HistogramCumulative,
SDA_HistogramExtended

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_HistogramEqualize (const SLData_t *,   Source array pointer
                           SLData_t *,         Destination array pointer
                           const SLData_t,      New peak value
                           const SLArrayIndex_t) Source array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function equalizes the histogram of the array. This function takes the absolute maximum value in the array and multiplies it up to the new peak value.

NOTES ON USE

If a data set needs to have its histogram equalized and the tail of the histogram already extends to the limit of the numerical bounds being used then the data should be clipped to a pre-set maximum before being equalized.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_HistogramEqualize

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_Quantize (const SLData_t *,	Source array pointer
SLData_t *,	Destination array pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Quantisation number of bits
const SLData_t,	Peak input value
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function quantizes the data in the array to N bits.

NOTES ON USE

The peak input value parameter is used to scale the data according to the maximum possible input data value, which could be floating point.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS_Quantize, SDA_Quantize_N, SDS_Quantize_N

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t	SDS_Quantize (const SLData_t,	Source sample
const SLArrayIndex_t,		Quantisation number of bits
const SLData_t)		Peak input value

DESCRIPTION

This function quantizes the data to N bits.

NOTES ON USE

The peak input value parameter is used to scale the data according to the maximum possible input data value, which could be floating point.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Quantize, SDA_Quantize_N, SDS_Quantize_N

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_Quantize_N (const SLData_t *,   Pointer to source array
                    SLData_t *,         Pointer to destination array
                    const SLData_t,      Quantisation number
                    const SLArrayIndex_t) Source array size
```

DESCRIPTION

This function quantizes the data in the array to the nearest multiple of N , using floor function.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_Quantize, SDS_Quantize, SDS_Quantize_N

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDS_Quantise_N (const SLData_t, Source sample
 const SLData_t) Quantisation number

DESCRIPTION

This function quantizes the data to the nearest multiple of N , using floor function.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Quantize, SDS_Quantize, SDA_Quantize_N

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_Abs (const SLData_t *,	Source array pointer
SLData_t *,	Destination array pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array lengths

DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the absolute values in an array.

NOTES ON USE

This function can operate on separate source and destination arrays or the source and destination pointers can reference the same array, for in-place operation.

CROSS REFERENCE

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDS_PeakValueToBits (SLData_t, Peak value,
enum SLSignalSign_t) Sign type of the signal

DESCRIPTION

This function converts the peak value to a number of bits i.e. how many bits in a fixed point word are required to represent the given value.

NOTES ON USE

This function supports signed or unsigned words using the type SIGLIB_SIGNED_DATA or SIGLIB_UNSIGNED_DATA.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS_BitsToPeakValue

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDS_BitsToPeakValue (SLData_t,	Number of bits
enum SLSignalSign_t)	Sign type of the signal

DESCRIPTION

This function converts the number of bits to the peak value i.e. what is the largest positive number that can be represented using the given number of bits.

NOTES ON USE

This function supports signed or unsigned words using the type SIGLIB_SIGNED_DATA or SIGLIB_UNSIGNED_DATA.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS_PeakValueToBits

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDS_LinearTodBm (SLData_t, Linear value
 SLData_t) Zero dBm level

DESCRIPTION

This function converts the linear value to dBm.

NOTES ON USE

This function requires that the zero dBm level is provided. For example, if a signed 16 bit word length is being used then a signal of 0 dBm would have a peak level of 32767.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_LinearTodBm, SDS_dBmToLinear, SDA_dBmToLinear

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_LinearTodBm (const SLData_t *,Pointer to source array
                      SLData_t *,           Pointer to destination array
                      const SLData_t,       Zero dBm level
                      const SLArrayIndex_t) Array lengths
```

DESCRIPTION

This function converts the linear values to dBm.

NOTES ON USE

This function requires that the zero dBm level is provided. For example, if a signed 16 bit word length is being used then a signal of 0 dBm would have a peak level of 32767.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS_LinearTodBm, SDS_dBmToLinear, SDA_dBmToLinear

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDS_dBmToLinear (SLData_t, dBm input value
 SLData_t) Zero dBm level

DESCRIPTION

This function converts the dBm value to linear.

NOTES ON USE

This function requires that the zero dBm level is provided. For example, if a signed 16 bit word length is being used then a signal of 0 dBm would have a peak level of 32767.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS_LinearTodBm, SDA_LinearTodBm, SDA_dBmToLinear

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_dBmToLinear (const SLData_t *,	Pointer to source array
SLData_t *,	Pointer to destination array
const SLData_t,	Zero dBm level
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array lengths

DESCRIPTION

This function converts the dBm values to linear.

NOTES ON USE

This function requires that the zero dBm level is provided. For example, if a signed 16 bit word length is being used then a signal of 0 dBm would have a peak level of 32767.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS_LinearTodBm, SDA_LinearTodBm, SDS_dBmToLinear

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLFixData_t SDS_Compare (const SLData_t,      Source value #1
                        const SLData_t,      Source value #2
                        const SLData_t)      Threshold
```

DESCRIPTION

This function compares the value of sample #1 with the value of sample #2 and returns the following values:

SIGLIB_TRUE - if the difference between sample is less than the threshold.

SIGLIB_FALSE - if the difference between sample is greater than the threshold.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_CompareComplex, SDS_CompareComplex, SDA_CompareComplex

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLFixData_t SDA_Compare (const SLData_t *,    Source array pointer #1
                        const SLData_t *,      Source array pointer #2
                        const SLData_t,        Threshold
                        const SLArrayIndex_t)   Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function compares the contents of array #1 with those of array #2 and returns the following values:

SIGLIB_TRUE - if the difference between samples is less than the threshold.

SIGLIB_FALSE - if the difference between samples is greater than the threshold.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_CompareComplex, SDS_CompareComplex, SDA_CompareComplex

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLFixData_t SDS_CompareComplex (const SLData_t *,   Real sample #1
                                const SLData_t *,   Imaginary sample #1
                                const SLData_t *,   Real sample #2
                                const SLData_t *,   Imaginary sample #2
                                const SLData_t)      Threshold
```

DESCRIPTION

This function compares the real and imaginary values of the complex samples and returns the following values:

SIGLIB_TRUE - if the difference between samples is less than the threshold.

SIGLIB_FALSE - if the difference between samples is greater than the threshold.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDS_Compare, SDA_Compare, SDA_CompareComplex

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLFixData_t SDA_CompareComplex (const SLData_t *, Real source array ptr #1
 const SLData_t *, Imaginary source array pointer #1
 const SLData_t *, Real source array pointer #2
 const SLData_t *, Imaginary source array pointer #2
 const SLData_t, Threshold
 const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function compares the real and imaginary contents of complex array #1 with those of complex array #2 and returns the following values:

 SIGLIB_TRUE - if the difference between samples is less than the threshold.

 SIGLIB_FALSE - if the difference between samples is greater than the threshold.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

 SDS_Compare, SDA_Compare, SDS_CompareComplex

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDS_Int (const SLData_t) Source sample

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the integer component of the source sample.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDS_Frac, SDS_AbsFrac, SDA_Int, SDA_Frac, SDA_AbsFrac.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDS_Frac (const SLData_t) Source sample

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the fractional component of the source sample.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDS_Int, SDS_AbsFrac, SDA_Int, SDA_Frac, SDA_AbsFrac.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDS_AbsFrac (const SLData_t) Source sample

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the absolute value of the fractional component of the source sample.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDS_Int, SDS_Frac, SDA_Int, SDA_Frac, SDA_AbsFrac.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_Int (const SLData_t *,	Pointer to source array
SLData_t *,	Pointer to destination array
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array lengths

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the integer components of all of the samples in the source array.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDS_Int, SDS_Frac, SDS_AbsFrac, SDA_Frac, SDA_AbsFrac.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_Frac (const SLData_t *,	Pointer to source array
SLData_t *,	Pointer to destination array
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array lengths

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the fractional components of all of the samples in the source array.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDS_Int, SDS_Frac, SDS_AbsFrac, SDA_Int, SDA_AbsFrac.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_AbsFrac (const SLData_t *,	Pointer to source array
SLData_t *,	Pointer to destination array
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array lengths

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the absolute values of the fractional components of all of the samples in the source array.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDS_Int, SDS_Frac, SDS_AbsFrac, SDA_Int, SDA_Frac.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_SetMin (SLData_t *,	Pointer to source array
SLData_t *,	Pointer to destination array
const SLData_t,	New minimum value
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array lengths

DESCRIPTION

This function sets the minimum value in the data set. The difference between the previous minimum and new minimum is added to all of the values.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_SetMax, SDA_SetRange, SDA_SetMean.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_SetMax (SLData_t *,	Pointer to source array
SLData_t *,	Pointer to destination array
const SLData_t,	New maximum value
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array lengths

DESCRIPTION

This function sets the maximum value in the data set. The difference between the previous maximum and new maximum is added to all of the values.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_SetMin, SDA_SetRange, SDA_SetMean.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_SetRange (SLData_t *,	Pointer to source array
SLData_t *,	Pointer to destination array
const SLData_t,	New minimum value
const SLData_t,	New maximum value
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array lengths

DESCRIPTION

This function scales the data set in the source array to the new minimum and maximum values.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_SetMin, SDA_SetMax, SDA_SetMean.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_SetMean (SLData_t *,	Pointer to source array
SLData_t *,	Pointer to destination array
const SLData_t,	New mean value
const SLData_t,	Inverse of the array lengths
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array lengths

DESCRIPTION

This function scales the data set in the source array to the new mean value.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_SetMin, SDA_SetMax, SDA_SetRange.

SDA_RealSpectralInverse

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_RealSpectralInverse (const SLData_t *, Source array pointer
                             SLData_t *,           Destination array pointer
                             const SLArrayIndex_t)  Array lengths
```

DESCRIPTION

This function inverts the spectrum of a real time domain signal, by negating alternate time domain samples.

NOTES ON USE

For spectral inversion of a continuous signal, it is important that the array length is an even number.

This function can be used to mirror the frequency response of a filter about $F_s / 4$, in which case it is important that the central coefficient is not inverted, which will destroy the filter phase response.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_ComplexSpectralInverse

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_ComplexSpectralInverse (const SLData_t *,    Real source pointer
                                const SLData_t *,      Imaginary source array pointer
                                SLData_t *,            Real destination array pointer
                                SLData_t *,            Imaginary destination array pointer
                                const SLArrayIndex_t)   Array lengths
```

DESCRIPTION

This function inverts the spectrum of a complex time domain signal, by negating alternate time domain samples, in both the real and imaginary planes.

NOTES ON USE

For spectral inversion of a continuous signal, it is important that the array length is an even number.

This function can be used to mirror the frequency response of a filter about $F_s / 4$, in which case it is important that the central coefficient is not inverted, which will destroy the filter phase response.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_RealSpectralInverse

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_FdInterpolate (const SLData_t *, Real source array pointer
    const SLData_t *,          Imaginary source array pointer
    SLData_t *,               Real destination array pointer
    SLData_t *,               Imaginary destination array pointer
    const SLFixData_t,        Ratio up
    const SLFixData_t,        Ratio down
    const SLArrayIndex_t)     Array lengths
```

DESCRIPTION

This function interpolates the frequency spectrum of a signal, to obtain a pitch shifted spectrum.

NOTES ON USE

This technique benefits from carefully chosen array lengths, especially when using windowed and overlapped arrays, to smooth out transitions, between blocks. The array lengths should be as large as possible, without adding too much delay.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS_TdPitchShift, SDA_FdInterpolate2.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_FdInterpolate2 (const SLData_t *,	Real source pointer
const SLData_t *,	Imaginary source array pointer
SLData_t *,	Real destination array pointer
const SLData_t *,	Imaginary destination array pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Source array length
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Destination array length

DESCRIPTION

This function interpolates a signal, in the frequency domain, to increase the number of samples in the output array. This algorithm is equivalent to a $\sin(x)/x$ time-domain interpolation process.

NOTES ON USE

This technique benefits from carefully chosen array lengths, especially when using windowed and overlapped arrays, to smooth out transitions, between blocks. The array lengths should be as large as possible, without adding too much delay.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS_TdPitchShift, SDA_FdInterpolate.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDS_TdPitchShift (const SLData_t,	Input sample
SLData_t *,	Pitch shift array pointer
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Input array offset
SLData_t *,	Output array offset
SLData_t *,	Previous sample
const SLData_t,	Pitch shift ratio
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Length of pitch shift array

DESCRIPTION

This function pitch shifts a sample, in the time domain, using a circular array, this function will shift the frequency up, or down, depending on whether the ratio is greater than, or less than 1.0 respectively.

NOTES ON USE

This technique benefits from carefully chosen array lengths, however some distortion will be seen as the pointers "cross over". Incorporated in the function is a smoothing filter, that can reduce this effect, another technique is to linearly interpolate samples, as the pointers cross. As with the frequency domain interpolation, the array lengths should be as large as possible, without adding too much delay.

The input array offset parameter should be initialised to zero in the calling function. The output array offset and previous sample parameters should be initialised to SIGLIB_ZERO in the calling function.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_FdInterpolate, SDA_TdPitchShift

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_TdPitchShift (const SLData_t *, Pointer to source array
    SLData_t *,                      Pointer to destination array
    SLData_t *,                      Pitch shift array pointer
    SLArrayIndex_t *,               Input array offset
    SLData_t *,                      Output array offset
    SLData_t *,                      Previous sample
    const SLData_t,                  Pitch shift ratio
    const SLArrayIndex_t,            Length of pitch shift array
    const SLArrayIndex_t)            Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function pitch shifts an array of samples, in the time domain, using a circular array, this function will shift the frequency up, or down, depending on whether the ratio is greater than, or less than 1.0 respectively.

NOTES ON USE

This technique benefits from carefully chosen array lengths, however some distortion will be seen as the pointers "cross over". Incorporated in the function is a smoothing filter, that can reduce this effect, another technique is to linearly interpolate samples, as the pointers cross. As with the frequency domain interpolation, the array lengths should be as large as possible, without adding too much delay.

The input array offset parameter should be initialised to zero in the calling function. The output array offset and previous sample parameters should be initialised to SIGLIB_ZERO in the calling function.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_FdInterpolate, SDS_TdPitchShift

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDS_EchoGenerate (const SLData_t,	Input sample
SLData_t *,	Echo state array pointer
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Echo array data input location
const SLData_t,	Echo delay
const SLData_t,	Echo decay
const enum SLEcho_t,	Echo type
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Echo array length

DESCRIPTION

This function generates an echo, which is superimposed on a signal, by delaying it and adding it to the original. The data is delayed, using a circular array. Two forms of echo can be generated:

SIGLIB_ECHO	produces a feedback echo
SIGLIB_REVERB	produces a feed forward echo.

The delay applied to the signal is a fraction of the echo array length, to get this as a time, in seconds, the sample rate and the array length must be used, as follows:

$$Time\ delay(Se\ c s) = Echodelay * \frac{Bufferlength}{Samplerate}$$

NOTES ON USE

The Echo array data input location parameter should be initialised to zero in the calling function.

CROSS REFERENCE

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_Power (const SLData_t *,	Source array pointer
SLData_t *,	Destination array pointer
const SLData_t,	Power to raise data to
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function raises the data in the array to a power, on a per-sample basis.

NOTES ON USE

The source and destination pointers can point to the same array.

CROSS REFERENCE

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDS_Polynomial (const SLData_t, Data sample
 const SLData_t, x^0 coefficient
 const SLData_t, x^1 coefficient
 const SLData_t, x^2 coefficient
 const SLData_t, x^3 coefficient
 const SLData_t, x^4 coefficient
 const SLData_t) x^5 coefficient

DESCRIPTION

This function equates the polynomial:

$$y = C0 + C1*x + C2*x^2 + C3*x^3 + C4*x^4 + C5*x^5$$

NOTES ON USE

This function is very useful for adding a scale and an offset to a vector (using C0 and C1), prior to displaying it.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Polynomial

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLData_t SDA_Polynomial (const SLData_t *,      Source array pointer
                        SLData_t *,              Destination array pointer
                        const SLData_t,          x^0 coefficient
                        const SLData_t,          x^1 coefficient
                        const SLData_t,          x^2 coefficient
                        const SLData_t,          x^3 coefficient
                        const SLData_t,          x^4 coefficient
                        const SLData_t,          x^5 coefficient
                        const SLArrayIndex_t)     Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function equates the polynomial, on a per sample basis:

$$y = C0 + C1*x + C2*x^2 + C3*x^3 + C4*x^4 + C5*x^5$$

NOTES ON USE

This function is very useful for adding a scale and an offset to a vector (using C0 and C1), prior to displaying it. The source and destination pointers can point to the same array.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS_Polynomial

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDS_Modulo (const SLData_t,	Source data
const SLData_t,	Modulo number
const enum SLModuloMode_t)	Modulo mode

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the sample modulo N . The two types of modulo are: SIGLIB_SINGLE_SIDED_MODULO and SIGLIB_DOUBLE_SIDED_MODULO where single sided wraps the number between 0 and Max and the double sided between -Max and + Max.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_Modulo

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_Modulo (const SLData_t *,	Source array pointer
SLData_t *,	Destination array pointer
const SLData_t,	Modulo number
const enum SLModuloMode_t,	Modulo mode
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the samples in the array modulo N . The two types of modulo are: SIGLIB_SINGLE_SIDED_MODULO and SIGLIB_DOUBLE_SIDED_MODULO where single sided wraps the number between 0 and Max and the double sided between -Max and + Max.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDS_Modulo

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_AgcPeak (const SLData_t *,	Source array pointer
SLData_t *,	Destination array pointer
const SLData_t,	Desired signal magnitude to attain
const SLData_t,	Minimum threshold
const SLData_t,	Sensitivity of attack gain adjustment
const SLData_t,	Sensitivity of decay gain adjustment
SLData_t *,	Pointer to gain value
SLData_t *,	Pointer to maximum value
const SLArrayIndex_t,	History array length
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function provides an automatic gain control function by adjusting the gain dependent on the peak level in the previous N output samples in the history array. If the peak output magnitude is lower than the desired magnitude then the gain is increased otherwise it is decreased. The attack and decay sensitivities adjust the amounts by which the gain will be increased (attack) or decreased (decay) when modified. The sensitivities are multiplying factors, the attack sensitivity should be a value greater than, but very close to, 1.0 and the decay sensitivity should be less than, but very close to, 1.0.

NOTES ON USE

The minimum threshold parameter specifies the level below which the gain value is not adjusted, this is used to ensure that the AGC gain during periods of "silence".

The feedback calculates the error over a small history of the output data stream, different applications will require different sub-array lengths and hence different sensitivity coefficients. The source array length must be an integer multiple of the history array length.

The gain value should be initialised to 1.0 (or another suitable value) before calling this function.

This function will always be stable.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_AgcMeanAbs, SDA_AgcMeanAbs, SIF_AgcMeanSquared,
SDA_AgcMeanSquared.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SIF_AgcMeanAbs (SLData_t *,	Moving average state array
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Moving average state array index
SLData_t *,	Pointer to moving average sum
SLData_t *,	Pointer to AGC gain
SLData_t *,	Pointer to scaled desired mean level
SLData_t *,	Pointer to threshold mean level
const SLData_t,	Desired level of AGC output
const SLData_t,	Threshold for update of AGC
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Length of moving average

DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the SDA_AgcMeanAbs function.

NOTES ON USE

The minimum threshold parameter specifies the level below which the gain value is not adjusted, this is used to ensure that the AGC gain during periods of "silence". This level is converted to a mean absolute value.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_AgcPeak, SDA_AgcMeanAbs, SIF_AgcMeanSquared,
SDA_AgcMeanSquared.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_AgcMeanAbs (const SLData_t *,	Pointer to source array
SLData_t *,	Pointer to destination array
const SLData_t,	Desired scaled value
const SLData_t,	Threshold scaled value
const SLData_t,	Attack sensitivity
const SLData_t,	Decay sensitivity
SLData_t *,	Moving average state array
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Moving average state array index
SLData_t *,	Pointer to moving average sum
SLData_t *,	Pointer to AGC gain
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Length of moving average state array
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Length of input array

DESCRIPTION

This function provides an automatic gain control function by adjusting the gain dependent on the mean (moving average) of the absolute level in the previous N output samples. If the output mean is lower than the desired mean then the gain is increased otherwise it is decreased. The attack and decay sensitivities adjust the amounts by which the gain will be increased (attack) or decreased (decay) when modified. The sensitivities are multiplying factors, the attack sensitivity should be a value greater than, but very close to, 1.0 and the decay sensitivity should be less than, but very close to, 1.0.

NOTES ON USE

The gain value should be initialised to 1.0 (or another suitable value) before calling this function.

This function will always be stable and is optimised to process sinusoidal waveforms.

This function does not use the divide by N to calculate the true moving averages instead all numbers are scaled by N and handled accordingly.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_AgcPeak, SIF_AgcMeanAbs, SIF_AgcMeanSquared,
SDA_AgcMeanSquared.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SIF_AgcMeanSquared (SLData_t *,	Moving average state array
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Moving average state array index
SLData_t *,	Pointer to moving average sum
SLData_t *,	Pointer to AGC gain
SLData_t *,	Ptr to scaled desired mean squared level
SLData_t *,	Pointer to threshold mean squared level
const SLData_t,	Desired level of AGC output
const SLData_t,	Threshold for update of AGC
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Length of moving average

DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the SDA_AgcMeanSquared function.

NOTES ON USE

The minimum threshold parameter specifies the level below which the gain value is not adjusted, this is used to ensure that the AGC gain during periods of "silence". This level is converted to a mean absolute value.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_AgcPeak, SIF_AgcMeanAbs, SDA_AgcMeanAbs,
SDA_AgcMeanSquared.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_AgcMeanSquared (const SLData_t *, Pointer to source array
    SLData_t *,                               Pointer to destination array
    const SLData_t,                           Desired scaled value
    const SLData_t,                           Threshold scaled value
    const SLData_t,                           Attack sensitivity
    const SLData_t,                           Decay sensitivity
    SLData_t *,                               Moving average state array
    SLArrayIndex_t *,                         Moving average state array index
    SLData_t *,                               Pointer to moving average sum
    SLData_t *,                               Pointer to AGC gain
    const SLArrayIndex_t,                     Length of moving average state array
    const SLArrayIndex_t)                     Length of input array
```

DESCRIPTION

This function provides an automatic gain control function by adjusting the gain dependent on the mean (moving average) of the squared values in the previous N output samples. If the output mean squared value is lower than the desired mean squared value then the gain is increased otherwise it is decreased. The attack and decay sensitivities adjust the amounts by which the gain will be increased (attack) or decreased (decay) when modified. The sensitivities are multiplying factors, the attack sensitivity should be a value greater than, but very close to, 1.0 and the decay sensitivity should be less than, but very close to, 1.0.

NOTES ON USE

The gain value should be initialised to 1.0 (or another suitable value) before calling this function.

This function will always be stable and is optimised to process sinusoidal waveforms.

This function does not use the divide by N to calculate the true moving averages instead all numbers are scaled by N and handled accordingly.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_AgcPeak, SIF_AgcMeanAbs, SDA_AgcMeanAbs,
SIF_AgcMeanSquared.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_GroupDelay (const SLData_t *,   Phase signal array pointer
                     SLData_t *,         Destination array pointer
                     SLData_t *,         Previous phase value pointer
                     const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the group delay of the phase signal source, essentially this is a differentiating function however it will allow for the fact that most phase sources wrap at +/- PI.

NOTES ON USE

The previous phase value should be initialised to zero. This indirect access technique has been used to allow the function to be re-entrant and to be applied to multiple streams simultaneously.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_PhaseWrapped, SDA_PhaseUnWrapped, SDA_RectangularToPolar

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLFixData_t SDA_ZeroCrossingDetect (const SLData_t *, Source array pointer
SLData_t *, Destination array pointer
SLData_t *, Previous source data value pointer
const enum SLLevelCrossingMode_t, Level crossing type - +ve, -ve, both
const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the number of zero crossings in the source array and sets the values in the destination array to zero except where a zero crossing is detected in the input array. The zero crossings are detected according to the SLLevelCrossingMode_t parameter as follows:

SIGLIB_POSITIVE_LEVEL_CROSS	Negative to positive zero crossings	+1
SIGLIB_NEGATIVE_LEVEL_CROSS	Positive to negative zero crossings	-1
SIGLIB_ALL_LEVEL_CROSS	All zero crossings	+1 for positive zero crossings and -1 for negative zero crossings

NOTES ON USE

The destination and source array pointers can point to the same array.

The pointer to previous source data value parameter should be set to zero prior to calling this function, it is used to carry the data over array boundaries.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS_ZeroCrossingDetect, SDA_FirstZeroCrossingLocation,
SDA_ZeroCrossingCount, SDA_LevelCrossingDetect, SDS_LevelCrossingDetect,
SDA_FirstLevelCrossingLocation, SDA_LevelCrossingCount.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDS_ZeroCrossingDetect (const SLData_t, Source sample
 SLData_t *, Previous source data value pointer
 const enum SLLevelCrossingMode_t) Level crossing type - +ve, -ve, both

DESCRIPTION

This function returns zero if no zero crossing is detected and returns the zero crossings according to the SLLevelCrossingMode_t parameter as follows:

SIGLIB_POSITIVE_LEVEL_CROSS	Negative to positive zero crossings	+1
SIGLIB_NEGATIVE_LEVEL_CROSS	Positive to negative zero crossings	-1
SIGLIB_ALL_LEVEL_CROSS	All zero crossings	+1 for positive zero crossings and -1 for negative zero crossings

NOTES ON USE

The pointer to previous source data value parameter should be set to zero prior to calling this function, it is used to carry the data over subsequent calls to this function.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_ZeroCrossingDetect, SDA_FirstZeroCrossingLocation,
 SDA_ZeroCrossingCount, SDA_LevelCrossingDetect, SDS_LevelCrossingDetect,
 SDA_FirstLevelCrossingLocation, SDA_LevelCrossingCount.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLFixData_t SDA_FirstZeroCrossingLocation (const SLData_t *, Source array
 pointer
 SLData_t *, Previous source data value pointer
 const enum SLLevelCrossingMode_t, Level crossing type - +ve, -ve, both
 const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the location of the first sample after the signal has crossed zero according to the SLLevelCrossingMode_t parameter as follows:

SIGLIB_POSITIVE_LEVEL_CROSS	Negative to positive zero crossings	+1
SIGLIB_NEGATIVE_LEVEL_CROSS	Positive to negative zero crossings	-1
SIGLIB_ALL_LEVEL_CROSS	All zero crossings	+1 for positive zero crossings and -1 for negative zero crossings

NOTES ON USE

The pointer to previous source data value parameter should be set to zero prior to calling this function and is used to carry the data over array boundaries.

This function returns SIGLIB_LEVEL_CROSSING_NOT_DETECTED if no zero crossings have been detected.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_ZeroCrossingDetect, SDS_ZeroCrossingDetect,
 SDA_ZeroCrossingCount, SDA_LevelCrossingDetect, SDS_LevelCrossingDetect,
 SDA_FirstLevelCrossingLocation, SDA_LevelCrossingCount.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLFixData_t SDA_ZeroCrossingCount (const SLData_t *, Source array pointer
                                   SLData_t *,           Previous source data value pointer
                                   const enum SLLevelCrossingMode_t, Level crossing type - +ve, -ve, both
                                   const SLArrayIndex_t)      Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the number of zero crossings in the source array. The zero crossings are detected according to the SLLevelCrossingMode_t parameter as follows:

SIGLIB_POSITIVE_LEVEL_CROSS	Negative to positive zero crossings	+1
SIGLIB_NEGATIVE_LEVEL_CROSS	Positive to negative zero crossings	-1
SIGLIB_ALL_LEVEL_CROSS	All zero crossings	+1 for positive zero crossings and -1 for negative zero crossings

NOTES ON USE

The pointer to previous source data value parameter should be set to zero prior to calling this function, it is used to carry the data over array boundaries.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_ZeroCrossingDetect, SDS_ZeroCrossingDetect, SDA_FirstZeroCrossingLocation, SDA_LevelCrossingDetect, SDS_LevelCrossingDetect, SDA_FirstLevelCrossingLocation, SDA_LevelCrossingCount.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLFixData_t SDA_LevelCrossingDetect (const SLData_t *,   Source array pointer
                                     SLData_t *,           Destination array pointer
                                     SLData_t *,           Previous source data value pointer
                                     const enum SLLevelCrossingMode_t, Level crossing type - +ve, -ve, both
                                     const SLArrayIndex_t)  Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the number of level crossings in the source array and sets the values in the destination array to level except where a level crossing is detected in the input array. The level crossings are detected according to the SLLevelCrossingMode_t parameter as follows:

SIGLIB_POSITIVE_LEVEL_CROSS	Negative to positive zero crossings	+1
SIGLIB_NEGATIVE_LEVEL_CROSS	Positive to negative zero crossings	-1
SIGLIB_ALL_LEVEL_CROSS	All zero crossings	+1 for positive zero crossings and -1 for negative zero crossings

NOTES ON USE

The destination and source array pointers can point to the same array.

The pointer to previous source data value parameter should be set to zero prior to calling this function, it is used to carry the data over array boundaries.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_ZeroCrossingDetect, SDS_ZeroCrossingDetect,
SDA_FirstZeroCrossingLocation, SDA_ZeroCrossingCount,
SDS_LevelCrossingDetect, SDA_FirstLevelCrossingLocation,
SDA_LevelCrossingCount.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDS_LevelCrossingDetect (const SLData_t, Source sample
SLData_t *, Previous source data value pointer
const enum SLLevelCrossingMode_t) Level crossing type - +ve, -ve, both

DESCRIPTION

This function returns zero if no level crossing is detected and returns the level crossings according to the SLLevelCrossingMode_t parameter as follows:

SIGLIB_POSITIVE_LEVEL_CROSS	Negative to positive zero crossings	+1
SIGLIB_NEGATIVE_LEVEL_CROSS	Positive to negative zero crossings	-1
SIGLIB_ALL_LEVEL_CROSS	All zero crossings	+1 for positive zero crossings and -1 for negative zero crossings

NOTES ON USE

The pointer to previous source data value parameter should be set to zero prior to calling this function, it is used to carry the data over subsequent calls to this function.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_ZeroCrossingDetect, SDS_ZeroCrossingDetect,
SDA_FirstZeroCrossingLocation, SDA_ZeroCrossingCount,
SDA_LevelCrossingDetect, SDA_FirstLevelCrossingLocation,
SDA_LevelCrossingCount.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLFixData_t SDA_FirstLevelCrossingLocation (const SLData_t *, Source array
 pointer
 SLData_t *, Previous source data value pointer
 const enum SLLevelCrossingMode_t, Level crossing type - +ve, -ve, both
 const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the location of the first sample after the signal has crossed the given level according to the SLLevelCrossingMode_t parameter as follows:

SIGLIB_POSITIVE_LEVEL_CROSS	Negative to positive zero crossings	+1
SIGLIB_NEGATIVE_LEVEL_CROSS	Positive to negative zero crossings	-1
SIGLIB_ALL_LEVEL_CROSS	All zero crossings	+1 for positive zero crossings and -1 for negative zero crossings

NOTES ON USE

The pointer to previous source data value parameter should be set to zero prior to calling this function and is be used to carry the data over array boundaries.

This function returns SIGLIB_LEVEL_CROSSING_NOT_DETECTED if no level crossings have been detected.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_ZeroCrossingDetect, SDS_ZeroCrossingDetect,
 SDA_FirstZeroCrossingLocation, SDA_ZeroCrossingCount,
 SDA_LevelCrossingDetect, SDS_LevelCrossingDetect, SDA_LevelCrossingCount.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLFixData_t SDA_LevelCrossingCount (const SLData_t *,Source array pointer
    SLData_t *,                Previous source data value pointer
    const enum SLLevelCrossingMode_t, Level crossing type - +ve, -ve, both
    const SLArrayIndex_t)      Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the number of level crossings in the source array. The level crossings are detected according to the SLLevelCrossingMode_t parameter as follows:

SIGLIB_POSITIVE_LEVEL_CROSS	Negative to positive zero crossings	+1
SIGLIB_NEGATIVE_LEVEL_CROSS	Positive to negative zero crossings	-1
SIGLIB_ALL_LEVEL_CROSS	All zero crossings	+1 for positive zero crossings and -1 for negative zero crossings

NOTES ON USE

The pointer to previous source data value parameter should be set to zero prior to calling this function, it is used to carry the data over array boundaries.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_ZeroCrossingDetect, SDS_ZeroCrossingDetect,
SDA_FirstZeroCrossingLocation, SDA_ZeroCrossingCount,
SDA_LevelCrossingDetect, SDS_LevelCrossingDetect,
SDA_FirstLevelCrossingLocation.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLArrayIndex_t SDA_ClearLocation (SLData_t *, Array pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t, Location to clear
const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function sets the data at the required location to zero.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_SetLocation

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLArrayIndex_t SDA_SetLocation (SLData_t *,    Array pointer
                                const SLArrayIndex_t,    Location to set
                                const SLData_t          Value to write to array
                                const SLArrayIndex_t)    Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function sets the data at the required location to the provided value.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_ClearLocation

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLArrayIndex_t SDA_SortMinToMax (const SLData_t *, Source array pointer
SLData_t *, Destination array pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function sorts the data in the array, according to value. The order of the data in the returned array is minimum first, maximum last.

This function uses the bubble sorting algorithm.

NOTES ON USE

The destination and source array pointers can point to the same array.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_SortMaxToMin, SDA_SortMinToMax2, SDA_SortMaxToMin2,
SDA_SortIndexed.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLArrayIndex_t SDA_SortMaxToMin (const SLData_t *, Source array pointer
SLData_t *, Destination array pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function sorts the data in the array, according to value. The order of the data in the returned array is maximum first, minimum last.

This function uses the bubble sorting algorithm.

NOTES ON USE

The destination and source array pointers can point to the same array.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_SortMinToMax, SDA_SortMinToMax2, SDA_SortMaxToMin2,
SDA_SortIndexed.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLArrayIndex_t SDA_SortMinToMax2 (const SLData_t *, Source array pointer #1  
    const SLData_t *,           Source array pointer #2  
    SLData_t *,                 Destination array pointer #1  
    SLData_t *,                 Destination array pointer #2  
    const SLArrayIndex_t)       Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function sorts the data in the array, according to value. The order of the data in the returned array is minimum first, maximum last.

This function performs the same operation on both source arrays. This can be helpful if you want to use the second array to generate an index array for applying the same sorting algorithm to further arrays.

This function uses the bubble sorting algorithm.

NOTES ON USE

The destination and source array pointers can point to the same array.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_SortMinToMax, SDA_SortMaxToMin, SDA_SortMaxToMin2,
SDA_SortIndexed.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLArrayIndex_t SDA_SortMaxToMin2 (const SLData_t *, Source array pointer #1
    const SLData_t *,           Source array pointer #2
    SLData_t *,                 Destination array pointer #1
    SLData_t *,                 Destination array pointer #2
    const SLArrayIndex_t)       Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function sorts the data in the array, according to value. The order of the data in the returned array is maximum first, minimum last.

This function performs the same operation on both source arrays. This can be helpful if you want to use the second array to generate an index array for applying the same sorting algorithm to further arrays.

This function uses the bubble sorting algorithm.

NOTES ON USE

The destination and source array pointers can point to the same array.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_SortMinToMax, SDA_SortMaxToMin, SDA_SortMinToMax2,
SDA_SortIndexed.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLArrayIndex_t SDA_SortIndexed (const SLData_t *, Source array pointer
 const SLArrayIndex_t *, Index Array Pointer
 SLData_t *, Destination array pointer
 const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function sorts the data in the array, using the index array to provide the output location for the sample.

NOTES ON USE

This function will not work in-place.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_SortMinToMax, SDA_SortMaxToMin, SDA_SortMinToMax2,
SDA_SortMaxToMin2.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLFixData_t SDS_CountOneBits (const SLFixData_t) Input word

DESCRIPTION

This function counts the number of “one” bits in the input data word.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDS_CountZeroBits, SDS_CountLeadingOneBits,
SDS_CountLeadingZeroBits.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLFixData_t SDS_CountZeroBits (const SLFixData_t) Input word

DESCRIPTION

This function counts the number of “zero” bits in the input data word.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDS_CountOneBits, SDS_CountLeadingOneBits,
SDS_CountLeadingZeroBits.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLFixData_t SDS_CountLeadingOneBits (const SLFixData_t) Input word

DESCRIPTION

This function counts the number of leading “one” bits in the input data word.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS_CountOneBits, SDS_CountZeroBits, SDS_CountLeadingZeroBits.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLFixData_t SDS_CountLeadingZeroBits (const SLFixData_t) Input word

DESCRIPTION

This function counts the number of leading “zero” bits in the input data word.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS_CountOneBits, SDS_CountZeroBits, SDS_CountLeadingOneBits.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_Sign (const SLData_t *,	Source array pointer
SLData_t *,	Destination array pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Sample array length

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the sign of the values in the source vector. I.E:

if $x(n) > 1.0$ then $y(n) = 1.0$
if $x(n) < -1.0$ then $y(n) = -1.0$
else $y(n) = 0.0$

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_Swap (SLData_t *,	Source array pointer 1
SLData_t *,	Source array pointer 2
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Sample array length

DESCRIPTION

This function swaps the elements in each array.

Source1[0] <-> Source2[0]
Source1[2] <-> Source2[1]
.
.
Source1[N] <-> Source2[N]

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLFixData_t SUF_ModuloIncrement (const SLPixData_t, Input value
const SLPixData_t, Increment value
const SLPixData_t) Modulo value

DESCRIPTION

This function increments the fixed point value using modulo N arithmetic.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SUF_ModuloDecrement, SUF_IndexModuloIncrement,
SUF_IndexModuloDecrement

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLFixData_t SUF_ModuloDecrement (const SLPixData_t, Input value
const SLPixData_t, Decrement value
const SLPixData_t) Modulo value

DESCRIPTION

This function decrements the fixed point value using modulo N arithmetic.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SUF_ModuloIncrement, SUF_IndexModuloIncrement,
SUF_IndexModuloDecrement

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLFixData_t SUF_IndexModuloIncrement (const SLArrayIndex_t, Input value
const SLArrayIndex_t, Increment value
const SLArrayIndex_t) Modulo value

DESCRIPTION

This function increments the fixed point array index value using modulo N arithmetic.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SUF_IndexModuloDecrement, SUF_ModuloIncrement,
SUF_ModuloDecrement

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLFixData_t	SUF_IndexModuloDecrement (const SLArrayIndex_t,	Input value
	const SLArrayIndex_t,	Decrement value
	const SLArrayIndex_t)	Modulo value

DESCRIPTION

This function decrements the fixed point array index value using modulo N arithmetic.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SUF_IndexModuloIncrement, SUF_ModuloIncrement,
SUF_ModuloDecrement

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLArrayIndex_t SDA_Find (const SLData_t *,	Pointer to source array
SLData_t *,	Pointer to data destination array
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to location destination array
const enum SLFindType_t,	Find type
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function locates all the values in the source array that match the specification in 'FindType'. The type options are:

```
SIGLIB_FIND_GREATER_THAN_ZERO  
SIGLIB_FIND_GREATER_THAN_OR_EQUAL_TO_ZERO  
SIGLIB_FIND_EQUAL_TO_ZERO  
SIGLIB_FIND_LESS_THAN_ZERO  
SIGLIB_FIND_LESS_THAN_OR_EQUAL_TO_ZERO  
SIGLIB_FIND_NOT_EQUAL_TO_ZERO
```

When the function locates a value in the source array it writes the value to the data destination array and the index of the value to the location destination array.

This function returns the number of elements of the given type that have been found.

NOTES ON USE

The output array length will be variable, dependent on the source data. The safest way to use this function is to allocate the destination arrays to have the same input lengths as the source array.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_FindValue

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLArrayIndex_t SDA_FindValue (const SLData_t *,	Pointer to source array
const SLData_t,	Desired value
SLData_t *,	Pointer to data destination array
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to location destination array
const enum SLFindType_t,	Find type
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function locates all the values in the source array that match the desired value and the specification in 'FindType'. The type options are:

```
SIGLIB_FIND_GREATER_THAN_ZERO  
SIGLIB_FIND_GREATER_THAN_OR_EQUAL_TO_ZERO  
SIGLIB_FIND_EQUAL_TO_ZERO  
SIGLIB_FIND_LESS_THAN_ZERO  
SIGLIB_FIND_LESS_THAN_OR_EQUAL_TO_ZERO  
SIGLIB_FIND_NOT_EQUAL_TO_ZERO
```

When the function locates a value in the source array it writes the value to the data destination array and the index of the value to the location destination array.

This function returns the number of elements of the given type that have been found.

NOTES ON USE

The output array length will be variable, dependent on the source data. The safest way to use this function is to allocate the destination arrays to have the same input lengths as the source array.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Find

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SIF_DeGlitch (SLArrayIndex_t *,	Count of number of samples out of range
SLData_t,	Initial level holdover
SLData_t *)	Current level holdover

DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the de-glitch / de-bounce functions.

NOTES ON USE

The de-glitch functions hold over the existing signal level when the input signal crosses the threshold level for less than a specified number of samples.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS_DeGlitch, SDA_DeGlitch

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t	SDS_DeGlitch (SLData_t,	Source sample
SLArrayIndex_t *		Count of number of samples out of range
const enum SLDeGlitchMode_t,		Switch to indicate de-glitch mode
const SLArrayIndex_t,		Glitch length threshold
const SLData_t,		Glitch level threshold
SLData_t *)		Current level holdover

DESCRIPTION

This function performs a de-glitch / de-bounce function on the source data, on a per sample basis.

NOTES ON USE

The de-glitch functions hold over the existing signal level when the input signal crosses the threshold level for less than a specified number of samples.

The de-glitch mode parameter has the following options:

SIGLIB_DEGLITCH_ABOVE	Check for glitches above the threshold level
SIGLIB_DEGLITCH_BOTH	Check for glitches above and below the threshold level
SIGLIB_DEGLITCH_BELOW	Check for glitches below the threshold level

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_DeGlitch, SDA_DeGlitch

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_DeGlitch (SLData_t *,	Pointer to source array
SLData_t *,	Pointer to destination array
SArrayIndex_t *,	Count of number of samples out of range
const enum SLDeGlitchMode_t,	Switch to indicate de-glitch mode
const SArrayIndex_t,	Glitch length threshold
const SLData_t,	Glitch level threshold
SLData_t *,	Current level holdover
const SArrayIndex_t)	Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function performs a de-glitch / de-bounce function on the source data, on an array basis. This function works across array boundaries

NOTES ON USE

The de-glitch functions hold over the existing signal level when the input signal crosses the threshold level for less than a specified number of samples.

The de-glitch mode parameter has the following options:

SIGLIB_DEGLITCH_ABOVE	Check for glitches above the threshold level
SIGLIB_DEGLITCH_BOTH	Check for glitches above and below the threshold level
SIGLIB_DEGLITCH_BELOW	Check for glitches below the threshold level

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_DeGlitch, SDS_DeGlitch

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLArrayIndex_t SDA_RemoveDuplicates (const SLData_t *, Pointer to source array
SLData_t *, Pointer to destination array
const SLArrayIndex_t) Source array length

DESCRIPTION

This function removes duplicate entries from an array. The entries in the destination array appear in the order they were in the source array.

Return value: Number of elements in destination array.

NOTES ON USE

The order of the data is unchanged.

Result array length will be shorter than or equal to the length of the source array.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_FindAllDuplicates, SDA_FindFirstDuplicates,
SDA_FindSortAllDuplicates, SDA_FindSortFirstDuplicates

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLArrayIndex_t SDA_FindAllDuplicates (const SLData_t *,	Ptr to src array 1
const SLData_t *,	Pointer to source array 2
SLData_t *,	Pointer to destination array
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Source array length 1
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Source array length 2

DESCRIPTION

This function searches the first array for all values that are entries in the second array.

Return value: Number of elements in destination array.

NOTES ON USE

The order of the data in the result array will appear in the order of the entries in the first array.

Result array length will be shorter than or equal to the length of the first source array.

Duplicate numbers in the first array will be duplicated in the result array.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_RemoveDuplicates, SDA_FindFirstDuplicates,
SDA_FindSortAllDuplicates, SDA_FindSortFirstDuplicates

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLArrayIndex_t SDA_FindFirstDuplicates (const SLData_t *, Ptr to src array 1
const SLData_t *, Pointer to source array 2
SLData_t *, Pointer to destination array
const SLArrayIndex_t, Source array length 1
const SLArrayIndex_t) Source array length 2

DESCRIPTION

This function searches the first array for all values that are entries in the second array.

Return value: Number of elements in destination array.

NOTES ON USE

The order of the data in the result array will appear in the order of the entries in the first array.

Result array length will be shorter than or equal to the length of the first source array.

Duplicate numbers in the first array will be removed from the result array so that values only appear once.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_RemoveDuplicates, SDA_FindAllDuplicates,
SDA_FindSortAllDuplicates, SDA_FindSortFirstDuplicates

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLArrayIndex_t SDA_FindSortAllDuplicates (const SLData_t *, Ptr. to src. array 1
const SLData_t *, Pointer to source array 2
SLData_t *, Pointer to destination array
const SLArrayIndex_t, Source array length 1
const SLArrayIndex_t) Source array length 2

DESCRIPTION

This function searches the first array for all values that are entries in the second array and sorts them in order minimum to maximum.

Return value: Number of elements in destination array.

NOTES ON USE

The order of the data in the result array will sorted from the smallest to largest magnitude.

Result array length will be shorter than or equal to the length of the first source array.

Duplicate numbers in the first array will be duplicated in the result array.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_RemoveDuplicates, SDA_FindAllDuplicates,
SDA_FindFirstDuplicates, SDA_FindSortFirstDuplicates

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLArrayIndex_t SDA_FindSortFirstDuplicates (const SLData_t *, Ptr to src array 1
const SLData_t *, Pointer to source array 2
SLData_t *, Pointer to destination array
const SLArrayIndex_t, Source array length 1
const SLArrayIndex_t) Source array length 2

DESCRIPTION

This function searches the first array for all values that are entries in the second array and sorts them in order minimum to maximum.

Return value: Number of elements in destination array.

NOTES ON USE

The order of the data in the result array will sorted from the smallest to largest magnitude.

Result array length will be shorter than or equal to the length of the first source array.

Duplicate numbers in the first array will be removed from the result array so that values only appear once.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_RemoveDuplicates, SDA_FindAllDuplicates,
SDA_FindFirstDuplicates, SDA_FindSortAllDuplicates

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_Shuffle (const SLData_t *,	Pointer to source array
SLData_t *,	Pointer to destination array
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Source array length

DESCRIPTION

This function shuffles the order of the data in the array.

NOTES ON USE

As the size of the array approaches RAND_MAX, the result becomes less random. The solution is to use a better random number generator or call the function multiple times.

CROSS REFERENCE

SMX_ShuffleColumns, SMX_ShuffleRows

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_InsertSample (const SLData_t *, Pointer to source array
    const SLData_t,           New sample
    SLData_t *,               Pointer to destination array
    const SLArrayIndex_t,     New sample location
    const SLArrayIndex_t);    Source array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function inserts the sample into the array, at the given location, and shifts all the data to the right of this location right by one sample.

NOTES ON USE

This function can work in-place. I.E. the source and destination pointers can point to the same array.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_InsertArray, SDA_ExtractSample, SDA_ExtractArray

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_InsertArray (const SLData_t *,	Pointer to source array
const SLData_t *,	Pointer to new sample array
SLData_t *,	Pointer to destination array
const SLArrayIndex_t,	New sample location
const SLArrayIndex_t,	New sample array length
const SLArrayIndex_t);	Source array length

DESCRIPTION

This function inserts the array of samples into the source array, at the given location, and shifts all the data to the right of this location right by number of new samples.

NOTES ON USE

This function can work in-place. I.E. the source and destination pointers can point to the same array.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_InsertSample, SDA_ExtractSample, SDA_ExtractArray

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLData_t SDA_ExtractSample (const SLData_t *,  Pointer to source array
                             SLData_t *,        Pointer to destination array
                             const SLArrayIndex_t, New sample location
                             const SLArrayIndex_t); Source array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function extracts a single sample from the array, at the given location, and shifts all the data to the right of this location left by one sample.

The extracted value is function's return value.

NOTES ON USE

This function can work in-place. I.E. the source and destination pointers can point to the same array.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_InsertSample, SDA_InsertArray, SDA_ExtractArray

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_ExtractArray (const SLData_t *, Pointer to source array
    SLData_t *,           Pointer to destination array
    SLData_t *,           Pointer to extracted sample array
    const SLArrayIndex_t, Extracted sample location
    const SLArrayIndex_t, Extracted sample array length
    const SLArrayIndex_t); Source array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function extracts the array of samples from the array, at the given location, and shifts all the data to the right of the extracted array left by the number of extracted samples.

NOTES ON USE

This function can work in-place. I.E. the source and destination pointers can point to the same array.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_InsertSample, SDA_InsertArray, SDA_ExtractSample

DATA TYPE CONVERSION FUNCTIONS (*datatype.c*)

SDA_SigLibDataToFix

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_SigLibDataToFix (const SLData_t *,    Source array pointer
                          SLFixData_t *,      Destination array pointer
                          const SLArrayIndex_t) Sample array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function converts the input native SigLib data type to the native SigLib fixed point data type.

NOTES ON USE

This function uses rounding to nearest integer value to avoid floating point to fixed point conversion issues.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_FixToSigLibData, SDA_SigLibDataToImageData,
SDA_ImageDataToSigLibData, SDA_Fix16ToSigLibData,
SDA_SigLibDataToFix16, SDA_Fix32ToSigLibData, SDA_SigLibDataToFix32,
SDS_QFormatIntegerToSigLibData, SDS_SigLibDataToQFormatInteger,
SDA_QFormatIntegerToSigLibData, SDA_SigLibDataToQFormatInteger.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_FixToSigLibData (const SLFixData_t *, Source array pointer
                          SLData_t *,           Destination array pointer
                          const SLArrayIndex_t) Sample array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function converts the input native SigLib fixed point data type to the native SigLib data type.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_SigLibDataToFix, SDA_SigLibDataToImageData,
SDA_ImageDataToSigLibData, SDA_Fix16ToSigLibData,
SDA_SigLibDataToFix16, SDA_Fix32ToSigLibData, SDA_SigLibDataToFix32,
SDS_QFormatIntegerToSigLibData, SDS_SigLibDataToQFormatInteger,
SDA_QFormatIntegerToSigLibData, SDA_SigLibDataToQFormatInteger.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_SigLibDataToImageData (const SLData_t *,    Source array pointer
                                SLFixData_t *,        Destination array pointer
                                const SLArrayIndex_t)  Sample array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function converts the input native SigLib data type to the native SigLib image data type.

NOTES ON USE

It is assumed that the image data type will be fixed point so this function uses rounding to nearest integer value to avoid floating point to fixed point conversion issues.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_SigLibDataToFix, SDA_FixToSigLibData,
SDA_ImageDataToSigLibData, SDA_Fix16ToSigLibData,
SDA_SigLibDataToFix16, SDA_Fix32ToSigLibData, SDA_SigLibDataToFix32,
SDS_QFormatIntegerToSigLibData, SDS_SigLibDataToQFormatInteger,
SDA_QFormatIntegerToSigLibData, SDA_SigLibDataToQFormatInteger.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_ImageDataToSigLibData (const SLFixData_t *, Source array pointer  
                                SLData_t *,           Destination array pointer  
                                const SLArrayIndex_t) Sample array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function converts the input native SigLib image data type to the native SigLib data type.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_SigLibDataToFix, SDA_FixToSigLibData,
SDA_SigLibDataToImageData, SDA_Fix16ToSigLibData,
SDA_SigLibDataToFix16, SDA_Fix32ToSigLibData, SDA_SigLibDataToFix32,
SDS_QFormatIntegerToSigLibData, SDS_SigLibDataToQFormatInteger,
SDA_QFormatIntegerToSigLibData, SDA_SigLibDataToQFormatInteger.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_SigLibDataToFix16 (SLData_t *,           Pointer to source array
                           SLInt16_t *,         Pointer to destination array
                           const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function converts the input native SigLib fixed point data type to 16 bit (short) fixed point data.

NOTES ON USE

This function uses rounding to nearest integer value to avoid floating point to fixed point conversion issues.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_SigLibDataToFix, SDA_FixToSigLibData,
SDA_SigLibDataToImageData, SDA_ImageDataToSigLibData,
SDA_Fix16ToSigLibData, SDA_SigLibDataToFix32, SDA_Fix32ToSigLibData,
SDS_QFormatIntegerToSigLibData, SDS_SigLibDataToQFormatInteger,
SDA_QFormatIntegerToSigLibData, SDA_SigLibDataToQFormatInteger.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_Fix16ToSigLibData (SLInt16_t *,      Pointer to source array
                           SLData_t *,        Pointer to destination array
                           const SLArrayIndex_t)  Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function converts the input 16 bit (short) fixed point data type to the native SigLib data type.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_SigLibDataToFix, SDA_FixToSigLibData,
SDA_SigLibDataToImageData, SDA_ImageDataToSigLibData,
SDA_SigLibDataToFix16, SDA_SigLibDataToFix32, SDA_Fix32ToSigLibData,
SDS_QFormatIntegerToSigLibData, SDS_SigLibDataToQFormatInteger,
SDA_QFormatIntegerToSigLibData, SDA_SigLibDataToQFormatInteger.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_SigLibDataToFix32 (SLData_t *,           Pointer to source array
                           SLInt32_t *,         Pointer to destination array
                           const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function converts the input native SigLib fixed point data type to 32 bit (long) fixed point data.

NOTES ON USE

This function uses rounding to nearest integer value to avoid floating point to fixed point conversion issues.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_SigLibDataToFix, SDA_FixToSigLibData,
SDA_SigLibDataToImageData, SDA_ImageDataToSigLibData,
SDA_SigLibDataToFix16, SDA_Fix16ToSigLibData, SDA_Fix32ToSigLibData,
SDS_QFormatIntegerToSigLibData, SDS_SigLibDataToQFormatInteger,
SDA_QFormatIntegerToSigLibData, SDA_SigLibDataToQFormatInteger.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_Fix32ToSigLibData (SLInt32_t *,      Pointer to source array
                           SLData_t *,       Pointer to destination array
                           const SLArrayIndex_t)  Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function converts the input 32 bit (long) fixed point data type to the native SigLib data type.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_SigLibDataToFix, SDA_FixToSigLibData,
SDA_SigLibDataToImageData, SDA_ImageDataToSigLibData,
SDA_SigLibDataToFix16, SDA_Fix16ToSigLibData, SDA_SigLibDataToFix32,
SDS_QFormatIntegerToSigLibData, SDS_SigLibDataToQFormatInteger,
SDA_QFormatIntegerToSigLibData, SDA_SigLibDataToQFormatInteger.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLFixData_t SDS_SigLibDataToQFormatInteger (const SLData_t x, Source value
 const SLFixData_t, m
 const SLFixData_t) n

DESCRIPTION

This function converts the SigLib native data to Q format fixed point data type m.n.

NOTES ON USE

For run time optimization reasons this function does not check the fixed point word length so it is important to ensure that the sum of m+n is <= to the fixed point word length.

The macro SIGLIB_FIX_WORD_LENGTH provides the fixed point word length.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_SigLibDataToFix, SDA_FixToSigLibData,
SDA_SigLibDataToImageData, SDA_ImgDataToSigLibData,
SDA_SigLibDataToFix16, SDA_Fix16ToSigLibData, SDA_SigLibDataToFix32,
SDA_Fix32ToSigLibData, SDS_QFormatIntegerToSigLibData,
SDA_QFormatIntegerToSigLibData, SDA_SigLibDataToQFormatInteger.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDS_QFormatIntegerToSigLibData (const SLFixData_t, Q format integer data
const SLFixData_t) n

DESCRIPTION

This function converts the Q format fixed point data type m.n to SigLib native data.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_SigLibDataToFix, SDA_FixToSigLibData,
SDA_SigLibDataToImageData, SDA_ImageDataToSigLibData,
SDA_SigLibDataToFix16, SDA_Fix16ToSigLibData, SDA_SigLibDataToFix32,
SDA_Fix32ToSigLibData, SDS_SigLibDataToQFormatInteger,
SDA_QFormatIntegerToSigLibData, SDA_SigLibDataToQFormatInteger.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_SigLibDataToQFormatInteger (const SLData_t *, Pointer to source array
    SLFixData_t *,           Pointer to destination array
    const SLFixData_t,       m
    const SLFixData_t,       n
    const SLArrayIndex_t)    Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function converts the SigLib native data to Q format fixed point data type m.n.

NOTES ON USE

For run time optimization reasons this function does not check the fixed point word length so it is important to ensure that the sum of m+n is \leq to the fixed point word length.

The macro SIGLIB_FIX_WORD_LENGTH provides the fixed point word length.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_SigLibDataToFix, SDA_FixToSigLibData,
SDA_SigLibDataToImageData, SDA_ImageDataToSigLibData,
SDA_SigLibDataToFix16, SDA_Fix16ToSigLibData, SDA_SigLibDataToFix32,
SDA_Fix32ToSigLibData, SDS_QFormatIntegerToSigLibData,
SDS_SigLibDataToQFormatInteger, SDA_QFormatIntegerToSigLibData.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_QFormatIntegerToSigLibData (const SLFixData_t *, Pointer to source array
SLData_t *, Pointer to destination array
const SLFixData_t, m
const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function converts the Q format fixed point data type m.n to SigLib native data.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_SigLibDataToFix, SDA_FixToSigLibData,
SDA_SigLibDataToImageData, SDA_ImageDataToSigLibData,
SDA_SigLibDataToFix16, SDA_Fix16ToSigLibData, SDA_SigLibDataToFix32,
SDA_Fix32ToSigLibData, SDS_QFormatIntegerToSigLibData,
SDS_SigLibDataToQFormatInteger, SDA_SigLibDataToQFormatInteger.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDS_Pid (const SLData_t,	Proportional constant
const SLData_t,	Integral constant
const SLData_t,	Differential constant
const SLData_t,	Error
SLData_t *,	Control signal
SLData_t *,	Previous error
SLData_t *)	Previous error difference

DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the control signal required, as calculated from the proportional, integral and differential coefficients and the system error. The error being the difference between the set point and the current system output (the reset).

The function SDS_Pid accepts a pointer to the control signal as a parameter and does not return the control signal.

NOTES ON USE

Allowance must be made in the coefficients, for the system sample period, this is not done in this implementation of the PID process, for computational efficiency. Some common methods of specifying the PI and D coefficients assume that the integral and differential parts of the function inherently allow for the sample period. To convert incompatible coefficients to the SigLib format, it is only necessary to multiply the integral coefficient by the sample period and to divide the differential coefficient by the sample period.

The control signal, previous error and previous error difference parameters should be initialised to SIGLIB_ZERO in the calling function.

CROSS REFERENCE

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_Pwm (const SLData_t *,	Source array pointer
SLData_t *,	Destination array pointer
SLData_t *,	Ramp array pointer
SLData_t *,	Ramp phase array pointer
const SLData_t,	Pulse repetition frequency
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function generates a pulse width modulated signal from the modulating input signal. The pulse repetition frequency is set via the appropriate parameter.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

ORDER ANALYSIS FUNCTIONS (*order.c*)

These functions provide a suite of functionality for analyzing the orders of signals.

SDA_ExtractOrder

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDA_ExtractOrder (const SLData_t *,	Pointer to source array
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Order to extract
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Number of adjacent samples to search
const SLData_t,	First order frequency
const SLArrayIndex_t,	FFT length
const SLData_t,	Sample period = 1/(Sample rate)
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Input array length

DESCRIPTION

This function extracts the order results from a re-ordered array. The “Order to extract” parameter specifies which order to extract. The function scans the specified number of adjacent samples and returns the peak value. The “First order frequency” parameter specifies which FFT bin contains the desired first order signal.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_SumLevel, SDA_SumLevelWholeSpectrum, SIF_OrderAnalysis,
SDA_OrderAnalysis.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDA_SumLevel (const SLData_t *,	Pointer to source array
const enum SLSignalCoherenceType_t,	Signal source type
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Log magnitude flag
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Input array length

DESCRIPTION

This function sums the magnitudes of the 5 largest orders. The signal coherence type specifies whether the signal is of type:

SIGLIB_SIGNAL_COHERENT,
SIGLIB_SIGNAL_INCOHERENT

The “Log magnitude flag” specifies whether the input data is in linear or dB format.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_ExtractOrder, SDA_SumLevelWholeSpectrum, SIF_OrderAnalysis,
SDA_OrderAnalysis.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDA_SumLevelWholeSpectrum (const SLData_t *, Ptr. to src. array
 const enum SLSignalCoherenceType_t, Signal coherence type
 const SLArrayIndex_t, Log magnitude flag
 const SLData_t, Linear scaling value
 const SLArrayIndex_t) Input array length

DESCRIPTION

This function sums the magnitudes of the whole spectrum. The signal coherence type specifies whether the signal is of type:

 SIGLIB_SIGNAL_COHERENT,
 SIGLIB_SIGNAL_INCOHERENT

The “Log magnitude flag” specifies whether the input data is in linear or dB format. The linear scaling value specifies a scaling for the linear output.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_ExtractOrder, SDA_SumLevel, SIF_OrderAnalysis, SDA_OrderAnalysis.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SIF_OrderAnalysis (SLData_t *,	Pointer to sinc LUT array
SLData_t *,	Pointer to phase gain
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Number of adjacent samples
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Look up table length
SLData_t *,	Window coefficients pointer
const enum SLWindow_t,	Window type
const SLData_t,	Window coefficient
SLData_t *,	Window inverse coherent gain
SLData_t *,	Pointer to FFT coefficients
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to bit reverse address table
SLData_t *,	Pointer to real average array
SLData_t *,	Pointer to imaginary average array
const SLArrayIndex_t)	FFT Size

DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the order analysis function SDA_OrderAnalysis.

Order analysis is implemented by re-sampling the input data using a $\sin(x)/x$ re-sampling algorithm. It then windows the data and performs an FFT. For further information, please refer to the documentation for the following functions:

SDA_ResampleSinc
SDA_Window
SDA_Rfft

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_ExtractOrder, SDA_SumLevel, SDA_SumLevelWholeSpectrum,
SDA_OrderAnalysis.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```

SLData_t SDA_OrderAnalysis (const SLData_t *,   Pointer to source array
    SLData_t *,                               Pointer to local processing array
    SLData_t *,                               Pointer to destination array
    const SLData_t *,                         Pointer to LUT array
    const SLData_t,                           Look up table phase gain
    const SLData_t,                           First order frequency
    const SLData_t,                           Speed - revolutions per second
    const SLArrayIndex_t,                     Number of adjacent samples for
interpolation
    SLData_t *,                               Pointer to window coefficients
    const SLData_t,                           Window inverse coherent gain
    SLData_t *,                               Pointer to FFT coefficients
    SLArrayIndex_t *,                         Pointer to bit reverse address table
    SLData_t *,                               Pointer to real average array
    SLData_t *,                               Pointer to imaginary average array
    const SLArrayIndex_t,                     Log magnitude flag
    SLData_t *,                               Pointer to order array
    const SLArrayIndex_t,                     Base order
    const SLArrayIndex_t,                     Number of orders to extract
    const SLArrayIndex_t,                     Number of adjacent samples
    const SLData_t,                           Sample period
    const enum SLSignalCoherenceType_t,       Signal coherence type for
summing orders
    const SLData_t,                           dB scaling value
    const SLArrayIndex_t,                     Number of orders to sum
    const SLArrayIndex_t,                     Source array length
    const SLArrayIndex_t,                     FFT length
    const SLArrayIndex_t)                     log2 FFT length

```

DESCRIPTION

This function performs order analysis on the input data. The signal coherence type specifies whether the signal is of type:

```

SIGLIB_SIGNAL_COHERENT
SIGLIB_SIGNAL_INCOHERENT

```

The “Log magnitude flag” specifies whether the input data is in linear or dB format. The dB scaling value specifies a scaling for the dB output.

The “First order frequency” parameter specifies the frequency of the first order. The “Base order” parameter specifies the first order to extract and the “Number of orders to extract” specifies how many orders. For example, if the “Base order” is 10 and the “Number of orders to extract” is 5 then the orders extracted are 10, 20, 30, 40 and 50.

NOTES ON USE

The function `SIF_OrderAnalysis` must be called prior to calling this function.

CROSS REFERENCE

`SDA_ExtractOrder`, `SDA_SumLevel`, `SDA_SumLevelWholeSpectrum`,
`SIF_OrderAnalysis`.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDA_Sum (const SLData_t *,	Source array pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function sums all the points in the array.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_SumOfSquares, SDA_AbsSum, SDA_Mean, SDA_SampleSd,
SDA_PopulationSd, SDA_UnbiasedVariance, SDA_Median.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDA_AbsSum (const SLData_t *, Source array pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function sums all the absolute values of all the points in the array.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_Sum, SDA_SumOfSquares, SDA_Mean, SDA_SampleSd, SDA_PopulationSd,
SDA_UnbiasedVariance, SDA_Median.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDA_SumOfSquares (const SLData_t *, Source array Pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function sums the squares of all the points in the array. This function is often used to calculate the energy of a signal.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_Sum, SDA_AbsSum, SDA_Mean, SDA_SampleSd, SDA_PopulationSd,
SDA_UnbiasedVariance, SDA_Median.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDA_Mean (const SLData_t *,	Pointer to source array
const SLData_t,	Inverse of array length
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the arithmetic mean (also known as the average value) of all the points in the array, using the following equation:

$$\bar{x} = \frac{\sum (x)}{N}$$

NOTES ON USE

The “inverse of array length” parameter is used to avoid having to perform a divide operation within the function. This improves run-time performance.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Sum, SDA_AbsSum, SDA_AbsMean, SDA_SubtractMean,
SDA_SampleSd, SDA_PopulationSd, SDA_UnbiasedVariance, SDA_Median.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLData_t SDA_AbsMean (const SLData_t *,      Pointer to source array
                      const SLData_t,         Inverse of array length
                      const SLArrayIndex_t)    Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the arithmetic mean (also known as the average value) of the absolute values of all the points in the array, using the following equation:

$$\bar{x} = \frac{\sum (|x|)}{N}$$

NOTES ON USE

The “inverse of array length” parameter is used to avoid having to perform a divide operation within the function. This improves run-time performance.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Sum, SDA_AbsSum, SDA_Mean, SDA_SubtractMean,
SDA_SampleSd, SDA_PopulationSd, SDA_UnbiasedVariance, SDA_Median.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLData_t SDA_SubtractMean (const SLData_t *,   Pointer to source array
                           SLData_t *,         Pointer to destination array
                           const SLData_t,      Inverse of array length
                           const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the arithmetic mean (also known as the average value) of all the points in the array, using the following equation:

$$\bar{x} = \frac{\sum(x)}{n}$$

Then subtract this value from all of the points in the array.

NOTES ON USE

The “inverse of array length” parameter is used to avoid having to perform a divide operation within the function. This improves run-time performance.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Sum, SDA_AbsSum, SDA_Mean, SDA_SampleSd, SDA_PopulationSd, SDA_UnbiasedVariance, SDA_Median, SDA_SubtractMax.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLData_t SDA_SubtractMax (const SLData_t *,    Pointer to source array
                          SLData_t *,          Pointer to destination array
                          const SLArrayIndex_t)  Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the arithmetic maximum value of all the points in the source array then subtract this value from all of the points in the array.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Sum, SDA_AbsSum, SDA_Mean, SDA_SampleSd,
SDA_PopulationSd, SDA_UnbiasedVariance, SDA_Median, SDA_SubtractMean.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDA_SampleSd (const SLData_t *, Source array pointer
 const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the sample standard deviation of all the points in the array, using the following equation:

$$SD(n-1) = \sqrt{\frac{\sum x^2 - \frac{(\sum x)^2}{n}}{n-1}}$$

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Sum, SDA_AbsSum, SDA_Mean, SDA_PopulationSd,
SDA_UnbiasedVariance, SDA_Median.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDA_PopulationSd (const SLData_t *, Source array Pointer
 const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the population standard deviation of all the points in the array, using the following equation:

$$SD(n) = \sqrt{\frac{\sum x^2 - \frac{(\sum x)^2}{n}}{n}}$$

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Sum, SDA_AbsSum, SDA_Mean, SDA_SampleSd,
 SDA_UnbiasedVariance, SDA_Median.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDA_UnbiasedVariance (const SLData_t *, Source array Pointer
 const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the unbiased variance of all the points in the array, by squaring the sample standard deviation.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_Sum, SDA_AbsSum, SDA_Mean, SDA_SampleSd,
SDA_PopulationSd, SDA_Median.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLData_t SDA_Median (const SLData_t *, Source array pointer
                     SLData_t *,       Working array pointer
                     const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the median value of all the points in the array.

NOTES ON USE

The working array must be the same length as the input array.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Sum, SDA_AbsSum, SDA_Mean, SDA_SampleSd,
SDA_PopulationSd.

REGRESSION ANALYSIS FUNCTIONS (*regress.c*)

SDA_LinraConstantCoeff

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDA_LinraConstantCoeff (const SLData_t *, X array pointer
 const SLData_t *, Y array pointer
 const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the constant coefficient for a linear regression series.

Assuming the data can be modelled according to:

$$y = Mx + C$$

Gives:

$$C = \frac{\text{sum}(y) - M * \text{sum}(x)}{n}$$

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_LinraRegressionCoeff, SDA_LinraCorrelationCoeff,
SDA_LinraEstimateX, SDA_LinraEstimateY.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDA_LinraRegressionCoeff (const SLData_t *, X array pointer
const SLData_t *, Y array pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the regression coefficient for a linear regression series.

Assuming the data can be modelled according to:

$$y = Mx + C$$

Gives:

$$M = \frac{n * \text{sum}(x.y) - \text{sum}(x) * \text{sum}(y)}{n * \text{sum}(x^2) - (\text{sum}(x))^2}$$

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_LinraConstantCoeff, SDA_LinraCorrelationCoeff,
SDA_LinraEstimateX, SDA_LinraEstimateY.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDA_LinraCorrelationCoeff (const SLData_t *, X array pointer
const SLData_t *, Y array pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the correlation coefficient for a linear regression series.

Assuming the data can be modelled according to:

$$y = Mx + C$$

Gives:

$$r = \frac{n * \text{sum}(x,y) - \text{sum}(x) * \text{sum}(y)}{\sqrt{(n * \text{sum}(x^2) - (\text{sum}(x))^2) * (n * \text{sum}(y^2) - (\text{sum}(y))^2)}}$$

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_LinraConstantCoeff, SDA_LinraRegressionCoeff,
SDA_LinraEstimateX, SDA_LinraEstimateY.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDA_LinraEstimateX (const SLData_t *, X array pointer
 const SLData_t *, Y array pointer
 const SLData_t, Y value
 const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function estimates the X value for a given Y for a linear regression series.

Assuming the data can be modelled according to:

$$y = Mx + C$$

Gives:

$$x = \frac{y - C}{M}$$

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_LinraConstantCoeff, SDA_LinraRegressionCoeff,
 SDA_LinraCorrelationCoeff, SDA_LinraEstimateY.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLData_t SDA_LinraEstimateY (const SLData_t *,      X array pointer
                             const SLData_t *,      Y array pointer
                             const SLData_t,         X value
                             const SLArrayIndex_t)   Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function estimates the Y value for a given X for a linear regression series.

Assuming the data can be modelled according to:

$$y = Mx + C$$

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_LinraConstantCoeff, SDA_LinraRegressionCoeff,
SDA_LinraCorrelationCoeff, SDA_LinraEstimateX.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDA_LograConstantCoeff (const SLData_t *, X array pointer
 const SLData_t *, Y array pointer
 const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the constant coefficient for a logarithmic regression series.

Assuming the data can be modelled according to:

$$y = M \cdot \ln(x) + C$$

Gives:

$$C = \frac{\text{sum}(y) - M * \text{sum}(\ln(x))}{n}$$

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_LograRegressionCoeff, SDA_LograCorrelationCoeff,
 SDA_LograEstimateX, SDA_LograEstimateY.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDA_LograRegressionCoeff (const SLData_t *, X array pointer
const SLData_t *, Y array pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the regression coefficient for a logarithmic regression series.

Assuming the data can be modelled according to:

$$y = M \cdot \ln(x) + C$$

Gives:

$$M = \frac{n * \sum(\ln(x) \cdot y) - \sum(\ln(x)) * \sum(y)}{n * \sum(\ln(x)^2) - (\sum(\ln(x)))^2}$$

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_LograConstantCoeff, SDA_LograCorrelationCoeff,
SDA_LograEstimateX, SDA_LograEstimateY.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDA_LograCorrelationCoeff (const SLData_t *, X array pointer
const SLData_t *, Y array pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the correlation coefficient for a logarithmic regression series.

Assuming the data can be modelled according to:

$$y = M \cdot \ln(x) + C$$

Gives:

$$r = \frac{n * \text{sum}(\ln(x) \cdot y) - \text{sum}(\ln(x)) * \text{sum}(y)}{\sqrt{(n * \text{sum}(\ln(x)^2) - (\text{sum}(\ln(x)))^2) * (n * \text{sum}(y^2) - (\text{sum}(y))^2)}}$$

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_LograConstantCoeff, SDA_LograRegressionCoeff,
SDA_LograEstimateX, SDA_LograEstimateY.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDA_LograEstimateX (const SLData_t *, X array pointer
 const SLData_t *, Y array pointer
 const SLData_t, Y value
 const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function estimates the X value for a given Y for a logarithmic regression series.

Assuming the data can be modelled according to:

$$y = M \cdot \ln(x) + C$$

Gives:

$$x = e^{\left(\frac{y-C}{M}\right)}$$

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_LograConstantCoeff, SDA_LograRegressionCoeff,
 SDA_LograCorrelationCoeff, SDA_LograEstimateY.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDA_LograEstimateY (const SLData_t *, X array pointer
 const SLData_t *, Y array pointer
 const SLData_t, X value
 const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function estimates the Y value for a given X for a logarithmic regression series.

Assuming the data can be modelled according to:

$$y = M.\ln(x) + C$$

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_LograConstantCoeff, SDA_LograRegressionCoeff,
SDA_LograCorrelationCoeff, SDA_LograEstimateX.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDA_ExpraConstantCoeff (const SLData_t *, X array pointer
const SLData_t *, Y array pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the constant coefficient for an exponential regression series.

Assuming the data can be modelled according to:

$$y = C * e^{M * x}$$

Gives:

$$C = \frac{\sum(\ln(y)) - M * \sum(x)}{n}$$

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_ExpraRegressionCoeff, SDA_ExpraCorrelationCoeff,
SDA_ExpraEstimateX, SDA_ExpraEstimateY.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDA_ExptraRegressionCoeff (const SLData_t *, X array pointer
const SLData_t *, Y array pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the regression coefficient for an exponential regression series.

Assuming the data can be modelled according to:

$$y = C * e^{M*x}$$

Gives:

$$M = \frac{n * \text{sum}(x.\ln(y)) - \text{sum}(x) * \text{sum}(\ln(y))}{n * \text{sum}(x) - (\text{sum}(x))^2}$$

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_ExptraConstantCoeff, SDA_ExptraCorrelationCoeff,
SDA_ExptraEstimateX, SDA_ExptraEstimateY.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDA_ExptraCorrelationCoeff (const SLData_t *, X array pointer
const SLData_t *, Y array pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the correlation coefficient for an exponential regression series.

Assuming the data can be modelled according to:

$$y = C * e^{M*x}$$

Gives:

$$r = \frac{n * \text{sum}(x \cdot \ln(y)) - \text{sum}(x) * \text{sum}(\ln(y))}{\sqrt{(n * \text{sum}(x^2) - (\text{sum}(x))^2) * (n * \text{sum}(\ln(y)^2) - (\text{sum}(\ln(y)))^2)}}$$

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_ExptraConstantCoeff, SDA_ExptraRegressionCoeff,
SDA_ExptraEstimateX, SDA_ExptraEstimateY.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDA_ExptraEstimateX (const SLData_t *, X array pointer
 const SLData_t *, Y array pointer
 const SLData_t, Y value
 const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function estimates the X value for a given Y for an exponential regression series.

Assuming the data can be modelled according to:

$$y = C * e^{M * x}$$

Gives:

$$x = \frac{\ln(x) - C}{M}$$

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_ExptraConstantCoeff, SDA_ExptraRegressionCoeff,
 SDA_ExptraCorrelationCoeff, SDA_ExptraEstimateY.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLData_t SDA_ExptraEstimateY (const SLData_t *,      X array pointer
                             const SLData_t *,      Y array pointer
                             const SLData_t,         X value
                             const SLArrayIndex_t)   Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function estimates the Y value for a given X for an exponential regression series.

Assuming the data can be modelled according to:

$$y = C * e^{M*x}$$

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_ExptraConstantCoeff, SDA_ExptraRegressionCoeff,
SDA_ExptraCorrelationCoeff, SDA_ExptraEstimateX.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDA_PowraConstantCoeff (const SLData_t *, X array pointer
const SLData_t *, Y array pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the constant coefficient for a power regression series.

Assuming the data can be modelled according to:

$$y = Cx^M$$

Gives:

$$C = \frac{\sum(\ln(y)) - M * \sum(\ln(x))}{n}$$

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_PowraRegressionCoeff, SDA_PowraCorrelationCoeff,
SDA_PowraEstimateX, SDA_PowraEstimateY.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDA_PowraRegressionCoeff (const SLData_t *, X array pointer
 const SLData_t *, Y array pointer
 const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the regression coefficient for a power regression series.

Assuming the data can be modelled according to:

$$y = Cx^M$$

Gives:

$$M = \frac{n * \text{sum}(\ln(x) * \ln(y)) - \text{sum}(\ln(x)) * \text{sum}(\ln(y))}{n * \text{sum}(\ln(x)) - (\text{sum}(\ln(x)))^2}$$

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_PowraConstantCoeff, SDA_PowraCorrelationCoeff,
 SDA_PowraEstimateX, SDA_PowraEstimateY.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDA_PowraCorrelationCoeff (const SLData_t *, X array pointer
 const SLData_t *, Y array pointer
 const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the correlation coefficient for a power regression series.

Assuming the data can be modelled according to:

$$y = Cx^M$$

Gives:

$$r = \frac{n * \text{sum}(\ln(x) \cdot \ln(y)) - \text{sum}(\ln(x)) * \text{sum}(\ln(y))}{\sqrt{(n * \text{sum}(\ln(x)^2) - (\text{sum}(\ln(x)))^2) * (n * \text{sum}(\ln(y)^2) - (\text{sum}(\ln(y)))^2)}}$$

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_PowraConstantCoeff, SDA_PowraRegressionCoeff,
 SDA_PowraEstimateX, SDA_PowraEstimateY.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDA_PowraEstimateX (const SLData_t *, X array pointer
 const SLData_t *, Y array pointer
 const SLData_t, Y value
 const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function estimates the X value for a given Y for a power regression series.

Assuming the data can be modelled according to:

$$y = Cx^M$$

Gives:

$$x = \left(\frac{\ln(y) - C}{M} \right)$$

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_PowraConstantCoeff, SDA_PowraRegressionCoeff,
 SDA_PowraCorrelationCoeff, SDA_PowraEstimateY.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLData_t SDA_PowraEstimateY (const SLData_t *,      X array pointer
                             const SLData_t *,      Y array pointer
                             const SLData_t,         X value
                             const SLArrayIndex_t)   Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function estimates the Y value for a given X for a power regression series.

Assuming the data can be modelled according to:

$$y = Cx^M$$

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_PowraConstantCoeff, SDA_PowraRegressionCoeff,
SDA_PowraCorrelationCoeff, SDA_PowraEstimateX.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_Detrend (const SLData_t *,	Source array pointer
SLData_t *,	Destination array pointer
SLData_t *,	Ramp array pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Source / destination array lengths

DESCRIPTION

This function uses the equation $y = M.x + C$ to generate the best straight-line fit to the data in the source array, this is then removed from the data before writing the results to the destination array.

NOTES ON USE

The Ramp array is used internally and is the same length as the source / destination arrays.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_ExtractTrend.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_ExtractTrend (const SLData_t *, Source array pointer
    SLData_t *,           Destination array pointer
    SLData_t *,           Ramp array pointer
    const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function uses the equation $y = M.x + C$ to generate the best straight-line fit to the data in the source array, this is then written to the destination array.

NOTES ON USE

The first iteration of this function and any where the vector length increases will take longer than subsequent iterations because a reference vector needs to be allocated memory and initialised. If execution time is important then this function can be called during the application initialisation process to initialise the largest array possible.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Detrend.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDA_Sin (const SLData_t *,	Source array pointer
SLData_t *,	Destination array pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the sine of all the values in the array.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Cos, SDA_Tan, SIF_FastSin, SIF_FastCos, SIF_FastSinCos,
SIF_FastTan.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDA_Cos (const SLData_t *,	Source array pointer
SLData_t *,	Destination array pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the cosine of all the values in the array.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_Sin, SDA_Tan, SIF_FastSin, SIF_FastCos, SIF_FastSinCos,
SIF_FastTan.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDA_Tan (const SLData_t *,	Source array pointer
SLData_t *,	Destination array pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the tangent of all the values in the array.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_Sin, SDA_Cos, SIF_FastSin, SIF_FastCos, SIF_FastSinCos,
SIF_FastTan.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SIF_FastSin (SLData_t *, const SLArrayIndex_t)	Fast sine look up table array pointer Table length
--	---

DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the fast sine look up table.

NOTES ON USE

The array contains one complete cycle of a sine wave (0 to 2π), with N samples.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_FastSin, SDS_FastSin, SIF_FastCos, SDA_FastCos, SDS_FastCos,
SIF_FastSinCos, SDA_FastSinCos, SDS_FastSinCos, SIF_FastTan.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_FastSin (const SLData_t *,	Sine table pointer
SLData_t *,	Sine wave destination pointer
SLData_t *,	Sine table phase
const SLData_t,	Sine wave frequency
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Sine wave look up table length
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Sample array size

DESCRIPTION

This function uses the fast sine look up table to generate a sine wave. This function is used to generate continuous sinusoidal waveforms, for example in modulation and demodulation functions. If you wish to use a look up table to calculate a quick approximation to sine (θ) then you should use the SDA_QuickSin function.

NOTES ON USE

The function SIF_FastSin must be called prior to calling this function.

This function operates on an array oriented basis.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_FastSin, SDS_FastSin, SIF_FastCos, SDA_FastCos, SDS_FastCos,
SIF_FastSinCos, SDA_FastSinCos, SDS_FastSinCos, SIF_FastTan.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLData_t SDS_FastSin (const SLData_t *, Sine table pointer
                      SLData_t *,       Sine table phase
                      const SLData_t,    Sine wave frequency
                      const SLArrayIndex_t) Sine wave look up table length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function uses the fast sine look up table to generate a sine wave. This function is used to generate continuous sinusoidal waveforms, for example in modulation and demodulation functions. If you wish to use a look up table to calculate a quick approximation to sine (θ) then you should use the SDS_QuickSin function.

NOTES ON USE

The function SIF_FastSin must be called prior to calling this function.

This function operates on a per-sample oriented basis.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_FastSin, SDA_FastSin, SIF_FastCos, SDA_FastCos, SDS_FastCos,
SIF_FastSinCos, SDA_FastSinCos, SDS_FastSinCos, SIF_FastTan.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SIF_FastCos (SLData_t *,	Fast cosine look up table array pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Table length

DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the fast cosine look up table.

NOTES ON USE

The array contains one complete cycle of a cosine wave (0 to 2π), with N samples.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_FastSin, SDA_FastSin, SDS_FastSin, SDA_FastCos, SDS_FastCos,
SIF_FastSinCos, SDA_FastSinCos, SDS_FastSinCos, SIF_FastTan.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_FastCos (const SLData_t *,	Cosine table pointer
SLData_t *,	Cosine wave destination pointer
SLData_t *,	Cosine table phase
const SLData_t,	Cosine wave frequency
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Cosine wave look up table length
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Sample array size

DESCRIPTION

This function uses the fast cosine look up table to generate a cosine wave. This function is used to generate continuous co-sinusoidal waveforms, for example in modulation and demodulation functions. If you wish to use a look up table to calculate a quick approximation to cosine (θ) then you should use the SDA_QuickCos function.

NOTES ON USE

The function SIF_FastCos must be called prior to calling this function.

This function operates on an array oriented basis.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_FastSin, SDA_FastSin, SDS_FastSin, SIF_FastCos, SDS_FastCos,
SIF_FastSinCos, SDA_FastSinCos, SDS_FastSinCos, SIF_FastTan.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLData_t SDS_FastCos (const SLData_t *, Cosine table pointer
                      SLData_t *,           Cosine table phase
                      const SLData_t,       Cosine wave frequency
                      const SLArrayIndex_t) Cosine wave look up table length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function uses the fast cosine look up table to generate a cosine wave. This function is used to generate continuous co-sinusoidal waveforms, for example in modulation and demodulation functions. If you wish to use a look up table to calculate a quick approximation to cosine (θ) then you should use the SDS_QuickCos function.

NOTES ON USE

The function SIF_FastCos must be called prior to calling this function.

This function operates on a per-sample oriented basis.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_FastSin, SDA_FastSin, SDS_FastSin, SIF_FastCos, SDA_FastCos, SIF_FastSinCos, SDA_FastSinCos, SDS_FastSinCos, SIF_FastTan.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SIF_FastSinCos (SLData_t *, Fast sine look up table array pointer
 const SLArrayIndex_t) Sinusoid period

DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the fast overlapped sine and cosine look up table.

NOTES ON USE

The array contains one and a quarter complete cycle of a sine wave (0 to $(5 * \pi)/2$), with $5*N/4$ samples. You are advised to use the macro:
SUF_FastSinCosArrayAllocate () to allocate the look up table to use with this function.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_FastSin, SDA_FastSin, SDS_FastSin, SIF_FastCos, SDA_FastCos,
SDS_FastCos, SDA_FastSinCos, SDS_FastSinCos, SIF_FastTan.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_FastSinCos (const SLData_t *,	Sine table pointer
SLData_t *,	Sine wave destination pointer
SLData_t *,	Cosine wave destination pointer
SLData_t *,	Sine table phase
const SLData_t,	Sine wave frequency
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Sine wave period
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Sample array size

DESCRIPTION

This function uses the fast sine/cosine look up table to generate a sine and a cosine wave. This function is used to generate continuous sinusoidal and co-sinusoidal waveforms, for example in modulation and demodulation functions. If you wish to use a look up table to calculate a quick approximation to sine (θ) and cosine (θ) then you should use the SDA_QuickSinCos function.

NOTES ON USE

The function SIF_FastSinCos must be called prior to calling this function.

This function operates on an array oriented basis.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_FastSin, SDA_FastSin, SDS_FastSin, SIF_FastCos, SDA_FastCos, SDS_FastCos, SIF_FastSinCos, SDS_FastSinCos, SIF_FastTan.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDS_FastSinCos (const SLData_t *,   Sine table pointer
                    SLData_t *,         Sine wave destination pointer
                    SLData_t *,         Cosine wave destination pointer
                    SLData_t *,         Sine table phase
                    const SLData_t,      Sine wave frequency
                    const SLArrayIndex_t) Sine wave period
```

DESCRIPTION

This function uses the fast sine/cosine look up table to generate a sine and a cosine wave. This function is used to generate continuous sinusoidal and co-sinusoidal waveforms, for example in modulation and demodulation functions. If you wish to use a look up table to calculate a quick approximation to sine (θ) and cosine (θ) then you should use the SDS_QuickSinCos function.

NOTES ON USE

The function SIF_FastSinCos must be called prior to calling this function.

This function operates on a per-sample oriented basis.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_FastSin, SDA_FastSin, SDS_FastSin, SIF_FastCos, SDA_FastCos, SDS_FastCos, SIF_FastSinCos, SDA_FastSinCos, SIF_FastTan.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SIF_QuickSin (SLData_t *,	Quick sine look up table array pointer
SLData_t *,	Pointer to phase gain
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Table length

DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the quick sine look up table.

NOTES ON USE

The array contains one complete cycle of a sine wave (0 to 2π), with N samples.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_QuickSin, SDA_QuickSin, SDS_QuickSin, SIF_QuickCos,
SDA_QuickCos, SDS_QuickCos, SIF_QuickSinCos, SDA_QuickSinCos,
SDS_QuickSinCos, SIF_QuickTan, SDA_QuickTan, SDS_QuickTan.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_QuickSin (const SLData_t *,	Pointer to source array (θ)
const SLData_t *,	Sine table pointer
SLData_t *,	Destination pointer
SLData_t *,	Pointer to phase gain
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Sample array size

DESCRIPTION

This function uses the quick sine look up table to calculate sine (θ) for all of the values passed in the source array where θ is in radians and can be any positive or negative real number. If you wish to use a look up table to calculate a continuous sinusoidal function, for example for a modulator or a demodulator, then you should use the SDA_FastSin function.

NOTES ON USE

The function SIF_QuickSin must be called prior to calling this function.
The phase gain parameter is used to locate the correct phase in the look up table, the value is set in the initialization function and should not be modified.
This function operates on an array oriented basis.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_QuickSin, SDS_QuickSin, SIF_QuickCos, SDA_QuickCos,
SDS_QuickCos, SIF_QuickSinCos, SDA_QuickSinCos, SDS_QuickSinCos,
SIF_QuickTan.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLData_t SDS_QuickSin (const SLData_t,  Angle ( $\theta$ )
                        const SLData_t *,  Sine table pointer
                        SLData_t *)        Pointer to phase gain
```

DESCRIPTION

This function uses the quick sine look up table to calculate $\sin(\theta)$ for the input value where θ is in radians and can be any positive or negative real number. If you wish to use a look up table to calculate a continuous sinusoidal function, for example for a modulator or a demodulator, then you should use the SDS_FastSin function.

NOTES ON USE

The function SIF_QuickSin must be called prior to calling this function.
The phase gain parameter is used to locate the correct phase in the look up table, the value is set in the initialization function and should not be modified.
This function operates on a per-sample oriented basis.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_QuickSin, SDA_QuickSin, SIF_QuickCos, SDA_QuickCos,
SDS_QuickCos, SIF_QuickSinCos, SDA_QuickSinCos, SDS_QuickSinCos,
SIF_QuickTan.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SIF_QuickCos (SLData_t *,	Quick cosine look up table array pointer
SLData_t *,	Pointer to phase gain
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Table length

DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the quick cosine look up table.

NOTES ON USE

The array contains one complete cycle of a cosine wave (0 to 2π), with N samples.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_QuickSin, SDA_QuickSin, SDS_QuickSin, SDA_QuickCos,
SDS_QuickCos, SIF_QuickSinCos, SDA_QuickSinCos, SDS_QuickSinCos,
SIF_QuickTan.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_QuickCos (const SLData_t *,	Pointer to source array (θ)
const SLData_t *,	Cosine table pointer
SLData_t *,	Destination pointer
SLData_t *,	Pointer to phase gain
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Sample array size

DESCRIPTION

This function uses the quick cosine look up table to calculate cosine (θ) for all of the values passed in the source array where θ is in radians and can be any positive or negative real number. If you wish to use a look up table to calculate a continuous sinusoidal function, for example for a modulator or a demodulator, then you should use the SDA_FastCos function.

NOTES ON USE

The function SIF_QuickCos must be called prior to calling this function.
The phase gain parameter is used to locate the correct phase in the look up table, the value is set in the initialization function and should not be modified.
This function operates on an array oriented basis.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_QuickSin, SDA_QuickSin, SDS_QuickSin, SIF_QuickCos,
SDS_QuickCos, SIF_QuickSinCos, SDA_QuickSinCos, SDS_QuickSinCos,
SIF_QuickTan.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLData_t SDS_QuickCos (const SLData_t, Angle ( $\theta$ )
    const SLData_t *,           Cosine table pointer
    SLData_t *)                Pointer to phase gain
```

DESCRIPTION

This function uses the quick cosine look up table to calculate cosine (θ) for the input value where θ is in radians and can be any positive or negative real number. If you wish to use a look up table to calculate a continuous co-sinusoidal function, for example for a modulator or a demodulator, then you should use the SDS_FastCos function.

NOTES ON USE

The function SIF_QuickCos must be called prior to calling this function.
 The phase gain parameter is used to locate the correct phase in the look up table, the value is set in the initialization function and should not be modified.
 This function operates on a per-sample oriented basis.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_QuickSin, SDA_QuickSin, SDS_QuickSin, SIF_QuickCos,
 SDA_QuickCos, SIF_QuickSinCos, SDA_QuickSinCos, SDS_QuickSinCos,
 SIF_QuickTan.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SIF_QuickSinCos (SLData_t *,	Quick sine look up table array pointer
SLData_t *,	Pointer to phase gain
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Sinusoid period

DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the quick overlapped sine and cosine look up table.

NOTES ON USE

The array contains one and a quarter complete cycle of a sine wave (0 to $(5 * \pi)/2$), with $5 * N/4$ samples. You are advised to use the macro: `SUF_QuickSinCosArrayAllocate ()` to allocate the look up table to use with this function.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_QuickSin, SDA_QuickSin, SDS_QuickSin, SIF_QuickCos,
SDA_QuickCos, SDS_QuickCos, SDA_QuickSinCos, SDS_QuickSinCos,
SIF_QuickTan.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_QuickSinCos (const SLData_t *, Pointer to source array ( $\theta$ )
    const SLData_t *,           Sine table pointer
    SLData_t *,                 Sine destination array pointer
    SLData_t *,                 Cosine destination array pointer
    SLData_t *,                 Pointer to phase gain
    const SLArrayIndex_t,       Sine wave look up table period
    const SLArrayIndex_t)       Sample array size
```

DESCRIPTION

This function uses the quick sine/cosine look up table to calculate sine (θ) and cosine (θ) for the input value where θ is in radians and can be any positive or negative real number. If you wish to use a look up table to calculate a continuous sinusoidal and co-sinusoidal function, for example for a modulator or a demodulator, then you should use the SDA_FastSinCos function.

NOTES ON USE

The function SIF_QuickSinCos must be called prior to calling this function.
The phase gain parameter is used to locate the correct phase in the look up table, the value is set in the initialization function and should not be modified.
This function operates on an array oriented basis.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_QuickSin, SDA_QuickSin, SDS_QuickSin, SIF_QuickCos,
SDA_QuickCos, SDS_QuickCos, SIF_QuickSinCos, SDS_QuickSinCos,
SIF_QuickTan.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDS_QuickSinCos (const SLData_t,    Angle ( $\theta$ )
                     const SLData_t *,   Sine table pointer
                     SLData_t *,         Sine destination sample pointer
                     SLData_t *,         Cosine destination sample pointer
                     SLData_t *,         Pointer to phase gain
                     const SLArrayIndex_t) Sine wave look up table period
```

DESCRIPTION

This function uses the quick sine/cosine look up table to calculate sine (θ) and cosine (θ) for the input value where θ is in radians and can be any positive or negative real number. If you wish to use a look up table to calculate a continuous sinusoidal and co-sinusoidal function, for example for a modulator or a demodulator, then you should use the SDS_FastSinCos function.

NOTES ON USE

The function SIF_QuickSinCos must be called prior to calling this function.
 The phase gain parameter is used to locate the correct phase in the look up table, the value is set in the initialization function and should not be modified.
 This function operates on a per-sample oriented basis.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_QuickSin, SDA_QuickSin, SDS_QuickSin, SIF_QuickCos,
 SDA_QuickCos, SDS_QuickCos, SIF_QuickSinCos, SDA_QuickSinCos,
 SIF_QuickTan.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SIF_QuickTan (SLData_t *,	Quick tangent look up table array pointer
SLData_t *,	Pointer to phase gain
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Table length

DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the quick tangent look up table.

NOTES ON USE

The array contains one complete cycle of a tangent wave (0 to 2π), with N samples.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_QuickSin, SDA_QuickSin, SDS_QuickSin, SIF_QuickCos,
SDA_QuickCos, SDS_QuickCos, SIF_QuickSinCos, SDA_QuickSinCos,
SDS_QuickSinCos.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_QuickTan (const SLData_t *,	Pointer to source array (θ)
const SLData_t *,	Tangent table pointer
SLData_t *,	Destination pointer
SLData_t *,	Pointer to phase gain
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Sample array size

DESCRIPTION

This function uses the quick tangent look up table to calculate tangent (θ) for all of the values passed in the source array where θ is in radians and can be any positive or negative real number.

NOTES ON USE

The function SIF_QuickTan must be called prior to calling this function.
The phase gain parameter is used to locate the correct phase in the look up table, the value is set in the initialization function and should not be modified.
This function operates on an array oriented basis.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_QuickSin, SDS_QuickSin, SIF_QuickCos, SDA_QuickCos,
SDS_QuickCos, SIF_QuickSinCos, SDA_QuickSinCos, SDS_QuickSinCos,
SIF_QuickTan.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLData_t SDS_QuickTan (const SLData_t, Angle ( $\theta$ )
    const SLData_t *,      Tangent table pointer
    SLData_t *)            Pointer to phase gain
```

DESCRIPTION

This function uses the quick tangent look up table to calculate tangent (θ) for the input value where θ is in radians and can be any positive or negative real number.

NOTES ON USE

The function SIF_QuickTan must be called prior to calling this function.
 The phase gain parameter is used to locate the correct phase in the look up table, the value is set in the initialization function and should not be modified.
 This function operates on a per-sample oriented basis.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF_QuickSin, SDA_QuickSin, SIF_QuickCos, SDA_QuickCos,
 SDS_QuickCos, SIF_QuickSinCos, SDA_QuickSinCos, SDS_QuickSinCos,
 SIF_QuickTan.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_Sinc (const SLData_t *,	Pointer to source array
SLData_t *,	Destination pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function returns $\sin(x)/x$ for all the values in the source array.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS_Sinc, SIF_QuickSinc, SDA_QuickSinc and SDS_QuickSinc.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDS_Sinc (const SLData_t) x

DESCRIPTION

This function returns $\sin(x) / x$ of the input value.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_Sinc, SIF_QuickSinc, SDA_QuickSinc and SDS_QuickSinc.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SIF_QuickSinc (SLData_t *,	Pointer to sinc look up table
SLData_t *,	Pointer to phase gain
const SLData_t,	Maximum input 'x' value
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Look up table length

DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the quick sinc calculation functions (SDA_QuickSinc and SDS_QuickSinc, which returns $\sin(x)/x$ of the input value using a look up table approach.

NOTES ON USE

The accuracy of this function is directly related to the array length.

The phase gain parameter is calculated in this function and used in both SDA_QuickSinc and SDS_QuickSinc. It is not necessary to modify this value.

The maximum input 'x' value is specified as a parameter to this function and it is important to ensure that no 'x' values greater than this are used in SDA_QuickSinc and SDS_QuickSinc. The QuickSinc functions calculate the look up table values over an array of index from 0 to ArrayLength-1 so the function will not return the sinc of the maximum value specified. The maximum value must therefore be over-specified; for example, if the application requires that the sinc value must be calculated for all inputs within the range -10.0 to +10.0 then a suitable magnitude for the maximum 'x' input value would be 11.0.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Sinc, SDS_Sinc, SDA_QuickSinc and SDS_QuickSinc.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_QuickSinc (const SLData_t *,	Pointer to source array
const SLData_t *,	Pointer to sinc look up table
SLData_t *,	Pointer to destination array
const SLData_t,	Phase gain
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Source array length

DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the sinc ($\sin(x)/x$) values for all of the entries in the source array.

NOTES ON USE

The function SIF_QuickSinc must be called prior to using this function. Please read the description of SIF_QuickSinc, particularly the notes on the maximum input 'x' value.

For reasons of run-time performance, this function does not check that the magnitude of the 'x' input values are less than that specified in SIF_QuickSinc.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Sinc, SDS_Sinc, SIF_QuickSinc and SDS_QuickSinc.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDS_QuickSinc (const SLData_t, Source 'x' value
 const SLData_t *, Pointer to sinc look up table
 const SLData_t) Phase gain

DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the sinc ($\sin(x) / x$) for the source 'x' value.

NOTES ON USE

The function SIF_QuickSinc must be called prior to using this function. Please read the description of SIF_QuickSinc, particularly the notes on the maximum input 'x' value.

For reasons of run-time performance, this function does not check that the magnitude of the 'x' input values are less than that specified in SIF_QuickSinc.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_Sinc, SDS_Sinc, SIF_QuickSinc and SDA_QuickSinc.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLComplexPolar_s SCV_Polar (const SLData_t,    Magnitude component
                             const SLData_t)    Angle component
```

DESCRIPTION

This function converts separate magnitude and angle data components to a single polar complex value.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SCV_Rectangular, SCV_PolarToRectangular, SCV_RectangularToPolar,
SCV_Sqrt, SCV_Inverse, SCV_Conjugate, SCV_Magnitude, SCV_Multiply,
SCV_Divide, SCV_Add, SCV_Subtract, SCV_Log, SCV_Exp, SCV_Pow.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLComplexRect_s SCV_PolarToRectangular (const SLComplexPolar_s) Polar
source data

DESCRIPTION

This function converts the polar data to rectangular.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SCV_Polar, SCV_Rectangular, SCV_RectangularToPolar, SCV_Sqrt,
SCV_Inverse, SCV_Conjugate, SCV_Magnitude, SCV_Multiply, SCV_Divide,
SCV_Add, SCV_Subtract, SCV_Log, SCV_Exp, SCV_Pow.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLComplexPolar_s SCV_RectangularToPolar (const SLComplexRect_s)
Complex rectangular source data

DESCRIPTION

This function converts the rectangular data to polar.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SCV_Polar, SCV_Rectangular, SCV_PolarToRectangular, SCV_Sqrt,
SCV_Inverse, SCV_Conjugate, SCV_Magnitude, SCV_Multiply, SCV_Divide,
SCV_Add, SCV_Subtract, SCV_Log, SCV_Exp, SCV_Pow.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLComplexRect_s SCV_Sqrt (const SLComplexRect_s) Source data

DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the square root of the vector, using the DeMoivre's algorithm.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SCV_Polar, SCV_Rectangular, SCV_PolarToRectangular,
SCV_RectangularToPolar, SCV_Inverse, SCV_Conjugate, SCV_Magnitude,
SCV_Multiply, SCV_Divide, SCV_Add, SCV_Subtract, SCV_Log, SCV_Exp,
SCV_Pow.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLComplexRect_s SCV_Inverse (const SLComplexRect_s) Source data

DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the inverse of the complex rectangular vector using:

$$1/(a + jb) = (a - jb) / (a^2 + b^2).$$

NOTES ON USE

If the input value equals $0.0 + j0.0$ then this function returns $1.0 + j0.0$.

CROSS REFERENCE

SCV_Polar, SCV_Rectangular, SCV_PolarToRectangular,
SCV_RectangularToPolar, SCV_Sqrt, SCV_Conjugate, SCV_Magnitude,
SCV_Multiply, SCV_Divide, SCV_Add, SCV_Subtract, SCV_Log, SCV_Exp,
SCV_Pow.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLComplexRect_s SCV_Conjugate (const SLComplexRect_s) Source data

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the complex conjugate of the vector.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SCV_Polar, SCV_Rectangular, SCV_PolarToRectangular,
SCV_RectangularToPolar, SCV_Sqrt, SCV_Inverse, SCV_Magnitude,
SCV_Multiply, SCV_Divide, SCV_Add, SCV_Subtract, SCV_Log, SCV_Exp,
SCV_Pow.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SCV_Magnitude (const SLComplexRect_s) Source data

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the real absolute magnitude of the complex vector.

$$\text{Magnitude} = \sqrt{\text{Real}^2 + \text{Imaginary}^2}$$

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SCV_Polar, SCV_Rectangular, SCV_PolarToRectangular,
SCV_RectangularToPolar, SCV_Sqrt, SCV_Inverse, SCV_Conjugate,
SCV_Multiply, SCV_Phase, SCV_Divide, SCV_Add, SCV_Subtract, SCV_Log,
SCV_Exp, SCV_Pow.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SCV_MagnitudeSquared (const SLComplexRect_s) Source data

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the real absolute magnitude squared of the complex vector.

$$\text{Absolute Squared Magnitude} = \text{Real}^2 + \text{Imaginary}^2$$

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SCV_Polar, SCV_Rectangular, SCV_PolarToRectangular,
SCV_RectangularToPolar, SCV_Sqrt, SCV_Inverse, SCV_Conjugate,
SCV_Multiply, SCV_Phase, SCV_Magnitude, SCV_Divide, SCV_Add,
SCV_Subtract, SCV_Log, SCV_Exp, SCV_Pow.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SCV_Phase (const SLComplexRect_s) Source data

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the phase of the complex vector, using the following equation:

$$Angle = \text{atan2}(imag, real) = \tan^{-1} \left(\frac{imag}{real} \right)$$

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SCV_Polar, SCV_Rectangular, SCV_PolarToRectangular,
SCV_RectangularToPolar, SCV_Sqrt, SCV_Inverse, SCV_Conjugate,
SCV_Multiply, SCV_Divide, SCV_Add, SCV_Subtract, SCV_Log, SCV_Exp,
SCV_Pow.

SLComplexRect_s	SCV_Multiply (const SLComplexRect_s,	Complex
multiplicand		
const SLComplexRect_s)	Complex multiplier	

SCV_Polar, SCV_Rectangular, SCV_PolarToRectangular,
SCV_RectangularToPolar, SCV_Sqrt, SCV_Inverse, SCV_Conjugate,
SCV_Magnitude, SCV_Divide, SCV_Add, SCV_Subtract, SCV_Log, SCV_Exp,
SCV_Pow.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLComplexRect_s SCV_Divide (const SLComplexRect_s, Complex source
const SLComplexRect_s) Complex divisor

DESCRIPTION

This function divides one complex rectangular number by another using:
 $1/(a + jb) = (a - jb) / (a^2 + b^2).$

NOTES ON USE

If the divisor equals $0.0 + j0.0$ then this function returns $1.0 + j0.0$.

CROSS REFERENCE

SCV_Polar, SCV_Rectangular, SCV_PolarToRectangular,
SCV_RectangularToPolar, SCV_Sqrt, SCV_Inverse, SCV_Conjugate,
SCV_Magnitude, SCV_Multiply, SCV_Add, SCV_Subtract, SCV_Log, SCV_Exp,
SCV_Pow.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLComplexRect_s SCV_Add (const SLComplexRect_s, Complex source
 const SLComplexRect_s) Complex source

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the addition of the complex vectors.

NOTES ON USE

If the divisor equals $0.0 + j0.0$ then this function returns $1.0 + j0.0$.

CROSS REFERENCE

SCV_Polar, SCV_Rectangular, SCV_PolarToRectangular,
SCV_RectangularToPolar, SCV_Sqrt, SCV_Inverse, SCV_Conjugate,
SCV_Magnitude, SCV_Multiply, SCV_Divide, SCV_Subtract, SCV_Log, SCV_Exp,
SCV_Pow.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLComplexRect_s SCV_Subtract (const SLComplexRect_s, Complex Source 1
const SLComplexRect_s) Complex source 2

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the difference between the complex vectors.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SCV_Polar, SCV_Rectangular, SCV_PolarToRectangular,
SCV_RectangularToPolar, SCV_Sqrt, SCV_Inverse, SCV_Conjugate,
SCV_Magnitude, SCV_Multiply, SCV_Divide, SCV_Add, SCV_Log, SCV_Exp,
SCV_Pow.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLComplexRect_s SCV_Log (const SLComplexRect_s) Complex source

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the logarithm of the complex vector.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SCV_Polar, SCV_Rectangular, SCV_PolarToRectangular,
SCV_RectangularToPolar, SCV_Sqrt, SCV_Inverse, SCV_Conjugate,
SCV_Magnitude, SCV_Multiply, SCV_Divide, SCV_Add, SCV_Subtract,
SCV_Exp, SCV_Pow.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLComplexRect_s SCV_Exp (const SLComplexRect_s) Complex source

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the exponentiation of the complex vector.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SCV_Polar, SCV_Rectangular, SCV_PolarToRectangular,
SCV_RectangularToPolar, SCV_Sqrt, SCV_Inverse, SCV_Conjugate,
SCV_Magnitude, SCV_Multiply, SCV_Divide, SCV_Add, SCV_Subtract,
SCV_Log, SCV_Expj, SCV_Pow.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLComplexRect_s SCV_Expj (const SLData_t) Theta

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the exponentiation of the real input $e^{j\theta} = \cos(\theta) + j \sin(\theta)$.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SCV_Polar, SCV_Rectangular, SCV_PolarToRectangular,
SCV_RectangularToPolar, SCV_Sqrt, SCV_Inverse, SCV_Conjugate,
SCV_Magnitude, SCV_Multiply, SCV_Divide, SCV_Add, SCV_Subtract,
SCV_Log, SCV_Exp, SCV_Pow.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLComplexRect_s SCV_Pow (const SLComplexRect_s, Complex source
 const SLData_t) Real power to raise complex data

DESCRIPTION

This function raises the complex vector to a real power.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SCV_Polar, SCV_Rectangular, SCV_PolarToRectangular,
SCV_RectangularToPolar, SCV_Sqrt, SCV_Inverse, SCV_Conjugate,
SCV_Magnitude, SCV_Multiply, SCV_Divide, SCV_Add, SCV_Subtract,
SCV_Log, SCV_Exp.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLComplexRect_s SCV_VectorSubtractScalar (const SLComplexRect_s, Complex
source
const SLData_t) Scalar source

DESCRIPTION

This function subtracts the scalar value from the complex value and return the complex result.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SCV_VectorAddScalar, SCV_VectorMultiplyScalar,
SCV_VectorDivideScalar, SCV_ScalarSubtractVector.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLComplexRect_s SCV_VectorMultiplyScalar (const SLComplexRect_s, Complex
source
const SLData_t) Scalar source

DESCRIPTION

This function multiplies the complex value by the scalar value and return the complex result.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SCV_VectorAddScalar, SCV_VectorSubtractScalar,
SCV_VectorDivideScalar, SCV_ScalarSubtractVector.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLComplexRect_s SCV_VectorDivideScalar (const SLComplexRect_s, Complex
source
 const SLData_t) Scalar source

DESCRIPTION

This function divides the complex value by the scalar value and return the complex result.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SCV_VectorAddScalar, SCV_VectorSubtractScalar,
SCV_VectorMultiplyScalar, SCV_ScalarSubtractVector.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLComplexRect_s SCV_ScalarSubtractVector (const SLData_t, Scalar source
 const SLComplexRect_s) Complex source

DESCRIPTION

This function subtracts the complex value from the scalar value and return the complex result.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SCV_VectorAddScalar, SCV_VectorSubtractScalar,
SCV_VectorMultiplyScalar, SCV_VectorDivideScalar.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SCV_Roots (const SLComplexRect_s a,      a value
                const SLComplexRect_s b,      b value
                const SLComplexRect_s c,      c value
                SLComplexRect_s *Root1,       Pointer to root # 1
                SLComplexRect_s *Root2)       Pointer to root # 2
```

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the real roots of the bi-quadratic equation:

$$ax^2 + bx + c = 0$$

The polynomial factors are given by the equation:

$$Roots = \frac{-b \pm \sqrt{b^2 - 4ac}}{2a}$$

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS_Roots

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLComplexRect_s SCV_Copy (const SLComplexRect_s) Input vector

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the input vector and copies it to the output.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLCompareType_t SCV_Compare (const SLComplexRect_s, Input vector #1
 const SLComplexRect_s IVect2) Input vector #2

DESCRIPTION

This function compares the contents of the two source vectors and returns:

SIGLIB_NOT_EQUAL,	(0)
SIGLIB_EQUAL	(1)

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

COMPLEX ARRAY FUNCTIONS (*complexa.c*)

These functions are used to create arrays of complex variables and also to extract them to separate arrays of real and complex vectors.

SDA_CreateComplexRect

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_CreateComplexRect (const SLData_t *, Input real data pointer
                           const SLData_t *, Input imaginary data pointer
                           SLComplexRect_s *, Output complex data pointer
                           const SLArrayIndex_t) Array Length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function creates an array of interleaved complex rectangular values from two separate arrays, each representing the real and imaginary data sets. The output array is actually an array of interleaved values of type SLData_t.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_CreateComplexPolar, SDA_ExtractComplexRect,
SDA_ExtractComplexPolar.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_CreateComplexPolar (const SLData_t *, Input magnitude data pointer
                             const SLData_t *,      Input phase data pointer
                             SLComplexRect_s *,      Output complex data pointer
                             const SLArrayIndex_t)   Array Length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function creates an array of interleaved complex polar values from two separate arrays, each representing the magnitude and phase data sets. The output array is actually an array of interleaved values of type SLData_t.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_CreateComplexRect, SDA_ExtractComplexRect,
SDA_ExtractComplexPolar.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_ExtractComplexRect (const SLData_t *, Input complex data pointer
                             const SLData_t *,      Output real data pointer
                             SLComplexRect_s *,      Output imaginary data pointer
                             const SLArrayIndex_t)    Array Length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function extracts two separate arrays, each representing the real and imaginary data sets, from a single array of interleaved complex rectangular values. The input array is actually an array of interleaved values of type SLData_t.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_CreateComplexRect, SDA_CreateComplexPolar,
SDA_ExtractComplexPolar.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_ExtractComplexPolar (const SLData_t *,Input complex data pointer
                             const SLData_t *,      Output magnitude data pointer
                             SLComplexRect_s *,      Output phase data pointer
                             const SLArrayIndex_t)    Array Length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function extracts two separate arrays, each representing the magnitude and phase data sets, from a single array of interleaved complex rectangular values. The input array is actually an array of interleaved values of type SLData_t.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_CreateComplexRect, SDA_CreateComplexPolar,
SDA_ExtractComplexRect.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_ClearComplexRect (SLComplexRect_s *,   Output complex data pointer  
                           const SLArrayIndex_t)   Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function clears the contents of the complex rectangular array.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_ClearComplexPolar, SDA_FillComplexRect, SDA_FillComplexPolar.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_ClearComplexPolar (SLComplexPolar_s *,   Output complex data pointer  
                           const SLArrayIndex_t)   Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function clears the contents of the complex polar array.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_ClearComplexRect, SDA_FillComplexRect, SDA_FillComplexPolar.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_FillComplexRect (SLComplexRect_s *, Output complex data pointer  
    const SLComplexRect_s,          Fill value  
    const SLArrayIndex_t)          Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function fills the contents of the complex rectangular array with the constant fill value.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_ClearComplexRect, SDA_ClearComplexPolar, SDA_FillComplexPolar.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_FillComplexPolar (SLComplexPolar_s *,   Output complex data pointer
                           const SLComplexPolar_s,   Fill value
                           const SLArrayIndex_t)     Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function fills the contents of the complex polar array with the constant fill value.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_ClearComplexRect, SDA_ClearComplexPolar, SDA_FillComplexRect.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_ComplexPolarToRectangular (const SLComplexPolar_s *, Input
complex data pointer
 SLComplexRect_s *, Output complex data pointer
 const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function converts the polar co-ordinate data in the source arrays to rectangular data, in the destination arrays, according to the following equations:

Real = Magnitude * cos (Angle)

Imaginary = Magnitude * sin (Angle)

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_ComplexRectangularToPolar

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_RectangularToPolar (const SLData_t *,    Real source pointer
                             const SLData_t *,    Imaginary source array pointer
                             SLData_t *,          Destination magnitude array pointer
                             SLData_t *,          Destination phase array pointer
                             const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function converts the complex (rectangular co-ordinate) data in the source arrays to polar data, in the destination arrays, according the following equations:

$$magnitude = \sqrt{real^2 + imag^2}$$

$$Angle = \tan^{-1} \left(\frac{imag}{real} \right)$$

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_PolarToRectangular

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_PolarToRectangular (const SLData_t *, Real source pointer
                             const SLData_t *,           Imaginary source array pointer
                             SLData_t *,                 Destination magnitude array pointer
                             SLData_t *,                 Destination phase array pointer
                             const SLArrayIndex_t)        Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function converts the polar co-ordinate data in the source arrays to rectangular data, in the destination arrays, according to the following equations:

$$\text{Real} = \text{Magnitude} * \cos (\text{Angle})$$

$$\text{Imaginary} = \text{Magnitude} * \sin (\text{Angle})$$

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_RectangularToPolar

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_ComplexRectSqrt (const SLComplexRect_s *,  Pointer to source array
                        SLComplexRect_s *,          Pointer to destination array
                        const SLArrayIndex_t)        Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the complex square root for each of the values in the source array.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_ComplexRectInverse, SDA_ComplexRectConjugate,
SDA_ComplexRectMagnitude, SDA_ComplexRectMagnitudeSquared,
SDA_ComplexRectPhase, SDA_ComplexRectMultiply, SDA_ComplexRectDivide,
SDA_ComplexRectAdd, SDA_ComplexRectSubtract, SDA_ComplexRectLog,
SDA_ComplexRectExp, SDA_ComplexRectExpj, SDA_ComplexRectPow,
SDA_ComplexRectAddScalar, SDA_ComplexRectSubtractScalar,
SDA_ComplexRectMultiplyScalar, SDA_ComplexRectDivideScalar,
SDA_ComplexScalarSubtractRect.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_ComplexRectInverse (const SLComplexRect_s *, Pointer to source array
SLComplexRect_s *, Pointer to destination array
const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the inverse of each of the values in the source array.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_ComplexRectSqrt, SDA_ComplexRectConjugate,
SDA_ComplexRectMagnitude, SDA_ComplexRectMagnitudeSquared,
SDA_ComplexRectPhase, SDA_ComplexRectMultiply, SDA_ComplexRectDivide,
SDA_ComplexRectAdd, SDA_ComplexRectSubtract, SDA_ComplexRectLog,
SDA_ComplexRectExp, SDA_ComplexRectExpj, SDA_ComplexRectPow,
SDA_ComplexRectAddScalar, SDA_ComplexRectSubtractScalar,
SDA_ComplexRectMultiplyScalar, SDA_ComplexRectDivideScalar,
SDA_ComplexScalarSubtractRect.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_ComplexRectConjugate (const SLComplexRect_s *, Pointer to source array
 SLComplexRect_s *, Pointer to destination array
 const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the complex conjugate of each of the values in the source array.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_ComplexRectSqrt, SDA_ComplexRectInverse,
SDA_ComplexRectMagnitude, SDA_ComplexRectMagnitudeSquared,
SDA_ComplexRectPhase, SDA_ComplexRectMultiply, SDA_ComplexRectDivide,
SDA_ComplexRectAdd, SDA_ComplexRectSubtract, SDA_ComplexRectLog,
SDA_ComplexRectExp, SDA_ComplexRectExpj, SDA_ComplexRectPow,
SDA_ComplexRectAddScalar, SDA_ComplexRectSubtractScalar,
SDA_ComplexRectMultiplyScalar, SDA_ComplexRectDivideScalar,
SDA_ComplexScalarSubtractRect.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_ComplexRectMagnitude (const SLComplexRect_s *, Pointer to source array

SLData_t *,

const SLArrayIndex_t)

Pointer to destination array

Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the magnitude of each of the values in the source array.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_ComplexRectSqrt, SDA_ComplexRectInverse,
SDA_ComplexRectConjugate, SDA_ComplexRectMagnitudeSquared,
SDA_ComplexRectPhase, SDA_ComplexRectMultiply, SDA_ComplexRectDivide,
SDA_ComplexRectAdd, SDA_ComplexRectSubtract, SDA_ComplexRectLog,
SDA_ComplexRectExp, SDA_ComplexRectExpj, SDA_ComplexRectPow,
SDA_ComplexRectAddScalar, SDA_ComplexRectSubtractScalar,
SDA_ComplexRectMultiplyScalar, SDA_ComplexRectDivideScalar,
SDA_ComplexScalarSubtractRect.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_ComplexRectMagnitudeSquared (const SLComplexRect_s *, Pointer to source array

SLData_t *,

Pointer to destination array

const SLArrayIndex_t)

Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the magnitude squared for each of the values in the source array.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_ComplexRectSqrt, SDA_ComplexRectInverse,
SDA_ComplexRectConjugate, SDA_ComplexRectMagnitude,
SDA_ComplexRectPhase, SDA_ComplexRectMultiply, SDA_ComplexRectDivide,
SDA_ComplexRectAdd, SDA_ComplexRectSubtract, SDA_ComplexRectLog,
SDA_ComplexRectExp, SDA_ComplexRectExpj, SDA_ComplexRectPow,
SDA_ComplexRectAddScalar, SDA_ComplexRectSubtractScalar,
SDA_ComplexRectMultiplyScalar, SDA_ComplexRectDivideScalar,
SDA_ComplexScalarSubtractRect.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_ComplexRectPhase (const SLComplexRect_s *, Pointer to source array
                           SLData_t *,                      Pointer to destination array
                           const SLArrayIndex_t)             Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the complex phase for each of the values in the source array.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_ComplexRectSqrt, SDA_ComplexRectInverse,
SDA_ComplexRectConjugate, SDA_ComplexRectMagnitude,
SDA_ComplexRectMagnitudeSquared, SDA_ComplexRectMultiply,
SDA_ComplexRectDivide, SDA_ComplexRectAdd, SDA_ComplexRectSubtract,
SDA_ComplexRectLog, SDA_ComplexRectExp, SDA_ComplexRectExpj,
SDA_ComplexRectPow, SDA_ComplexRectAddScalar,
SDA_ComplexRectSubtractScalar, SDA_ComplexRectMultiplyScalar,
SDA_ComplexRectDivideScalar, SDA_ComplexScalarSubtractRect.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_ComplexRectMultiply (const SLComplexRect_s *, Pointer to source
array 1
 const SLComplexRect_s *, Pointer to source array 2
 SLComplexRect_s *, Pointer to destination array
 const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function multiplies the complex values in source array 1 by the complex values in source array 2.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_ComplexRectSqrt, SDA_ComplexRectInverse,
SDA_ComplexRectConjugate, SDA_ComplexRectMagnitude,
SDA_ComplexRectMagnitudeSquared, SDA_ComplexRectPhase,
SDA_ComplexRectDivide, SDA_ComplexRectAdd, SDA_ComplexRectSubtract,
SDA_ComplexRectLog, SDA_ComplexRectExp, SDA_ComplexRectExpj,
SDA_ComplexRectPow, SDA_ComplexRectAddScalar,
SDA_ComplexRectSubtractScalar, SDA_ComplexRectMultiplyScalar,
SDA_ComplexRectDivideScalar, SDA_ComplexScalarSubtractRect.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_ComplexRectDivide (const SLComplexRect_s *, Pointer to source
array 1
 const SLComplexRect_s *, Pointer to source array 2
 SLComplexRect_s *, Pointer to destination array
 const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function divides the complex values in one source array by the complex values in the second source array.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_ComplexRectSqrt, SDA_ComplexRectInverse,
SDA_ComplexRectConjugate, SDA_ComplexRectMagnitude,
SDA_ComplexRectMagnitudeSquared, SDA_ComplexRectPhase,
SDA_ComplexRectMultiply, SDA_ComplexRectAdd, SDA_ComplexRectSubtract,
SDA_ComplexRectLog, SDA_ComplexRectExp, SDA_ComplexRectExpj,
SDA_ComplexRectPow, SDA_ComplexRectAddScalar,
SDA_ComplexRectSubtractScalar, SDA_ComplexRectMultiplyScalar,
SDA_ComplexRectDivideScalar, SDA_ComplexScalarSubtractRect.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_ComplexRectAdd (const SLComplexRect_s *,  Pointer to source array 1
                        const SLComplexRect_s *,      Pointer to source array 2
                        SLComplexRect_s *,           Pointer to destination array
                        const SLArrayIndex_t)         Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function adds the complex values in the two source arrays.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_ComplexRectSqrt, SDA_ComplexRectInverse,
SDA_ComplexRectConjugate, SDA_ComplexRectMagnitude,
SDA_ComplexRectMagnitudeSquared, SDA_ComplexRectPhase,
SDA_ComplexRectMultiply, SDA_ComplexRectDivide,
SDA_ComplexRectSubtract, SDA_ComplexRectLog, SDA_ComplexRectExp,
SDA_ComplexRectExpj, SDA_ComplexRectPow, SDA_ComplexRectAddScalar,
SDA_ComplexRectSubtractScalar, SDA_ComplexRectMultiplyScalar,
SDA_ComplexRectDivideScalar, SDA_ComplexScalarSubtractRect.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_ComplexRectSubtract (const SLComplexRect_s *, Pointer to source
array 1
 const SLComplexRect_s *, Pointer to source array 2
 SLComplexRect_s *, Pointer to destination array
 const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function subtracts the complex samples in source array 2 from those values in source array 1.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_ComplexRectSqrt, SDA_ComplexRectInverse,
SDA_ComplexRectConjugate, SDA_ComplexRectMagnitude,
SDA_ComplexRectMagnitudeSquared, SDA_ComplexRectPhase,
SDA_ComplexRectMultiply, SDA_ComplexRectDivide, SDA_ComplexRectAdd,
SDA_ComplexRectLog, SDA_ComplexRectExp, SDA_ComplexRectExpj,
SDA_ComplexRectPow, SDA_ComplexRectAddScalar,
SDA_ComplexRectSubtractScalar, SDA_ComplexRectMultiplyScalar,
SDA_ComplexRectDivideScalar, SDA_ComplexScalarSubtractRect.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_ComplexRectLog (const SLComplexRect_s *,  Pointer to source array
                        SLComplexRect_s *,          Pointer to destination array
                        const SLArrayIndex_t)        Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the complex log for each of the values in the source array.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_ComplexRectSqrt, SDA_ComplexRectInverse,
SDA_ComplexRectConjugate, SDA_ComplexRectMagnitude,
SDA_ComplexRectMagnitudeSquared, SDA_ComplexRectPhase,
SDA_ComplexRectMultiply, SDA_ComplexRectDivide, SDA_ComplexRectAdd,
SDA_ComplexRectSubtract, SDA_ComplexRectExp, SDA_ComplexRectExpj,
SDA_ComplexRectPow, SDA_ComplexRectAddScalar,
SDA_ComplexRectSubtractScalar, SDA_ComplexRectMultiplyScalar,
SDA_ComplexRectDivideScalar, SDA_ComplexScalarSubtractRect.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_ComplexRectExp (const SLComplexRect_s *,  Pointer to source array
                        SLComplexRect_s *,          Pointer to destination array
                        const SLArrayIndex_t)        Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the complex exponential for each of the values in the source array.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_ComplexRectSqrt, SDA_ComplexRectInverse,
SDA_ComplexRectConjugate, SDA_ComplexRectMagnitude,
SDA_ComplexRectMagnitudeSquared, SDA_ComplexRectPhase,
SDA_ComplexRectMultiply, SDA_ComplexRectDivide, SDA_ComplexRectAdd,
SDA_ComplexRectSubtract, SDA_ComplexRectLog, SDA_ComplexRectExpj,
SDA_ComplexRectPow, SDA_ComplexRectAddScalar,
SDA_ComplexRectSubtractScalar, SDA_ComplexRectMultiplyScalar,
SDA_ComplexRectDivideScalar, SDA_ComplexScalarSubtractRect.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_ComplexRectExpj (const SLData_t *,   Pointer to source array
                          SLComplexRect_s *,   Pointer to destination array
                          const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the complex exponential ($\cos(\theta) + j\sin(\theta)$) for each of the values in the source array.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_ComplexRectSqrt, SDA_ComplexRectInverse,
SDA_ComplexRectConjugate, SDA_ComplexRectMagnitude,
SDA_ComplexRectMagnitudeSquared, SDA_ComplexRectPhase,
SDA_ComplexRectMultiply, SDA_ComplexRectDivide, SDA_ComplexRectAdd,
SDA_ComplexRectSubtract, SDA_ComplexRectLog, SDA_ComplexRectExp,
SDA_ComplexRectPow, SDA_ComplexRectAddScalar,
SDA_ComplexRectSubtractScalar, SDA_ComplexRectMultiplyScalar,
SDA_ComplexRectDivideScalar, SDA_ComplexScalarSubtractRect.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_ComplexRectPow (const SLComplexRect_s *, Pointer to source array
                        SLComplexRect_s *,           Pointer to destination array
                        const SLData_t,               Power
                        const SLArrayIndex_t)         Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function raises the complex values in the source array to the given power.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_ComplexRectSqrt, SDA_ComplexRectInverse,
SDA_ComplexRectConjugate, SDA_ComplexRectMagnitude,
SDA_ComplexRectMagnitudeSquared, SDA_ComplexRectPhase,
SDA_ComplexRectMultiply, SDA_ComplexRectDivide, SDA_ComplexRectAdd,
SDA_ComplexRectSubtract, SDA_ComplexRectLog, SDA_ComplexRectExp,
SDA_ComplexRectExpj, SDA_ComplexRectAddScalar,
SDA_ComplexRectSubtractScalar, SDA_ComplexRectMultiplyScalar,
SDA_ComplexRectDivideScalar, SDA_ComplexScalarSubtractRect.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_ComplexRectAddScalar (const SLComplexRect_s *, Pointer to source array

const SLData_t,	Scalar
SLComplexRect_s *,	Pointer to destination array
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function adds the scalar value to the complex values in the source array.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_ComplexRectSqrt, SDA_ComplexRectInverse,
SDA_ComplexRectConjugate, SDA_ComplexRectMagnitude,
SDA_ComplexRectMagnitudeSquared, SDA_ComplexRectPhase,
SDA_ComplexRectMultiply, SDA_ComplexRectDivide, SDA_ComplexRectAdd,
SDA_ComplexRectSubtract, SDA_ComplexRectLog, SDA_ComplexRectExp,
SDA_ComplexRectExpj, SDA_ComplexRectPow,
SDA_ComplexRectSubtractScalar, SDA_ComplexRectMultiplyScalar,
SDA_ComplexRectDivideScalar, SDA_ComplexScalarSubtractRect.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_ComplexRectSubtractScalar (const SLComplexRect_s *,      Pointer to
source array
    const SLData_t,          Scalar
    SLComplexRect_s *,      Pointer to destination array
    const SLArrayIndex_t)    Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function subtracts the scalar value from the complex values in the source array.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_ComplexRectSqrt, SDA_ComplexRectInverse,
SDA_ComplexRectConjugate, SDA_ComplexRectMagnitude,
SDA_ComplexRectMagnitudeSquared, SDA_ComplexRectPhase,
SDA_ComplexRectMultiply, SDA_ComplexRectDivide, SDA_ComplexRectAdd,
SDA_ComplexRectSubtract, SDA_ComplexRectLog, SDA_ComplexRectExp,
SDA_ComplexRectExpj, SDA_ComplexRectPow, SDA_ComplexRectAddScalar,
SDA_ComplexRectMultiplyScalar, SDA_ComplexRectDivideScalar,
SDA_ComplexScalarSubtractRect.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_ComplexRectMultiplyScalar (const SLComplexRect_s *, Pointer to
source array
 const SLData_t, Scalar
 SLComplexRect_s *, Pointer to destination array
 const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function multiplies the complex values in the source array by the scalar value.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_ComplexRectSqrt, SDA_ComplexRectInverse,
SDA_ComplexRectConjugate, SDA_ComplexRectMagnitude,
SDA_ComplexRectMagnitudeSquared, SDA_ComplexRectPhase,
SDA_ComplexRectMultiply, SDA_ComplexRectDivide, SDA_ComplexRectAdd,
SDA_ComplexRectSubtract, SDA_ComplexRectLog, SDA_ComplexRectExp,
SDA_ComplexRectExpj, SDA_ComplexRectPow, SDA_ComplexRectAddScalar,
SDA_ComplexRectSubtractScalar, SDA_ComplexRectDivideScalar,
SDA_ComplexScalarSubtractRect.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_ComplexRectDivideScalar (const SLComplexRect_s *, Pointer to source array

const SLData_t,	Scalar
SLComplexRect_s *,	Pointer to destination array
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function divides the complex values in the source array by the scalar value.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_ComplexRectSqrt, SDA_ComplexRectInverse,
SDA_ComplexRectConjugate, SDA_ComplexRectMagnitude,
SDA_ComplexRectMagnitudeSquared, SDA_ComplexRectPhase,
SDA_ComplexRectMultiply, SDA_ComplexRectDivide, SDA_ComplexRectAdd,
SDA_ComplexRectSubtract, SDA_ComplexRectLog, SDA_ComplexRectExp,
SDA_ComplexRectExpj, SDA_ComplexRectPow, SDA_ComplexRectAddScalar,
SDA_ComplexRectSubtractScalar, SDA_ComplexRectMultiplyScalar,
SDA_ComplexScalarSubtractRect.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_ComplexScalarSubtractRect (const SLData_t,   Scalar
                                     const SLComplexRect_s *,   Pointer to source array
                                     SLComplexRect_s *,   Pointer to destination array
                                     const SLArrayIndex_t)   Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function subtract the complex values in the source array from the scalar value.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_ComplexRectSqrt, SDA_ComplexRectInverse,
SDA_ComplexRectConjugate, SDA_ComplexRectMagnitude,
SDA_ComplexRectMagnitudeSquared, SDA_ComplexRectPhase,
SDA_ComplexRectMultiply, SDA_ComplexRectDivide, SDA_ComplexRectAdd,
SDA_ComplexRectSubtract, SDA_ComplexRectLog, SDA_ComplexRectExp,
SDA_ComplexRectExpj, SDA_ComplexRectPow, SDA_ComplexRectAddScalar,
SDA_ComplexRectSubtractScalar, SDA_ComplexRectMultiplyScalar,
SDA_ComplexRectDivideScalar.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_ComplexRectLinearInterpolate (const SLComplexRect_s,  
                                       Interpolation start point  
                                       const SLComplexRect_s,  
                                       Interpolation end point  
                                       SLComplexRect_s *,  
                                       Destination array  
                                       const SLArrayIndex_t)  
                                       Number of interpolated points
```

DESCRIPTION

This function performs rectangular linear interpolation of the samples between the two source complex numbers.

NOTES ON USE

The output array length = the number of interpolated points +2.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_ComplexPolarLinearInterpolate, SDA_Interpolate,
SDA_InterpolateAndFilter, SDA_InterpolateLinear1, SDA_InterpolateLinear2.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_ComplexPolarLinearInterpolate (const SLComplexPolar_s,  
                                         Interpolation start point  
                                         const SLComplexPolar_s,  
                                         Interpolation end point  
                                         SLComplexPolar_s *,  
                                         Destination array  
                                         const SLArrayIndex_t)  
                                         Number of interpolated points
```

DESCRIPTION

This function performs polar linear interpolation of the samples between the two source complex numbers.

NOTES ON USE

The output array length = the number of interpolated points +2.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_ComplexRectLinearInterpolate, SDA_Interpolate,
SDA_InterpolateAndFilter, SDA_InterpolateLinear1, SDA_InterpolateLinear2.

MATRIX VECTOR FUNCTIONS (*matrix.c*)

The matrix functions operate on 2 dimensional real matrices. A matrix of n ROWS by m COLUMNS is denoted:

Matrix[ROWS][COLS]

Each element in row i and column j of A is denoted by A(i,j), with the full matrix being shown below:

$$A = [a_{ij}] = \begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{cccc} \text{--} & & & \text{--} \\ | & a & a & . & . & . & a & | \\ | & 11 & 12 & & & & 1j & | \\ | & & & & & & & | \\ | & a & a & . & . & . & a & | \\ | & 21 & 22 & & & & 2j & | \\ | & . & . & & & & . & | \\ | & & & & & & & | \\ | & . & . & & & & . & | \\ | & & & & & & & | \\ | & a & a & . & . & . & a & | \\ | & i1 & i2 & & & & ij & | \\ \text{--} & & & & & & \text{--} \end{array} \end{array}$$

All SigLib matrices are real so to implement complex operations the real and imaginary components are handled separately. For example a complex array A can be represented by the separate arrays A_real and A_imag. Now we can perform a complex operation (e.g. Hermitian Transpose) by using the following SigLib functions:

```
SMX_Transpose (A_real....)           // Transpose the real array
SMX_Transpose (A_imag....)           // Transpose the imaginary array
SDA_Negate (A_imag....)               //Conjugate the result by
                                     // negating the imaginary array
```

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SMX_Transpose (const SLData_t *,    Source matrix pointer
                   SLData_t *,          Destination matrix pointer
                   const SLArrayIndex_t, Source matrix # of rows
                   const SLArrayIndex_t) Source matrix # columns
```

DESCRIPTION

This function transposes a two dimensional matrix. This operation is also referred to as a 'corner turn'.

NOTES ON USE

This function can only work in-place if the matrix is square. If the matrix is not square then the function requires separate source and destination arrays.

CROSS REFERENCE

SMX_Transpose, SMX_Copy, SMX_Add, SMX_Subtract,
 SMX_MultiplyPiecewise, SMX_ScalarMultiply, SMX_Multiply,
 SMX_CreateIdentity, SMX_Inverse2x2, SMX_ComplexInverse2x2, SMX_Inverse,
 SMX_LuDecompose, SMX_LuSolve, SMX_Determinant, SMX_LuDeterminant,
 SMX_RotateClockwise, SMX_RotateAntiClockwise, SMX_Reflect, SMX_Flip,
 SMX_InsertRow, SMX_ExtractRow, SMX_InsertColumn, SMX_ExtractColumn,
 SMX_InsertNewRow, SMX_DeleteOldRow, SMX_InsertNewColumn,
 SMX_DeleteOldColumn, SMX_InsertRegion, SMX_ExtractRegion,
 SMX_InsertDiagonal, SMX_ExtractDiagonal, SMX_SwapRows,
 SMX_SwapColumns, SMX_Sum, SDA_ShuffleColumns, SMX_ShuffleRows,
 SMX_ExtractCategoricalColumn

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SMX_Multiply (const SLData_t *,	Source matrix 1 pointer
const SLData_t *,	Source matrix 2 pointer
SLData_t *,	Destination matrix pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Source matrix 1 # of rows
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Source matrix 1 # of columns
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Source matrix 2 # of columns

DESCRIPTION

This function multiplies two, two dimensional matrices.

NOTES ON USE

The number of columns in the first must equal the number of rows in the second. The output matrix has order: [# rows 1, # columns 2]

CROSS REFERENCE

SMX_Transpose, SMX_Copy, SMX_Add, SMX_Subtract,
 SMX_MultiplyPiecewise, SMX_ScalarMultiply, SMX_CreateIdentity,
 SMX_Inverse2x2, SMX_ComplexInverse2x2, SMX_Inverse, SMX_LuDecompose,
 SMX_LuSolve, SMX_Determinant, SMX_LuDeterminant, SMX_RotateClockwise,
 SMX_RotateAntiClockwise, SMX_Reflect, SMX_Flip, SMX_InsertRow,
 SMX_ExtractRow, SMX_InsertColumn, SMX_ExtractColumn,
 SMX_InsertNewRow, SMX_DeleteOldRow, SMX_InsertNewColumn,
 SMX_DeleteOldColumn, SMX_InsertRegion, SMX_ExtractRegion,
 SMX_InsertDiagonal, SMX_ExtractDiagonal, SMX_SwapRows,
 SMX_SwapColumns, SMX_Sum, SDA_ShuffleColumns, SMX_ShuffleRows,
 SMX_ExtractCategoricalColumn

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SL_Error_t SMX_Inverse2x2 (const SLData_t *, Pointer to source matrix
 SLData_t *) Pointer to destination matrix

DESCRIPTION

This function inverts a square 2x2 matrix using the following equation:

$$\text{if } A = \begin{vmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{vmatrix} \text{ then } A^{-1} = \frac{1}{(ad - bc)} \cdot \begin{vmatrix} d & -b \\ -c & a \end{vmatrix}$$

NOTES ON USE

This function will return the error code SIGLIB_ERROR if the matrix is singular.

CROSS REFERENCE

SMX_Transpose, SMX_Copy, SMX_Add, SMX_Subtract,
 SMX_MultiplyPiecewise, SMX_ScalarMultiply, SMX_Multiply,
 SMX_CreateIdentity, SMX_ComplexInverse2x2, SMX_Inverse,
 SMX_LuDecompose, SMX_LuSolve, SMX_Determinant, SMX_LuDeterminant,
 SMX_RotateClockwise, SMX_RotateAntiClockwise, SMX_Reflect, SMX_Flip,
 SMX_InsertRow, SMX_ExtractRow, SMX_InsertColumn, SMX_ExtractColumn,
 SMX_InsertNewRow, SMX_DeleteOldRow, SMX_InsertNewColumn,
 SMX_DeleteOldColumn, SMX_InsertRegion, SMX_ExtractRegion,
 SMX_InsertDiagonal, SMX_ExtractDiagonal, SMX_SwapRows,
 SMX_SwapColumns, SMX_Sum, SDA_ShuffleColumns, SMX_ShuffleRows,
 SMX_ExtractCategoricalColumn

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```

SL_Error_t SMX_Inverse (const SLData_t *, Source matrix pointer
                        SLData_t *,           Destination matrix pointer
                        SLData_t *,           Temporary array for source
                        SLData_t *,           Index substitution array
                        SLArrayIndex_t *,     Row interchange indices
                        SLData_t *,           Scaling factor array
                        const SLArrayIndex_t) Number of rows and columns in matrix

```

DESCRIPTION

This function inverts a square matrix.

NOTES ON USE

This function uses the **LU** decomposition algorithm via the function `SMX_LuDecompose` and then uses forward and backward substitution to solve the equation $A \cdot x = b$ (where $A = LU$), using the SigLib function `SMX_LuSolve`.

This function will return the error code `SIGLIB_ERROR` if the matrix is singular.

The **LU** decomposed array is stored temporarily within this function. If multiple linear equations need to be solved then the decomposition and solution functions can be called separately from the user's programs. In this case, it is only necessary to perform the **LU** decomposition once for each matrix **A**, followed by multiple calls to the function `SMX_LuSolve`.

CROSS REFERENCE

`SMX_Transpose`, `SMX_Copy`, `SMX_Add`, `SMX_Subtract`,
`SMX_MultiplyPiecewise`, `SMX_ScalarMultiply`, `SMX_Multiply`,
`SMX_CreateIdentity`, `SMX_Inverse2x2`, `SMX_ComplexInverse2x2`,
`SMX_LuDecompose`, `SMX_LuSolve`, `SMX_Determinant`, `SMX_LuDeterminant`,
`SMX_RotateClockwise`, `SMX_RotateAntiClockwise`, `SMX_Reflect`, `SMX_Flip`,
`SMX_InsertRow`, `SMX_ExtractRow`, `SMX_InsertColumn`, `SMX_ExtractColumn`,
`SMX_InsertNewRow`, `SMX_DeleteOldRow`, `SMX_InsertNewColumn`,
`SMX_DeleteOldColumn`, `SMX_InsertRegion`, `SMX_ExtractRegion`,
`SMX_InsertDiagonal`, `SMX_ExtractDiagonal`, `SMX_SwapRows`,
`SMX_SwapColumns`, `SMX_Sum`, `SDA_ShuffleColumns`, `SMX_ShuffleRows`,
`SMX_ExtractCategoricalColumn`

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SL_Error_t SMX_LuDecompose (SLData_t *,	Source and destination pointer
SLArrayIndex_t *,	Index matrix pointer
SLData_t *,	Scaling factor array
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Number of rows and columns in matrix

DESCRIPTION

This functions performs an **LU** decomposition on a square matrix, using Crout's method.

NOTES ON USE

The data in the source matrix will be destroyed.

This function will return the error code SIGLIB_ERROR if the matrix is singular.

Scaled partial pivoting is used I.E. only rows are interchanged. A record of the row interchanges are stored in the row interchange matrix and these are used in the functions that can accept the output from SMX_LuDecompose.

If multiple linear equations need to be solved then the decomposition and solution functions can be called separately from the user's programs. In this case, it is only necessary to perform the **LU** decomposition once for each matrix **A**, followed by multiple calls to the function SMX_LuSolve.

CROSS REFERENCE

SMX_Transpose, SMX_Copy, SMX_Add, SMX_Subtract, SMX_MultiplyPiecewise, SMX_ScalarMultiply, SMX_Multiply, SMX_CreateIdentity, SMX_Inverse2x2, SMX_ComplexInverse2x2, SMX_Inverse, SMX_LuSolve, SMX_Determinant, SMX_LuDeterminant, SMX_RotateClockwise, SMX_RotateAntiClockwise, SMX_Reflect, SMX_Flip, SMX_InsertRow, SMX_ExtractRow, SMX_InsertColumn, SMX_ExtractColumn, SMX_InsertNewRow, SMX_DeleteOldRow, SMX_InsertNewColumn, SMX_DeleteOldColumn, SMX_InsertRegion, SMX_ExtractRegion, SMX_InsertDiagonal, SMX_ExtractDiagonal, SMX_SwapRows, SMX_SwapColumns, SMX_Sum, SDA_ShuffleColumns, SMX_ShuffleRows, SMX_ExtractCategoricalColumn

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SMX_LuSolve (const SLData_t *,	Interchanged LU decomposed matrix ptr.
SLData_t *,	Source and inverse matrix pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t *,	Row interchange matrix pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Source matrix # of rows and columns

DESCRIPTION

This function uses forward and backward substitution on a square matrix, to solve the equation $A \cdot x = b$ (where $A = LU$), using the SigLib function SMX_LuSolve. It accepts as its primary inputs an interchanged LU decomposed matrix and row interchange matrix.

NOTES ON USE

If multiple linear equations need to be solved then the decomposition and solution functions can be called separately from the user's programs. In this case, it is only necessary to perform the LU decomposition once for each matrix A , followed by multiple calls to the function SMX_LuSolve.

CROSS REFERENCE

SMX_Transpose, SMX_Copy, SMX_Add, SMX_Subtract,
SMX_MultiplyPiecewise, SMX_ScalarMultiply, SMX_Multiply,
SMX_CreateIdentity, SMX_Inverse2x2, SMX_ComplexInverse2x2, SMX_Inverse,
SMX_LuDecompose, SMX_Determinant, SMX_LuDeterminant,
SMX_RotateClockwise, SMX_RotateAntiClockwise, SMX_Reflect, SMX_Flip,
SMX_InsertRow, SMX_ExtractRow, SMX_InsertColumn, SMX_ExtractColumn,
SMX_InsertNewRow, SMX_DeleteOldRow, SMX_InsertNewColumn,
SMX_DeleteOldColumn, SMX_InsertRegion, SMX_ExtractRegion,
SMX_InsertDiagonal, SMX_ExtractDiagonal, SMX_SwapRows,
SMX_SwapColumns, SMX_Sum, SDA_ShuffleColumns, SMX_ShuffleRows,
SMX_ExtractCategoricalColumn

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLData_t SMX_Determinant (const SLData_t *,    Source matrix pointer
                          SLData_t *,          Temporary array for source
                          SLArrayIndex_t *,     Row interchange indices
                          SLData_t *,          Scaling factor array
                          const SLArrayIndex_t) Number of rows and columns in matrix
```

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the determinant of a square matrix.

NOTES ON USE

This function will NOT return an error code if the matrix is non-invertible (I.E. singular) or if there is a memory allocation error.

This function allocates temporary arrays whenever the array length increases because the **LU** decomposition algorithm is destructive and these arrays avoid the source array from being destroyed.

This function uses the **LU** decomposition algorithm via the function SMX_LuDecompose.

If the matrix has already been decomposed into the **LU** form then it is only necessary to call the function SMX_LuDeterminant.

CROSS REFERENCE

SMX_Transpose, SMX_Copy, SMX_Add, SMX_Subtract,
SMX_MultiplyPiecewise, SMX_ScalarMultiply, SMX_Multiply,
SMX_CreateIdentity, SMX_Inverse2x2, SMX_ComplexInverse2x2, SMX_Inverse,
SMX_LuDecompose, SMX_LuSolve, SMX_LuDeterminant, SMX_RotateClockwise,
SMX_RotateAntiClockwise, SMX_Reflect, SMX_Flip, SMX_InsertRow,
SMX_ExtractRow, SMX_InsertColumn, SMX_ExtractColumn,
SMX_InsertNewRow, SMX_DeleteOldRow, SMX_InsertNewColumn,
SMX_DeleteOldColumn, SMX_InsertRegion, SMX_ExtractRegion,
SMX_InsertDiagonal, SMX_ExtractDiagonal, SMX_SwapRows,
SMX_SwapColumns, SMX_Sum, SDA_ShuffleColumns, SMX_ShuffleRows,
SMX_ExtractCategoricalColumn

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLData_t SMX_LuDeterminant (const SLData_t *, Source matrix pointer
                           const SLArrayIndex_t *      Row interchange matrix pointer
                           const SLArrayIndex_t)        Source matrix # of rows and columns
```

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the determinant of a square matrix.

NOTES ON USE

This function accepts an **LU** array with interchanged rows, as indicated in the row interchange index array.

If the matrix has already been decomposed into the **LU** form then it is only necessary to call the function SMX_LuDeterminant and not SMX_Determinant.

The determinant of a matrix is the product of diagonal elements of **LU** decomposition and The sign of the determinant changes for each row swap that occurred in the **LU** decomposition process.

CROSS REFERENCE

SMX_Transpose, SMX_Copy, SMX_Add, SMX_Subtract,
 SMX_MultiplyPiecewise, SMX_ScalarMultiply, SMX_Multiply,
 SMX_CreateIdentity, SMX_Inverse2x2, SMX_ComplexInverse2x2, SMX_Inverse,
 SMX_LuDecompose, SMX_LuSolve, SMX_Determinant, SMX_RotateClockwise,
 SMX_RotateAntiClockwise, SMX_Reflect, SMX_Flip, SMX_InsertRow,
 SMX_ExtractRow, SMX_InsertColumn, SMX_ExtractColumn,
 SMX_InsertNewRow, SMX_DeleteOldRow, SMX_InsertNewColumn,
 SMX_DeleteOldColumn, SMX_InsertRegion, SMX_ExtractRegion,
 SMX_InsertDiagonal, SMX_ExtractDiagonal, SMX_SwapRows,
 SMX_SwapColumns, SMX_Sum, SDA_ShuffleColumns, SMX_ShuffleRows,
 SMX_ExtractCategoricalColumn

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SMX_RotateClockwise (const SLData_t *,    Source matrix pointer
                          SLData_t *,          Destination matrix pointer
                          const SLArrayIndex_t, Number of rows in matrix
                          const SLArrayIndex_t) Number of columns in matrix
```

DESCRIPTION

This function rotates the matrix clockwise.

NOTES ON USE

This function does not work in-place.

CROSS REFERENCE

SMX_Transpose, SMX_Copy, SMX_Add, SMX_Subtract,
SMX_MultiplyPiecewise, SMX_ScalarMultiply, SMX_Multiply,
SMX_CreateIdentity, SMX_Inverse2x2, SMX_ComplexInverse2x2, SMX_Inverse,
SMX_LuDecompose, SMX_LuSolve, SMX_Determinant, SMX_LuDeterminant,
SMX_RotateAntiClockwise, SMX_Reflect, SMX_Flip, SMX_InsertRow,
SMX_ExtractRow, SMX_InsertColumn, SMX_ExtractColumn,
SMX_InsertNewRow, SMX_DeleteOldRow, SMX_InsertNewColumn,
SMX_DeleteOldColumn, SMX_InsertRegion, SMX_ExtractRegion,
SMX_InsertDiagonal, SMX_ExtractDiagonal, SMX_SwapRows,
SMX_SwapColumns, SMX_Sum, SDA_ShuffleColumns, SMX_ShuffleRows,
SMX_ExtractCategoricalColumn

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SMX_RotateAntiClockwise (const SLData_t *,      Source matrix pointer
                              SLData_t *,           Destination matrix pointer
                              const SLArrayIndex_t,  Number of rows in matrix
                              const SLArrayIndex_t)  Number of columns in matrix
```

DESCRIPTION

This function rotates the matrix anti-clockwise.

NOTES ON USE

This function does not work in-place.

CROSS REFERENCE

SMX_Transpose, SMX_Copy, SMX_Add, SMX_Subtract,
SMX_MultiplyPiecewise, SMX_ScalarMultiply, SMX_Multiply,
SMX_CreateIdentity, SMX_Inverse2x2, SMX_ComplexInverse2x2, SMX_Inverse,
SMX_LuDecompose, SMX_LuSolve, SMX_Determinant, SMX_LuDeterminant,
SMX_RotateClockwise, SMX_Reflect, SMX_Flip, SMX_InsertRow,
SMX_ExtractRow, SMX_InsertColumn, SMX_ExtractColumn,
SMX_InsertNewRow, SMX_DeleteOldRow, SMX_InsertNewColumn,
SMX_DeleteOldColumn, SMX_InsertRegion, SMX_ExtractRegion,
SMX_InsertDiagonal, SMX_ExtractDiagonal, SMX_SwapRows,
SMX_SwapColumns, SMX_Sum, SDA_ShuffleColumns, SMX_ShuffleRows,
SMX_ExtractCategoricalColumn

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SMX_Reflect (const SLData_t *,	Source matrix pointer
SLData_t *,	Destination matrix pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Number of rows in matrix
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Number of columns in matrix

DESCRIPTION

This function reflects the matrix about the central vertical axis.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SMX_Transpose, SMX_Copy, SMX_Add, SMX_Subtract,
 SMX_MultiplyPiecewise, SMX_ScalarMultiply, SMX_Multiply,
 SMX_CreateIdentity, SMX_Inverse2x2, SMX_ComplexInverse2x2, SMX_Inverse,
 SMX_LuDecompose, SMX_LuSolve, SMX_Determinant, SMX_LuDeterminant,
 SMX_RotateClockwise, SMX_RotateAntiClockwise, SMX_Flip, SMX_InsertRow,
 SMX_ExtractRow, SMX_InsertColumn, SMX_ExtractColumn,
 SMX_InsertNewRow, SMX_DeleteOldRow, SMX_InsertNewColumn,
 SMX_DeleteOldColumn, SMX_InsertRegion, SMX_ExtractRegion,
 SMX_InsertDiagonal, SMX_ExtractDiagonal, SMX_SwapRows,
 SMX_SwapColumns, SMX_Sum, SDA_ShuffleColumns, SMX_ShuffleRows,
 SMX_ExtractCategoricalColumn

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SMX_Flip (const SLData_t *,	Source matrix pointer
SLData_t *,	Destination matrix pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Number of rows in matrix
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Number of columns in matrix

DESCRIPTION

This function flips the matrix about the central horizontal axis.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SMX_Transpose, SMX_Copy, SMX_Add, SMX_Subtract,
 SMX_MultiplyPiecewise, SMX_ScalarMultiply, SMX_Multiply,
 SMX_CreateIdentity, SMX_Inverse2x2, SMX_ComplexInverse2x2, SMX_Inverse,
 SMX_LuDecompose, SMX_LuSolve, SMX_Determinant, SMX_LuDeterminant,
 SMX_RotateClockwise, SMX_RotateAntiClockwise, SMX_Reflect,
 SMX_InsertRow, SMX_ExtractRow, SMX_InsertColumn, SMX_ExtractColumn,
 SMX_InsertNewRow, SMX_DeleteOldRow, SMX_InsertNewColumn,
 SMX_DeleteOldColumn, SMX_InsertRegion, SMX_ExtractRegion,
 SMX_InsertDiagonal, SMX_ExtractDiagonal, SMX_SwapRows,
 SMX_SwapColumns, SMX_Sum, SDA_ShuffleColumns, SMX_ShuffleRows,
 SMX_ExtractCategoricalColumn

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SMX_InsertRow (const SLData_t *,	Source matrix pointer
const SLData_t *,	Input data for row
SLData_t *,	Destination matrix pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Row number to insert data
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Number of rows in matrix
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Number of columns in matrix

DESCRIPTION

This function inserts the new data into the selected row.

NOTES ON USE

This function overwrites the data in the selected row in the matrix.

CROSS REFERENCE

SMX_Transpose, SMX_Copy, SMX_Add, SMX_Subtract,
 SMX_MultiplyPiecewise, SMX_ScalarMultiply, SMX_Multiply,
 SMX_CreateIdentity, SMX_Inverse2x2, SMX_ComplexInverse2x2, SMX_Inverse,
 SMX_LuDecompose, SMX_LuSolve, SMX_Determinant, SMX_LuDeterminant,
 SMX_RotateClockwise, SMX_RotateAntiClockwise, SMX_Reflect, SMX_Flip,
 SMX_ExtractRow, SMX_InsertColumn, SMX_ExtractColumn,
 SMX_InsertNewRow, SMX_DeleteOldRow, SMX_InsertNewColumn,
 SMX_DeleteOldColumn, SMX_InsertRegion, SMX_ExtractRegion,
 SMX_InsertDiagonal, SMX_ExtractDiagonal, SMX_SwapRows,
 SMX_SwapColumns, SMX_Sum, SDA_ShuffleColumns, SMX_ShuffleRows,
 SMX_ExtractCategoricalColumn

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SMX_ExtractRow (const SLData_t *,   Source matrix pointer
                    SLData_t *,         Destination matrix pointer
                    const SLArrayIndex_t, Row number to extract data
                    const SLArrayIndex_t) Number of columns in matrix
```

DESCRIPTION

This function extracts the data from the selected row.

NOTES ON USE

This function copies the data to the destination array. If you want to delete the row afterwards you should use the function `SMX_DeleteOldRow()`.

CROSS REFERENCE

SMX_Transpose, SMX_Copy, SMX_Add, SMX_Subtract,
SMX_MultiplyPiecewise, SMX_ScalarMultiply, SMX_Multiply,
SMX_CreateIdentity, SMX_Inverse2x2, SMX_ComplexInverse2x2, SMX_Inverse,
SMX_LuDecompose, SMX_LuSolve, SMX_Determinant, SMX_LuDeterminant,
SMX_RotateClockwise, SMX_RotateAntiClockwise, SMX_Reflect, SMX_Flip,
SMX_InsertRow, SMX_InsertColumn, SMX_ExtractColumn, SMX_InsertNewRow,
SMX_DeleteOldRow, SMX_InsertNewColumn, SMX_DeleteOldColumn,
SMX_InsertRegion, SMX_ExtractRegion, SMX_InsertDiagonal,
SMX_ExtractDiagonal, SMX_SwapRows, SMX_SwapColumns, SMX_Sum,
SDA_ShuffleColumns, SMX_ShuffleRows, SMX_ExtractCategoricalColumn

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SMX_InsertColumn (const SLData_t *,Source matrix pointer
    const SLData_t *,           Input data for column
    SLData_t *,                 Destination matrix pointer
    const SLArrayIndex_t,       Row number to insert data
    const SLArrayIndex_t,       Number of rows in matrix
    const SLArrayIndex_t)       Number of columns in matrix
```

DESCRIPTION

This function inserts the new data into the selected column.

NOTES ON USE

This function overwrites the data in the selected column in the matrix.

CROSS REFERENCE

SMX_Transpose, SMX_Copy, SMX_Add, SMX_Subtract,
 SMX_MultiplyPiecewise, SMX_ScalarMultiply, SMX_Multiply,
 SMX_CreateIdentity, SMX_Inverse2x2, SMX_ComplexInverse2x2, SMX_Inverse,
 SMX_LuDecompose, SMX_LuSolve, SMX_Determinant, SMX_LuDeterminant,
 SMX_RotateClockwise, SMX_RotateAntiClockwise, SMX_Reflect, SMX_Flip,
 SMX_InsertRow, SMX_ExtractRow, SMX_ExtractColumn, SMX_InsertNewRow,
 SMX_DeleteOldRow, SMX_InsertNewColumn, SMX_DeleteOldColumn,
 SMX_InsertRegion, SMX_ExtractRegion, SMX_InsertDiagonal,
 SMX_ExtractDiagonal, SMX_SwapRows, SMX_SwapColumns, SMX_Sum,
 SDA_ShuffleColumns, SMX_ShuffleRows, SMX_ExtractCategoricalColumn

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SMX_ExtractColumn (const SLData_t *,      Source matrix pointer
                        SLData_t *,           Destination matrix pointer
                        const SLArrayIndex_t,  Column number to extract data
                        const SLArrayIndex_t,  Number of rows in matrix
                        const SLArrayIndex_t)  Number of columns in matrix
```

DESCRIPTION

This function extracts the data from the selected column.

NOTES ON USE

This function copies the data to the destination array. If you want to delete the column afterwards you should use the function `SMX_DeleteOldColumn()`.

CROSS REFERENCE

SMX_Transpose, SMX_Copy, SMX_Add, SMX_Subtract,
 SMX_MultiplyPiecewise, SMX_ScalarMultiply, SMX_Multiply,
 SMX_CreateIdentity, SMX_Inverse2x2, SMX_ComplexInverse2x2, SMX_Inverse,
 SMX_LuDecompose, SMX_LuSolve, SMX_Determinant, SMX_LuDeterminant,
 SMX_RotateClockwise, SMX_RotateAntiClockwise, SMX_Reflect, SMX_Flip,
 SMX_InsertRow, SMX_ExtractRow, SMX_InsertColumn, SMX_InsertNewRow,
 SMX_DeleteOldRow, SMX_InsertNewColumn, SMX_DeleteOldColumn,
 SMX_InsertRegion, SMX_ExtractRegion, SMX_InsertDiagonal,
 SMX_ExtractDiagonal, SMX_SwapRows, SMX_SwapColumns, SMX_Sum,
 SDA_ShuffleColumns, SMX_ShuffleRows, SMX_ExtractCategoricalColumn

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SMX_InsertRow (const SLData_t *,	Source matrix pointer
const SLData_t *,	Input data for row
SLData_t *,	Destination matrix pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Row number to insert data
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Number of rows in matrix
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Number of columns in matrix

DESCRIPTION

This function creates a new row and inserts the new data into this row.

NOTES ON USE

The number of rows specified in the parameter list is the number of rows in the source matrix.

This function does not work in-place.

CROSS REFERENCE

SMX_Transpose, SMX_Copy, SMX_Add, SMX_Subtract,
 SMX_MultiplyPiecewise, SMX_ScalarMultiply, SMX_Multiply,
 SMX_CreateIdentity, SMX_Inverse2x2, SMX_ComplexInverse2x2, SMX_Inverse,
 SMX_LuDecompose, SMX_LuSolve, SMX_Determinant, SMX_LuDeterminant,
 SMX_RotateClockwise, SMX_RotateAntiClockwise, SMX_Reflect, SMX_Flip,
 SMX_InsertRow, SMX_ExtractRow, SMX_InsertColumn, SMX_ExtractColumn,
 SMX_DeleteOldRow, SMX_InsertNewColumn, SMX_DeleteOldColumn,
 SMX_InsertRegion, SMX_ExtractRegion, SMX_InsertDiagonal,
 SMX_ExtractDiagonal, SMX_SwapRows, SMX_SwapColumns, SMX_Sum,
 SDA_ShuffleColumns, SMX_ShuffleRows, SMX_ExtractCategoricalColumn

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SMX_DeleteOldRow (const SLData_t *,      Source matrix pointer
                      SLData_t *,           Destination matrix pointer
                      const SLArrayIndex_t,  Row number to insert data
                      const SLArrayIndex_t,  Number of rows in matrix
                      const SLArrayIndex_t)  Number of columns in matrix
```

DESCRIPTION

This function deletes the complete row from the matrix.

NOTES ON USE

The number of rows specified in the parameter list is the number of rows in the source matrix.

This function works in-place.

CROSS REFERENCE

SMX_Transpose, SMX_Copy, SMX_Add, SMX_Subtract,
 SMX_MultiplyPiecewise, SMX_ScalarMultiply, SMX_Multiply,
 SMX_CreateIdentity, SMX_Inverse2x2, SMX_ComplexInverse2x2, SMX_Inverse,
 SMX_LuDecompose, SMX_LuSolve, SMX_Determinant, SMX_LuDeterminant,
 SMX_RotateClockwise, SMX_RotateAntiClockwise, SMX_Reflect, SMX_Flip,
 SMX_InsertRow, SMX_ExtractRow, SMX_InsertColumn, SMX_ExtractColumn,
 SMX_InsertNewRow, SMX_InsertNewColumn, SMX_DeleteOldColumn,
 SMX_InsertRegion, SMX_ExtractRegion, SMX_InsertDiagonal,
 SMX_ExtractDiagonal, SMX_SwapRows, SMX_SwapColumns, SMX_Sum,
 SDA_ShuffleColumns, SMX_ShuffleRows, SMX_ExtractCategoricalColumn

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SMX_InsertNewColumn (const SLData_t *,   Source matrix pointer
                          const SLData_t *,   Input data for column
                          SLData_t *,         Destination matrix pointer
                          const SLArrayIndex_t, Row number to insert data
                          const SLArrayIndex_t, Number of rows in matrix
                          const SLArrayIndex_t) Number of columns in matrix
```

DESCRIPTION

This function creates a new column and inserts the new data into this column.

NOTES ON USE

The number of columns specified in the parameter list is the number of columns in the source matrix.

This function does not work in-place.

CROSS REFERENCE

SMX_Transpose, SMX_Copy, SMX_Add, SMX_Subtract,
 SMX_MultiplyPiecewise, SMX_ScalarMultiply, SMX_Multiply,
 SMX_CreateIdentity, SMX_Inverse2x2, SMX_ComplexInverse2x2, SMX_Inverse,
 SMX_LuDecompose, SMX_LuSolve, SMX_Determinant, SMX_LuDeterminant,
 SMX_RotateClockwise, SMX_RotateAntiClockwise, SMX_Reflect, SMX_Flip,
 SMX_InsertRow, SMX_ExtractRow, SMX_InsertColumn, SMX_ExtractColumn,
 SMX_InsertNewRow, SMX_DeleteOldRow, SMX_DeleteOldColumn,
 SMX_InsertRegion, SMX_ExtractRegion, SMX_InsertDiagonal,
 SMX_ExtractDiagonal, SMX_SwapRows, SMX_SwapColumns, SMX_Sum,
 SDA_ShuffleColumns, SMX_ShuffleRows, SMX_ExtractCategoricalColumn

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SMX_DeleteOldColumn (const SLData_t *,    Source matrix pointer
                          SLData_t *,        Destination matrix pointer
                          const SLArrayIndex_t, Column number to insert data
                          const SLArrayIndex_t, Number of rows in matrix
                          const SLArrayIndex_t) Number of columns in matrix
```

DESCRIPTION

This function deletes the complete column from the matrix.

NOTES ON USE

The number of columns specified in the parameter list is the number of columns in the source matrix.

This function works in-place.

CROSS REFERENCE

SMX_Transpose, SMX_Copy, SMX_Add, SMX_Subtract,
 SMX_MultiplyPiecewise, SMX_ScalarMultiply, SMX_Multiply,
 SMX_CreateIdentity, SMX_Inverse2x2, SMX_ComplexInverse2x2, SMX_Inverse,
 SMX_LuDecompose, SMX_LuSolve, SMX_Determinant, SMX_LuDeterminant,
 SMX_RotateClockwise, SMX_RotateAntiClockwise, SMX_Reflect, SMX_Flip,
 SMX_InsertRow, SMX_ExtractRow, SMX_InsertColumn, SMX_ExtractColumn,
 SMX_InsertNewRow, SMX_DeleteOldRow, SMX_InsertNewColumn,
 SMX_InsertRegion, SMX_ExtractRegion, SMX_InsertDiagonal,
 SMX_ExtractDiagonal, SMX_SwapRows, SMX_SwapColumns, SMX_Sum,
 SDA_ShuffleColumns, SMX_ShuffleRows, SMX_ExtractCategoricalColumn

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SMX_InsertRegion (const SLData_t *, Source matrix pointer
    const SLData_t *,           Pointer to new region data
    SLData_t *,                 Destination matrix pointer
    const SLArrayIndex_t,       Starting row to insert data
    const SLArrayIndex_t,       Starting column to insert data
    const SLArrayIndex_t,       Number of rows in new data matrix
    const SLArrayIndex_t,       Number of columns in new data matrix
    const SLArrayIndex_t,       Number of rows in matrix
    const SLArrayIndex_t)       Number of columns in matrix
```

DESCRIPTION

This function inserts the new matrix data into the source matrix.

NOTES ON USE

This function overwrites the data in the original matrix.

CROSS REFERENCE

SMX_Transpose, SMX_Copy, SMX_Add, SMX_Subtract,
 SMX_MultiplyPiecewise, SMX_ScalarMultiply, SMX_Multiply,
 SMX_CreateIdentity, SMX_Inverse2x2, SMX_ComplexInverse2x2, SMX_Inverse,
 SMX_LuDecompose, SMX_LuSolve, SMX_Determinant, SMX_LuDeterminant,
 SMX_RotateClockwise, SMX_RotateAntiClockwise, SMX_Reflect, SMX_Flip,
 SMX_InsertRow, SMX_ExtractRow, SMX_InsertColumn, SMX_ExtractColumn,
 SMX_InsertNewRow, SMX_DeleteOldRow, SMX_InsertNewColumn,
 SMX_DeleteOldColumn, SMX_ExtractRegion, SMX_InsertDiagonal,
 SMX_ExtractDiagonal, SMX_SwapRows, SMX_SwapColumns, SMX_Sum,
 SDA_ShuffleColumns, SMX_ShuffleRows, SMX_ExtractCategoricalColumn

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SMX_ExtractRegion (const SLData_t *,      Source matrix pointer
                        SLData_t *,           Destination matrix pointer
                        const SLArrayIndex_t, Starting row to extract data
                        const SLArrayIndex_t, Starting column to extract data
                        const SLArrayIndex_t, Number of rows in region to extract
                        const SLArrayIndex_t, Number of columns in region to extract
                        const SLArrayIndex_t) Number of columns in matrix
```

DESCRIPTION

This function extracts the specified matrix from the source matrix.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SMX_Transpose, SMX_Copy, SMX_Add, SMX_Subtract,
 SMX_MultiplyPiecewise, SMX_ScalarMultiply, SMX_Multiply,
 SMX_CreateIdentity, SMX_Inverse2x2, SMX_ComplexInverse2x2, SMX_Inverse,
 SMX_LuDecompose, SMX_LuSolve, SMX_Determinant, SMX_LuDeterminant,
 SMX_RotateClockwise, SMX_RotateAntiClockwise, SMX_Reflect, SMX_Flip,
 SMX_InsertRow, SMX_ExtractRow, SMX_InsertColumn, SMX_ExtractColumn,
 SMX_InsertNewRow, SMX_DeleteOldRow, SMX_InsertNewColumn,
 SMX_DeleteOldColumn, SMX_InsertRegion, SMX_InsertDiagonal,
 SMX_ExtractDiagonal, SMX_SwapRows, SMX_SwapColumns, SMX_Sum,
 SDA_ShuffleColumns, SMX_ShuffleRows, SMX_ExtractCategoricalColumn

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SMX_InsertDiagonal (const SLData_t *,	Source matrix pointer
const SLData_t *,	New data to place on diagonal
SLData_t *,	Destination matrix pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Dimension of square matrix

DESCRIPTION

This function inserts the new data into the diagonal of the matrix.

NOTES ON USE

This function overwrites the data in the original matrix.
The matrix must be square.

CROSS REFERENCE

SMX_Transpose, SMX_Copy, SMX_Add, SMX_Subtract,
SMX_MultiplyPiecewise, SMX_ScalarMultiply, SMX_Multiply,
SMX_CreateIdentity, SMX_Inverse2x2, SMX_ComplexInverse2x2, SMX_Inverse,
SMX_LuDecompose, SMX_LuSolve, SMX_Determinant, SMX_LuDeterminant,
SMX_RotateClockwise, SMX_RotateAntiClockwise, SMX_Reflect, SMX_Flip,
SMX_InsertRow, SMX_ExtractRow, SMX_InsertColumn, SMX_ExtractColumn,
SMX_InsertNewRow, SMX_DeleteOldRow, SMX_InsertNewColumn,
SMX_DeleteOldColumn, SMX_InsertRegion, SMX_ExtractRegion,
SMX_ExtractDiagonal, SMX_SwapRows, SMX_SwapColumns, SMX_Sum,
SDA_ShuffleColumns, SMX_ShuffleRows, SMX_ExtractCategoricalColumn

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SMX_ExtractDiagonal (const SLData_t *,      Source matrix pointer
                          SLData_t *,          Destination matrix pointer
                          const SLArrayIndex_t)  Dimension of square matrix
```

DESCRIPTION

This function extracts the diagonal from the source matrix.

NOTES ON USE

The matrix must be square.

CROSS REFERENCE

SMX_Transpose, SMX_Copy, SMX_Add, SMX_Subtract,
SMX_MultiplyPiecewise, SMX_ScalarMultiply, SMX_Multiply,
SMX_CreateIdentity, SMX_Inverse2x2, SMX_ComplexInverse2x2, SMX_Inverse,
SMX_LuDecompose, SMX_LuSolve, SMX_Determinant, SMX_LuDeterminant,
SMX_RotateClockwise, SMX_RotateAntiClockwise, SMX_Reflect, SMX_Flip,
SMX_InsertRow, SMX_ExtractRow, SMX_InsertColumn, SMX_ExtractColumn,
SMX_InsertNewRow, SMX_DeleteOldRow, SMX_InsertNewColumn,
SMX_DeleteOldColumn, SMX_InsertRegion, SMX_ExtractRegion,
SMX_InsertDiagonal, SMX_SwapRows, SMX_SwapColumns, SMX_Sum,
SDA_ShuffleColumns, SMX_ShuffleRows, SMX_ExtractCategoricalColumn

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SMX_SwapRows (const SLData_t *,	Source matrix pointer
SLData_t *,	Destination matrix pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Row number 1 to swap
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Row number 2 to swap
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Number of rows in matrix
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Number of columns in matrix

DESCRIPTION

This function swaps the data in the two rows.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SMX_Transpose, SMX_Copy, SMX_Add, SMX_Subtract,
 SMX_MultiplyPiecewise, SMX_ScalarMultiply, SMX_Multiply,
 SMX_CreateIdentity, SMX_Inverse2x2, SMX_ComplexInverse2x2, SMX_Inverse,
 SMX_LuDecompose, SMX_LuSolve, SMX_Determinant, SMX_LuDeterminant,
 SMX_RotateClockwise, SMX_RotateAntiClockwise, SMX_Reflect, SMX_Flip,
 SMX_InsertRow, SMX_ExtractRow, SMX_InsertColumn, SMX_ExtractColumn,
 SMX_InsertNewRow, SMX_DeleteOldRow, SMX_InsertNewColumn,
 SMX_DeleteOldColumn, SMX_InsertRegion, SMX_ExtractRegion,
 SMX_InsertDiagonal, SMX_ExtractDiagonal, SMX_SwapColumns, SMX_Sum,
 SDA_ShuffleColumns, SMX_ShuffleRows, SMX_ExtractCategoricalColumn

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SMX_SwapColumns (const SLData_t *,      Source matrix pointer
                      SLData_t *,          Destination matrix pointer
                      const SLArrayIndex_t, Column number 1 to swap
                      const SLArrayIndex_t, Column number 2 to swap
                      const SLArrayIndex_t, Number of rows in matrix
                      const SLArrayIndex_t) Number of columns in matrix
```

DESCRIPTION

This function swaps the data in the two columns.

NOTES ON USE
CROSS REFERENCE

SMX_Transpose, SMX_Copy, SMX_Add, SMX_Subtract,
 SMX_MultiplyPiecewise, SMX_ScalarMultiply, SMX_Multiply,
 SMX_CreateIdentity, SMX_Inverse2x2, SMX_ComplexInverse2x2, SMX_Inverse,
 SMX_LuDecompose, SMX_LuSolve, SMX_Determinant, SMX_LuDeterminant,
 SMX_RotateClockwise, SMX_RotateAntiClockwise, SMX_Reflect, SMX_Flip,
 SMX_InsertRow, SMX_ExtractRow, SMX_InsertColumn, SMX_ExtractColumn,
 SMX_InsertNewRow, SMX_DeleteOldRow, SMX_InsertNewColumn,
 SMX_DeleteOldColumn, SMX_InsertRegion, SMX_ExtractRegion,
 SMX_InsertDiagonal, SMX_ExtractDiagonal, SMX_SwapRows, SMX_Sum,
 SDA_ShuffleColumns, SMX_ShuffleRows, SMX_ExtractCategoricalColumn

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SMX_Sum (const SLData_t *,	Source matrix pointer
SLData_t *,	Destination matrix pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Number of rows in matrix
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Number of columns in matrix

DESCRIPTION

This function sums all values in each column so the number of results equals the number of columns.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SMX_Transpose, SMX_Copy, SMX_Add, SMX_Subtract,
 SMX_MultiplyPiecewise, SMX_ScalarMultiply, SMX_Multiply,
 SMX_CreateIdentity, SMX_Inverse2x2, SMX_ComplexInverse2x2, SMX_Inverse,
 SMX_LuDecompose, SMX_LuSolve, SMX_Determinant, SMX_LuDeterminant,
 SMX_RotateClockwise, SMX_RotateAntiClockwise, SMX_Reflect, SMX_Flip,
 SMX_InsertRow, SMX_ExtractRow, SMX_InsertColumn, SMX_ExtractColumn,
 SMX_InsertNewRow, SMX_DeleteOldRow, SMX_InsertNewColumn,
 SMX_DeleteOldColumn, SMX_InsertRegion, SMX_ExtractRegion,
 SMX_InsertDiagonal, SMX_ExtractDiagonal, SMX_SwapRows,
 SMX_SwapColumns SDA_ShuffleColumns, SMX_ShuffleRows,
 SMX_ExtractCategoricalColumn

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SMX_ShuffleColumns (const SLData_t *,      Pointer to source matrix
                        SLData_t *,            Pointer to destination matrix
                        SLData_t *,            Pointer to temporary array #1
                        SLData_t *,            Pointer to temporary array #2
                        const SLArrayIndex_t,   Number of rows in matrix
                        const SLArrayIndex_t)   Number of columns in matrix
```

DESCRIPTION

This function shuffles the order of the columns in the matrix.

NOTES ON USE

As the number of columns approaches RAND_MAX, the result becomes less random. The solution is to use a better random number generator or call the function multiple times.

CROSS REFERENCE

SMX_Transpose, SMX_Copy, SMX_Add, SMX_Subtract,
 SMX_MultiplyPiecewise, SMX_ScalarMultiply, SMX_Multiply,
 SMX_CreateIdentity, SMX_Inverse2x2, SMX_ComplexInverse2x2, SMX_Inverse,
 SMX_LuDecompose, SMX_LuSolve, SMX_Determinant, SMX_LuDeterminant,
 SMX_RotateClockwise, SMX_RotateAntiClockwise, SMX_Reflect, SMX_Flip,
 SMX_InsertRow, SMX_ExtractRow, SMX_InsertColumn, SMX_ExtractColumn,
 SMX_InsertNewRow, SMX_DeleteOldRow, SMX_InsertNewColumn,
 SMX_DeleteOldColumn, SMX_InsertRegion, SMX_ExtractRegion,
 SMX_InsertDiagonal, SMX_ExtractDiagonal, SMX_SwapRows,
 SMX_SwapColumns, SMX_Sum, SMX_ShuffleRows,
 SMX_ExtractCategoricalColumn

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SMX_ShuffleRows (const SLData_t *,	Pointer to source matrix
SLData_t *,	Pointer to destination matrix
SLData_t *,	Pointer to temporary array
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Number of rows in matrix
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Number of columns in matrix

DESCRIPTION

This function shuffles the order of the rows in the matrix.

NOTES ON USE

As the number of rows approaches RAND_MAX, the result becomes less random. The solution is to use a better random number generator or call the function multiple times.

CROSS REFERENCE

SMX_Transpose, SMX_Copy, SMX_Add, SMX_Subtract,
 SMX_MultiplyPiecewise, SMX_ScalarMultiply, SMX_Multiply,
 SMX_CreateIdentity, SMX_Inverse2x2, SMX_ComplexInverse2x2, SMX_Inverse,
 SMX_LuDecompose, SMX_LuSolve, SMX_Determinant, SMX_LuDeterminant,
 SMX_RotateClockwise, SMX_RotateAntiClockwise, SMX_Reflect, SMX_Flip,
 SMX_InsertRow, SMX_ExtractRow, SMX_InsertColumn, SMX_ExtractColumn,
 SMX_InsertNewRow, SMX_DeleteOldRow, SMX_InsertNewColumn,
 SMX_DeleteOldColumn, SMX_InsertRegion, SMX_ExtractRegion,
 SMX_InsertDiagonal, SMX_ExtractDiagonal, SMX_SwapRows,
 SMX_SwapColumns, SMX_Sum SDA_ShuffleColumns,
 SMX_ExtractCategoricalColumn

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SMX_ExtractCategoricalColumn (const SLData_t *,   Pointer to source matrix
                                  SLArrayIndex_t *,   Pointer to destination matrix
                                  const SLArrayIndex_t, Number of rows in matrix
                                  const SLArrayIndex_t) Number of columns in matrix
```

DESCRIPTION

This function extracts the categorical column from the matrix.
The categories are stored as integers (SLArrayIndex_t).

NOTES ON USE

The categorical column is the last column in the matrix.

CROSS REFERENCE

SMX_Transpose, SMX_Copy, SMX_Add, SMX_Subtract,
SMX_MultiplyPiecewise, SMX_ScalarMultiply, SMX_Multiply,
SMX_CreateIdentity, SMX_Inverse2x2, SMX_ComplexInverse2x2, SMX_Inverse,
SMX_LuDecompose, SMX_LuSolve, SMX_Determinant, SMX_LuDeterminant,
SMX_RotateClockwise, SMX_RotateAntiClockwise, SMX_Reflect, SMX_Flip,
SMX_InsertRow, SMX_ExtractRow, SMX_InsertColumn, SMX_ExtractColumn,
SMX_InsertNewRow, SMX_DeleteOldRow, SMX_InsertNewColumn,
SMX_DeleteOldColumn, SMX_InsertRegion, SMX_ExtractRegion,
SMX_InsertDiagonal, SMX_ExtractDiagonal, SMX_SwapRows,
SMX_SwapColumns, SMX_Sum, SDA_ShuffleColumns, SMX_ShuffleRows

MATRIX VECTOR MACROS

SMX_Copy

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SMX_Copy (const SLData_t *,	Source matrix pointer
SLData_t *,	Destination matrix pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Source matrix # of rows
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Source matrix # of columns

DESCRIPTION

This function copies a two dimensional matrix.

NOTES ON USE

This functionality is implemented as a macro and is defined in the file *siglib.h*.

CROSS REFERENCE

SMX_Transpose, SMX_Multiply, SMX_Add, SMX_Subtract,
SMX_MultiplyPiecewise, SMX_ScalarMultiply, SMX_RotateClockwise,
SMX_RotateAntiClockwise, SMX_Reflect, SMX_Flip, SMX_InsertRow,
SMX_ExtractRow, SMX_InsertColumn, SMX_ExtractColumn,
SMX_InsertNewRow, SMX_DeleteOldRow, SMX_InsertNewColumn,
SMX_DeleteOldColumn, SMX_InsertRegion, SMX_ExtractRegion,
SMX_InsertDiagonal, SMX_ExtractDiagonal, SMX_SwapRows,
SMX_SwapColumns, SMX_Sum

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SMX_Add (const SLData_t *,	Source matrix 1 pointer
const SLData_t *,	Source matrix 2 pointer
SLData_t *,	Destination matrix pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Source matrices # of rows
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Source matrices # of columns

DESCRIPTION

This function adds two, two dimensional matrices.

NOTES ON USE

This functionality is implemented as a macro and is defined in the file *siglib.h*.

CROSS REFERENCE

SMX_Transpose, SMX_Multiply, SMX_Copy, SMX_Subtract, SMX_MultiplyPiecewise, SMX_ScalarMultiply, SMX_RotateClockwise, SMX_RotateAntiClockwise, SMX_Reflect, SMX_Flip, SMX_InsertRow, SMX_ExtractRow, SMX_InsertColumn, SMX_ExtractColumn, SMX_InsertNewRow, SMX_DeleteOldRow, SMX_InsertNewColumn, SMX_DeleteOldColumn, SMX_InsertRegion, SMX_ExtractRegion, SMX_InsertDiagonal, SMX_ExtractDiagonal, SMX_SwapRows, SMX_SwapColumns, SMX_Sum.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SMX_Subtract (const SLData_t *,	Source matrix 1 pointer
const SLData_t *,	Source matrix 2 pointer
SLData_t *,	Destination matrix pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Source matrices # of rows
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Source matrices # of columns

DESCRIPTION

This function subtracts one two dimensional matrix from another.

NOTES ON USE

This functionality is implemented as a macro and id defined in the file *siglib.h*.

CROSS REFERENCE

SMX_Transpose, SMX_Multiply, SMX_Copy, SMX_Add, SMX_MultiplyPiecewise, SMX_ScalarMultiply, SMX_RotateClockwise, SMX_RotateAntiClockwise, SMX_Reflect, SMX_Flip, SMX_InsertRow, SMX_ExtractRow, SMX_InsertColumn, SMX_ExtractColumn, SMX_InsertNewRow, SMX_DeleteOldRow, SMX_InsertNewColumn, SMX_DeleteOldColumn, SMX_InsertRegion, SMX_ExtractRegion, SMX_InsertDiagonal, SMX_ExtractDiagonal, SMX_SwapRows, SMX_SwapColumns, SMX_Sum.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SMX_MultiplyPiecewise (const SLData_t *,   Source matrix 1 pointer
                           const SLData_t *,   Source matrix 2 pointer
                           SLData_t *,         Destination matrix pointer
                           const SLArrayIndex_t, Source matrices # of rows
                           const SLArrayIndex_t) Source matrices # of columns
```

DESCRIPTION

This function performs piece-wise multiplication between two, two dimensional matrices.

NOTES ON USE

This functionality is implemented as a macro and id defined in the file *siglib.h*.

CROSS REFERENCE

SMX_Transpose, SMX_Multiply, SMX_Copy, SMX_Add, SMX_Subtract, SMX_ScalarMultiply, SMX_RotateClockwise, SMX_RotateAntiClockwise, SMX_Reflect, SMX_Flip, SMX_InsertRow, SMX_ExtractRow, SMX_InsertColumn, SMX_ExtractColumn, SMX_InsertNewRow, SMX_DeleteOldRow, SMX_InsertNewColumn, SMX_DeleteOldColumn, SMX_InsertRegion, SMX_ExtractRegion, SMX_InsertDiagonal, SMX_ExtractDiagonal, SMX_SwapRows, SMX_SwapColumns, SMX_Sum.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SMX_Multiply (const SLData_t *,	Source matrix pointer
const SLData_t,	Scalar multiplier
SLData_t *,	Destination matrix pointer
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Matrices # of rows
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Matrices # of columns

DESCRIPTION

This function multiplies a two dimensional matrix by a scalar value.

NOTES ON USE

This functionality is implemented as a macro and id defined in the file *siglib.h*.

CROSS REFERENCE

SMX_Transpose, SMX_Multiply, SMX_Copy, SMX_Add, SMX_Subtract,
SMX_MultiplyPiecewise, SMX_RotateClockwise, SMX_RotateAntiClockwise,
SMX_Reflect, SMX_Flip, SMX_InsertRow, SMX_ExtractRow, SMX_InsertColumn,
SMX_ExtractColumn, SMX_InsertNewRow, SMX_DeleteOldRow,
SMX_InsertNewColumn, SMX_DeleteOldColumn, SMX_InsertRegion,
SMX_ExtractRegion, SMX_InsertDiagonal, SMX_ExtractDiagonal,
SMX_SwapRows, SMX_SwapColumns, SMX_Sum

Machine Learning Functions

These functions implement a selection of two layer convolutional neural networks. The number of nodes in each layer are selectable as are the the number of output nodes.

For detecting two different categories only one output node is required.
For detecting more than two categories, one node per category is required.

The two layers are:

Layer 1: Hidden layer

Layer 2: Output layer

The available activation types are:

```
SIGLIB_ACTIVATION_TYPE_RELU  
SIGLIB_ACTIVATION_TYPE_LEAKY_RELU  
SIGLIB_ACTIVATION_TYPE_LOGISTIC  
SIGLIB_ACTIVATION_TYPE_TANH
```

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_TwoLayer2CategoryNetworkFit (const SLData_t *, Pointer to training data

const SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to categorical data
SLData_t *,	Pointer to layer 1 weights
SLData_t *,	Pointer to layer 2 weights
SLData_t *,	Pointer to layer 1 pre activation
SLData_t *,	Pointer to layer 1 post activation
const enum SLActivationType_t,	Layer 1 activation type
const SLData_t,	Layer 1 activation alpha
const enum SLActivationType_t,	Layer 2 activation type
const SLData_t,	Layer 2 activation alpha
const SLData_t,	Learning rate
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Number of training sequences
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Input array length
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Hidden layer length

DESCRIPTION

This function trains a two layer, two category neural network using the provided data.

NOTES ON USE

The training data array is actually a matrix of number of columns = sample length and the number of rows = number of training sequences. Each row represents a category and the categories are indicated in the categorical data array.

The categorical data array includes one entry for each row of the training sequence matrix.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_TwoLayer2CategoryNetworkPredict,
SDA_TwoLayerNCategoryNetworkFit, SDA_TwoLayerNCategoryNetworkPredict,
SDS_ActivationReLU, SDA_ActivationReLU, SDS_ActivationReLUderivative,
SDA_ActivationReLUderivative, SDS_ActivationLeakyReLU,
SDA_ActivationLeakyReLU, SDS_ActivationLeakyReLUderivative,
SDA_ActivationLeakyReLUderivative, SDS_ActivationLogistic,
SDA_ActivationLogistic, SDS_ActivationLogisticDerivative,
SDA_ActivationLogisticDerivative, SDS_ActivationTanH, SDA_ActivationTanH,
SDS_ActivationTanHderivative, SDA_ActivationTanHderivative,
SUF_WavWriteFileScaled, SUF_WriteWeightsIntegerCFile,
SUF_WriteWeightsFloatCFile, SUF_WriteWeightsBinaryFile,
SUF_ReadWeightsBinaryFile

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLArrayIndex_t SDA_TwoLayer2CategoryNetworkPredict (const SLData_t *,
Pointer to data to classify
    const SLData_t *,           Pointer to layer 1 weights
    const SLData_t *,           Pointer to layer 2 weights
    SLData_t *,                 Pointer to layer 1 post activation
    SLData_t *,                 Pointer to output activation
    const enum SLActivationType_t, Layer 1 activation type
    const SLData_t,             Layer 1 activation alpha
    const enum SLActivationType_t, Layer 2 activation type
    const SLData_t,             Layer 2 activation alpha
    const SLData_t,             Classification threshold
    const SLArrayIndex_t,       Input array length
    const SLArrayIndex_t)       Layer 1 length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function uses the neural network to predict the category using the provided data. The source data array to classify is a single dimensional array that will be classified by the trained neural network.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_TwoLayer2CategoryNetworkFit,
SDA_TwoLayerNCategoryNetworkPredict, SDS_ActivationReLU,
SDA_ActivationReLU, SDS_ActivationReLUderivative,
SDA_ActivationReLUderivative, SDS_ActivationLeakyReLU,
SDA_ActivationLeakyReLU, SDS_ActivationLeakyReLUderivative,
SDA_ActivationLeakyReLUderivative, SDS_ActivationLogistic,
SDA_ActivationLogistic, SDS_ActivationLogisticDerivative,
SDA_ActivationLogisticDerivative, SDS_ActivationTanH, SDA_ActivationTanH,
SDS_ActivationTanHderivative, SDA_ActivationTanHderivative,
SUF_WavWriteFileScaled, SUF_WriteWeightsIntegerCFile,
SUF_WriteWeightsFloatCFile, SUF_WriteWeightsBinaryFile,
SUF_ReadWeightsBinaryFile

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_TwoLayerNCategoryNetworkFit (const SLData_t *, Pointer to training data

const SLArrayIndex_t *,	Pointer to categorical data
SLData_t *,	Pointer to layer 1 weights
SLData_t *,	Pointer to layer 2 weights
SLData_t *,	Pointer to layer 1 pre activation
SLData_t *,	Pointer to layer 1 post activation
SLData_t *,	Pointer to layer 2 post activation
const enum SLActivationType_t,	Layer 1 activation type
const SLData_t,	Layer 1 activation alpha
const enum SLActivationType_t,	Layer 2 activation type
const SLData_t,	Layer 2 activation alpha
const SLData_t,	Learning rate
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Number of training sequences
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Input array length
const SLArrayIndex_t,	Layer 1 length
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Number of categories

DESCRIPTION

This function trains a two layer neural network that supports an arbitrary number of output categories, using the provided data.

NOTES ON USE

The training data array is actually a matrix of number of columns = sample length and the number of rows = number of training sequences. Each row represents a category and the categories are indicated in the categorical data array.

The categorical data array includes one entry for each row of the training sequence matrix.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_TwoLayer2CategoryNetworkFit,
SDA_TwoLayer2CategoryNetworkPredict,
SDA_TwoLayerNCategoryNetworkPredict, SDS_ActivationReLU,
SDA_ActivationReLU, SDS_ActivationReLUderivative,
SDA_ActivationReLUderivative, SDS_ActivationLeakyReLU,
SDA_ActivationLeakyReLU, SDS_ActivationLeakyReLUderivative,
SDA_ActivationLeakyReLUderivative, SDS_ActivationLogistic,
SDA_ActivationLogistic, SDS_ActivationLogisticderivative,
SDA_ActivationLogisticderivative, SDS_ActivationTanH, SDA_ActivationTanH,
SDS_ActivationTanHderivative, SDA_ActivationTanHderivative,
SUF_WavWriteFileScaled, SUF_WriteWeightsIntegerCFile,
SUF_WriteWeightsFloatCFile, SUF_WriteWeightsBinaryFile,
SUF_ReadWeightsBinaryFile

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLArrayIndex_t SDA_TwoLayerNCategoryNetworkPredict (const SLData_t *,
Pointer to data to classify
    const SLData_t *,           Pointer to layer 1 weights
    const SLData_t *,           Pointer to layer 2 weights
    SLData_t *,                 Pointer to layer 1 post activation
    SLData_t *,                 Pointer to layer 2 post activation
    const enum SLActivationType_t, Layer 1 activation type
    const SLData_t,             Layer 1 activation alpha
    const enum SLActivationType_t, Layer 2 activation type
    const SLData_t,             Layer 2 activation alpha
    const SLArrayIndex_t,       Input array length
    const SLArrayIndex_t,       Layer 1 length
    const SLArrayIndex_t)       Number of categories
```

DESCRIPTION

This function uses the neural network to predict the category using the provided data. The source data array to classify is a single dimensional array that will be classified by the trained neural network.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_TwoLayer2CategoryNetworkFit,
SDA_TwoLayerNCategoryNetworkFit, SDS_ActivationReLU,
SDA_ActivationReLU, SDS_ActivationReLUderivative,
SDA_ActivationReLUderivative, SDS_ActivationLeakyReLU,
SDA_ActivationLeakyReLU, SDS_ActivationLeakyReLUderivative,
SDA_ActivationLeakyReLUderivative, SDS_ActivationLogistic,
SDA_ActivationLogistic, SDS_ActivationLogisticDerivative,
SDA_ActivationLogisticDerivative, SDS_ActivationTanH, SDA_ActivationTanH,
SDS_ActivationTanHderivative, SDA_ActivationTanHderivative,
SUF_WavWriteFileScaled, SUF_WriteWeightsIntegerCFile,
SUF_WriteWeightsFloatCFile, SUF_WriteWeightsBinaryFile,
SUF_ReadWeightsBinaryFile

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDS_ActivationReLU (const SLData_t); Source sample

DESCRIPTION

This function implements the rectified linear (ReLU) activation function on the input sample.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_TwoLayer2CategoryNetworkFit,
SDA_TwoLayerNCategoryNetworkFit, SDA_TwoLayerNCategoryNetworkPredict,
SDA_ActivationReLU, SDS_ActivationReLUderivative,
SDA_ActivationReLUderivative, SDS_ActivationLeakyReLU,
SDA_ActivationLeakyReLU, SDS_ActivationLeakyReLUderivative,
SDA_ActivationLeakyReLUderivative, SDS_ActivationLogistic,
SDA_ActivationLogistic, SDS_ActivationLogisticDerivative,
SDA_ActivationLogisticDerivative, SDS_ActivationTanH, SDA_ActivationTanH,
SDS_ActivationTanHderivative, SDA_ActivationTanHderivative,
SUF_WavWriteFileScaled, SUF_WriteWeightsIntegerCFile,
SUF_WriteWeightsFloatCFile, SUF_WriteWeightsBinaryFile,
SUF_ReadWeightsBinaryFile

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_ActivationReLU (const SLData_t *, Pointer to source array
                        SLData_t *,           Pointer to destination array
                        const SLArrayIndex_t)  Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function implements the rectified linear (ReLU) activation function on all the samples in the array.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_TwoLayer2CategoryNetworkFit,
SDA_TwoLayerNCategoryNetworkFit, SDA_TwoLayerNCategoryNetworkPredict,
SDS_ActivationReLU, SDS_ActivationReLUderivative,
SDA_ActivationReLUderivative, SDS_ActivationLeakyReLU,
SDA_ActivationLeakyReLU, SDS_ActivationLeakyReLUderivative,
SDA_ActivationLeakyReLUderivative, SDS_ActivationLogistic,
SDA_ActivationLogistic, SDS_ActivationLogisticderivative,
SDA_ActivationLogisticderivative, SDS_ActivationTanH, SDA_ActivationTanH,
SDS_ActivationTanHderivative, SDA_ActivationTanHderivative,
SUF_WavWriteFileScaled, SUF_WriteWeightsIntegerCFile,
SUF_WriteWeightsFloatCFile, SUF_WriteWeightsBinaryFile,
SUF_ReadWeightsBinaryFile

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDS_ActivationReLUDerivative (const SLData_t) Source sample

DESCRIPTION

This function implements the derivative of the rectified linear (ReLU) activation function on the input sample.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_TwoLayer2CategoryNetworkFit,
SDA_TwoLayerNCategoryNetworkFit, SDA_TwoLayerNCategoryNetworkPredict,
SDS_ActivationReLU, SDA_ActivationReLU, SDA_ActivationReLUDerivative,
SDS_ActivationLeakyReLU, SDA_ActivationLeakyReLU,
SDS_ActivationLeakyReLUDerivative, SDA_ActivationLeakyReLUDerivative,
SDS_ActivationLogistic, SDA_ActivationLogistic,
SDS_ActivationLogisticDerivative, SDA_ActivationLogisticDerivative,
SDS_ActivationTanH, SDA_ActivationTanH, SDS_ActivationTanHDerivative,
SDA_ActivationTanHDerivative, SUF_WavWriteFileScaled,
SUF_WriteWeightsIntegerCFile, SUF_WriteWeightsFloatCFile,
SUF_WriteWeightsBinaryFile, SUF_ReadWeightsBinaryFile

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_ActivationReLUDerivative (const SLData_t *, Pointer to source array
    SLData_t *,                      Pointer to destination array
    const SLArrayIndex_t)           Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function implements the derivative of the rectified linear (ReLU) activation function on all the samples in the array.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_TwoLayer2CategoryNetworkFit,
SDA_TwoLayerNCategoryNetworkFit, SDA_TwoLayerNCategoryNetworkPredict,
SDS_ActivationReLU, SDA_ActivationReLU, SDS_ActivationReLUDerivative,
SDS_ActivationLeakyReLU, SDA_ActivationLeakyReLU,
SDS_ActivationLeakyReLUDerivative, SDA_ActivationLeakyReLUDerivative,
SDS_ActivationLogistic, SDA_ActivationLogistic,
SDS_ActivationLogisticDerivative, SDA_ActivationLogisticDerivative,
SDS_ActivationTanH, SDA_ActivationTanH, SDS_ActivationTanHDerivative,
SDA_ActivationTanHDerivative, SUF_WavWriteFileScaled,
SUF_WriteWeightsIntegerCFile, SUF_WriteWeightsFloatCFile,
SUF_WriteWeightsBinaryFile, SUF_ReadWeightsBinaryFile

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDS_ActivationLeakyReLU (const SLData_t, Source sample
const SLData_t) Activation function alpha value

DESCRIPTION

This function implements the leaky rectified linear (ReLU) activation function on the input sample.

NOTES ON USE

The alpha parameter specifies the decay.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_TwoLayer2CategoryNetworkFit,
SDA_TwoLayerNCategoryNetworkFit, SDA_TwoLayerNCategoryNetworkPredict,
SDS_ActivationReLU, SDA_ActivationReLU, SDS_ActivationReLUderivative,
SDA_ActivationReLUderivative, SDA_ActivationLeakyReLU,
SDS_ActivationLeakyReLUderivative, SDA_ActivationLeakyReLUderivative,
SDS_ActivationLogistic, SDA_ActivationLogistic,
SDS_ActivationLogisticDerivative, SDA_ActivationLogisticDerivative,
SDS_ActivationTanH, SDA_ActivationTanH, SDS_ActivationTanHderivative,
SDA_ActivationTanHderivative, SUF_WavWriteFileScaled,
SUF_WriteWeightsIntegerCFile, SUF_WriteWeightsFloatCFile,
SUF_WriteWeightsBinaryFile, SUF_ReadWeightsBinaryFile

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_ActivationLeakyReLU (const SLData_t *, Pointer to source array
                             const SLData_t,           Activation function alpha value
                             SLData_t *,             Pointer to destination array
                             const SLArrayIndex_t)      Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function implements the leaky rectified linear (ReLU) activation function on all the samples in the array.

NOTES ON USE

The alpha parameter specifies the decay.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_TwoLayer2CategoryNetworkFit,
SDA_TwoLayerNCategoryNetworkFit, SDA_TwoLayerNCategoryNetworkPredict,
SDS_ActivationReLU, SDA_ActivationReLU, SDS_ActivationReLUderivative,
SDA_ActivationReLUderivative, SDS_ActivationLeakyReLU,
SDS_ActivationLeakyReLUderivative, SDA_ActivationLeakyReLUderivative,
SDS_ActivationLogistic, SDA_ActivationLogistic,
SDS_ActivationLogisticDerivative, SDA_ActivationLogisticDerivative,
SDS_ActivationTanH, SDA_ActivationTanH, SDS_ActivationTanHderivative,
SDA_ActivationTanHderivative, SUF_WavWriteFileScaled,
SUF_WriteWeightsIntegerCFile, SUF_WriteWeightsFloatCFile,
SUF_WriteWeightsBinaryFile, SUF_ReadWeightsBinaryFile

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDS_ActivationLeakyReLUDerivative (const SLData_t, Source sample
const SLData_t) Activation function alpha value

DESCRIPTION

This function implements the derivative of the leaky rectified linear (ReLU) activation function on the input sample.

NOTES ON USE

The alpha parameter specifies the decay.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_TwoLayer2CategoryNetworkFit,
SDA_TwoLayerNCategoryNetworkFit, SDA_TwoLayerNCategoryNetworkPredict,
SDS_ActivationReLU, SDA_ActivationReLU, SDS_ActivationReLUDerivative,
SDA_ActivationReLUDerivative, SDS_ActivationLeakyReLU,
SDA_ActivationLeakyReLU, SDA_ActivationLeakyReLUDerivative,
SDS_ActivationLogistic, SDA_ActivationLogistic,
SDS_ActivationLogisticDerivative, SDA_ActivationLogisticDerivative,
SDS_ActivationTanH, SDA_ActivationTanH, SDS_ActivationTanHDerivative,
SDA_ActivationTanHDerivative, SUF_WavWriteFileScaled,
SUF_WriteWeightsIntegerCFile, SUF_WriteWeightsFloatCFile,
SUF_WriteWeightsBinaryFile, SUF_ReadWeightsBinaryFile

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA_ActivationLeakyReLUDerivative (const SLData_t *, Pointer to source array

const SLData_t,	Activation function alpha value
SLData_t *,	Pointer to destination array
const SLArrayIndex_t)	Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function implements the derivative of the leaky rectified linear (ReLU) activation function on all the samples in the array.

NOTES ON USE

The alpha parameter specifies the decay.

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_TwoLayer2CategoryNetworkFit,
SDA_TwoLayerNCategoryNetworkFit, SDA_TwoLayerNCategoryNetworkPredict,
SDS_ActivationReLU, SDA_ActivationReLU, SDS_ActivationReLUDerivative,
SDA_ActivationReLUDerivative, SDS_ActivationLeakyReLU,
SDA_ActivationLeakyReLU, SDS_ActivationLeakyReLUDerivative,
SDS_ActivationLogistic, SDA_ActivationLogistic,
SDS_ActivationLogisticDerivative, SDA_ActivationLogisticDerivative,
SDS_ActivationTanH, SDA_ActivationTanH, SDS_ActivationTanHDerivative,
SDA_ActivationTanHDerivative, SUF_WavWriteFileScaled,
SUF_WriteWeightsIntegerCFile, SUF_WriteWeightsFloatCFile,
SUF_WriteWeightsBinaryFile, SUF_ReadWeightsBinaryFile

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDS_ActivationLogistic (const SLData_t) Source sample

DESCRIPTION

This function implements the logistic activation function on the input sample.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_TwoLayer2CategoryNetworkFit,
SDA_TwoLayerNCategoryNetworkFit, SDA_TwoLayerNCategoryNetworkPredict,
SDS_ActivationReLU, SDA_ActivationReLU, SDS_ActivationReLUderivative,
SDA_ActivationReLUderivative, SDS_ActivationLeakyReLU,
SDA_ActivationLeakyReLU, SDS_ActivationLeakyReLUderivative,
SDA_ActivationLeakyReLUderivative, SDA_ActivationLogistic,
SDS_ActivationLogisticDerivative, SDA_ActivationLogisticDerivative,
SDS_ActivationTanH, SDA_ActivationTanH, SDS_ActivationTanHderivative,
SDA_ActivationTanHderivative, SUF_WavWriteFileScaled,
SUF_WriteWeightsIntegerCFile, SUF_WriteWeightsFloatCFile,
SUF_WriteWeightsBinaryFile, SUF_ReadWeightsBinaryFile

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_ActivationLogistic (const SLData_t *, Pointer to source array
                             SLData_t *,           Pointer to destination array
                             const SLArrayIndex_t)   Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function implements the logistic activation function on all the samples in the array.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_TwoLayer2CategoryNetworkFit,
SDA_TwoLayerNCategoryNetworkFit, SDA_TwoLayerNCategoryNetworkPredict,
SDS_ActivationReLU, SDA_ActivationReLU, SDS_ActivationReLUderivative,
SDA_ActivationReLUderivative, SDS_ActivationLeakyReLU,
SDA_ActivationLeakyReLU, SDS_ActivationLeakyReLUderivative,
SDA_ActivationLeakyReLUderivative, SDS_ActivationLogistic,
SDS_ActivationLogisticderivative, SDA_ActivationLogisticderivative,
SDS_ActivationTanH, SDA_ActivationTanH, SDS_ActivationTanHderivative,
SDA_ActivationTanHderivative, SUF_WavWriteFileScaled,
SUF_WriteWeightsIntegerCFile, SUF_WriteWeightsFloatCFile,
SUF_WriteWeightsBinaryFile, SUF_ReadWeightsBinaryFile

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDS_ActivationLogisticDerivative (const SLData_t) Source sample

DESCRIPTION

This function implements the derivative of the logistic activation function on the input sample.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_TwoLayer2CategoryNetworkFit,
SDA_TwoLayerNCategoryNetworkFit, SDA_TwoLayerNCategoryNetworkPredict,
SDS_ActivationReLU, SDA_ActivationReLU, SDS_ActivationReLUderivative,
SDA_ActivationReLUderivative, SDS_ActivationLeakyReLU,
SDA_ActivationLeakyReLU, SDS_ActivationLeakyReLUderivative,
SDA_ActivationLeakyReLUderivative, SDS_ActivationLogistic,
SDA_ActivationLogistic, SDA_ActivationLogisticDerivative, SDS_ActivationTanH,
SDA_ActivationTanH, SDS_ActivationTanHderivative,
SDA_ActivationTanHderivative, SUF_WavWriteFileScaled,
SUF_WriteWeightsIntegerCFile, SUF_WriteWeightsFloatCFile,
SUF_WriteWeightsBinaryFile, SUF_ReadWeightsBinaryFile

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_ActivationLogisticDerivative (const SLData_t *, Pointer to source array
    SLData_t *,                               Pointer to destination array
    const SLArrayIndex_t)                    Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function implements the derivative of the logistic activation function on all the samples in the array.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA_TwoLayer2CategoryNetworkFit,
SDA_TwoLayerNCategoryNetworkFit, SDA_TwoLayerNCategoryNetworkPredict,
SDS_ActivationReLU, SDA_ActivationReLU, SDS_ActivationReLUderivative,
SDA_ActivationReLUderivative, SDS_ActivationLeakyReLU,
SDA_ActivationLeakyReLU, SDS_ActivationLeakyReLUderivative,
SDA_ActivationLeakyReLUderivative, SDS_ActivationLogistic,
SDA_ActivationLogistic, SDS_ActivationLogisticDerivative, SDS_ActivationTanH,
SDA_ActivationTanH, SDS_ActivationTanHderivative,
SDA_ActivationTanHderivative, SUF_WavWriteFileScaled,
SUF_WriteWeightsIntegerCFile, SUF_WriteWeightsFloatCFile,
SUF_WriteWeightsBinaryFile, SUF_ReadWeightsBinaryFile

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDS_ActivationTanH (const SLData_t) Source sample

DESCRIPTION

This function implements the hyperbolic tangent (TanH) activation function on the input sample.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_TwoLayer2CategoryNetworkFit,
SDA_TwoLayerNCategoryNetworkFit, SDA_TwoLayerNCategoryNetworkPredict,
SDS_ActivationReLU, SDA_ActivationReLU, SDS_ActivationReLUderivative,
SDA_ActivationReLUderivative, SDS_ActivationLeakyReLU,
SDA_ActivationLeakyReLU, SDS_ActivationLeakyReLUderivative,
SDA_ActivationLeakyReLUderivative, SDS_ActivationLogistic,
SDA_ActivationLogistic, SDS_ActivationLogisticDerivative,
SDA_ActivationLogisticDerivative, SDA_ActivationTanH,
SDS_ActivationTanHderivative, SDA_ActivationTanHderivative,
SUF_WavWriteFileScaled, SUF_WriteWeightsIntegerCFile,
SUF_WriteWeightsFloatCFile, SUF_WriteWeightsBinaryFile,
SUF_ReadWeightsBinaryFile

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_ActivationTanH (const SLData_t *, Pointer to source array
                        SLData_t *,           Pointer to destination array
                        const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function implements the hyperbolic tangent (TanH) activation function on all the samples in the array.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_TwoLayer2CategoryNetworkFit,
SDA_TwoLayerNCategoryNetworkFit, SDA_TwoLayerNCategoryNetworkPredict,
SDS_ActivationReLU, SDA_ActivationReLU, SDS_ActivationReLUderivative,
SDA_ActivationReLUderivative, SDS_ActivationLeakyReLU,
SDA_ActivationLeakyReLU, SDS_ActivationLeakyReLUderivative,
SDA_ActivationLeakyReLUderivative, SDS_ActivationLogistic,
SDA_ActivationLogistic, SDS_ActivationLogisticderivative,
SDA_ActivationLogisticderivative, SDS_ActivationTanH,
SDS_ActivationTanHderivative, SDA_ActivationTanHderivative,
SUF_WavWriteFileScaled, SUF_WriteWeightsIntegerCFile,
SUF_WriteWeightsFloatCFile, SUF_WriteWeightsBinaryFile,
SUF_ReadWeightsBinaryFile

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData_t SDS_ActivationTanHDerivative (const SLData_t) Source sample

DESCRIPTION

This function implements the derivative of the hyperbolic tangent (TanH) activation function on the input sample.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_TwoLayer2CategoryNetworkFit,
SDA_TwoLayerNCategoryNetworkFit, SDA_TwoLayerNCategoryNetworkPredict,
SDS_ActivationReLU, SDA_ActivationReLU, SDS_ActivationReLUderivative,
SDA_ActivationReLUderivative, SDS_ActivationLeakyReLU,
SDA_ActivationLeakyReLU, SDS_ActivationLeakyReLUderivative,
SDA_ActivationLeakyReLUderivative, SDS_ActivationLogistic,
SDA_ActivationLogistic, SDS_ActivationLogisticDerivative,
SDA_ActivationLogisticDerivative, SDS_ActivationTanH, SDA_ActivationTanH,
SDA_ActivationTanHDerivative, SUF_WavWriteFileScaled,
SUF_WriteWeightsIntegerCFile, SUF_WriteWeightsFloatCFile,
SUF_WriteWeightsBinaryFile, SUF_ReadWeightsBinaryFile

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_ActivationTanHDerivative (const SLData_t *, Pointer to source array
    SLData_t *,                      Pointer to destination array
    const SLArrayIndex_t)           Array length
```

DESCRIPTION

This function implements the derivative of the hyperbolic tangent (TanH) activation function on all the samples in the array.

NOTES ON USE**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA_TwoLayer2CategoryNetworkFit,
SDA_TwoLayerNCategoryNetworkFit, SDA_TwoLayerNCategoryNetworkPredict,
SDS_ActivationReLU, SDA_ActivationReLU, SDS_ActivationReLUderivative,
SDA_ActivationReLUderivative, SDS_ActivationLeakyReLU,
SDA_ActivationLeakyReLU, SDS_ActivationLeakyReLUderivative,
SDA_ActivationLeakyReLUderivative, SDS_ActivationLogistic,
SDA_ActivationLogistic, SDS_ActivationLogisticderivative,
SDA_ActivationLogisticderivative, SDS_ActivationTanH, SDA_ActivationTanH,
SDS_ActivationTanHderivative, SUF_WavWriteFileScaled,
SUF_WriteWeightsIntegerCFile, SUF_WriteWeightsFloatCFile,
SUF_WriteWeightsBinaryFile, SUF_ReadWeightsBinaryFile

UTILITY MACROS (*siglib_macros.h*)

The following section details the SigLib utility macros located in the file *siglib_macros.h*. These macros are only available in applications written in C/C++.

Macros to handle the fact that ANSI C rounds floating point numbers down to fixed point equivalents. These macros also allow for floating point not quantizing to perfect integer values

Macros that return type `SLData_t`

<code>SDS_RoundDown(a)</code>	Round down to fixed point number
<code>SDS_RoundUp(a)</code>	Round up to fixed point number
<code>SDS_RoundToNearest(a)</code>	Round to nearest fixed point number

Macros that return type `SLArrayIndex_t`

<code>SAI_RoundDown(a)</code>	Round down to fixed point number
<code>SAI_RoundUp(a)</code>	Round up to fixed point number
<code>SAI_RoundToNearest(a)</code>	Round to nearest fixed point number

Macros that output type `SLFixData_t`

<code>SDS_Odd(a)</code>	Returns 1 if a is odd, 0 otherwise
<code>SDS_Even(a)</code>	Returns 1 if a is even, 0 otherwise
<code>SDS_PowerOfTwo(a)</code>	Returns 1 if a is a power of 2, 0 otherwise
<code>SDS_Abs(a)</code>	Returns the absolute value of a, using C function <code>fabs()</code>
<code>SDS_Absolute(a)</code>	Returns the absolute value of a, using macro function
<code>SDS_Sign(a)</code>	Returns the sign of 'a' – either <code>SIGLIB_POSITIVE</code> or
<code>SIGLIB_NEGATIVE</code>	

Macros that output type `SLArrayIndex_t`

<code>SAI_Odd(a)</code>	Returns 1 if a is odd, 0 otherwise
<code>SAI_Even(a)</code>	Returns 1 if a is even, 0 otherwise
<code>SAI_PowerOfTwo(a)</code>	Returns 1 if a is a power of 2, 0 otherwise
<code>SAI_Absolute(a)</code>	Returns the absolute value of a, using macro function
<code>SAI_Sign(a)</code>	Returns the sign of 'a' – either <code>SIGLIB_POSITIVE</code> or
<code>SIGLIB_NEGATIVE</code>	
<code>SAI_Log2(a)</code>	Returns the log ₂ of a. This macro is very useful for calculating log ₂ of a radix-2 FFT length
<code>SAI_Log3(a)</code>	Returns the log ₄ of a. This macro is very useful for calculating log ₄ of a radix-4 FFT length
<code>SAI_NumberOfElements(a)</code>	Returns the number of elements in the array
<code>SAI_FftLength(a)</code>	Returns the FFT length for a given log ₂ (FFT length)
<code>SAI_FftLength4(a)</code>	Returns the FFT length for a given log ₂ (FFT length)
<code>SAI_FftLengthLog2(a)</code>	Returns the log ₂ (FFT length) for a given FFT length
<code>SAI_FftLengthLog4(a)</code>	Returns the log ₄ (FFT length) for a given FFT length
<code>SDS_BitTest(a,Mask)</code>	Returns 1 if all bits in mask equal '1', returns 0 otherwise
<code>SDS_BitMask(a)</code>	Sets 'a' LSBs to 1 and the remainder to 0

Macros that output type `SLData_t`

<code>SDA_Average(a,b)</code>	Another name for the <code>SDA_Mean</code> function
<code>SDA_Subtract(a,b,c,d)</code>	Subtract a constant value from the data using the <code>SDA_Add</code> function
<code>SDS_SumAndDifference(a,b,sum,diff)</code>	Returns the sum and difference of the two values

SDS_Square(a)	a^2
SDS_Asinh(a)	Inverse hyperbolic sine
SDS_Swap(a,b)	Swap two floating point data values
SDS_Swap2(a,b)	Swap two fixed point data values
SDS_Sort2(a,b)	Sort 2 values, places max. result in a, uses SDS_Swap2
SDS_Sort3(a,b,c)	Sort 3 values, places max. result in a, uses SDS_Sort2
SDS_Sort4(a,b,c,d)	Sort 4 values, places max. result in a, uses SDS_Sort2
SDS_Sort5(a,b,c,d,e)	Sort 5 values, places max. result in a, uses SDS_Sort2
SDS_Sort6(a,b,c,d,e,f)	Sort 6 values, max. result in a, uses SDS_Sort2

SDA_SignalGenerateRamp (Address, Peak, Offset, PhasePointer, ArrayLength)

Generate a ramp signal with values from -signal amplitude to +signal amplitude and given offset. For further information, please refer to the function SDA_SignalGenerate.

To generate a positive ramp from 0 to Max level use:

```
SDA_SigGenRamp (p_Dst, Max/2, SIGLIB_FILL, Max/2, SIGLIB_ZERO,
                ArrayLength)
```

To generate a positive ramp from 0 to -Max level use:

```
SDA_SigGenRamp (p_Dst, -Max/2, SIGLIB_FILL, -Max/2, SIGLIB_ZERO,
                ArrayLength)
```

SDA_SignalGenerateImpulse(Address, Peak, ArrayLength)

Generate a single impulse at location 0 and “Peak” amplitude. For further information, please refer to the function SDA_SignalGenerate.

SDA_SignalGenerateKronekerDeltaFunction (Address, Peak, Delay, ArrayLength)

Generate a single impulse at the location specified by the Delay parameter and “Peak” amplitude. For further information, please refer to the function SDA_SignalGenerate.

SDA_SignalGenerateWhiteNoise(Address, Peak, Fill_Add, ArrayLength)

Generate a bi-polar normally distributed random white noise signal with “Peak” amplitude.

SDS_SignalGenerateWhiteNoise(Address, Peak, Fill_Add)

Generate a single sample of a bi-polar normally distributed random white noise signal with “Peak” amplitude.

SDA_SignalGenerateGaussianNoise(Address, Fill_Add, Variance, pPhase, pValue, ArrayLength)

Generate a bi-polar Gaussian distributed random white noise signal with “Peak” amplitude.

SDS_SignalGenerateGaussianNoise(Address, Fill_Add, Variance, pPhase, pValue)

Generate a single sample of a bi-polar Gaussian distributed random white noise signal with “Peak” amplitude.

SDA_Operate(IPointer1, IPointer2, OPointer, Operation, ArrayLength)

Perform a standard mathematical operation (+, -, *, /) between the source array elements in piece wise mode. If the input pointers reference matrices then the array length should be the product of the two dimensions.

SCV_Real(r)

Return the real component of a complex number

SCV_Imaginary(i)

Return the imaginary component of a complex number

SCV_CopyMacro(IVect, OVect) Copy the complex vector from IVect to OVect.

SUF_Halt () Halts execution of the application at the current location.

SUF_Log (*pStr*) This function will print the string pointed to by *pStr* to the debug.log file provided that the C constant SIGLIB_ENABLE_LOG has been #defined. SIGLIB_ENABLE_LOG can be defined either in the source file you wish to debug or on the compilation command line.

Some of the SigLib functions call the standard library functions, for example `sin`, `cos`, `log`, `malloc`, `free` etc. All of these stdio functions are accessed through SigLib macros and this allows ease of portability between platforms, processors and between different word lengths on a particular processor (e.g. between `sin()` or `sinf()`). The required stdio function can be chosen, for a particular application, by changing the appropriate definition in *siglib.h*. The complete list of SigLib stdio macros is:

SDS_Sin	Sine	SDS_Log	Natural logarithm
SDS_Cos	Cosine	SDS_Log10	Logarithm base 10
SDS_Tan	Tangent	SDS_10Log10	10 * Log ₁₀
SDS_Asin	Arc-sine	SDS_20Log10	20 * Log ₁₀
SDS_Acos	Arc-cosine	SDS_Abs	Absolute number
SDS_Atan	Arc-tangent	SDS_Exp	Exponential
SDS_Atan2	Arc-tangent 2	SDS_Pow	Raise to power
SDS_Sinh	Hyperbolic Sine	SDS_Floor	Floor function
SDS_Cosh	Hyperbolic Cosine	SDS_Ceil	Ceiling function
SDS_Tanh	Hyperbolic Tangent	SDS_Fmod	Floating point
SDS_Sqrt	Square root	modulo function	
SDS_Log2Macro	Log2 without error detection	SDS_Nearest	Round to nearest

SigLib also includes C/C++ macro functions for the allocation and de-allocation of memory arrays. The macros are described below.

The parameter '*N*' defines the number of elements in the array.

The parameter '*M*' defines the period of the sinusoid being generated.

SUF_VectorArrayAllocate (<i>N</i>)	Allocate an array of SLData_t type
SUF_FftCoefficientAllocate (<i>N</i>)	Allocate a radix-2 FFT coefficient array of SLData_t
SUF_FftCoefficientAllocate4 (<i>N</i>)	Allocate a radix-4 FFT coefficient array of SLData_t
SUF_FftCoefficientAllocate (<i>N</i>)	Allocate an FIR extended filter state array of SLData_t
SUF_FirExtendedArrayAllocate (<i>N</i>)	Allocate an IIR filter state array of SLData_t
SUF_IirStateArrayAllocate (<i>N</i>)	Allocate an IIR coefficient array of SLData_t
SUF_IirCoefficientAllocate (<i>N</i>)	Allocate a carrier look up table of SLData_t type for the given carrier frequency and sample rate
SUF_AmCarrierArrayAllocate (<i>CarrierFreq</i> , <i>SampleRate</i>)	Allocate a fast sin/cos look up table of SLData_t type
SUF_FastSinCosArrayAllocate (<i>M</i>)	Allocate a quick sin/cos look up table of SLData_t type
SUF_QuickSinCosArrayAllocate (<i>M</i>)	Allocate a QAM carrier array of SLData_t type
SUF_QamCarrierArrayAllocate (<i>M</i>)	Allocate a QPSK carrier array of SLData_t type
SUF_QpskCarrierArrayAllocate (<i>M</i>)	Allocate an array of SLComplexRect_s types
SUF_ComplexRectArrayAllocate (<i>N</i>)	Allocate an array of SLComplexPolar_s types
SUF_ComplexPolarArrayAllocate	Allocate an array of type

(N)	SLMicrohone_t types
SUF_MicrophoneArrayAllocate	
(N)	
	Allocate an array of type
	SArrayIndex_t types
SUF_IndexArrayAllocate (N)	Allocate an array of type
	SLFixData_t types
SUF_FixDataArrayAllocate (N)	Free the memory array
SUF_MemoryFree (SLData_t *)	

SigLib defines the following macros to translate frequencies to bin numbers and vice versa:

SUF_BinNumberToFrequency(Bin, FFTLength, SampleRate) Convert the FFT bin number to the appropriate frequency. The frequency is returned as type SLData_t.

SUF_BinNumberToFrequency2(Bin, InvFFTLength, SampleRate) Convert the FFT bin number to the appropriate frequency. The frequency is returned as type SLData_t. Note this macro takes the inverse of the FFT length as a parameter and hence avoids the division operation.

SUF_FrequencyToBinNumber(Freq, FFTLength, SampleRate) Convert the frequency to the appropriate FFT bin number. The FFT bin number is returned as type SArrayIndex_t.

SUF_FrequencyToBinNumber2(Freq, FFTLength, InvSampleRate) Convert the frequency to the appropriate FFT bin number. The FFT bin number is returned as type SArrayIndex_t. Note this macro takes the inverse of the sample rate as a parameter and hence avoids the division operation.

SigLib defines the following macros to provide the width of the data elements:

SIGLIB_DATA_WORD_LENGTH	Returns the length of an SLData_t word
SIGLIB_ARRAY_INDEX_WORD_LENGTH	Returns the length of an SArrayIndex_t word
SIGLIB_FIX_WORD_LENGTH	Returns the length of an SLFixData_t word

SigLib defines the following null pointers, these should be used when a parameter is not required because of the selected mode of operation:

SIGLIB_NULL_FLOAT_PTR	Null pointer to SLData_t
SIGLIB_NULL_FIX_PTR	Null pointer to SArrayIndex_t
SIGLIB_NULL_COMPLEX_RECT_PTR	Null pointer to SLComplexRect_s

SIGLIB_NULL_COMPLEX_POLAR_PTR Null pointer to SLComplexPolar_s

SigLib, Numerix-DSP and Digital Filter Plus are trademarks of Sigma Numerix Ltd all other trademarks acknowledged.

Sigma Numerix Ltd are continuously increasing the functionality of SigLib and reserve the right to alter the product at any time.